



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

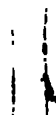
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

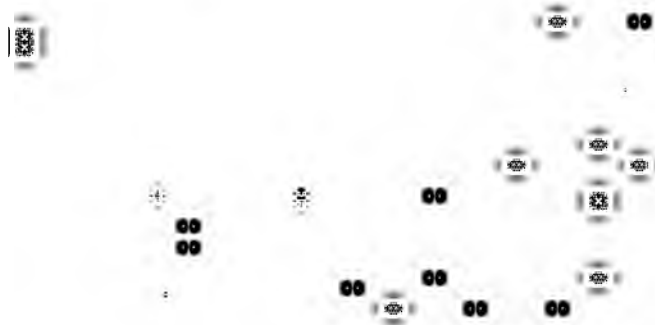
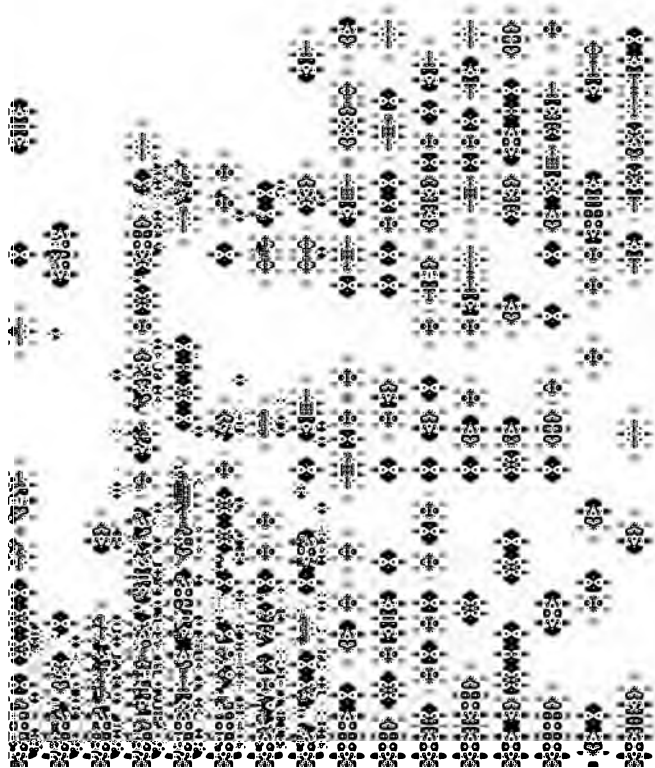
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Pardonny

2 cur. - Good to know

about all letters





*Dean's Stereotype Edition.*

---

GUIDE  
TO THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE;

ESPECIALLY DEVISED  
FOR PERSONS WHO WISH TO STUDY THE  
ELEMENTS OF THAT LANGUAGE,

BY  
J. J. P. LE BRETHON.

---

FIFTH AMERICAN

FROM THE  
SEVENTH LONDON EDITION,

CORRECTED, ENLARGED, AND IMPROVED;

By P. BEKEART.

---

*Adolescentiam alere jucundum est et laudabile.—Cicero.*

---

PHILADELPHIA:

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

1858.

8.2

**TO THE**  
**PRESIDENT, DIRECTORS, AND MEMBERS**  
**OF THE MERCANTILE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION, NEW YORK.**

I have prepared for the press an edition of Le Brethon's "Guide to the French Language,"—a work, which, by the general consent of those best qualified to judge, stands at the head of its class.

As a slight acknowledgment, gentlemen, of the encouragement which you have always given to the study of a language which has become to the merchant at least, a necessary part of education, rather than an accomplishment; and of the generous co-operation and assistance which I have constantly received from those members who have been my pupils, it affords me sincere pleasure to dedicate this work to your noble Institution—an Institution already justly distinguished for its wisdom in devising, and for its perseverance in providing, the means of moral and intellectual improvement.

I am, &c.

P. BEKEART.

## TO THE LEARNER.\*

I SUPPOSE you to be animated with as great a desire to learn the French language as I am to assist you. Before we begin, permit me to ask you a single painful question. Do you know your own language? Do you know the parts of which it is composed, NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, &c.? Are these terms familiar to you? If you answer *no*: then will I say to you, learn them before we go further, for it is ten to one that you and I should not understand each other, or, if we did, it would be with a great deal of difficulty. Besides, you may be excused for not knowing a foreign language; you can hardly be pardoned for being ignorant of your own, especially at a time when so many able persons devote themselves to the teaching of it. Nor do you even want the assistance of a teacher; with a moderate share of understanding and a good grammar, you may learn as much as is necessary for our purpose in the course of a fortnight.

Now I suppose that you have these few requisites, and you wish to make use of this book. Begin at the page 42: compare the French with the English, and endeavour to form some idea of the difference between the two languages: Then translate into French the English exercises, page 44 and the following, the rules correspond with the exercises that you are now reading, the figures under the words point out to you the rule by which you are to apply. It will be proper during this time that you should peruse the verbs, that the variation in their tenses and persons may by degrees become familiar to you.

N. B. Persons making use of this book, who have already some general notions of the French language, must begin at

---

\* The Author is not so vain as to wish to give instructions to teachers, or to persons accustomed to the study of languages, but to such persons only as are at a loss how to begin.

## THE ALPHABET.

The FRENCH LANGUAGE is composed of *twenty-five* letters  
viz.

A	pronounced <i>ah</i>	like	<i>a</i>	in	<i>art.</i>
B	<i>bay</i>		<i>b</i>		<i>bay.</i>
C	<i>say</i>		<i>s</i>		<i>say.</i>
D	<i>day</i>		<i>d</i>		<i>day.</i>
E	<i>ay</i>		<i>a</i>		<i>ale.</i>
F	<i>f</i>		<i>f</i>		<i>deaf.</i>
G	<i>zhay*</i>		<i>1</i>		
H	<i>ash</i>		<i>h</i>		<i>ash.</i>
I	<i>ee</i>		<i>i</i>		<i>field.</i>
J	<i>zhee*</i>		<i>1</i>		
K	<i>kah</i>		<i>c</i>		<i>cart.</i>
L	<i>l</i>		<i>l</i>		<i>ell.</i>
M	<i>m</i>		<i>m</i>		<i>gem.</i>
N	<i>n</i>		<i>n</i>		<i>pen.</i>
O	<i>o</i>		<i>o</i>		<i>old.</i>
P	<i>pay</i>		<i>p</i>		<i>pay.</i>
Q	<i>ku</i>		<i>2</i>		
R	<i>ayr</i>		<i>r</i>		<i>to err.</i>
S	<i>s</i>		<i>s</i>		<i>bless.</i>
T	<i>tay</i>		<i>t</i>		<i>tailor.</i>
U	<i>u</i>		<i>2</i>		
V	<i>vay</i>		<i>v</i>		<i>veil.</i>
X	<i>eeks</i>		<i>x</i>		<i>six.</i>
Y	<i>ee-grayc</i>				<i>the same sound as i.</i>
Z	<i>zeyd</i>		<i>z</i>		<i>zed.</i>

\* To give this letter its proper sound, the *h* must be pronounced aspirate.

1 The sound of *g* and *j*, in english, is formed of *dj*; so *general*, *judge*, are pronounced *djeneral*, *djudge*; leave out the sound of *d* in french, and you will have the proper sound.

2 There is no word in the english language in which the sounds of the french *g* and *u* are to be found, and no combination of characters can give an idea of the pronunciation of these two letters. The person who has them to pronounce, must shut his lips quite close, leaving only a small opening in the middle, as if he were going to blow a flute.

é in <i>aimée</i> ,	femin.	loved, is pronoun.	<i>aymaye</i> , like é	} long.
i <i>jolie</i> ,		pretty,	<i>zholee</i> ,	
u <i>vue</i> ,		seen,	<i>vù</i> ,	
<i>petit</i> ,	mascul.	little, is pronoun.	<i>pti</i> , see note 4.	
<i>grand</i> ,		great,	<i>gran</i> .	
<i>pris</i> ,		taken,	<i>pree</i> .	
but <i>petite</i> ,	femin.	little, is pronoun.	<i>ptitt</i> .	
<i>grande</i> ,		great,	<i>grand</i> .	
<i>prise</i> ,		taken,	<i>preez</i> .	
In <i>un bon chien</i> ,		a good dog,	the <i>n</i> has only a <i>half</i> sound.	
In <i>une bonne chienne</i> ,		a good bitch,	the <i>n</i> has a <i>full</i> sound.	5

N. B. *e mute* is distinguished from the two others, by its not being accented; it is never pronounced at the end of words, but when *e* begins a word, it is always sounded whether it be accented or not.

3. In the monosyllables, *je, me, te, le, se, ce, de, ne, que*, this *e* has sometimes a *weak guttural* sound, similar to that of *e* in *daughter, sister*, because the consonant can not be pronounced without a feeble articulation of a vowel; but it is always *dropt* in conversation and in familiar reading, when it can be done without embarrassing the pronunciation. The manner in which this is effected is easy. With the *last syllable* of the preceding word, *pronounce* the *consonant* to which *e* belongs, and the *e*, thus *unsupported*, will remain *silent*; **ex.**

Quand me ferez-vous le plaisir de me prêter ce livre que je vous ai demandé ?

pronounce, *kam frays voel playseer daym pray tays kyer kayzh voozayd manday ?*

But there must not be any pause between the words, and the junction must be as smooth as possible.

Observe only, that a *syllable* ending in *e mute*, can not attract the *consonant* of another *e mute*, without giving to the first *e* a gentle guttural sound, like that of *e* in *daughter*, so as to render the pronunciation easy; **ex.**

Je ne puis pas vous le dire, puis que je ne la sais pas.

pronounced, *shen pueh paw voel deer, pueesh shen lay say paw.*

But carefully avoid pronouncing it like an accented *é*, for there is not any pronunciation more ridiculous.\*

\* To give a its full articulation, you first press the tip of the tongue against the roof of the lower teeth, then raise it up quickly to the roof of the mouth. In the pronunciation of the above nasal vowels, the articulation of *a* must end, when the tip of the tongue is at the roof of the lower teeth, without any motion towards the roof of the mouth; this is what is here meant by a *half* sound.

\* In the pronouncing of this *e* consists much of the neatness and elegance of a true french accent. In the southern provinces of France, especially in *Genève* and *Gascogne*, they pronounce it like the acute or short *é*, which gives them that affected pronunciation, so much ridiculed by the rest of the inhabitants of France, under the name of *accent gascon*. For this reason a foreigner will sooner understand a native of *Fordeaus*, than a native of *Paris*, and may often understand the former, without being able to understand the latter, though if he understands, the latter he will un-

4. Among the simple vowels is also reckoned *y*, which however does not increase their number, since its sound is the same as that of *i*. The peculiar use of this letter is to divide the syllable in which it is found, into two distinct syllables; it is equivalent to *ii*; as,

<i>pays</i> ,	country,	pron. <i>pay-ee</i> .
<i>citoyen</i> ,	citizen,	<i>silwoy-eeyen</i> .
<i>soyons</i> ,	let us be,	<i>swoy-eeon</i> .
<i>joyeux</i> ,	joyful,	<i>zhwoy-ee-ugh</i> .

Except in the words derived from the greek and latin, where *y* is kept to show the etymology of the word, and is pronounced like one *i* only; as,

<i>Egypte</i> ,	Egypt,	<i>ayzheep</i> .
<i>tyrannie</i> ,	tyranny,	<i>teerannee</i> .
<i>étymologie</i> ,	etymology,	<i>ayteemolozhee</i> .
<i>mythologie</i> ,	mythology,	<i>meetolozhee</i> .

#### OF COMPOUND VOWELS.

*ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, ou.*

This sort of vowel is formed by the association of several simple vowels, which produce together, a sound different from that which they produce separately.

5. *ai*, } sounded like *é* short, i. e. *ay*; as,  
*eai*, }

<i>j'ai</i> ,	I have,	pronounce	<i>zhay</i> .
<i>je mangeai</i> ,	I ate,		<i>zhmanzhay</i> .

6. *ais*, } sounded like *ê* long, i. e. *aye*; as,  
*aie*, }  
*aient*, }  
*eais*, }  
*eaient*, }

<i>j'avais</i> ,	I had,	<i>zhavaye</i> .
<i>j'aie</i> ,	I may have,	<i>zhacy</i> .
<i>ils aient</i> ,	they may have,	<i>eel-z-aye</i> .
<i>je mangeais</i> ,	I was eating,	<i>zhmanzhaye</i> .
<i>ils nageaient</i> ,	they were swimming,	<i>eel nazhaye</i> .

*ao*, found only in *aout*, august; *taon*, oxfly; *faon*, fawn; *paon*, peacock.  
 pronounced, *oow*, *ton*, *fan*, *pan*.

(see nasal vowels.)

7. *au*, } final, sound like *o* short, or *au*, in *laurel*; as,  
*eau*, }

<i>eau</i> ,	water,	<i>o</i> .
<i>peau</i> ,	skin,	<i>po</i> .

---

doubtedly understand the former. It is the frequent dropping of this *e* which makes a foreigner believe that the French speak fast, for, in reality, the French, taken in general, do not pronounce their words faster than other people do; but by dropping this letter, they link two, three, or four words together, and so go quicker through a sentence than a foreigner does, who gives a full sound to every *e* he meets with. Foreigners should pay particular attention to this, as nothing is more difficult to get rid of than a bad accent.

8. *au*, } followed by a consonant in the same word, sound-  
*au*, } ed like *ô* long, or *au* in *hautboy*; as,

<i>caux</i> ,	waters,	<i>ô</i> .
<i>autant</i> ,	as much,	<i>ôtan</i> .

9. *ea*, the *e* has no sound, but gives *g* the soft sound of *j*, or *sh*; as,

<i>jean</i> ,	john,	<i>ehan</i> .
<i>mangea</i> ,	ate,	<i>manzha</i> .

10. *ei*, pronounced like *ei* in *reign*; or *ai* in *rain*; as,

<i>reine</i> ,	queen,	<i>rain</i> .
<i>peine</i> ,	pain,	<i>pain</i> .

11. *eo*, in *geo*, the *e* has no sound, but softens that of *g* into *sh*; as,

<i>george</i> ,	george,	<i>zhorz</i> .
<i>geôlier</i> ,	jailer,	<i>zhôléay</i> .

12. *eu*, the nearest idea which I can give of *eu*, is that of *e*, in *her*, agreeably to Walker's pronunciation of that word, viz. *hur*.

<i>feu</i> ,	fire,	<i>feu</i> .
<i>peu</i> ,	little,	<i>peu</i> .

N. B. *e* has no sound in the monosyllables.

*eu*, *eus*, *eut*, *eûmes*, *eûtes*, *eurent*, *eûse*, had; pronounce *u*, *û*, *u*, *ûm*, *ût*, *ur*, *uss*.

13. *oe*, pronounced *e*; the *o* having no sound; and the words in which it was found formerly being now generally spelled without it; as,

<i>cœur</i> ,	heart,	<i>keur</i> .
<i>œuvres</i> ,	works,	<i>œvr</i> .

14. *ou*, pronounced like *oo* in *cook*, *book*, *look*; as,

<i>coup</i> ,	blow,	<i>koo</i> .
<i>bout</i> ,	end,	<i>boo</i> .

15. N. B. If one of the vowels is *accented*, or marked over with two dots, (¨), the vowels form distinct syllables, and are pronounced separately; as,

<i>flau</i> ,	scourge,	<i>flay-o</i> .
<i>naïveté</i> ,	ingenuousness,	<i>na-in-tay</i> .

## OF NASAL VOWELS.

*am*, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*.

16. *am*, } have all the same sound, that of *en* in *encore*, or  
*an*, } *an* in *want*, observing to give the *n* only a half  
*em*, } sound. See note 5.  
*en*, }  
*ent*, }

<i>ambition</i> ,	ambition,	<i>ambiseon</i> .
<i>empire</i> ,	empire,	<i>anpeer</i> .
<i>enfant</i> ,	child,	<i>anfan</i> .
<i>anglais</i> ,	english,	<i>anglaye</i> .
<i>vengeance</i> ,	revenge,	<i>vanzhance</i> .
<i>ornement</i> ,	ornament,	<i>ornayman</i> .

17. *en* has the sound of *en* in *when*, giving *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

1. In foreign names ; as,

<i>mentor,</i>	mentor,	<i>mentor.</i>
----------------	---------	----------------

2. At the end of words ; as,

<i>examen,</i>	examination,	<i>egzamen.</i>
<i>bien,</i>	well,	<i>beeyen.</i>
<i>entretien,</i>	conversation,	<i>antrayt-yen.</i>

18. N. B. *ent* has no sound at the end of the third person plural of verbs ; as,

<i>ils eurent,</i>	they had,	<i>eel-z-ur.</i>
<i>ils furent,</i>	they were,	<i>eel-fur.</i>
<i>ils aimèrent,</i>	they loved,	<i>eel-z-aymayr.</i>

19. *im,*  
*in,*  
*aim,*  
*ain,*  
*ein,* } have all the same sound, a sound similar to that of *in* in *fine*, giving *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>imparfait</i>	imperfect,	<i>ineparfay.</i>
<i>infini,</i>	infinite,	<i>inefini.</i>
<i>cousin</i>	cousin, <i>masc.</i>	<i>coozine.</i>
<i>fin,</i>	end,	<i>fine.</i>
<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i>
<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>
<i>sein,</i>	bosom,	<i>sine.</i>

20. But if *in*, either in the first or last syllable of a word, is followed by a vowel, it is sounded like the english preposition *in* ; as,

<i>inaccessible,</i>	inaccessible,	<i>inaksessible.</i>
<i>inutile,</i>	useless,	<i>inutil.</i>
<i>fine,</i>	fine,	<i>fin.</i>
<i>cousine,</i>	cousin, <i>femin.</i>	<i>coozin.</i>
<i>badine,</i>	playful,	<i>bad-in.</i>

21. *om,*  
*on,*  
*eon* } are sounded like *on* in *wont*, observing always to give *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>compter,</i>	to count,	<i>contay.</i>
<i>donjon,</i>	dungeon,	<i>don-zhon.</i>
<i>pigeon,</i>	pigeon,	<i>peezhon.</i>
<i>mangeons,</i>	let us eat,	<i>man-zhon.</i>

N. B. The English are apt to open their mouths too much in pronouncing *on*, by which means, instead of sounding it like *on* in *wont*, they sound it like *an* in *want*. They should guard against this.

22. *um,*  
*un,*  
*eun,* } have all the same sound ; but no exact idea can be given of it, unless it be that of *un* in *fungus* ; observing not to give *n* its full sound. See note 5

<i>parfum,</i>	perfume,	<i>parfun.</i>
<i>chacun,</i>	each,	<i>shak-un.</i>
<i>à jeun,</i>	fasting,	<i>azhun.</i>



## OF DIPHTHONGS.

23. Diphthongs are a union of several vowels, which, though they produce different sounds, are pronounced at the same breath;

<i>ia</i> , sounded like	<i>ya</i> in yard. ex.	<i>fiacre</i> ,	hackney-coach,	<i>feeyacr</i> .
<i>éé</i> ,	<i>ye ye</i> .	<i>piéd</i> ,	foot,	<i>pee-ay</i> .
<i>so</i> ,	<i>yo york</i> .	<i>fiolé</i> ,	vial,	<i>feool</i> .
<i>iau</i> ,	<i>yo yoke</i> .	<i>miauler</i> ,	to mew,	<i>meeolay</i> .
<i>ieu</i> ,		<i>diéu</i> ,	god,	<i>dee-ugh</i> .
<i>tou</i> ,	<i>you you</i> .	<i>chiourme</i> ,	a galley crew,	<i>sheeoorm</i> .
<i>iant</i> ,	<i>yan</i> ,	<i>priant</i> ,	praying,	<i>preeyan</i> .
<i>ient</i> ,		<i>patient</i> ,	patient,	<i>pauceeyan</i> .
<i>ien</i> ,	<i>yen</i> ,	<i>bien</i> ,	well,	<i>beeyen</i> .
<i>ion</i> ,	<i>yon</i> ,	<i>action</i> ,	action,	<i>akseeyon</i> .
<i>oe</i> ,	<i>why whey</i> .	<i>boète</i> ,	box,	<i>bukeyt</i> .
<i>oue</i> ,		<i>fouet</i> ,	whip,	<i>fuhey</i> .
<i>oi</i> ,	<i>woa</i> ,	<i>moi, toi</i> ,	I, thou,	<i>mwoa, twoa</i> .
<i>oï</i> ,		<i>bourgeois</i> ,	burgess,	<i>boorzhwoa</i> .
<i>oin</i> ,	<i>woin</i> ,	<i>soin</i> ,	care,	<i>swoin</i> .
<i>ouant</i> ,	<i>wan want</i> .	<i>louange</i> ,	praise,	<i>lwanzh</i> .
<i>ouent</i> ,		<i>rouen</i> ,	rouen,	<i>ruan</i> .
<i>oua</i> ,	<i>wa</i> water.	<i>louage</i> ,	hiring,	<i>lwazh</i> .
<i>oui</i> ,	<i>wi</i> without.	<i>oui, réjoui</i> ,	yes, rejoiced,	<i>we, rayzhwee</i> .
<i>ua</i> ,	In pronouncing this u shut your lips as directed in note 2.	<i>nuage</i> ,	cloud,	<i>nuash</i> .
<i>ue</i> ,		<i>écuelle</i> ,	porringer,	<i>aykuayl</i> .
<i>ui</i> ,		<i>lui, fruit</i> ,	him, fruit,	<i>lui, fruit, no. 4</i> .
<i>uin</i> ,		<i>juin</i> ,	june,	<i>zhwine</i> .

6. To remove the embarrassment which learners find in the pronunciation of *oi*, which is sometimes pronounced like the diphthong *oi*, and sometimes like the compound vowel *ai*, in words which are entirely similar, I have through all this work spelled with *oi* the words which are pronounced *woa*, and with *ai*, those which are pronounced *ay*. It will perhaps be argued that this is contrary to the opinion of the french academy. I respect the opinion of the french academy, as much as any man can do, when it is consonant to reason; but the opinion of no man, let his rank and talents be ever so eminent, nor of any corporation of men, however pompous their appellation may be, can be put into competition with reason. Now is it reasonable that two sounds so very different should be expressed by one sign; exposing the learner to innumerable mistakes, when by the mere change of a single letter, another sign can so easily be formed, which removes every difficulty? The following words, for instance, are given to a foreigner to pronounce, or even to a native of France, who never heard them pronounced before:

*François, danois, suédois, chinois, bourgeois, chamols, foi, paroisse, perpoit, &c*  
*François, anglois, hollandais, japonais, bougeois, charmois, foible, paroisse, perpoit, &c.*

The stranger is told how to pronounce the words in the first line; he pronounces them well; he goes on confidently to the second line, naturally thinking that the same letters ought to produce the same sound; what must his astonishment be, when he is told that *oi* in the words contained in the second line is pronounced quite differently from what it is in the words contained in the first, the first being pronounced *woa*, and the second *ay*; and how much greater will his surprise be still, when he finds that even in the same word, such as *voyois, croyois, &c.* (see rule 4) *oi* has two different sounds, the first syllable being pronounced *woa* and the second *ay*. And have you no means, the stranger will say, of removing this insuperable difficulty? Yes, we have, and a very easy one too; you have only to change *e* into *a* in the words which are to be pronounced *ay*, and the whole difficulty will vanish; but the french academy do not approve of it. Oh! never mind the french academy, the stranger will say. Nor do the French, it seems, mind it much, for these great censors of the language have the mortification to see that, in almost every book now printed in France, this diphthong is spelled contrary to their arrogant and unreasonable decision. In vain they will say that *ai* does not express the exact sound that we wish to express; if it removes a great difficulty, if nothing better is offered, if it is the best representative of this sound that we can find, and is a sign which nobody can mistake, we must be satisfied with it, till the french academy design to favour us with a better.—(See *Dictionnaire Philosophique*, art. A.)

## OF CONSONANTS.

*General Rules.*

The french language admits of *two* modes of pronunciation ; one for *poetry* and *oratory*, the other for *conversation*.

24. In repeating *verses*, and in *oratorical* discourses, the *final consonant* of a word is generally *sounded*, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel*, or *h* *mute* ; as,

*D'un pinceau délicat, l'artifice agréable,  
Du plus affreux objet, fuit un objet aimable.  
Des dons extérieurs l'uniformité lasse,  
Mais l'esprit a toujours une nouvelle grâce.*

The above lines must be read in the following manner ;

*Dun paineso daylika lartifitse agrayable,  
Dupluz-affreu-z-obzhay fay-t-un-obzhay-t-aymable.  
Day don-z-estayrieur lunitformitay lass,  
May layspri-t-a toozheor-z-un noovayl grass.*

25. In *conversation*, the ear alone being consulted, opinions greatly differ. Some are for sounding the final consonant of every word, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel* ; others, and this seems to be the opinion of the best informed persons, maintain that the final consonant of a word should be sounded on the initial vowel of the next, only when the two words are so connected that the second word is necessary to complete the sense ; such as,

## Article and noun ;

*un enfant,  
cet hiver,  
à son âge,  
les artifices,  
des hommes,*

a child,  
this winter,  
at his age,  
the artifices,  
of men,

*u-n-anfan.  
s-t-euvayr.  
à so-n-âzh.  
lay-z-artifiss.  
day-z-om.*

## Adjective before the noun ;

*bon ouvrage,  
grand espace,  
petit homme,  
gros oiseau,  
beaux habits,*

good work,  
great space,  
little man,  
large bird,  
fine clothes,

*bo-n-oovrazh.  
gran-t-ayspass.  
pti-t-om.<sup>7</sup>  
grô-z-owyo.  
bô-z-abe.*

## Pronoun with the verb, and verb with the pronoun ;

*il est,  
est-il ?  
sont-elles ?  
nous avons,  
vous en avez,  
les ont-ils ?*

he is,  
is he ?  
are they ?  
we have,  
you have some,  
have they got them ?

*i-ll-aye.  
aye-t-il ?  
son-t-ell ?  
noo-z-avon.  
voo-z-an-avaye.  
lay-z-on-t-eel ?*

<sup>7</sup> We sound the final consonant of an adjective upon a noun, but not the final consonant of a noun upon an adjective ; so, though *petit enfant*, is pronounced *pti-t-anfan*, *enfant aimable* could not be pronounced *anfan-t-aymable*, but *anfan aymable*.

Preposition with the noun, pronoun, or verb that follows it ;

<i>sans amis,</i>	without friends,	<i>san-z-amée.</i>
<i>avec elle,</i>	with her,	<i>avayk-ell.</i>
<i>en allant,</i>	in going,	<i>an-allan.</i>
<i>chez eux,</i>	to their house,	<i>shay-z-ugh.</i>
<i>après avoir,</i>	after having,	<i>apray-z-avoai.</i>

Adverb before the adjective or participle ;

<i>bien honnête,</i>	very honest,	<i>beeyen-onayt.</i>
<i>plus habile,</i>	more clever,	<i>plu-z-ah-bill.</i>
<i>très aimable,</i>	very lovely,	<i>tray-z-aymable.</i>
<i>fort utile,</i>	very useful,	<i>for-t-utilil.</i>
<i>trop ignorant,</i>	too ignorant,	<i>trop-p-inyoran.</i>

N. B. There are a few other instances in which a final consonant may be sounded on the following vowel, but they can hardly be reduced to rules, as it chiefly depends on the number of letters of the same sound that follow one another. The surest way for a foreigner is to confine himself to the general rules which apply to nine-tenths of the words the final consonant of which is to be sounded on the following vowel. The rest must be learned from the conversation of well informed persons.\*

\* As in music, it is the diversity of sounds that produces melody ; so it is with languages. The union of the final consonant of some words, to the initial vowel of the word which follows them, being done to disencumber the language of too great a number of monosyllables, and to render it more melodious by a greater variety of sounds : the rule given by some persons, that every word ending with a consonant should be joined to the following word, when it begins with a vowel, is totally erroneous, and produces the very effect which this union is intended to remove. It is true, that in reading verses, the final consonant is generally joined to the following vowel, to preserve the measure of the verse : and, in public speeches, the consonants are also often sounded at the end of words, to give a stronger impulsion to the air, and to be heard at a greater distance ; but in familiar reading, and in conversation, this is carefully avoided by all unaffected people.

If any authority be necessary to support what I advance here, I trust that of *l'abbé d'Olivet*, one of the most distinguished members of the french academy, will be sufficient to convince every man of candour, since it implies the opinion of the most enlightened part of that body. This philosophical grammarian, in his treatise on french prosody, (a work which has been, and ever will be the admiration of the learned,) before he speaks of the effect which certain nasal terminations have in repeating verses, remarks, *art. 3. parag. 5.*

*Je commence par dire que cette observation ne regarde point ceux qui écrivent en prose, car la prose souffre les hiatus pourvu qu'ils ne soient, ni trop rudes, ni trop fréquents. Ils contribuent même à donner au discours un certain air naturel, et nous voyons en effet que la conversation des honnêtes gens est pleine d'hiatus volontaires qui sont tellement autorisés par l'usage, que si l'on parloit autrement, cela seroit d'un pédant, ou d'un provincial. Par exemple, lorsqu'un acteur récite ces vers de la première scène d'Athalie. Je viens — célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée, &c. Pensez-vous être saint ! il prononce comme s'il y avoit ; célébré-r-avec vous — pensez-vous-z-être. Mais dans la simple conversation, l'usage veut qu'on prononce comme s'il y avoit, célébré avec vous — pensez-vous être, &c. And art. 2, he says — On le croira si l'on veut ; au moins est-il certain qu'au théâtre ce n'est pas chose rare qu'un acteur, et surtout une actrice dont les talents sont admirés fasse adopter un mauvais accent, une prononciation irrégulière, d'où naissent insensiblement des traditions locales qui se perpétuent, si personne n'est attentif à les combattre. These are the words of a man, for whose opinions the french academy had the greatest deference ; a man who, at their request, had made this subject one of his particular studies, and who had consulted upon it, as he himself declares, all the men of taste and learning with whom he was acquainted ; and they never were contradicted,*

† By *hiatus* is meant a broken sound.

26. The foregoing instances excepted, the *final consonant* of words, in general, *has no sound* in french. See the *particular rules* for consonants under their respective heads

*Particular Rules.*

**B**

*b* is sounded at the end of proper names ; as,

<i>job,</i>	job, pronounce	<i>zhob.</i>
<i>jacob,</i>	jacob,	<i>zhakob.</i>

At the end of common names *b* is found only in

<i>plomb,</i>	lead, pron.	<i>plon.</i>
<i>radoub,</i>	refitting,	<i>radoob.</i>

**C**

This letter has two sounds common to both languages.

1. That of *k* as in *case*, pronounced *kase.*
2. That of *s* as in *cease*, *sease.*

*c* before *a, o, u*, has the sound of *k*.

<i>ca, ka,</i>	<i>car,</i>	for,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>co, ko,</i>	<i>cour,</i>	yard,	<i>koor.</i>
<i>cu, ku,</i>	<i>culotte,</i>	breeches,	<i>kulot. (u, see note 2.)</i>

*c* before *e, i*, or before *a, o, u*, with a cedilla, this mark (,) under it, has the sound of *s* ; as,

<i>ça, sa,</i>	<i>façade,</i>	front,	<i>fasad.</i>
<i>ce, se,</i>	<i>ceder,</i>	to yield,	<i>sayday.</i>
<i>ci, si,</i>	<i>ceci,</i>	this,	<i>scee. (i, see note 4.)</i>
<i>ço, so,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>garson.</i>
<i>çu, su,</i>	<i>reçu,</i>	received,	<i>rsu. (u, see note 2.)</i>

*c* final is generally sounded, and has the sound of *k* ; as,

<i>avec,</i>	with,	<i>avayk.</i>
<i>public,</i>	public,	<i>publeek. (u, see note 2.)</i>

except the following words, in which *c* final has no sound ;

*brac, porc, clerc, un marc, blanc, franc, jonc, tronc, almanac, estomac, tabac.*  
*a jug, pork, clerk, 8 ounces, white, frank, rush, trunk, almanack, stomach, tobacco.*  
*pron. brv. por, clayr, mar, blan, fran,\* zhon, tron, almana, aystoma, taba.*

*cc*, before *e, i*, the first *c* has the sound of *k*, the second that of *s* ; as,

<i>succès,</i>	success,	<i>suksaye.</i>
<i>accident,</i>	accident,	<i>akseedan.</i>

but by persons, who, being fond of appearing singular, affect in conversation the emphatic tone of the stage, without considering whether they are speaking prose or verse, (most of the french plays are in verse,) or by those who, looking upon singularity as an accomplishment, mimic their ridiculous affectation.

*Dans une nation qui est une par rapport au gouvernement, il ne peut y avoir dans sa manière de parler qu'un usage légitime, celui de la cour et des gens de lettres, à qui elle doit des encouragements ; tout autre usage qui s'en écarte dans la prononciation, dans les terminaisons, ou de quelqu'autre façon que ce puisse être, ne fait ni une langue, ou un idiôme à part, ni un dialecte de la langue nationale ; c'est un patois abandonné à la populace des provinces, et chaque province a la sien. Girard synon. franç. art. Langue, Language. &c.*

\* *c*, in the adjectives *blanc* and *franc*, followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, has the sound of *k* ; as, *Du blanc au noir*, pronounce *du blan-k-o-noir*. *Franc étourdi*, *pron. fran-k-aytoordes. (i, see note 4.)*

Before *a, o, u*; *cc* have only one sound, that of *k*; as,

<i>accabler,</i>	to crush,	<i>akablay.</i>
<i>accomplir,</i>	to accomplish,	<i>akonpleer.</i>
<i>accuser,</i>	to accuse,	<i>akusay. (u, see note 2.)</i>

*ch*, generally pronounced *sh*; as,

<i>chirurgien,</i>	surgeon,	<i>sheeruzheyen.</i>
<i>architecte,</i>	architect,	<i>arsheetayet.</i>

*ck* has the sound of *k* in the following words;

<i>christ, chrétien,</i>	<i>choriste,</i>	<i>archange,</i>	<i>orchestre,</i>	<i>chronique,</i>	<i>chronologie.</i>
<i>christ, christian,</i>	<i>chorister,</i>	<i>archangle,</i>	<i>orchestre,</i>	<i>chronicle,</i>	<i>chronology.</i>
<i>pron. kree,</i>	<i>kroyteeyen,</i>	<i>koreest,</i>	<i>arkansh,</i>	<i>orkaystr,</i>	<i>kronesk, kronoloshes.</i>

## D

*d* final has no sound; as,

<i>froid,</i>	cold,	<i>fwoy.</i>
<i>chaud,</i>	hot,	<i>show.</i>

except at the end of a word which is pronounced at the same breath with another word beginning with a vowel, then *d* has the sound of *t*; as,

<i>apprend-il?</i>	does he learn?	<i>apran-t-eel?</i>
<i>quand il vient,</i>	when he comes,	<i>kan-t-eel veyen.</i>

*d*, or even *dd*, in the body of a word, is sounded; as,

<i>adjectif,</i>	adjective,	<i>adjecteef.</i>
<i>addition,</i>	addition	<i>addeesecon.</i>

## F

*f* final is generally sounded; as,

<i>chef,</i>	chief,	<i>shayf.</i>
<i>nerf,</i>	sinew,	<i>nayrf.</i>
<i>bœuf,</i>	ox,	<i>bugf.</i>
<i>œuf,</i>	egg,	<i>ugf.</i>
except in <i>clef,</i>	key,	<i>clay.</i>
<i>bœufs</i>	oxen,	<i>bugh.</i>
<i>œufs,</i>	eggs,	<i>ugh.</i>

and if pronounced in *one breath* with a word beginning with a consonant;

<i>chef d'œuvre,</i>	master-piece,	<i>shaydeugvre.</i>
<i>nerf de bœuf,</i>	cow-skin, a rod,	<i>nayr d bugf.</i>
<i>bœuf salé,</i>	salt beef,	<i>bugh salay.</i>
<i>œuf frais,</i>	new egg,	<i>ugh fraye.</i>

*f* is sounded in *neuf* at the end of a sentence; as,

<i>j'en ai neuf,</i>	I have got nine,	<i>zhan-ay nugf. (eu, see</i>
<i>un habit neuf,</i>	a new suit,	<i>un-abee nugf. [r. 12.]</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a consonant, *f* has no sound; as,

<i>neuf livres,</i>	nine livres,	<i>nugh leevr. (eu, s. r. 12.</i>
<i>dix neuf sous,</i>	nineteen pence,	<i>dees nugh soo.</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a vowel, *f* has the sound of *v*; as,

<i>neuf écus,</i>	nine crowns,	<i>nugh-v-oykâ. (u, see n. 2.)</i>
<i>vingt neuf hommes,</i>	twenty-nine men,	<i>vyngt nugf-v-om.</i>

## G

*g* final has no sound ; as,

	<i>long,</i>	<i>long,</i>	<i>lon.</i> (on, see rule 21.)
	<i>sang,</i>	<i>blood,</i>	<i>san,</i> { (an, see rule 16.)
	<i>rang,</i>	<i>rank,</i>	<i>ran,</i>
except in	<i>long accés,</i>	<i>long fit,</i>	<i>long-aksey,</i>
	<i>sang et eau,</i>	<i>blood and water,</i>	<i>sank-ay o.</i>
	<i>de rang en rang,</i>	<i>from rank to rank,</i>	<i>drank-en ran.</i>

before *e, i*, has the soft sound of *zh*, or *s* in *pleasure*, or *s* in *asure*,

<i>ge, zhay, général,</i>	<i>general,</i>	<i>zhaynayral.</i>
<i>gi, zhee, gigot,</i>	<i>leg of mutton,</i>	<i>zheego.</i>

*g* before *a, o, u*, has the hard sound of *g* in *god* ; a sound nearly similar to that of *k* ; as,

<i>ga, ka, garçon,</i>	<i>boy,</i>	<i>karson.</i> (on, see r. 21.)
<i>go, ko, gorge,</i>	<i>throat,</i>	<i>korzh.</i>
<i>gu, k, guérir,</i>	<i>to cure,</i>	<i>kayreer.</i>

N. B. *gu* form only *one sound*, that of *g* hard, or *k* ; as,

<i>guérir,</i>	<i>to cure,</i>	<i>kayreer.</i>
<i>guerre,</i>	<i>war,</i>	<i>kayrr.</i>
<i>guide,</i>	<i>guide,</i>	<i>keed.</i>

except the following words, in which *gu* have each a distinct sound ;

<i>aiguille,</i>	<i>aiguillon,</i>	<i>ayguiser,</i>	<i>arguer,</i>	<i>ciguë,</i>	<i>aiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguë.</i>
<i>needle,</i>	<i>sting,</i>	<i>to whet,</i>	<i>to argue,</i>	<i>hemlock,</i>	<i>sharp,</i>	<i>ambiguous,</i>	<i>ambiguity.</i>
		<i>pronounced,</i>					
<i>aygueuill,</i>	<i>aygueillon,</i>	<i>aygueesay,</i>	<i>arguay,</i>	<i>seegré,</i>	<i>aygü,</i>	<i>anbeegré,</i>	<i>ambeeguetay.</i>

*gna*, sound *gnya*,  
*gné,* *gnyé,*  
*gni,* *gnyé,*  
*gno,* *gnyo,* } observing to sound the *n* as much as possible through the nose ; as,

<i>campagnard,</i>	<i>countryman,</i>	<i>kanpagnyar.</i>
<i>accompagné,</i>	<i>accompanied,</i>	<i>akonpagnay.</i>
<i>compagnie,</i>	<i>company,</i>	<i>konpagnée.</i>
<i>ignorant,</i>	<i>ignorant,</i>	<i>eegnyoran.</i>

## H

There are *two* sorts of *h* both in french and in english ; the one *aspirate*, which requires an effort of the breath ; as,

<i>héros,</i>	<i>hero,</i>	<i>kayrov.</i>
<i>hasard,</i>	<i>hazard,</i>	<i>kazar.</i>

the other *mute*, which has no sound, and serves only to show the etymology of the word ; as,

<i>honneur,</i>	<i>honour,</i>	<i>onhur.</i> (eu, see r. 12)
<i>histoire,</i>	<i>history,</i>	<i>estivooyr.</i>

N. B. These two sorts of *h* are often embarrassing to the learner ; they are marked in dictionaries, but one should always bear some characteristic mark in writing. The *h* mute that occurs through the subjoined exercises will be preceded by an apogrophe.

*ch*, pronounced *sh* ; as,

<i>chat,</i>	<i>cat,</i>	<i>sha.</i> (see c.)
<i>chose,</i>	<i>thing,</i>	<i>shox.</i>

*ph*, pronounced *f* ; as

<i>phrase,</i>	<i>sentence,</i>	<i>fraz.</i>
<i>philosophe,</i>	<i>philosopher,</i>	<i>feelosof.</i>

*rh*, sounded *r* ; as,

<i>rhétorique,</i>	<i>rhetoric,</i>	<i>raytoreeck.</i>
<i>rhume,</i>	<i>cold,</i>	<i>rhugm.</i> (u, see note 2.)

*th*, sounded *t* ; as

<i>thomas,</i>	<i>thomas,</i>	<i>tomaw.</i>
<i>méthode,</i>	<i>method,</i>	<i>maytod.</i>

## J

*j*, pronounced *zh*, or like *s* in *pleasure*, *leisure*, or *z* in *azure*,  
as,

<i>jardin,</i>	<i>garden,</i>	<i>zhardine.</i> (in, s. r. 19.)
<i>jour,</i>	<i>day,</i>	<i>zhoor.</i>

## K

*k* the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>kan,</i>	<i>kan,</i>	<i>kan.</i> (an, see rule 16.)
<i>stockholm,</i>	<i>stockholm,</i>	<i>stokolm.</i>

## L

*l* final is generally sounded ; as,

<i>sel,</i>	<i>salt,</i>	<i>sayl.</i>
<i>fil,</i>	<i>thread,</i>	<i>feel.</i> (i, see note 4.)
<i>cheval,</i>	<i>horse,</i>	<i>shval.</i>

except

*baril, chemil, coutil, fusil, femil, fils, gril, outil, percil, sourcil, soûl.*  
*barrel, kennel, ticking, gun, hayloft, son, gridiron, tool, parsley, eyebrow, drunk.*  
pronounced.  
*baree, shnee, kootee, fuses, fnee, fee, gree, ootes, persee, soorsee, soo.*

*l*. In the pronouns *il, ils*, some sound the *l* in all instances ; others sound it only when it is followed by a vowel ; opinions being divided, *l* in *il, ils*, followed by a consonant, may either be pronounced or dropt ; as,

<i>il a,</i>	<i>he has,</i>	<i>eel-a.</i> [n. 4.]
<i>il dit,</i>	<i>he says,</i>	<i>eel dee, or ee dee.</i> (i, s
<i>ils ont,</i>	<i>they have,</i>	<i>eel-z-on, or ee-z-on.</i>
<i>ils dissent,</i>	<i>they say,</i>	<i>eel deez, or ee deez.</i>

In conversation *l* is not sounded in

<i>quelque,</i>	<i>some,</i>	<i>kayk.</i>
<i>quelqu'un,</i>	<i>somebody,</i>	<i>kaykun.</i>

*ll*, in general are both sounded the same as in english ; as,

<i>allégorie,</i>	<i>allegory,</i>	<i>al-laygorée,</i>
<i>illustre,</i>	<i>illustrious,</i>	<i>il-lustr.</i> (u, see note 2.)

But *ll* preceded by *i* in the middle, and at the end of words, must be sounded like *ill* in the word *million*; as,

	<i>meilleur,</i>	better,	<i>meylthur</i>
	<i>bouteille,</i>	bottle,	<i>bootcyll.</i>
	<i>famille,</i>	family,	<i>fameell.</i>
	<i>bataille,</i>	battle,	<i>batawill.</i>
also <i>il</i> in	<i>avril,</i>	april,	<i>avreell.</i>
	<i>péril,</i>	peril,	<i>payreell.</i>
	<i>babil,</i>	prattling,	<i>babeel.</i>
	<i>travail,</i>	labour,	<i>travaull.</i>
	<i>soleil,</i>	sun,	<i>soleyll.</i>
	<i>gentil homme,</i>	nobleman,	<i>zhantœllom.</i>

} and words  
ending in  
ail.

except the following words, in which one *l* only is sounded;

<i>argille,</i>	<i>camomille,</i>	<i>distille,</i>	<i>imbécille,</i>	<i>mille,</i>	<i>ville,</i>	<i>pupille,</i>	<i>tranquille.</i>
clay,	camomile,	distil,	imbecile,	thousand,	town,	pupil,	quiet.
pron. <i>arashœl,</i>	<i>kamomœl,</i>	<i>deestœl,</i>	<i>inobayœl,</i>	<i>mœl,</i>	<i>vœl,</i>	<i>pupœl,</i>	<i>tranœœl.</i>

### M.

*m*, at the end of a word, and in the first syllable of words beginning with *com*, has only the half sound of *n*. See note 5.

<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i> (in, see rule 19.)
<i>nom,</i>	name,	<i>non.</i> (on, see rule 21.)
<i>compliment,</i>	compliment,	<i>compleman.</i> (an, r. 15.)

*m* has no sound in

<i>damner,</i>	to damn,	<i>dawnay;</i> and deriva-
<i>solemnel,</i>	solemn,	<i>solanel.</i>
<i>automne,</i>	autumn,	<i>ôtôn.</i>

[tives.

but *m* has a full sound in

<i>automnal,</i>	autumnal,	<i>ôtomnal.</i>
<i>amnistie,</i>	amnesty,	<i>amneestœe.</i>
<i>calomnie,</i>	slander,	<i>calounœe.</i>
<i>hymne,</i>	hymn,	<i>heemn.</i>
<i>indemniser,</i>	to indemnify,	<i>inedamneesay.</i>
<i>indemnité,</i>	indemnification,	<i>inedamneetay.</i>
<i>agamemnon,</i>	agamemnon,	<i>agamemnon.</i>
<i>somnambule,</i>	sleep-walker,	<i>somnanbul.</i> (s. n. 2.)

*mm*, only one sound; as,

<i>homme,</i>	man,	<i>om.</i>
<i>femme,</i>	woman,	<i>fam.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *imm*; as,

<i>immortel,</i>	immortal,	<i>im-mortayl.</i>
<i>immense,</i>	immense,	<i>im-manss.</i>

### N.

What has been said of *m* may be applied to *n*.

*n*, at the end of a word, or in the first syllable of words beginning with *con*, has only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>
<i>vin,</i>	wine,	<i>vine.</i>
<i>condition,</i>	condition,	<i>condœœcon.</i> (on, r. 21.)

} (in, s. r. 19.)



*nn*, only one sounded.

<i>année,</i>	year,	<i>anaye.</i>
<i>connaître,</i>	to know,	<i>conaytr.</i>

except the following words, in which *nn* are both sounded ;

<i>annotation,</i>	annotation,	<i>an-notasseon.</i> [tives.
<i>annuel,</i>	annual,	<i>an-neul</i> ; and deriva-
<i>annuler,</i>	to annul,	<i>an-nulay.</i>
<i>inné.</i>	innate,	<i>in-nay.</i> [tives.
<i>innover,</i>	to innovate,	<i>in-novay</i> ; and deriva-

## P

*p* final is not sounded, even when it is followed by a vowel ;  
as,

<i>un loup,</i>	a wolf,	<i>un loo.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>ce drap est bon,</i>	this cloth is good,	<i>sdra aye bon</i>
except in <i>cap,</i>	cap,	<i>cap.</i>
<i>cep,</i>	stock of a vine,	<i>sayp.</i>

*p* in *trop* and *beaucoup*, joined to a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded ; as,

<i>trop entêté,</i>	too obstinate,	<i>tro-p-anlaytay.</i>
<i>beaucoup étudié,</i>	much studied,	<i>bokoo-p-aytude say.</i>

followed by a word beginning with a consonant, *p* has no sound ; as,

<i>trop stupide,</i>	too stupid,	<i>tro stupeed.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>beaucoup d'affaires,</i>	much business,	<i>bokoo daffayr.</i>

*p* is sounded in

<i>baptismal,</i>	<i>sceptique,</i>	<i>septembre,</i>	<i>septentrion,</i>	<i>accepter,</i>	<i>excepter,</i>	<i>dempter.</i>
<i>baptismal,</i>	<i>sceptick,</i>	<i>september,</i>	<i>north,</i>	to accept, to except, to subdue.		
pron. <i>baptesmal,</i>	<i>sayptesek,</i>	<i>sayptanbr,</i>	<i>sayptantrisson,</i>	<i>aksayplay,</i>	<i>eksayplay,</i>	<i>demptay.</i>

but *p* is not sounded in

<i>baptême,</i>	<i>compte,</i>	<i>exempt,</i>	<i>prompt,</i>	<i>manuscript,</i>	<i>symptôme,</i>	<i>sept,</i>	<i>sculpteur,</i>	<i>temps.</i>
baptism,	account,	exempt,	quick,	manuscript,	symptom,	seven,	sculptor,	time
pronounced.								
<i>balaym,</i>	<i>cont,</i>	<i>exam,</i>	<i>pron,</i>	<i>manuscree,</i>	<i>sintém,</i>	<i>sayt,</i>	<i>skulter,</i>	<i>ten.</i>

*pp*, one only sounded ;

<i>apparence,</i>	appearance,	<i>aparanss.</i>
<i>appartenir,</i>	to belong,	<i>aparineer.</i>

*ph*, sounded *f* ; as,

<i>sphère,</i>	sphere,	<i>sfayr.</i>
<i>philosophie,</i>	philosophy,	<i>feeslozofee</i>

## Q

*q* final is found only in *coq* and *cinq* ;

*q* is sounded, and has the sound of *k* in

<i>coq,</i>	cock,	<i>cok.</i>
<i>coq à l'âne,</i>	idle tale,	<i>cok a lawn.</i>

but it is not sounded in

<i>coq d'inde,</i>	turkey-cock,	<i>co dynd.</i> (in, s. r. 19.)
--------------------	--------------	---------------------------------

*q* in *cing* substantive, is sounded *k* ; as

<i>un cing de pique,</i>	a five of spades,	<i>un synk dpeeck.</i>
<i>à cing pour cent,</i>	at five per cent,	<i>a synk poor san.</i>
<i>trois et deux font cing.</i>	three and two are five,	<i>troa-z-ay dugh fon synk.</i>

in *cing*, prefixed to a noun, and pronounced at the same breath with it, *q* is sounded if the noun begins with a vowel or *h* mute ; as,

<i>cing hommes,</i>	five men,	<i>synk om. (in, s. rule 19.)</i>
<i>vingt cing écus,</i>	twenty-five crowns,	<i>vyngt synk aykù.</i>

if the noun to which *cing* is prefixed, begins with a consonant, *q* is not sounded ; as,

<i>cing garçons,</i>	five boys,	<i>sine karson. } (in, s. rule 19.)</i>
<i>cing filles,</i>	five girls,	

*qu* has only one sound, that of *k* ; as,

<i>qui,</i>	who,	<i>kee. (i, see note 4.)</i>
<i>quatre,</i>	four,	<i>katr.</i>
<i>qualité,</i>	quality,	<i>kaleetay.</i>
<i>marquis,</i>	marquis,	<i>markee.</i>

except the following words, in which *qu* are pronounced *kw* ; as in english :

<i>aquatique, équateur, quadrature, quadruple, quadrupède, quadragenaire, quarto.</i>	
<i>aquatic, equator, quadruple, quadruped, forty years old, quarto.</i>	
<i>pronounced.</i>	
<i>akwateek, aykwater, kwadratur, kwadruple, kwadrupayd, kwadrashaynayr, kwarte</i>	

## R

*r* is sounded at the end of *all words* ; as,

<i>car,</i>	for, because,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>pour,</i>	for,	<i>poor.</i>
<i>parvenir,</i>	to arrive,	<i>parvneer.</i>

except the words ending in *er* or *ier*, for more than one syllable, in which the *r* has no sound, but it gives to *e* the sound of *é* short, i. e. *ay* ; as,

<i>aimer,</i>	to love,	<i>aymay.</i>
<i>écolier,</i>	scholar,	<i>aykoleeay.</i>
<i>and in</i>		
<i>monsieur,</i>	sir,	<i>moseeugh.</i>

*r* is not sounded in *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, joined to a noun beginning with a consonant ; as,

<i>notre maison,</i>	our house,	<i>not mayzon. (on, r. 21.)</i>
<i>votre chapeau,</i>	your hat,	<i>vot shapo.</i>
<i>quatre livres,</i>	four livres,	<i>kat leevr.</i>

but *r* is sounded when *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, are joined to a noun beginning with a vowel ; as,

<i>notre ami,</i>	our friend,	<i>notr-amee.</i>
<i>votre honneur,</i>	your honour,	<i>votr-onhur. (eu, see r. 12.)</i>
<i>quatre écus,</i>	four crowns,	<i>katr-aukù.</i>
<i>and in</i>		
<i>notre père,</i>	our father,	<i>notr-payr, lord's prayer</i>
<i>notre dame,</i>	our lady,	<i>notr-dam, virgin mary.</i>

*r* is always sounded in

<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>ours,</i>	<i>knowtr.</i>
<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>yours,</i>	<i>lowtr.</i>

*rr*, only one is sounded ; as,

<i>arriver,</i>	<i>to arrive,</i>	<i>areevay.</i>
<i>arroser,</i>	<i>to water,</i>	<i>arozay.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *irr* ; as,

<i>irrégulier,</i>	<i>irregular,</i>	<i>ir-rayguleeay.</i>
<i>irréprochable,</i>	<i>irreproachable,</i>	<i>ir-rayproshabl.</i>

## S

This letter has *two* sounds common to both languages, the first *hard* or *aspirate*, like *c* soft ; as,

<i>somme,</i>	<i>sum,</i>	<i>sum.</i>
---------------	-------------	-------------

the other *soft* or *liquid* ; like *s* ; as,

<i>rose,</i>	<i>rose,</i>	<i>roze.</i>
--------------	--------------	--------------

*s*, at the beginning of a word, or in the body of a word, when it is preceded or followed by a *consonant*, is always pronounced *hard* or *aspirate* ; as,

<i>salut,</i>	<i>safety,</i>	<i>salu. (u, see note 2.)</i>
<i>souper,</i>	<i>supper,</i>	<i>soopay.</i>
<i>personne,</i>	<i>nobody,</i>	<i>payrson.</i>

*s*, between *two vowels*, in the *body* of a word, or at the *end* of a word, which is to be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, has the sound of *s* ; as,

<i>raison,</i>	<i>reason,</i>	<i>rayzon. (on, see rule 21.)</i>
<i>plaisir,</i>	<i>pleasure,</i>	<i>playzeer.</i>
<i>trois heures,</i>	<i>three hours,</i>	<i>troa-z-hur. 16.)</i>
<i>mes enfants,</i>	<i>my children,</i>	<i>may-z-anfan. (an, rule</i>

in other instances, *s* *final* has no sound ; but renders the syllable *long* ;

<i>trouvai tu ?</i>	<i>didst thou find ?</i>	<i>troovaw tu ? (u, see n. 2.)</i>
<i>tes amis,</i>	<i>thy friends,</i>	<i>taye-z-amee.</i>
<i>revenus,</i>	<i>returned,</i>	<i>rayvnu. (see note 2.)</i>

except at the end of *greek* and *latin* names which have been adopted in the french language ; as,

<i>pâris,</i>	<i>paris, the trojan,</i>	<i>pawreess.</i>
<i>vénus,</i>	<i>venus,</i>	<i>vaynus.</i>
<i>mars,</i>	<i>mars,</i>	<i>mars</i>

also in

<i>as,</i>	<i>ace,</i>	<i>ass.</i>
<i>vis,</i>	<i>screw,</i>	<i>veess.</i>
<i>lis,</i>	<i>lily,</i>	<i>less.</i>
<i>aloës,</i>	<i>aloes,</i>	<i>aloays.</i>

but not in

<i>mars,</i>	<i>march,</i>	<i>mar.</i>
<i>fleur de lis,</i>	<i>flower de luce,</i>	<i>fluhr dlee.</i>

*ss* have only one sound, but always *aspirate* ; as,

<i>assurer,</i>	to assure,	<i>asuray.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>ressentir,</i>	to resent,	<i>rsanleer.</i>

*sc* before *e, i*, have only one sound, that of *s aspirate* ; as,

<i>sceptique,</i>	sceptick,	<i>saypleeck.</i>
<i>science,</i>	science,	<i>seeanss.</i>

*sc* before *a, o, u, l, r*, have the sound of *sk* ; as,

<i>scandale,</i>	scandal,	<i>skandal.</i>
<i>gascon,</i>	gascon,	<i>kaskon.</i>
<i>scorbut,</i>	scurvy,	<i>skorbu.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>sculpteur,</i>	sculptor,	<i>skulleur.</i>
<i>esclave,</i>	slave,	<i>aysklav.</i>
<i>scrupule,</i>	scruple,	<i>skrupul.</i> (u, see note 2.)

## T

*t* has two sounds, both found in *satiety*, pronounced *saciety*.

*t* at the beginning of words has the same sound in french as in english,

<i>table,</i>	table,	<i>tabl.</i>
<i>timidité,</i>	timidity,	<i>teemacdeetay.</i>

in the body of a word *t* followed by *i*, has generally the sound of *c* ;

<i>patience,</i>	patience,	<i>pawceeanss.</i>
<i>action,</i>	action,	<i>akcecon.</i>

except the following words, in which *t* retains its own sound ;

<i>bastion, question, partie, matière,</i>	<i>étions, étiez, sortions, sorties</i>	<i>entire.</i>
<i>bastion, question, part, matter,</i>	<i>were, were, went out, went out,</i>	<i>entire.</i>
pronounce,		
<i>basticon, kaystecon, partes, mateeayr, aytsecon, ayteeaye, sortecon, sorteeaye, anteamy.</i>		
<i>entièrement, chrétien, chrétienté, soutien, entretien, il retient.</i>		
<i>entirely, christian, christendom, support, maintenance</i>	<i>he retains.</i>	
pronounce,		
<i>anteeyrman, crayteeeyen, krayteeantay, sooteeyen, antrayteeeyen, il rayteeeyen.</i>		

and the words ending in *tié*, and *tier* ; as,

<i>amitié,</i>	friendship,	<i>ameetceay.</i>
<i>châtier,</i>	to chastise,	<i>shawteeay.</i>

*t final* is not sounded ; as,

<i>tout,</i>	all,	<i>too.</i>
<i>il est,</i>	it is,	<i>eel aye.</i>
<i>fait,</i>	done,	<i>fay.</i>

except in

<i>est, ouest,</i>	east, west,	<i>ayst, west.</i>
<i>lest, dot,</i>	ballast, dower,	<i>layst, dot.</i>
<i>brut, correct,</i>	rough, correct,	<i>brut, corrayct.</i>
<i>un fat, un sot,</i>	a fop, a fool,	<i>un fat, un sot.</i>
<i>pact, exact,</i>	pact, exact,	<i>pact, egzact.</i>

and when it ends a word which must be pronounced as

the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel* ;  
as,

<i>est-elle ?</i>	is she?	<i>aye-t-ell ?</i>	rule.)
<i>tout à fait,</i>	quite,	<i>too-t-afay.</i>	(see general

but never in

<i>et,</i>	and, ( <i>conjunction</i> )	<i>ay.</i>
------------	-----------------------------	------------

*t* is sounded in *sept, huit*, substantives ; as,

<i>un sept,</i>	a seven,	<i>un sayt.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>un huit,</i>	an eight,	<i>un hueet.</i>

in *sept, huit, vingt, cent*, joined to a noun, *t* is sounded when the noun which follows it begins with a *vowel* ; as,

<i>sept enfants,</i>	seven children,	<i>sayt-enfan.</i>
<i>huit amis,</i>	eight friends,	<i>hueet-amee.</i> (s. gen. rul.)

if the noun begins with a *consonant* *t* has no sound ; as,

<i>sept navires,</i>	seven ships,	<i>say nawveer.</i>
<i>cent chevaux,</i>	a hundred horses,	<i>san shvò.</i>

*tt*, only one sounded ; as

<i>attirer,</i>	to attract,	<i>ateeray.</i>
<i>frotter,</i>	to rub,	<i>frotlay.</i>

## V

*v* has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>vanité,</i>	vanity,	<i>vaneetay.</i>
<i>vivacité,</i>	vivacity,	<i>veevaceelay.</i>

## X

<sup>ee</sup>  
This letter has *three* sounds, viz. *gz*, *ks*, and *x*.

In the first syllable of a word, *x* followed by a *vowel*, is sounded *gz* ; as,

<i>exemple,</i>	example,	<i>egzanple.</i>
<i>exister,</i>	to exist,	<i>egzeestay.</i>

followed by a *consonant*, it is sounded *ks* ; as,

<i>excès,</i>	excess,	<i>ayksaye.</i>
<i>exposer,</i>	to expose,	<i>ayksposay.</i>

*x* is also sounded *ks* in

<i>sex, axe,</i>	sex, axle,	<i>sayks, aks.</i>
<i>fluxion,</i>	fluxion,	<i>flukseeon.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>axiome,</i>	axiom,	<i>akweom.</i>
<i>stix, phœnix,</i>	stix, phoenix,	<i>steeks, fayneeks.</i>
<i>index, pollux,</i>	index, pollux,	<i>inedeks, polluks.</i>
<i>alexandre,</i>	alexander,	<i>alayksandr.</i>

*s* has the sound of *s* aspirate in

<i>six, dix,</i>	six, ten,	<i>sees, dees.</i>
<i>dix sept,</i>	seventeen,	<i>deessayt.</i>
<i>soixante,</i>	sixty,	<i>soassant.</i>

*z* final generally has no sound ; it only renders the syllable long ; as,

<i>beaux,</i>	fine,	<i>bô.</i>
<i>lieux,</i>	places,	<i>leugh.</i>

except when it ends a word which is pronounced at the same breath with another word beginning with a vowel, then it is sounded *z* ; as,

<i>six amis,</i>	six friends,	<i>see-z-amee.</i>
<i>beaux yeux,</i>	fine eyes,	<i>bô-z-yeugh. (gen. rule.)</i>

and when it is followed by *ième* or *ièment* ; as,

<i>deuxième,</i>	second,	<i>dughziem.</i>
<i>sizièment,</i>	sixthly,	<i>seezeemman.</i>

## Z

*z* has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>zèle,</i>	zeal,	<i>zayl.</i>
--------------	-------	--------------

*z* final has no sound ; but renders the syllable long,

<i>vous avez,</i>	you have,	<i>voo-z-avaye.</i>
<i>vous parlez,</i>	you speak,	<i>voo parlaye.</i>

except in *chez*, at one's house, followed by a vowel ; as,

<i>chez elle,</i>	at her house,	<i>shay-z-ell.</i>
-------------------	---------------	--------------------

## PROSODY, OR PRONUNCIATION OF SYLLABLES.

By PROSODY is meant the manner of pronouncing each syllable regularly, *i. e.* according to what each syllable taken separately, requires.

It is certain that some diversity must be observed in the pronunciation of syllables, otherwise the language would be perfect monotony ; there are then divers inflexions of the voice, some which raise the tone, some which lower it, and this is what grammarians call *prosodical accent*.\*

## GENERAL RULES.

I. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long ; as, *pensée*, thought ; *armée*, army ; *je tie*, I tie ; *je me fie*, I trust myself ; *joie*, joy ; *j'envoie*, I send ; *je loue*, I praise ; *il joue*, he plays ; *je nue*, I shadow ; *la rue*, the street ; *de la morue*, cod-fish, &c.

But if, in these words, the *e* mute were changed into a masculine *é*, then the penultima would become short ; as, *lier*, to tie ; *louer*, to praise ; *nier*, to shadow.

II. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel, which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short ; as, *créé*, created ; *féal*, trusty ; *action*, action ; *hâir*, to hate ; *doué*, endowed ; *tuer*, to kill.

III. Every syllable ending with any consonant but *s*, *x*, or *z*, is short ; as, *sac*, sack ; *lâc*, lake ; *sâl*, salt ; *éventail*, fan ; *faim*, hunger ; *parfum*, perfume ; *scia*, bosom ; *soin*, care ; *garçon*, boy ; *câp*, cape ; *nectâr*, nectar ; *pôt*, pot ; *sört*, fate, &c.

\* This mark (˘) is intended to show that the syllable is long ; this other (˙) that it is short ; and the doubtful syllables are marked with a grave accent, thus (̀).

IV. Every syllable ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, is long; *des sacs*, sacks; *des sâles*, salts; *des pôts*, pots; *mon fils*, my son; *la paix*, peace; *la voix*, the voice; *le nâs*, the nose.

V. Between two vowels, the last of which is mute, the letter *s* or *x* lengthens the penultima; as, *extâse*, extasy; *diocèse*, diocese; *il pèse*, he weighs; *betise*, foolishness; *franchise*, candour; *rose*, rose; *épouse*, spouse; *ruse*, cunning; *recluse*, recluse; *aise*, glad; *thèse*, thesis; *vase*, vessel.

And it then generally happens, that the antepenultima becomes short; as, *il s'extâse*, he falls into extasy; *pèse*, weighing; *épouse*, married, &c. for the french prosody requires that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

VI. An *s* or an *x* sounded, preceded by a vow *l*, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *jâspe*, jasper; *masque*, mask; *astre*, star; *burlesque*, burlesque; *funeste*, fatal; *piste*, track; *risque*, risk; *pôte*, post; *brûsque*, abrupt; *juste*, just; *barbe*, beard; *barque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm.

But when there are two *rr*, if the two together form only an indivisible sound, the syllable is always long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *barre*, bar; *bisarre*, whimsical; *tonnerre*, thunder; *éclorre*, to be hatching, &c.

VII. When the nasal vowels *am*, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*, are followed by a consonant, which is neither *m* nor *n*, and which begins another syllable, they are long; as, *ainet*, thus; *jâmbé*, leg; *jâmbon*, ham; *crânte*, fear; *trembler*, to tremble; *peindre*, to paint; *joindre*, to join; *tomber*, to fall; *humble*, numble, &c.

If *m* or *n* be doubled, it renders the syllable short to which the first of the doubled consonant belongs; as, *homme*, man; *femme*, woman; *épigramme*, epigram; *qu'il présume*, let him take; *consonne*, consonant; *personne*, person, nobody.

## PARTICULAR RULES.

## A.

*A*, the first letter of the alphabet, is long; as, *un petit â*, a little *a*; *il ne sait ni â ni ã*, he knows neither *a* nor *ã*.

*A*, the preposition, is short; as, *je suis à Paris*, I am at Paris; *j'écris à Rome*, I write to Rome; as is also *a* in the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, to have; *il à de beaux livres*, he has fine books; *il à été*, he has been; *il à parlé*, he has spoken.

At the beginning of a word *a* is long, in *âcre*, sour; *âge*, age; *âme*, soul; *âne*, ass; *âpre*, harsh; *arrhes*, earnest money; *âs*, ace, &c.

These instances excepted, *a* is short, whether it makes a syllable of itself; as in *apôtre*, apostle; or is followed by a double consonant, as in *apprendre*, to learn; or by two consonants which are different, as in *altéré*, altered; *argument*, argument.

At the end of a word *a* is very short in the preterite and future tenses of verbs; as, *il aimâ*, he loved; *il chantâ*, he sung; *il aimera*, he will love; *il chantera*, he will sing. In the articles *là*, the; *mâ*, my; *tâ*, thy; *sâ*, his. In the adverbs *câ*, here; *là*, there; *déjà*, already. A little more stress is laid upon the *a*, in substantives borrowed from foreign languages; as, *safâ*, sofa; *duplicitâ*, duplicate, &c.

**ABE**, always short; as, *arâbe*, arabian; except *astrolâbe*, astrolabe; *crâbe*, crab.

**ABLE**, short in all adjectives; as, *aimâble*, amiable; *capâble*, capable, &c. long in most substantives; as, *câble*, cable; *fâble*, fable; *sâble*, sand; and in these verbs, *m'accâble*, I am overwhelmed; *je m'ensâble*, I stick in the sand; *il hâble*, he brags.

**ABRE**, always long; as, *sâbre*, sabre; *il se câbre*, he rears; also in the masculine termination; *se câbrer*, to rear; *délâbré*, in tatters.

**AC**, always short; as, *sâc*, sack; *lâc*, lake; *trictâc*, back-gammon. See III. Gen. Rule.

**ACE**, long, in *grâce*, favor; *espâce*, space; *lâcer*, to lace; *délâcer*, to unlace.

These words excepted; *ac* is short; as, *glâce*, ice, looking-glass; *préfâce*, preface.

**ACHE**, long, in *lâche*, coward; *tâche*, task; *relâche*, relaxation; *je mâche*, I chew.\* As also in the masculine terminations *mâcher*, to chew; *relâcher*, to relax, &c.

In all other instances **ACHE** is short; as, *tâche*, a spot; *moustâche*, whisker; *vâche*, cow; *il se câche*, he conceals himself; *il arrâche*, he pulls out, &c.

**ACLE**, long, in *il râcle*, he scrapes; *il débâcle*, the ice is breaking; these two words excepted, **ACLE** is doubtful; as, *orâcle*, oracle; *mirâcle*, miracle; *obstâcle*, obstacle.

\* Formerly written *lasche*, *tasche*, with a mute *s*, to show that they are long. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, and it should not be omitted over these words, as the pronunciation of a word sometimes alters its meaning.

ACRE, long, in *âcre*, tart; but short in all other words; as, *diâcre*, deacon; *fiâcre*, hackney-coach; *âcre*, an acre; *sâcre du roi*, the king's coronation.

ADE, always short; as, *sérénade*, serenade; *cascâde*, cascade; *fâde*, tasteless; *il persuade*, he persuades; *il s'évade*, he makes his escape.

ADRE, short in *lâdre*, leprous; but long in *câdre*, frame; *escâdre*, squadron; even when the word ends with *e* mascul. as, *madré*, speckled; *encâdrer*, to frame.

AFE, APHE, always short; as, *carâfe*, decanter; *épitâphe*, epitaph; *agrâffe*, clasp.

AFRE, AFFRE, long, in *âfre*, fright; *bâfre*, gluttony; short in all other instances; as, *balâfre*, gash; *sâfre*, ravenous.

AFLE, long; as, *râfle*, a royal pair at dice; *f'érâfle*, I scratch; and the same quantity is preserved when *e* final is short; as, *râfler*, to sweep away; *érâfler*, to scratch slightly.

AGE, long in the word *âge*, age; but so short in all the rest that we dwell a little upon the penultima; *partâge*, division; *avântâge*, advantage, &c.

AGNE, always short, except in the verb *gâgner*, to gain; *je gâgne*, I gain.

AGUE, always short, *bâgue*, ring; *dâgue*, dagger; *vâgue*, wave, vague.

AI, a false diphthong, which produces only a simple sound. When it has the sound of *e* long, it is doubtful; as, *vrâs*, true; *essâi*, essay; but it is short when the sound approaches to that of *é* short; as, *j'ai*, I have; *je chantâi*, I sang.

AIE, always long; as, *hâie*, hedge; *plâie*, wound; *vrâie*, true. See I. Gen. Rule.

ATE, short; as, *vous âyez*, you may have; *vous payez*, you pay; *vous bégâyez*, you stammer. See II. General Rule.

The reason of this difference between AIE and ATE is, that AIE makes only one syllable, and that *y*, which is equivalent to *si*, dividing the word into two syllables, these words are pronounced as if they were spelt *ai-ies*, *pai-ies*, *bégai-ies*, the first syllable of which is pronounced like *é* short. (See *ai*, compound vowel.)

AIGNE, always short; as, *chatâigne*, chestnut; *je dàigne*, I disdain; *il se bâigne*, he is bathing; *on la saigne*, they are bleeding him.

AIGRE, always short; as, *âigre*, tart; *maigre*, lean; *vinâigre*, vinegar, &c.

AII. General Rule. When a word ends with *l* liquid, the syllable is short; as, *éventâil*, fan; *gouvernâil*, rudder; the *a* being the only vowel which is heard in the penultima; and the *i* serving only to soften the sound of the following consonant. This is also the case in the three following paragraphs.

AILLE, short in *medâille*, medal; and in the following verbs; *je détaille*, I retail; *fémâille*, I enamel; *je travaïlle*, I work; but it is long in all other words; as, *je râille*, I jeer; *il bâille*, he yawns; *il brâille*, he brawls; *il rimâille*, he makes poor verses.

AILLET, AILLIR, short; as, *mâillet*, mallet; *pâillet*, pale coloured; *jâillir*, to spout; *assâillir*, to assault.

AILLON, short in *medâillon*, medallion; *batâillon*, battalion; *nous émâillons*, we enamel; *détaillons*, let us detail; *travaillons*, let us work. These words excepted, AILLON is long; as, *hâillon*, tattered clothes; *bâillon*, gag; *nous tâillons*, we cut, &c.

AIM, AIM. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AIME. This termination is found only in the verb *aimer*, to love; which is short, as, *j'aime*, I love; *tu aimes*, thou lovest, &c.

AINE, long, in *hâine*, hatred; *chaîne*, chain; *gâine*, sheath; *je traîne*, I draw, and their derivatives. These instances excepted, AINE is short; as, *capitâine*, captain; *fontâine*, fountain; *semaine*, week; *laine*, wool.

AIR, AIRE. The first is doubtful in the singular; as, *l'air*, the air; *chair*, flesh, *éclair*, lightning, &c. The second is long; as, *une pâire*, a pair; *la chaire*, the pulpit.

AIS, AIX, AISE, AISSE, all long; as, *palâis*, palace; *j'avâis*, I had; *j'étais*, I was; *un français*, a frenchman; *paix*, peace; *fournaïse*, furnace; *câisse*, chest.

AIT, AITE, both short; as, *lait*, milk; *attrâit*, charm; *retrâite*, retreat, &c. except *il plaît*, he pleases; *il naît*, it springs; *il repâit*, he feeds; *le faîte*, the summit.

AITRE, always long; *trâitre*, traitor; *maître*, master; and other terminations of the same sound, though spelt differently; as, *parâitre*, or *paraître*, to appear, &c.

ALE, ALLE, always short; as, *cigâle*, cicada; *scandâle*, scandal; *une mâlle*, a trunk; *une balle*, a ball; except *hâle*, sunburning; *pâle*, pale; *un mâle*, a male; *un râle*, a rill; and the derivatives of these words, though the final syllable be masculine; as, *hâlé*, parched by the sun; *râler*, to rattle; *pâler*, to grow pale; *pâleur*, paleness.

AM, AN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AME, always short; as, *dâme*, lady; *râme*, oar, ream, &c. except in the following words; *âme*, soul; *infâme*, infamous; *blâme*, blame; *il se pâme*, he swoons; *un brâme*, a bramin; and in all the preterite tenses of verbs; as, *nous aimâmes*, we loved; *nous chantâmes*, we sang; *nous parlâmes*, we spoke; *nous jouâmes*, we played, &c.



**ANE, ANNE,** always short; as, *cabine*, cottage; *organe*, organ, &c. except *âne*, ass; *crâne*, skull; *les manes*, the manes; *de la manne*, manna; *une manne*, a basket.

**ANT.** See III. General Rule. N. B. In the word *comptant* there is a difference; when a participle, it is long; as, *je me suis trompé en comptant l'argent*, I made a mistake in counting the money; and it is short when used as a substantive or adverb; as, *il a du comptant*, he has ready money; *payer comptant*, to pay in ready money.

**AP,** always short; as, *câp*, cape. See III. General Rule.

**APE, APPÉ,** always short; *pape*, pope; *trappe*, trap; *grappe*, a bunch; *on frappe*, somebody knocks; except *rape*, a rasp; and *rape*, to rasp, in which it is long.

**APRE;** *câpre*, caper; *âpre*, tart; the only two words of this termination, are long.

**AQUE,** always short, except *pâques*, easter; and *Jâques*, James.

**AR,** always short, as *câr*, for; *nectâr*, nectar. See III. General Rule.

**ARRE.** General Rule. Every syllable which finishes with *r*, and is followed by another syllable beginning with a consonant, is short; as, *barbe*, beard; *barque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm; *ordre*, order, &c.

**ARE,** long; as *barbare*, barbarous; *je prépare*, I prepare; but when the last syllable is not mute, **ARE** is short; as, *égaré*, strayed; *préparant*, preparing; *barbârie*, barbarary.

**ARRE.** General Rule. Whatever vowel precedes two *rr*, if the two together form only one sound, the syllable is long; as *arrêt*, arrest; *barre*, bar; *tonnerre*, thunder, &c.

**ARI, ARIE,** always short; as, *mari*, husband; *pâri*, wager; *Mârie*, Mary; *barbârie*, barbarary; except *hourvari*, uproar; *mârti*, sorry; *équarrî*, squared.

**AS,** commonly long, as there are few words terminated in this manner in which the *s* is not sounded very open, whether the *s* be pronounced; as in *Pallâs*, Pallas; *âs*, ace; or whether it be mute, as in *tâs*, heap; *tu âs*, thou hast; *tu aimâs*, thou lovedst.

**ASE,** always long; as, *bâse*, basis; *Pagâse*, Pagasus; *emphâse*, emphasis; *extâse*, extasy; *râser*, to shave; *jâser*, to chatter. See V. General Rule.

**ASSE,** General Rule. An *s* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *mâsque*, mask. See VI. General Rule.

**ASSÉ,** short; except in the substantives *bâsse*, base; *câsse*, cassia; *clâsse*, class; *échâsse*, stilt; *pâsse*, pass; *nâsse*, bow-net; *tâsse*, cup; *châsse*, shrine; *mâsse*, mass; in the feminine adjectives *bâsse*, low, base; *grâsse*, fat; *lâsse*, weary; and in the following verbs; *il amâsse*, he collects; *il enchâsse*, he incases; *il casse*, he breaks; *il passe*, he passes; *il compâsse*, he measures; with their compounds.

All these words retain their quantity, even when the termination, instead of being mute, is masculine; as *châssie*, sash; *câsser*, to break; *pâsser*, to pass.

Add to these the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of verbs, terminated in *âsse*, *âsses*, *âssent*, in the subjunctive; as, *j'aimâsse*, I might love; *tu aimâsses*, thou mightest love; *ils aimâssent*, they might love.

**AT,** long in the substantives *bât*, a pack-saddle; *mât*, mast; *appât*, bait; *degât*, havock; and in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive *il aimât*, he might love; *il chanlât*, he might sing; *il parlât*, he might speak, &c.\*

In all other substantives, in adjectives, and in the present of the indicative, **AT** is short; as, *avocat*, counsellor; *éclât*, splendour; *plât*, flat, a dish; *on se bût*, people fight.

**ATE,** always short, except in *hâte*, haste; *pâte*, dough; *il gâte*, he spoils; *il mâte*, he masts; *il démâte*, he dismasts; and in the second person plural of the preterite tenses of verbs, terminated in *âtes*; as, *vous aimâtes*, you loved; *vous parlâtes*, you spoke.

**ATRE,** short in *quâtre*, four; and in *bâtre*, to beat, with its derivatives *abâtre*, to pull down; *combâtre*, to fight, &c.

These instances excepted, **ATRE** is always long; as, *idolâtre*, idolatrous; *théâtre*, theatre; *opiniâtre*, obstinate; *emplâtre*, plaster, &c.

**AU,** compound vowel. When this vowel forms a syllable which is followed by a mute termination, it is long; as, *auge*, through; *autre*, other; *âme*, ell; *pâume*, tennis.

It is also long when in the last syllable of a word it is followed by a consonant; as, *haut*, high; *chaud*, hot; *chaus*, lime; *faux*, false; except *Pâul*, Paul.

But **AU** is doubtful when it precedes a masculine syllable; as, *aubade*, serenade; *audace*, audacity; *automne*, autumn; *augmenter*, to increase; *auteur*, author; and when it is final; as, *joyâu*, jewel; *coteâu*, hillock; *couteâu*, knife.

**AVE,** short in *râve*, radish; *cave*, cellar; *on pave*, they are paving; but oftener long; as, *entrâve*, shackles; *grâve*, grave, serious.

But when *v* instead of being followed by *e* mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, the preceding syllable is short; as, *grâvier*, gravel; *aggrâver*, to aggravate.

\* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, to show that they are long; as, *bâst*, mast, &c. *aimast*, *vous aimastes*, &c. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, *bât*, *mât*, &c.

**BRAVE** preceding its substantive is short ; as, *un brave homme*, a well-behaved man ; but long when it comes after it ; as, *un homme brave*, a brave or courageous man.

**AVRE**, always long ; as, *havre*, harbour ; *cadavre*, corpse.

**AX**, **AXE**, always short ; as, *Ajâx*, Ajax ; *thorâx*, thorax ; *borâx*, borax ; *âxe*, axle ; *tâxe*, tax ; *parallâxe*, parallax.

## E

The French distinguish three sorts of *e*, which express different sounds : the difference of which is perceived in *fermeté*, firmness ; *honnêteté*, honesty.

The first *e* in each of these words, is long, the second mute, and the third short.

*E* mute is also called feminine ; the others are called masculine.

There is no accent over *e* mute, the short requires an accute accent, and the long a grave, or a circumflex, but it is found sometimes without any of these signs, as appears in the first syllable of the word *fermeté*.

With respect to *e* mute, it is sufficient to know that it never begins a word, and that it is seldom found in several consecutive syllables ; for if it is found in some compound words, such as *revenir*, to return ; *redevenir*, to become again ; *entretenir*, to entertain ; at least this never happens at the end of a word ; thus the *e* which is mute or feminine in the penultima of the infinitive of verbs ; as, *appeler*, to call ; *peser*, to weigh ; *mener*, to lead ; *devoir*, to owe ; *concevoir*, to conceive, becomes masculine, or is changed into the diphthong *oi*, in the tenses which end with *e* mute ; *j'appèle*, I call ; *il pèse*, he weighs ; *il mène*, he leads ; *ils doivent*, they owe ; *ils conçoivent*, &c.

For the same reason, though we make *e* mute in *chapelain*, chaplain ; *chandelier*, candlestick ; *celui-ci*, this ; *j'aime*, I love ; *je chante*, I sing ; we sound it in *chapelle*, chapel ; *chandelle*, candle ; *celle*, that ; *aimé-je*, do I love ; *chanté-je*, do I sing ?

For such is the genius of the french language, that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

**EELE**, **EBRE**, **EC**, **ECE**, always short ; as, *hiëble*, wallwort ; *funèbre*, mournful ; *béc*, bill ; *niece*, niece.

**ECHÉ**, long and very open in *bêche*, spade ; *lèche*, thin slice ; *grêche*, noisy ; *pêche*, fishing ; *pêche*, peach ; *il empêche*, he prevents ; *il dépêche*, he dispatches ; *il pêche*, he preaches. Short in *calèche*, calash ; *flèche*, arrow ; *penêche*, match ; *crèche*, crib ; *sèche*, dry, the cuttle-fish ; *brèche*, breach ; *on pêche*, *poisson* sin.

**ECLE**, **ECT**, **ECTE**, **DRE**, **EDE**, **EDER**, all short ; as *siècle*, age ; *respect*, respect ; *insecte*, insect ; *cèdre*, cedar ; *remède*, remedy ; *céder*, to yield ; *posséder*, to possess, &c.

**E'E**. General Rule. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long ; as, *pensée*, thought ; *armée*, army ; *je lie*, I tie. See I. General Rule.

**E'E'**. General Rule. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short ; as, *créé*, created ; *féal*, trusty ; *action*, action ; *hâir*, to hate ; *tuer*, to kill, &c. See II. General Rule.

**EF**, **EFTE** ; the first is short ; as, *chêf*, chief ; *brêf*, brief, short. The second long ; as, *grêffe*, graft, the rolls ; *je grêffe*, I graft.

**EFFLE**, long, in *nêfle*, medlar ; short in *trêfle*, trefoil, club.

**EGE**, **EGLE**. The first long ; as, *sacrilège*, sacrilegious ; *collège*, college ; *siège*, seat, siege. The other short ; as, *règle*, rule ; *séigle*, rye, &c.

**EGNE**, **EIGNE**. The first is doubtful ; as, *règne*, reign ; *duègne*, duenna. The other is short ; as, *pègne*, comb ; *ensigne*, sign ; *qu'il seigne*, let him pretend.

**EGRE**, **EGUE**, short ; as, *négre*, negro ; *intègre*, upright ; *bègue*, a stammerer ; *col-lègue*, colleague ; *il allègue*, he alleges, &c.

**EIL**, **EILLE**, short ; as, *soltèil*, sun ; *sommèil*, sleep ; *abbèille*, bee ; *boutèille*, bottle ; the only exceptions are, *vièille*, old woman ; *vièillard*, old man ; *vièillesse*, old age.

**EIN**, **EINT**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**EINE**, short ; as, *vèine*, vein ; *pèine*, pain ; the only exception is *vèine*, queen.

**EINTE**, always long ; as, *attèinte*, stroke ; *fèinte*, feint.

**EL**, always short ; as, *sèl*, salt ; *cruèl*, cruel, &c. See III. General Rule.

**ELE**, **ELLE**, long in *zèle*, zeal ; *poêle*, frying pan ; *frêle*, frail ; *pêle mêle*, confusedly ; *grêle*, hail ; *il se fêle*, it cracks ; *la brèbis bêle*, the sheep bleats.

These instances excepted, **ELE**, **ELLE**, is always short ; as, *modèle*, model ; *fidèle*, faithful ; *rébèlle*, rebellious ; *mortèlle*, mortal, &c.

**EM**, **EN**. See III. and VII. General Rules ; and sound the final consonant in *iêm*, item ; *Béthléêm*, Bethlehem ; *amèn*, amen ; *himèn*, hymen ; *examèn*, examination.

**EME**, doubtful in *crème*, cream ; short in *je sème*, I sow ; *il sème*, he sows ; and long in all other words ; as, *baptême*, baptism ; *diadème*, diadem ; *même*, even, &c.

**ENE**, long in *chêne*, oak ; *cène*, the lord's supper ; *scène*, scene ; *gène*, rack ; *alêne*, awl ; *rène*, rein ; *frêne*, ash-tree ; *arène*, area ; *pène*, the bolt of a lock ; and in the proper names, *Athènes*, Athens ; *Diogènes*, Diogenes ; *Mécène*, Mécénas, &c. but short in

*phénomène*, phenomenon; *ébène*, ebony; *étrenne*, new year's gift; *qu'il prenne*, let him take; *qu'il vienne*, let him come; and in all words in which the consonant is doubled.

*EPE*, *EPRE*, always long; as, *guêpe*, wasp; *crêpe*, crape; *vêpres*, vespers; except *lépre*, leprosy.

*EPTÉ*, *EPTRE*, *ECTRE*, always short; as, *précépte*, precept; *il accepte*, he accepts; *scéptre*, sceptre; *épectre*, spectre.

*EQUE*, *ECQUE*, always short; as, *grecque*, greek; *bibliothèque*, library; *obsèques*, funeral, &c. except *évêque*, bishop; *archevêque*, archbishop.

*ER*, is short in *Jupitér*, Jupiter; *Lucifér*, Lucifer; *éthér*, æther; *chér*, dear; *cancér*, cancer; *patér*, the lord's prayer; *magistér*, a country schoolmaster; *fratér*, a surgeon's apprentice; and long in *fer*, iron; *enfer* hell; *léger*, light; *mer*, sea; *amer*, bitter; *hiver*, winter; but it is doubtful in the infinitive of verbs when the *r* is sounded with the following vowel, as is always the case in repeating verses.

*ERBE*, *ERCE*, *ERSE*, *ERCHE*, *ERCLE*, *ERDE*, *ERDRE*, all short. See the General Rule under *ARBE*.

*ERD*, *ERT*, doubtful; as, *concert*, concert; *ouvert*, open; *désert*, desert, wilderness; *il perd*, he loses; *le verd*, green, &c.

*ERE*, doubtful; as, *chimère*, chimera; *père*, father; *sincère*, sincere; *il espère*, he hopes, &c. but long in the third person plural of verbs; as, *ils allèrent*, they went; *ils parlèrent*, they spoke; *ils chantèrent*, they sang, &c.

*ERGE*, *ERGUE*, *ERLE*, *ERME*, *ERNE*, *ERPE*, all short. See *ARBE*, General Rule.

*ERR*, always long when agreeably to the general rule, the two *rr* form only one indivisible sound; as in *guerre*, war; *tonnerre*, thunder; *nous verrons*, we shall see; short when the two *rr* are pronounced separately; as, *erreur*, error; *terreur*, terror, &c.

*ERTE*, *ERTRE*, *ERVE*, all short. See *ARBE*. General Rule.

*ESSE*, long in *confesse*, confession; *presse*, press; *comprisse*, compress; *expresse*, express; *cesse*, ceasing; *on s'empresse*, they are eager; *il professe*, he professes. These instances excepted, *ESSE* is short; as, *tendresse*, tenderness; *laxesse*, laxness; *carresse*, caress; *jeunesse*, youth, &c.

*ESQUE*, *ESTRE*, *ESTRE*. See VI. General Rule.

*ET*, long in *arrêt*, a decree; *benêt*, a simpleton; *forêt*, forest; *genêt*, broom; *prêt*, ready; *aprêt*, preparation; *acquêt*, acquisition; *intérêt*, interest; *il est*, he is.\*

These instances excepted, *ET* is short; as, *cadêt*, younger, junior; *bidet*, pony; *ét*, and; *sujet*, subject; *brochét*, pike, &c.

*ETE*, long in *bête*, beast; *fête*, feast; *arbalète*, a cross-bow; *boîte*, box; *tempête*, tempest; *quête*, quest; *conquête*, conquest; *enquête*, inquest; *requête*, request, petition; *arrête*, fish-bone; *crête*, crest, a cockcomb; *tête*, head; in all other instances, *ETE* is short; and the *t* is doubled; as, *tablettes*, shelf, memorandum-book; *houlette*, crook; unless the etymology forbids doubling it, as, *prophète*, prophet; *poète*, poet.

*Honnête* is short when placed before a noun; as, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; it is long when placed after; as, *un homme honnête*, a civil man.

*Vous êtes*, the second person plural of the present tense of *être*, is either long or short, as the poet chooses.

*ETRE*, long in *être*, a being, to be; *salpêtre*, saltpetre; *ancêtre*, ancestor; *fenêtre*, window; *prêtre*, priest; *champêtre*, rural; *hêtre*, beech; *guêtres*, spatterdaashes.

In all other instances *ETRE* is short, and *t* is doubled, unless the etymology prevents it; as, *diamètre*, diameter; *il pénètre*, he penetrates; *lettre*, letter; *mettre*, to put.

*EU*, compound vowel, short in the singular, *fêu*, fire; *bleu*, blue; *jêu*, game, sport; *sêu*, vow; *neveu*, nephew, &c.

*EVE*, long in *trêve*, truce; *la grève*, the sea-shore; *il rêve*, he dreams; and the penultima of the verb *rêver*, remains long in all its tenses; as, *rêver*, to dream; *je rêvais*, I dreamt; but *EVE* is doubtful in *fève*, bean; *brève*, brief, short; *il achève*, he finishes; *il crève*, it bursts; *il se lève*, he rises; and the penultima of these verbs is mute, if it be followed by a masculine syllable; as, *achever*, to finish; *il se levait*, he was rising.

*EUF*, short; as, *veuf*, widower; *neuf*, new; *un œuf*, an egg; *un œuf*, an ox.

*N. B.* The *f* is pronounced in all these words, in the singular, but not in the plural, except in *veufs*, widowers.

*EUIL*, short; as, *seuil*, threshold; *faut-euil*, arm-chair, &c. See III. General Rule.

*EULE*, long in *moule*, grinding stone, mill-stone. This excepted, *EULE* is short; as, *seule*, single, alone; *gueule*, the name given to the mouth of beasts and fishes.

\* All these words, as well as those in the two following paragraphs, were formerly spelt with a mute *e*, which is now suppressed, and supplied by a circumflex, except *he est*, the third person singular of the present tense of *être*, in which *e* is still retained

**UNE**, long in *jeûne*, fasting; and short in *jeûne*, young.

**EUR, EURE**. The first is short in the singular; *odéur*, odour; *péur*, fear; *majéur*, of age; and long in the plural *odéurs*, odours; but the second is doubtful, *i. e.*

If **EURE** ends a word pronounced at the same breath with another word, it is short; as, *la majeure partie*, the major part; *une heure entière*, a whole hour. If there is no word after it, to be pronounced at the same breath with it, it is long; as, *cette fille est majeure*, that girl is of age; *j'attends depuis une heure*, I have been waiting for an hour.

**EURE**, doubtful; *lèvre*, lip; *chèvre*, goat; *lièvre*, hare; *orfevre*, gold or silver-smith.

**UX, UUX**, long; *deux*, two; *précieux*, *précieuse*, precious; *créuser*, to dig, &c.

**EX**, always short; as, *exemple*, example; *extirper*, to extirpate; *sexe*, sex, &c.

## I

An observation which may have already been made, but which will appear more obvious by reading the rules on the three remaining vowels, is, that the number of short syllables is much greater than of long; therefore, in order to abbreviate this treatise, those terminations will be omitted which are short without exception.

**IDRE**, long in *hydre*, written *hydre*, for the sake of the etymology, *hydra*; *cidre*, cider.

**IE**, diphthong, doubtful; as, *miel*, honey; *fiel*, gall; *fier*, proud; *amitié*, friendship; *arrière*, quarry; *poussière*, dust; *mien*, mine; *rien*, thine; *dieu*, god.

**IE**, dissyllable, long; as, *vie*, life; *saisie*, seizure; *il prie*, he begs. See I. General Rule.

**IE**, when a dissyllable, the two syllables are short; as, *lien*, tie; *Parisien*, Parisian; when a diphthong, the syllable is doubtful; as, *le mien*, mine; *rien*, nothing, &c.

**IGE**, doubtful; *tige*, stalk; *prodige*, prodigy; *litige*, litigation; *vestige*, footprint; *je m'oblige*, I bind myself; *il s'afflige*, he afflicts himself.

But **IGE** is short in the tenses of these verbs which do not end with *e* mute, as *s'obliger*, to bind one's self; *affligé*, afflicted.

**ILE**, long in *île*, island; *huile*, oil; *stîle*, stile; *tuile*, tile; *presqu'île*, peninsula.

**IM, IN**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**IME**, long in *abîme*, abyss; *dîme*, tythe; and in the first person plural of the preterite tense of verbs; as, *nous vîmes*, we saw; *nous répondîmes*, we answered.

**ION**, short; as, *action*, action; *passion*, passion. See II. General Rule.

**IRE**, doubtful, empire; *écrire*, to write; *il soupire*, he sighs; long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; *ils punirent*, they punished; *ils firent*, short before a masculine termination, as, *soupirer*, to sigh; *désirer*, to wish, &c.

**ISE**, long; as, *remise*, coach-house; *surprise*, surprise; *j'épuise*, I exhaust; *ils disent*, they say; *qu'ils disent*, let them read.

**ISSE**, always short; as, *saucisse*, sausage; *régisse*, liquorice; except in the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *je fisse*, I might do; *ils punissent*, they might punish, &c.

**IT**, long only in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *il dit*, he might say; *il fit*, he might do; *il punit*, he might punish, &c.\*

**ITE**, long in *benite*, blessed; *gîte*, the seat of a hare; *vite*, quick; and in the second person of the perfect of verbs; as, *vous fîtes*, you did; *vous vîtes*, you saw, &c.

**ITRE**, long in *épître*, epistle; *huître*, oyster; *registre*, register; but if *registre* is spelt with *s*, the *i* is short.

**IVE**, long in the adjective feminine, formed from the masculine in *if*; as, *tardivie*, late; *captive*, captive; *juive*, Jewess, &c.

**IVRE**, long in *vivres*, victuals; short in *vivre*, to live; *un livre*, a book, &c.

## O

**O**, always short when it begins a word; as, *occasion*, occasion; *odéur*, odour, &c. except *os*, bone; *oser*, to dare; *osier*, osier; *ôter*, to take away; *otage*, hostage; as, likewise in *ôte*, host, landlord; though we say *hôtel*, hotel, and *hôtellerie*, an inn.

**OB**, long in *globe*, globe; and *lobe*, lobe; in every other instance **OB** is short; as, *robe*, robe, gown; *il dérobe*, he robs.

**OD**, long in the verb *ôder*, to ramble; *je rôde*, I ramble; short in all other instances; as, *môde*, fashion; *antipode*, antipodes; *période*, period, &c.

\* Formerly written *fit*, *dît*, *punit*, with a mute *e*, now supplied by a circumflex.

**oe**, always short ; as, *éloge*, praise ; *horloge*, clock ; *on dérange*, they derange.  
**oi**, diphthong, doubtful at the end of a word ; as, *moi*, me ; *roi*, king ; *foi*, faith ;  
*emploi*, employment ; short at the beginning ; as, *mousson*, harvest ; *moitié*, half.

**ois**, long ; as, *joie*, joy ; *soie*, silk ; *qu'il voie*, let him see, &c.

**oient**, termination of the third person plural of the imperfect of verbs, is long ; as, *ils avoient*, they had ; *ils chantoient*, they sang, &c. whilst the third person singular of the same tense spelt **oit**, is short ; as, *il avoit*, he had ; *il chantoit*, he sang, &c.

**oin**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**oir**, **oire**, the first is doubtful ; as, *espérer*, hope ; *dévoir*, duty, &c. the second long ; as, *boire*, to drink ; *gloire*, glory ; *mémoire*, memory, &c.

**ois**, always long ; whether it be a diphthong, as in *fois*, time ; *bourgeois*, burgess ; *Danois*, Dane ; *Suédois*, Swede, &c. or whether it be used instead of the compound vowel **ai**, as *j'étais*, or *j'étais*, I was ; *un François*, or *un Français*, a Frenchman, &c.

**oise**, **oisse**, **oitre**, **oivre**, all long ; as, *framboise*, raspberry ; *paroisse*, parish ; *cloître*, cloister ; *poivre*, pepper, &c.

**ort**, short ; as, *il boit*, he drinks ; except *il croît*, he grows ; and when it is used instead of the compound vowel **ai** ; as, *il parait*, or *il paraît*, it appears.

**ole**, always short ; as, *obole*, obole ; *idole*, idol ; *boussole*, sea compass ; except *drôle*, facetious ; *pôle*, pole ; *gôle*, jall ; *môle*, mole, pier ; *rôle*, a list, the part of an actor ; *contrôle*, control ; *enjôler*, to wheedle, to decoy ; *enrôler*, to enlist, and the tenses derived from these verbs ; *il contrôle*, he controls ; *ils enrôlent*, they enlist, &c.

**om**, **on**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**ome**, **onx**, long ; as, *atôme*, atom ; *axiôme*, axiom ; *phantôme*, phantom ; *trône*, throne &c. except *Rôme*, Rome ; and the words in which the consonant is doubled, which follow the general rule ; as, *somme*, sum ; *pomme*, apple ; *consonne*, consonant.

**ons**, always long ; as, *nous aimons*, we love ; *fonds*, land, funds ; *maisons*, houses ; *ponts*, bridges, &c. See IV. General Rule.

**on**, always short ; as, *castor*, beaver ; *bûton*, bittern, a blockhead ; *encor*, yet, still ; *effort*, effort ; but when **on** is followed by *s*, it is long ; as, *hors*, out ; *alors*, then ; *le corps*, the body ; *les trésors*, the treasures. See IV. General Rule.

**ore**, long ; as, *aurôre*, aurora ; *je déplore*, I lament ; but observe that the penultima of the verbs which have only one *r*, and which is long in the present of the indicative ; as, *je décôre*, I decorate ; *il s'évapore*, it evaporates ; becomes short if the termination is masculine ; as, *décôrer*, to decorate ; *évanôré*, evaporated, and that it remains long in tenses in which the *r* is doubled ; as, *il s'évanôrrait*, it would evaporate, &c.

**os**, **oss**, long ; as, *ôse*, bone ; *prôpos*, discourse ; *à prôpos*, timely ; *dose*, dose ; *chôse*, thing ; *il ose*, he dares. See IV. and V. General Rules.

**osse**, long ; as, *grôsse*, big ; *fôsse*, pit ; *il endosse*, he endorses ; even when the final is masculine ; as, *grôsseur*, bigness ; *grôssesse*, pregnancy ; *fôssé*, ditch.

**ot**, long in *impôt*, tax ; *tôt*, soon ; *dépôt*, deposit ; *entrepôt*, store-house ; *supôt*, a subservient agent ; *rôt*, roast meat ; *prévôt*, provost, sheriff.\*

**ote**, long in *hôte*, host, landlord ; *côte*, coast, rib ; *multôte*, exaction of taxes ; *j'ôte*, I take away ; likewise when the final is masculine ; as, *côté*, side ; *ôté*, taken away.†

**otre**. There are only three words of this termination, viz. *apôtre*, apostle ; *notre*, our, ours ; *votre*, your, yours.

As to the first, it is always long ; but the two others are doubtful ; not that their measure is arbitrary, for it depends upon the place which they keep in the sentence.

*Notre* and *Votre* are short, when like an article they are prefixed to a substantive, i. e. when used for *our*, *your* ; and long when they themselves are preceded by an article, and used as pronouns, i. e. when used for *ours*, *yours* ; so we say, *je suis votre serviteur*, I am your servant ; *et moi le vôtre*, I am yours. *C'est-là votre opinion*, *mais la nôtre est que*, &c. that is your opinion, but ours is that, &c. *Les nôtres sont excellents*, *mais les vôtres ne valent rien*, ours are excellent, but yours are good for nothing.

If the final be mute, as in this sentence, *je suis le vôtre*, after which my ear expects nothing more, then the voice wants a support, and not finding it in the final *re*, it takes it in the penultima *vo* ; but in this other, *je suis votre serviteur*, where after *votre* I

\* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, *impost*, *rost*, *suppost*, to show that the syllable is long, that is now supplied by a circumflex.

† Formerly spelt *Acote*, *coste*, and when a syllable was to be pronounced short, the consonant was doubled ; as, *Acotte*, dorse ; *cotte*, petticoat, &c.

necessarily expect a substantive, between which and *votre* there can be no intermission, this substantive is destined to support my voice, and I pass quickly over *votre*.

Perhaps there is not in the french prosody a principle more extensive than this. A doubtful syllable which is made short in the body of the sentence, is made long if it comes at the end.

Sometimes even in conversation as well as in oratory, a long syllable becomes short, by the transposition of the word: for we say, *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un homme brave*, a brave or courageous man; but we say, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; *un brave homme*, a well-behaved man; these instances have already been mentioned, (see E,) but can so important rules be recalled too often?

OUËRE, OUE, long; as, *poûdre*, powder; *moûdre*, to grind;  *résoûdre*, to resolve, &c. *boûe*, dirt; *joûe*, cheek; *il loûe*, he praises, &c. but when *ou* is followed by a masculine, instead of a feminine termination, it is short; as, *poûdré*, powdered; *moûlu*, ground; *roûé*, broken on the wheel; *loûé*, praised, &c.

OUILLE, long in *rouille*, rust; *il déroûille*, he gets off the rust; *il embrouille*, he embroils; *il débrouille*, he unravels; but *ouil* is short when it is followed by a masculine syllable; as, *brouillon*, bad paper or writing; *brouillé*, daubed; *rouillé*, rusty, &c.

OULE, long in *moûle*, mould, muscle; *la foûle*, the crowd; *il foûle*, he presses, he tramples; *il roûle*, he rolls; *il s'écroûle*, it falls down; *il se soûle*, he gets drunk.

OURE, OUËRE, the first is doubtful; as, *bravoûre*, bravery; the second is long; as, *de la boûre*, cow hair; *qu'il coûre*, let him run; but if *ou*, instead of being followed by a mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, then *ou* is short, notwithstanding the general rule under ARE; as, *coûrrier*, messenger; *boûrrade*, thrust, &c. as likewise in the future and in the conditional tenses of verbs spelt with *rr*, in which the two *rr* are sounded separately; as, *je moûrrai*, I shall die; *je coûrrai*, I shall run; *je méloûrrai*, &c.

OUSE, long; as, *époûse*, bride; *qu'elle coûse*, let her sew. See V. General Rule.

OÛSE, long in *je poûsse*, I push; short in all other instances; as, *je toûsse*, I cough; *coûssin*, cushion; *poûssin*, young chick, &c.

OÛT, long in *août*, august; *coût*, cost; *goût*, taste; *moût*, must, new wine.

OÛTE, long in *absoûte*, absolute; *joûte*, tilt; *croûte*, crust; *voûte*, vault; *il coûte*, it costs; *il brouûte*, it grazes; *je goûte*, I taste; *j'ajoute*, I add; but *ou* is generally short, when the syllable which follows it is masculine; as, *ajouter*, to add; *coûté*, cost, &c.

OÛTRE, long in *poutre*, beam; and in *coûtre*, coulter, ploughshare; short in all other instances; as, *loutre*, otter; *oûtre*, en oûtre, besides, &c.

## U

UOUE, long; as, *bûche*, a log of wood; *rûche*, hive; on *débûche*, they dislodge, &c. but *u* is short, if the final is masculine; as, *bûcher*, pile; *débûché*, dislodged, &c.

UE, diphthong, found only in the word *écûelle*, porringer, is short.

UE, dissyllable, always long; as, *vûe*, sight; *tortûe*, tortoise, &c. See I. Gen. Rule.

UGE, doubtful when the final is mute; as, *déluge*, deluge; *refuge*, refuge; short, when the final is masculine; as, *jûger*, to judge; *refûgier*, to take refuge, &c.

UI, diphthong, short before a masculine syllable; as, *bûisson*, bush; *cûisine*, kitchen; *rûisseau*, rivulet, &c.

UIE, long; as, *pluie*, rain; *truie*, sow; *il s'ennuie*, he grows tired. See I. Gen. Rule.

ULE, long in the verb *brûler*, to burn; *je brûle*, I burn; *tu brûles*, thou burnest, &c.

UM, UN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

UMES, long; as, *nous fûmes*, we were; *nous pûmes*, we could; *nous reçûmes*, we received; *nous aperçûmes*, we perceived, &c.

URE, always long; as, *augûre*, omen; *verdûre*, grass; *parjûre*, perjurer, perjury; on *assûre*, they assure; *ils fûrent*, they were; but *u* is short, if the final is masculine; as, *augurer*, to conjecture; *parjurer*, to perjure; *assuré*, assured.

USE, always long; as, *mûse*, muse; *excûse*, excuse; *rûse*, cunning; see V. General Rule; we also say, *rûsé*, cunning; but in the other words in which the final is masculine, *u* is short; as, *excûser*, to excuse; *refûsê*, refused, &c.

UCE, USSÊ, the first of these two terminations is confined to nouns, and always short; as, *puce*, flea; *astûce*, craft, &c. the second is confined to verbs, and is always long; as, *je fûsse*, I were; *je pûsse*, I might; *ils fûssent*, they might be; except *Prûsse*, Prussia; and *Rûsse*, a Russian; substantives in which USSÊ is short.

UT, short in all substantives; as, *le bûit*, the end; *un débûit*, a beginning; except in *fûit*, a cask; *un affûit*, a gun carriage; short in the third person of the perfect tense of

the indicative of verbs ; as, *il fut*, he was ; *il vécut*, he lived ; long in the same person and tense in the subjunctive ; as, *il fût*, he might be ; *il vécut*, he might live, &c.

UTE, UTES, short in all substantives ; *brûte*, brute, rough, &c. except *flûte*, flute ; always long in verbs ; *vous fûtes*, you were ; *vous lûtes*, you read ; *vous reçûtes*, you received ; *vous aperçûtes*, you perceived, &c.

It is not perhaps unnecessary to inform such readers as might be discouraged by the multiplicity, or by the prolixity of these rules, that it is not requisite, in order to speak french with propriety, that they should be observed with a scrupulous nicety, which few persons, if any, do, but he certainly speaks best who deviates the least from them.

## HOMONYMOUS, OR EQUIVOCAL WORDS,

THE MEANING OF WHICH IS DETERMINED BY THE ACCENT.

*Acre*, tart.  
*Alène*, awl.  
*Bâiller*, to gape.  
*Bât*, pack-saddle.  
*Bâteleur*, monte-bank.  
*Beauté*, beauty.  
*Bête*, beast.  
*Boîte*, box.  
*Bond*, rebound.  
*Chair*, flesh.  
*Chasse*, shrine.  
*Clair*, clear.  
*Corps*, body.  
*Côte*, rib.  
*Côte*, coast.  
*Cuire*, to boil or roast.  
*Faite*, summit.  
*Fête*, feast.  
*Faix*, burthen.  
*Le foie*, the liver.  
*Une fois*, once.  
*Forêt*, forest.  
*Je goûte*, I taste.  
*Grave*, grave.  
*Hale*, scorching of the sun.  
*Hôte*, host, landlord.  
*Jeûne*, fast.  
*Lâcs*, noose.  
*L'âme*, the soul.  
*Légs*, legacy.  
*Lis*, lily.  
*Maître*, master.  
*Mâle*, male.  
*Masse*, stock.  
*Mât*, mast.  
*Mâtin*, mastiff.  
*Mois*, month.  
*Mûr*, ripe.  
*Il n'est*, it is not.  
*Il nail*, it springs.  
*Pâte*, paste.  
*Paume*, palm.

*Acre*, acre.  
*Haléine*, breath.  
*Bâiller*, to give.  
*Il bâte*, he beats.  
*Bâtelier*, waterman.  
*Botté*, booted.  
*Bête*, beet.  
*Il boîte*, he goes lame.  
*Bôn*, good.  
*Chër*, dear.  
*Chasse*, hunting.  
*Clerc*, clerk.  
*Côr*, hunting-horn.  
*Côr*, a corn.  
*Côte*, petticoat.  
*Cuir*, leather.  
*Faite*, done.  
*Fait*, done, fact.  
*La foi*, faith.  
*Un fouët*, a rod, a whip.  
*Forêt*, gimblet.  
*Une goutte*, a drop.  
*Je grave*, I engrave.  
*Halle*, market.  
*Hôte*, scuttle.  
*Jeûne*, young.  
*Lâc*, lake.  
*Lâme*, blade.  
*Laid*, ugly.  
*Lait*, milk.  
*Lit*, bed.  
*Mettre*, to put.  
*Malle*, mail, trunk.  
*Masse*, mass, mace.  
*Mâ*, my.  
*Mâtin*, morning.  
*Moi*, me.  
*Mûr*, wall.  
*Nêt*, clean.  
*Patte*, paw.  
*Pomme*, apple.

*Pêcheur*, fisherman.*Pêcher*, to fish.*Pêcher*, peach-tree.*Pêne*, bolt.*Rôt*, roast meat.*Sâs*, sieve.*Scène*, scene.*La Scène*, the communion.*Sûr, sûre*, sure, certain.*Tâche*, task.*Tâcher*, to endeavour.*Tête*, head.*Vers*, verse.*Vers*, towards.*Vérre*, glass.*Pêcheur*, sinner.*Pêcher*, to sin.*Péché*, sin.*Peine*, punishment.*Rôt*, belch.*Sâ*, her.*Saine*, wholesome.*La Seine*, the Seine.*Sûr*, sour.*Tâche*, stain.*Tâcher*, to stain.*Tête*, teat.} *Vër*, worm.} *Vêrd*, green.



GENERAL PRINCIPLES  
OF  
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

WITH PARTICULAR RULES AND EXCEPTIONS.\*

---

The FRENCH LANGUAGE, like most of the living languages, is composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.†

CHAPTER I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *substance* or *being*, either real, as *man, house, tree, &c.*; or ideal, as *god, heaven, glory, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

---

\* Some of the general rules contained in the introduction are repeated in the syntax, because they are necessary to connect the different rules together. But each part must be considered as a distinct work, designed for different persons. The introduction is intended for children, and for persons who, not being accustomed to the study of languages, could not at once comprehend such a multiplicity of rules. The syntax, which includes all the rules which are necessary to a perfect knowledge of the language, is intended for the same persons, after they are sufficiently grounded in the introductory rules, and for persons of a comprehensive mind, who have no need of an introduction.

† Ever since the art of speaking has been reduced into a system, grammarians, and the philosophers who have written on the subject, have differed upon the parts, or different species of words of which it is composed. Some argue that there are but two, the NOUN and the VERB, and assert that the rest are only corruptions or abbreviations of these; others add the ARTICLE and the CONJUNCTION; others the PRONOUN, and so on to the INTERJECTION. It does not belong to a production of this kind to inquire into these different opinions; and I have adopted the most prevalent, because it has appeared to me, that whether they be *words*, or only *abbreviations of words*, there are NINE sorts, which are subject to different rules.

Those who are desirous to see ingenious dissertations on this subject, may read HARRIS's *Hermes*, and TOOKER's *Disquisitions of Poetry*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is that which belongs only to one being; as, *John, the Thames, London, Paris, England, France, &c.\**

A noun *common*, or *common* name, is that which belongs to all beings of the same kind; as, *man, woman, river, city, country, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honor*, and such like.

Two things are to be considered in nouns; the *gender* and the *number*.

The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

The french language admits of *two genders* only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

\* Though proper names should remain invariably the same in all languages, yet the French have given to the names of countries, and of some capital cities, names or terminations adapted to their own language; so, Asia is called *Asie*; Africa, *Afrique*; America, *Amérique*; England, *Angleterre*; Scotland, *Ecosse*; London, *Londres*; Spain, *Espagne*; Mexico, *Méxique*; Jamaica, *Jamaïque*; Italy, *Italie*; Tuscany, *Toscagne*; Bardinia, *Sardaigne*; Sicily, *Sicile*; Leghorn, *Livourne*; Mantua, *Mantoue*; Geneva, *Genève*; Genoa, *Gènes*; Switzerland, *Suisse*; Germany, *Allemagne*; Hungary, *Hongrie*; Bohemia, *Bohême*; Vignna, *Vienne*; Poland, *Pologne*; Warsaw, *Varsovie*; Cracow, *Cracovie*; Russia, *Russie*; Prussia, *Prusse*; Sweden, *Suède*, &c. for which no rule can be given; but as they are single words, and are generally found in the dictionaries, when they have been seen once or twice, they are easily retained.

The names of persons, derived from the living languages, do not vary; so, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, are in french, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, as in english; but the names of persons, derived from the greek and latin languages, generally change their terminations, agreeably to the following rules.

Names ending in *al, ar, or, is, os, on*, do not vary; as, *Annibal, Adherbal, Cæsar, Hamilcar, Nestor, Nestor, Adonis, Sésostris, Minos, Atropos, Damon, Solon*, &c. nor the names of men ending in *a*; as, *Numa, Nerva, Sylla, Agrippa, Dolabella*; except *Seneca*, which is *Sénèque*.

The finals *as* and *es*, are changed into *e*; as, *Pythagoras, Pythagore*; *Mecenas, Mécène*; *Eneas, Enée*; *Socrates, Socrate*; *Demosthenes, Demosthène*, &c.: except *Agirtilas, Léonidas, Pélipidas, Phidias, Pythias, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Eudamidas, Calchas, Olympias, Cérès, Xerxes, Périclès*, and a few others not often met with.

The finals *us* and *ius*, are also generally changed into *e*; as, *Augustus, Auguste*; *Titus, Tite*; *Tiberius, Tibère*; *Julius Cæsar, Jule César*; *Tacitus, Tacite*; *Virgilius, Virgile*; *Horatius, Horace*; *Eolus, Eole*; *Œdipus, Œdipe*; except *Appius, Baccus, Brutus, Cincinnatus, Claudius, Cræsus, Cyrus, Darius, Decius, Dentatus, Gallus, Germanicus, Janus, Junius, Manlius, Marius, Ménénus, Métellus, Mutius, Papirius, Plautius, Pompeius, Porus, Pyrrhus, Remus, Romulus, Silvius, Valerius, Venus, Tullus*, and a few others not frequently met with; and *Coriolanus, Tarquinius*, which lose the finals *us, ius*; thus, *Coriolan, Tarquin*.

Names in *chus*, change *chus* into *que*; as, *Telemachus, Télémaque*; *Lysimachus, Lysimaque*; *Gracchus, Gracque*; except *Antiochus*.

Names ending in *o* take the addition of *n*; as, *Cato, Caton*; *Cicero, Ciceron*; *Scipio, Scipion*; *Plato, Platon*; *Apollo, Apollon*; *Pluto, Pluton*; *Juno, Junon*; *Dido, Didon*; except *Calipso, Cléo, Clotho, Sappho, Echo*.

The final *er* is changed into *dre*; as, *Alexander, Alexandre*; *Lysander, Lysandre*.

Names of women ending in *a*, change *a* into *e* mute; as, *Julia, Julie*; *Amelia, Amélie*; *Agrippina, Agrippine*; *Cleopatra, Cléopâtre*; *Minerva, Minerve*, &c.

Those ending in *e, é, ê*, retain their termination; as, *Cybèle, Melpomène, Circé, Cloté, Déphné, Hébé, Thésbé*; except the following, in which the French do not sound the final *e*; *Ariadne, Eurédice, Pénélope*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being* ; by *feminine*, the *female*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, commonly called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine*, or *feminine*, in french, according to custom.

The *difference* of gender is generally known by the *termination* of the noun.

Nouns of the following Terminations  
ARE MASCULINE.

- A. un Opéra, an opera ; un Sopha, a  
sopha ;  
du Quinquina, peruvian bark.
- AT. sounded A ; as,  
un Plat, a dish ; un Combat, a battle.
- B. du Plomb, lead ; le Radoub, refitting ;  
un Rumb, a point of the compass.
- C. le Bec, the beak ; du Suc, gravy ;  
du Porc, pork ; du Tabac, tobacco.
- D. du Lard, bacon ; du Fard, paint ;  
un Regard, a look ; le Hasard,  
chance.
- E. preceded by any letter but r ;  
du Blé, corn ; un Pré, a meadow ;  
un Congé, a holiday ; du Café, cof-  
fee.  
Except l'Amitié, friendship ;  
la Moitié, the half ; la Pitié, pity.
- ER. sounded e ; as,  
un Baiser, a kiss ; le Danger, danger ;  
un Métier, a trade ; un Panier, a  
basket.
- AI. sounded é ; as,  
un Geai, a jay ; un Balai, a broom ;  
un Essai, an essay ; un Délai, a delay.
- AIT, ET sounded é ; as,  
un Fait, a fact ; un Portrait, a picture  
un Sujet, a subject ; un Objet, an  
object.
- F. un Nerf, a sinew ; un Œuf, an egg ;  
du Bœuf, beef ; du Suif, tallow.  
Except une Clef, a key ; la Soif,  
thirst ;  
la Nef, the body of a church.
- G. le Rang, rank ; le Sang, the blood ;  
un Etang, a pond ; un hareng, a  
herring.
- I. un Etui, a case ; un Défi, a challenge ;  
un Lit, a bed ; un Habit, a coat.  
Except une Fourmi, an ant ; la  
Nuit, night.
- OI. un Envoi, an invoice ; un Convoi,  
a convoy ;  
un Emploi, an employ ; le Doigt, the  
finger.  
Except la Foi, faith ; la Loi, law.
- L. un Mal, an evil ; le Travail, labour ;  
un Hôtel, an hotel ; le Sommeil,  
sleep.
- M. le Nom, the name ; le Parfum, per-  
fume ;

Nouns of the following Terminations are  
FEMININE.

- TE, la Liberté, liberty ; la Santé, health ;  
la Beauté, beauty ; la Bonté, goodness ;  
la Majesté, majesty ; la Divinité, divi-  
nity.  
Except l'Été, summer ; un Comté, a  
county ; le Côté, the side ; un Pâté, a pie ;  
un Comité, a committee ; un Traité, a  
treaty, a treatise ; du Thé, some tea.

*Masculine Terminations.*

- M. du Thim, *thyme*.  
Except la Faim, *hunger*.
- N. All the terminations in N which are not ION, or son soft, i. e. sounded ZON, viz.
- AN. du Bran, *bran*; du Safran, *saffron*.
- ANT, ENT sounded AN; as,  
un Diamant, a *diamond*; un Présent, a *present*;  
le Vent, the *wind*. Except une Dent, a *tooth*.
- AIN. du Pain, *bread*; un Bain, a *bath*.  
Except la Main, the *hand*.
- IN, EIN sounded AIN; as,  
du Vin, *some wine*; le Matin, *morning*;  
le Sein, the *bosom*; le Teint, the *complexion*.  
Except la Fin, the *end*.
- OIN. le Soin, *care*; un Coin, a *corner*.
- IEN. un Lien, a *tie*; du Bien, *wealth*.
- CON. un Balcon, a *balcony*; un Flacon, a *decanter*.
- LON. un Violon, a *violin*; un Papillon, a *butterfly*.
- SSON. un Buisson, a *bush*; du Poisson, *fish*;  
Except la Moisson, the *harvest*;  
la Boisson, *drink*; une Chanson, a *song*.
- CON. un Hameçon, a *fish-hook*; un Limaçon, a *snail*.  
Except une Leçon, a *lesson*; une Rançon, a *ransom*; la Façon, the *making*.
- TON. un Bâton, a *stick*; un Bouton, a *button*.
- O. un Echo, an *echo*; un Duo, a *duet*.
- OT. sounded O; as,  
un Mot, a *word*; un Complot, a *plot*;  
un Pot, a *pot*; un Gigot, a *leg of mutton*.
- EAU. sounded O; as,  
un Couteau, a *knife*; un Chapeau, a *hat*.  
Except l'Eau, *water*; la Peau, the *skin*.
- P. un Cap, a *cape*; un Cep, a *stock of a vine*;  
un Champ, a *field*; le Galop, the *gallop*.
- Q. un Cinq, a *five*; un Coq, a *cock*.
- R. All the terminations in R, which are not EUR.
- AIR. l'Air, the *air*; un Eclair, a *flash of lightning*.  
Except la Chair, the *flesh*.
- ER. le Fer, *iron*; l'Enfer, *hell*. Except la Mer, the *sea*; une Cuillère, a *spoon*.
- IR. le Désir, *desire*; le Plaisir, *pleasure*.
- OIR. le Soir, *evening*; un Mouchoir, a *handkerchief*.
- OR. l'Or, *gold*; un Trésor, a *treasure*.

*Feminine Terminations.*

ION. une Action, an *action*; une Caution, a *bail*; une Portion, a *portion*.

Except un Bastion, a *bastion*; un Crayon, a *pencil*; un Rayon, a *ray*; un Pion, a *man at drafts*; le Tallion, *retaliation*; un Scorpion, a *scorpion*; le Septentrion, the *north*; le Croupion, the *rump of fowls and birds*; un Million, a *million*.

SON, une Maison, a *house*; la Raison, *reason*; la Saison, the *season*.

Except le Gazon, *turf*; du Poison, *poison*; un Tison, a *firebrand*; un Uison, a *goosling*; l'Horizon, the *horizon*; le Blason, *heraldry*.

EUR. la Peur, *fear*; la Chaleur, *heat*,  
une Fleur, a *flower*; la Couleur, *colour*.

Except le Bonheur, *luck, happiness*; le Malheur, *misfortune*; l'Honneur, *honour*; le Déshonneur, *dishonour*; le Cœur, the *heart*; l'Equateur, the *equator*; l'Intérieur, the *interior*; l'Extérieur, the *exterior*.

Except also the nouns in EUR, which belong only to persons; as, un Auteur, an *author*; un Docteur, a *doctor*; &c.

*Masculine Terminations.*

- ORD, ORT**, *sounded on* ; as, le Bord, *the border* ;  
 un Fort, *a fort* ; le Sort, *fate*.  
*Except la Mort, death.*
- OUR**, le jour, *the day* ; un Tour, *a trick*.  
*Except la Cour, the court, the yard* ; une Tour, *a tower*.
- S.** le Bras, *the arm* ; le Repos, *repose* ;  
 du Bois, *wood* ; le Succès, *success* ;  
*Except une Brebis, a sheep* ; une  
 Souris, *a mouse* ; une Vis, *a screw* ; Foie, *time*.
- T.** un Plat, *a dish* ; un Lit, *a bed* ;  
 le Vent, *the wind* ; un Accident, *an accident*.  
*Except une Part, a share* ; une  
 Forêt, *a forest* ; la Nuit, *night* ;  
 une Dot, *a dowery* ; une Dent,  
*a tooth* ; la Mort, *death*.
- U.** un Ecu, *a crown* ; un Fêtu, *a straw*.  
*Except la Vertu, virtue* ; une  
 Tribu, *a tribe* ; de la Glu, *bird-  
 lime*.
- UT.** *sounded u* ; as,  
 le But, *the aim* ; le Scorbut, *the  
 scurvy*.
- EU.** le Feu, *fire* ; un Lieu, *a place*.
- OU.** un Trou, *a hole* ; un Chou, *a cabbage*.
- X.** un Faix, *a burthen* ; le Choix, *choice*.  
*Except la Paix, peace* ; la Voix,  
*the voice* ; une Noix, *a nut* ; de la  
 Poix, *pitch* ; une Croix, *a cross* ;  
 la Toux, *cough* ; une Perdrix, *a  
 partridge* ; une Faux, *a scythe*.

*Feminine Terminations.*

*See also page 40, how some nouns femi-  
 nine are formed from the masculine, in the  
 same manner as adjectives, by changing the  
 termination.*

From the above rules it appears that nouns ending with a consonant, or any vowel but *e mute*, are generally masculine ; but there is a great number of nouns ending in *e mute*, part of which are masculine, and part feminine, which cannot be reduced to such certain rules.\*

## GENERAL RULES.

All NAMES of COUNTRIES ending with *e mute* are feminine ; as,  
 la France, *France* ; la Hollande, *Holland* ; l'Angleterre, *England* ; la Suisse,  
*Switzerland*, &c. except le Mexique, *Mexico*. Those ending with any other  
 vowel, as, Canada, Chili, Pérou, &c. or with a consonant, as, Denmark, Portugal,  
 Japon, &c. are masculine.

**Es** All COMMON NAMES ending in *e mute*, preceded by another vowel, are feminine,  
 as, une Epée, *a sword* ; une Armée, *an army* ; une Guinée, *a guinea* ; la Vie,  
**Ue.** *life* ; la Rue, *the street* ; la Vue, *the sight* ; la Joie, *joy* ; la Joue, *the cheek* ;  
 la Pluie, *rain*, &c.

*Except le Foie, the liver* ; un Incendie, *a conflagration* ; le Génie, *genius* ; le  
 Messie, *the messiah* ; un Parapluie, *an umbrella* ; un Trophée, *a trophy* ; un  
 Pignée, *a pigmy* ; le Caducée, *caduceus* ; l'Hyménée, *hymen* ; un Mausolée, *a  
 mausoleum* ; and nouns ending in *gue* and *que*, which are subject to a particu-  
 lar rule. See GUE, QUE.

\* The discrimination between the genders of nouns is a difficulty which the learner finds hard to overcome. In order to attain it, he must consider the greatest number of words of each termination which are either masculine or feminine, as a general rule, and retain as many words of the exception as he can. Besides this, when he reads a french author, he must pay particular attention to the article which precedes each noun, and consider it as its necessary appendage. By these means the difficulty will insensibly lessen, and his mistakes will be but few. Not to overload his memory with a multiplicity of words, I have omitted in the list of nouns given as exceptions, those which are either obsolete or little used.

## PARTICULAR RULES.

*Masculine Terminations.**Feminine Terminations.*

**BE.** There are *Thirty-four* nouns ending in **BE**, *Eleven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Adverbe, <i>an adverb</i> ;	un Proverbe, <i>a proverb</i> ;
un Cube, <i>a cube</i> ;	un Tube, <i>a tube</i> ;
un Globe, <i>a globe</i> ;	un Têrbe, <i>a tœrœb</i> ;
un Orbe, <i>an œrb</i> ;	un Verbe, <i>a verb</i> .

*Twenty-three* other nouns ending in **œ** are *feminine*.

**CE.** There are *Three hundred* nouns ending in **CE**, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Appendice, <i>an appendix</i> ;	un Indice, <i>an indication</i> ;
un Armistice, <i>an armistice</i> ;	le Négoce, <i>traffic</i> ;
un Artifice, <i>an artifice</i> ;	un Office, <i>an office</i> ;
un Auspice, <i>an auspice</i> ;	un Orifice, <i>an orifice</i> ;
un Bénéfice, <i>a benefit</i> ;	le Pouce, <i>the thumb</i> ;
un Calice, <i>a chalice</i> ;	un Précipice, <i>a precipice</i> ;
le Caprice, <i>caprices</i> ;	le Préjudice, <i>injury</i> ;
un Cilice, <i>a hair-cloth</i> ;	un Sacrifice, <i>a sacrifice</i> ;
le Commerce, <i>commerce</i> ;	un Service, <i>a service</i> ;
le Délice, <i>delight</i> ;	le Silence, <i>silence</i> ;
un Édifice, <i>an edifice</i> ;	le Solstice, <i>the solstice</i> ;
un Exercice, <i>an exercise</i> ;	le Supplice, <i>punishment</i> ;
le Frontispice, <i>frontispiece</i> ;	le Vice, <i>vice</i> .

*Two hundred and sixty-six* other nouns ending in **œ** are *feminine*.

**DE.** There are *Two hundred* nouns ending in **DE**, *Twenty-seven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Camarade, <i>a companion</i> ;	le Monde, <i>the world</i> ;
un Code, <i>a code</i> ;	un Période, <i>a period of time</i> ;
le Coude, <i>the elbow</i> ;	un Remède, <i>a remedy</i> ;
un Fluide, <i>a fluid</i> ;	un Sphéroïde, <i>a spheroid</i> ;
un Grade, <i>a degree</i> ;	un Subside, <i>a subsidy</i> ;
un Guide, <i>a guide</i> ;	le Suicide, <i>suicide</i> ;
un Mode, <i>a mode</i> ;	le Vide, <i>Vacuum</i> .

*One hundred and seventy-three* other nouns ending in **œ** are *feminine*.

**FE.** There are *Twenty* nouns ending in **FE**, **PHE**, *Eight* of which are *masculine*; they are,

un Golfe, <i>a gulf</i> ;	un Parafœ, <i>a paraph</i> ;
un Greffe, <i>a court register</i> ;	un Paragraphe, <i>a paragraph</i> ;
un Hiéroglyphe, <i>a hieroglyph</i> ;	un Triomphe, <i>a triumph</i> ;
un Logographe, <i>a riddle</i> ;	un Télégraphe, <i>a telegraph</i> .

*Twelve* other nouns ending in **FE**, **PHE**, are *feminine*.

**GE.** There are *Eighty* nouns ending in **œ**, *Thirty-two* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un ange, <i>an angel</i> ;	un Mensonge, <i>a lie</i> ;
un archange, <i>an archangel</i> ;	un Prestige, <i>a prestige</i> ;
le Change, <i>the 'change</i> ;	un Privilège, <i>a privilege</i> ;
un Clergo, <i>a taper</i> ;	un Prodige, <i>a prodigy</i> ;
un Collège, <i>a college</i> ;	un Rechange, <i>a change</i> ;
un Cortège, <i>a retinue</i> ;	un Refuge, <i>a refuge</i> ;
le Déluge, <i>the deluge</i> ;	un Sacrilège, <i>a sacrilege</i> ;
un Echange, <i>an exchange</i> ;	un Siège, <i>a seat, a siege</i> ;
un Éloge, <i>an encomium</i> ;	un Singe, <i>an ape</i> ;
du Liège, <i>cork</i> ;	un Songe, <i>a dream</i> ;
du Linge, <i>linen</i> ;	un Subterfuge, <i>a subterfuge</i> ;
le Manège, <i>riding school</i> ;	un Vertige, <i>a giddiness</i> ;
un Mélange, <i>a mixture</i> ;	un Vestige, <i>a track</i> .

*Forty-eight* other nouns ending in **œ** are *feminine*.

**AGE.** All nouns ending in **AGE** are *masculine*; as,

un Avantage, <i>an advantage</i> ;	le Mariage, <i>marriage</i> ;
un Badinage, <i>a joke</i> ;	le Ménage, <i>housekeeping</i> ;
un Bocage, <i>a grove</i> ;	un Orage, <i>a storm</i> ;
le Courage, <i>courage</i> ;	un Ouvrage, <i>a work</i> ;
du Fromage, <i>some cheese</i> ;	le Rivage, <i>the shore</i> ;
le Jardinage, <i>gardening</i> ;	Je Veuvage, <i>widowhood</i> ;
un Hermitage, <i>an hermitage</i> ;	le Visage, <i>the face, &amp;c.</i>

Except *une Cage, a cage* ; *une Image, an image* ; *la Nage, swimming* ; *une Page, a page* ; *la Plage, a poetical word for sea* ; *la Rage, rage*.

*Masculine Terminations.**Feminine Terminations*

**GUE.** There are *Thirty-five* nouns ending in *GUE*, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Catalogue, *a catalogue*; un Dogue, *a bull-dog*;  
le Décalogue, *the decalogue*; un Orgue, *an organ*;  
un Dialogue, *a dialogue*; le Prologue, *the prologue*.

*Twenty-three* other nouns ending in *GUE* are *feminine*.

**CHE.** There are *One hundred* nouns ending in *CHE*, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Acrostiche, *an acrostic*; un Panache, *a plume*;  
le Coche, *the stage coach*; du Ponche, *punch*;  
un Dimanche, *a Sunday*; un Prêche, *a dissenting sermon*;  
un Hémistiche, *an hemistich*; un Reproche, *a reproach*;  
un Manche, *a handle*; un Tournebroke, *a jack*.

*Eighty-eight* other nouns ending in *CHE* are *feminine*.

\*une Manche, *a sleeve*.

**LE.** There are *Four hundred* nouns ending in *LE*, *One hundred* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Aigle, *an eagle*; un Obstacle, *an obstacle*;  
un Angle, *an angle*; un Ongle, *a nail*;  
un Article, *an article*; un Oracle, *an oracle*;  
un Asile, *an asylum*; le Parallèle, *the parallel*;  
un Buffe, *a buffalo*; un Pécule, *spare money*;  
un Câble, *a cable*; un Pendule, *a pendulum*;  
le Capitole, *the capitol*; le Peuple, *the people*;  
le Centuple, *the centuple*; un Poêle, *a stove*;  
un Cercle, *a circle*; le Pôle, *the pole*;  
du Chèvre-feuille, *woodbine*; un Portefeuille, *a portfolio*;  
le Chille, *the chyle*; le Préambule, *the preamble*;  
le Comble, *the top*; un Quadrangle, *a quadrangle*;  
un Concile, *a council*; le Quadrille, *quadril*;  
le Contrôle, *the control*; le Quadruple, *quadruple*;  
un Couvercle, *a lid*; un Réceptacle, *a receptacle*;  
le Crépuscule, *the twilight*; un Rôle, *a roll, the part of an actor*;  
un Crible, *a sieve*; le Sable, *the sand*;  
un Crocodile, *a crocodile*; un Saule, *a willow*;  
le Diable, *the devil*; le Scandale, *scandal*;  
un Disciple, *a disciple*; le Scrupule, *the scruple*;  
un Domicile, *a domicile*; du Seigle, *rye*;  
le Double, *the double*; un Siècle, *an age*;  
un Drôle, *a fellow*; le Symbole, *the symbol*;  
l'Évangile, *the gospel*; le Souffle, *the breath*;  
un Exemple, *an example*; un Spectacle, *a spectacle*;  
du Girofle, *clove-spice*; le Stile, *the style*;  
le Hâle, *the burning sun*; le Tabernacle, *the tabernacle*;  
un Intervalle, *an interval*; un Temple, *a temple*;  
un Libelle, *a libel*; le Tréfle, *trefoil*;  
un Marouffe, *a scoundrel*; le Tremble, *the asp tree*;  
un Merle, *a blackbird*; le Triple, *the treble*;  
le Meuble, *the furniture*; le Trouble, *disturbance*;  
un Mille, *a mile*; un Vaudeville, *a ballad*;  
un Miracle, *a miracle*; un Vestibule, *a vestibule*;  
un Modèle, *a model*; un Vignoble, *a vineyard*;  
un Monopole, *a monopoly*; un Violoncelle, *a violoncello*;  
un Moule, *a mould*; un Voile, *a veil*;  
le Mufle, *the muzzle*; le Zèle, *the zeal*;  
un Muscle, *a muscle*;

une Pendule, *a clock*.

une Poêle, *a frying-pan*.

*Three hundred* other nouns ending in *LE* are *feminine*.

une Voile, *a sail*.

**ME.** There are *One hundred and seventy-two* nouns ending in *ME*, *Forty-three* of which are *feminine*; the most commonly used are,

l'Ame, <i>the soul</i> ;	une Enclume, <i>an anvil</i> ;
une Arme, <i>an arm</i> ;	une Enigme, <i>an enigma</i> ;
la Brume, <i>the fog</i> ;	une Epigramme, <i>an epigram</i> ;
la Cime, <i>the top</i> ;	l'Escrime, <i>fencing</i> ;
la Coutume, <i>the custom</i> ;	l'Estime, <i>esteem</i> ;
la Crème, <i>cream</i> ;	une Ferme, <i>a farm</i> ;
la Dîme, <i>the tithe</i> ;	la Flamme, <i>the flame</i> ;
l'Écume, <i>the foam</i> ;	la Forme, <i>the form</i> ;

## Masculine Terminations.

## Feminine Terminations

One hundred and twenty-nine other nouns ending in **NE** are masculine.

la Gamme, <i>the gamut</i> ;	une Plate-forme, <i>a platform</i>
la Gomme, <i>gum</i> ;	une Plume, <i>a pen</i> ;
la Gourme, <i>the strangles</i> ;	une Pomme, <i>a apple</i> ;
un Idiotisme, <i>an idiom</i> ;	la Prime, <i>the prime</i> ;
la Lame, <i>the blade</i> ;	une Rame, <i>an ear, a ream</i>
une Larme, <i>a tear</i> ;	la Réforme <i>the reform</i> ;
la Légitime, <i>a child's portion</i> ;	la Rime, <i>the rhyme</i> ;
une Lime, <i>a file</i> ;	une Somme, <i>a sum</i> ;
une Maxime, <i>a maxim</i> ;	la Trame, <i>the thread</i> ;
la Paume, <i>the palm, tennis</i> ;	une Victime, <i>a victim</i>

**NE.** There are *Two hundred and forty-six* nouns in **NE**, *Thirty* of which are masculine ; the most commonly used are,

de l'Antimoine, <i>antimony</i> ;	le Jeûne, <i>fasting</i> ;
un Aune, <i>an elder</i> ;	un Organe, <i>an organ</i> ;
l'Automne, <i>autumn</i> ;	le Patrimoine, <i>patrimony</i> ,
le Capricorne, <i>the capricorn</i> ;	un Peigne, <i>a comb</i> ;
un Cerne, <i>a magical ring</i> ;	le Pêne, <i>the bolt of a lock</i> ;
un Chêne, <i>an oak</i> ;	un Pentagone, <i>a pentagon</i> ;
un Cygne, <i>a swan</i> ;	un Phénomène, <i>a phenomenon</i> ;
un Cône, <i>a cone</i> ;	un Polygone, <i>a polygon</i> ;
le Crâne, <i>the skull</i> ;	un Prône, <i>a sermon</i> ;
un Décagone, <i>a decagon</i> ;	le Règne, <i>the reign</i> ;
un Domaine, <i>a domain</i> ;	un Renne, <i>a rein deer</i> ;
un Faune, <i>a faun</i> ;	un Signe, <i>a sign</i> ;
du Pèlerinage, <i>pilgrimage</i> ;	un Trône, <i>a throne</i> .
un Frêne, <i>an ash-tree</i> ;	

*Two hundred and sixteen* other nouns ending in **NE** are feminine.

**PE.** There are *Sixty-eight* nouns ending in **PE**, *Twelve* of which are masculine ; the most commonly used are,

un Groupe, <i>a group</i> ;	un Participo, <i>a participle</i> ;
un Horoscope, <i>a horoscope</i> ;	un Polype, <i>a polypus</i> ;
du Jaspe, <i>a jasper</i> ;	un Principe, <i>a principle</i> ;
un Microscope, <i>a microscope</i> ;	un Télescope, <i>a telescope</i> .

*Fifty-six* other nouns ending in **PE** are feminine.

**QUE.** There are *One hundred* nouns ending in **QUE**, *Thirty-four* of which are masculine ; the most commonly used are,

un Astorisque, <i>an asterisk</i> ;	le Panégyrique, <i>panegyric</i> ;
un Cantique, <i>a canticle</i> ;	le Pentateuque, <i>the pentateuch</i> ;
un Casque, <i>a cask</i> ;	un Portique, <i>a portico</i> ;
un Caustique, <i>a caustic</i> ;	le Risque, <i>the risk</i> ;
un Cirque, <i>a circus</i> ;	un Soliloque, <i>a soliloquy</i> ;
un Disque, <i>a disk</i> ;	un Spécifique, <i>a specific</i> ;
un Émétique, <i>an emetic</i> ;	le Tropicque, <i>the tropick</i> ;
un Obélisque, <i>an obelisk</i> ;	le Viatique, <i>viaticum</i> ;
un Manque, <i>a want</i> ;	le Zodiaque, <i>the zodiac</i> .
un Masque, <i>a mask</i> ;	

*Sixty-six* other nouns ending in **QUE** are feminine.

**RE.** There are *Six hundred and thirty-two* nouns ending in **RE**, *Two hundred and twenty-three* of which are masculine ; the most commonly used are,

un Adultère, <i>an adultery</i> ;	le Bien-être, <i>happy state</i> ;
l'Albâtre, <i>alabaster</i> ;	un Cadavre, <i>a corpse</i> ;
l'Ambre, <i>amber</i> ;	[atre ; un Cadre, <i>a frame</i> ;
un Amphithéâtre, <i>an amphitheatre</i> ;	le Calibre, <i>the bore</i> ;
un Anniversaire, <i>an anniversary</i> ;	du Camphre, <i>camphire</i> ;
un Ancre, <i>a den</i> ;	[ry ; un Cancre, <i>a crab</i> ;
un Arbre, <i>a tree</i> ;	un Candélabre, <i>a chandelier</i> ;
un Artère, <i>an artery</i> ;	le Caractère, <i>the character</i> ,
un Astre, <i>a star</i> ;	un Cèdre, <i>a cedar</i> ;
l'Atmosphère, <i>the atmosphere</i> ;	le Centre, <i>the centre</i> ;
un Âtre, <i>an hearth</i> ;	un Chancre, <i>a shanker</i> ;
un Auditorio, <i>an auditory</i> ;	du Chanvre, <i>hemp</i> ;
un Augure, <i>an omen</i> ;	un Chapitre, <i>a chapter</i> ;
du Babeurre, <i>buttermilk</i> ;	un Chef-d'œuvre, <i>a masterpiece</i> ;
du Beurre, <i>butter</i> ;	un Chiffre, <i>a figure</i> ;
un Baromètre, <i>a barometer</i> ;	du Cidre, <i>cider</i> ;



## RE.

## Masculine Terminations.

## Feminine Terminations

un Cilindre, a cylinder ;	un Monstre, a monster ;
un Cimetière, a cemetery ;	un Murmure, a murmur ;
un Cimetière, a church yard ;	du Nacre, mother of pearl ;
un Cintre, an arch ;	un Navire, a ship ;
un Clystère, a gaster ;	le Nécessaire, the necessities ;
un Coffre, a chest ; [tary ;	du Nitre, nitre ;
un Commentaire, a commen-	un Nombre, a number ;
un Concombre, a cucumber ;	un Observatoire, an observato-
un Congre, a conger ;	ry ;
un Corollaire, a corollary ;	un Opprobre, a reproach ;
le Contraire, the contrary ;	un Orchestre, an orchestra ;
un Corsaire, a corsair ;	un Ordinaire, an ordinary ;
du Cuivre, copper ;	un Ordre, an order ;
le Décombre, the rubbish ;	le Parterre, the pit of a play-
le Délire, delirium ;	un Pâtre, a herdsman ; [house ;
un Dépositaire, a depositary ;	un Phare, a lighthouse ;
le Derrière, the back part ;	du Phosphore, phosphorus ;
un Désastre, a disaster ;	du Plâtre, plaster ;
le Désordre, the disorder ;	du Poivre, pepper ;
le Diamètre, the diameter ;	un Pore, a pore ; [ries ;
un Dictionnaire, a dictionary ;	les Préliminaires, prelimina-
le Directoire, the directory ;	un Presbître, a parsonage
un Douaire, a dowery ;	house ;
un Empire, an empire ;	un Promontoire, a promontory ;
un Emplâtre, a plaster ;	un Pupitre, a desk ;
l'Équilibre, the equilibrium ;	le Purgatoire, purgatory ;
un Etre, a being ; [book ;	un Réfectoire, an eatingroom ;
un Exemplaire, a copy of a	un Registre, a register ;
un Fiacre, a hackney coach ;	un Repaire, a den ;
un Fifre, a fife ;	un Réverbère, a reflector ;
un Formulaire, a formulary ;	un Sabre, a sabre ;
du Genièvre, juniper ;	le Sacre, the coronation ;
le Genre, the gender ;	du Salpêtre, saltpetre ;
du Gingembre, ginger ;	un Sanctuaire, a sanctuary ;
un Gouffre, a gulf ;	un Sceptre, a sceptre ;
un Havre, a harbour ;	un Secrétaire, a secretary ;
l'Hémisphère, the hemisphere ;	un Séminaire, a seminary ;
un Hêtre, a beech tree ;	un Sépulchre, a sepulchre ;
un Inventaire, an inventory ;	un Séquestre, a sequestration ;
un Interrogatoire, an interrog-	le Sommaire, the compendium ;
atory ;	du Souffre, brimstone ;
de l'Ivoire, ivory ;	du Sucre, sugar ;
un Laboratoire, a laboratory ;	un Tertre, a hillock ;
du Lierre, ivy ;	un Territoire, a territory ;
un Lièvre, a hare ;	un Théâtre, a theatre ;
un Livre, a book ;*	un Thermomètre, a thermome-
le Lustre, the lustre ;	un Timbre, a clock bell ; [ter ;
un Luminaire, a luminary ;	un Tire-bourre, screw of a ram-
le Maigre, the lean ;	un Titre, a title ; [rod ;
du Marbre, marble ;	le Tonnerre, the thunder ;
le Martyre, martyrdom ;	un Ulcère, an ulcer ;
un Massacre, a massacre ;	le Ventre, the belly ;
un Membre, a limb ;	un Vertèbre, a vertebra ;
un Mémoire, a memorial ;†	un Verre, a glass ;
du Mercure, mercury ;	un Vésicatoire, a blister ;
un Météore, a meteor ;	du Vinaigre, vinegar ;
un Meurtre, a murder ;	un Vocabulaire, a vocabulary ;
le Ministère, the ministry ;	un Vomitoire, a vomit ;
un Mystère, a mystery ;	le Vulgaire, the vulgar ;
un Monastère, a monastery ;	un Vulnéraire, a vulnerary.

Four hundred and  
nine other nouns end-  
ing in RE are feminine.

\*une Livre, a pound

†la Mémoire, memory

SE. There are Two hundred and fifty nouns ending in  
SE, Fourteen of which are masculine ; the most com-  
monly used are,

l'Aïse, ease ;	un Narcisse, a narcissus ;
un Carrosse, a coach ;	le Parnasse, Parnassus ;
un Colosse, a colossus ;	un Thyrs, a thyrsis ;
un Diocèse, a diocese ;	un Trapèze, a trapezium ;
le Malaise, uneasiness ;	un Vase, a vessel.

Two hundred and  
thirty-six other nouns  
ending in SE are fe-  
minine.

*Masculine Terminations.**Feminine Terminations*

TE. There are *Three hundred and seventy-five* nouns in TE, *Thirty-nine* of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

un Acte, <i>an act</i> ;	un Geste, <i>a gesture</i> ;
un Antidote, <i>an antidote</i> ;	un Gîte, <i>the seat of a hare</i> ;
un Arbuste, <i>a shrub</i> ;	un Inceste, <i>an incest</i> ;
un Aromate, <i>an aromatic</i> ;	un Insecte, <i>an insect</i> ;
un Automate, <i>an automaton</i> ;	un Labyrinthe, <i>a labyrinth</i> ;
un Buste, <i>a bust</i> ;	un Manifeste, <i>a manifesto</i> ;
un Cassetête, <i>a puzzle-brain</i> ;	un Mécompte, <i>a misreckoning</i> ;
un Ceste, <i>a cestus</i> ;	le Mérite, <i>merit</i> ;
un Compte, <i>an account</i> ;	un Myrte, <i>a myrtle</i> ;
un Conte, <i>a tale</i> ;	l'Omoplate, <i>the omoplate</i> ;
un Contraste, <i>a contrast</i> ;	un Pacte, <i>a pact</i> ;
le Culte, <i>the worship</i> ;	un Poste, <i>a station</i> ;.....
un Décompte, <i>a discount</i> ;	un Précepte, <i>a precept</i> ;
le Démenti, <i>demerit</i> ;	un Prétexte, <i>a pretext</i> ;
le Doute, <i>the doubt</i> ;	le Reste, <i>the rest</i> ;
un Entr'acte, <i>an interlude</i> ;	un Squelette, <i>a skeleton</i> ;
l'Escompte, <i>the discount</i> ;	le Texte, <i>the text</i> ;
le Falte, <i>the top</i> ;	un Tirebotte, <i>a bootjack</i> ;
le Faste, <i>pomp</i> ;	le Tumulte, <i>tumult</i> .

*Three hundred and thirty-six* other nouns ending in TE are *feminine*.

la Poste, *post office*.

VE. There are *Forty-two* nouns ending in VE, *Four* of which are masculine.

un Conclave, <i>a conclave</i> ;	un Glaive, <i>a sword</i> ;
un Fleuve, <i>a river</i> ;	un Rêve, <i>a dream</i> .

*Thirty-eight* other nouns ending in VE are *feminine*.

XE. There are *Two* nouns ending in XE, *Five* of which are masculine.

un Axe, <i>an axis</i> ;	un Paradoxe, <i>a paradox</i>
l'Equinoxe, <i>the equinox</i> ;	le Sexe, <i>the sex</i> .

The other *Five* nouns ending in XE are *feminine*.

ZE. There are *Two* nouns ending in ZE, *One* of which is masculine, viz. du Bronze, *bronzes*. One *feminine*, viz. de la Gâze, *gauze*.

Some nouns *feminine* are formed in the same manner as the *feminine* of *adjectives*, by adding *a* *mas* to the *masculine*, or by changing the *termination* ; these are ;

1st. The nouns denoting *trade, profession, business, &c.* as,

un Acteur,	<i>an actor</i> ;	une Actrice,	<i>an actress</i> .
un Berger,	<i>a shepherd</i> ;	une Bergère,	<i>a shepherdess</i> .
un Boucher,	<i>a butcher</i> ;	une Bouchère,	<i>a female butcher</i>
un Boulanger,	<i>a baker</i> ;	une Boulangère,	<i>a female baker</i> .
un Comédien,	<i>a player</i> ;	une Comédienne,	<i>a female player</i> .
un Cuisinier,	<i>a cook</i> ;	une Cuisinière,	<i>a female cook</i> .
un Epicier,	<i>a grocer</i> ;	une Epicière,	<i>a female grocer</i> .
un Fermier,	<i>a farmer</i> ;	une Fermière,	<i>a female farmer</i> .
un Marchand,	<i>a dealer</i> ;	une Marchande,	<i>a female dealer</i> .
un Ouvrier, &c.	<i>a workman</i> ;	une Ouvrière,	<i>a workwoman</i> .

2d. The following, as being the most frequently used ;

un Amant,	<i>a lover</i> ;	une Amante,	<i>she who loves</i> .
un Ami,	<i>a male friend</i> ;	une Amie,	<i>a female friend</i> .
un Chat,	<i>a male cat</i> ;	une Chatte,	<i>a female cat</i> .
un Chien,	<i>a dog</i> ;	une Chienne,	<i>a bitch</i> .
un Chanteur,	<i>a male singer</i> ;	une Chanteuse,	<i>a female singer</i> .
un Citoyen,	<i>a citizen</i> ;	une Citoyenne,	<i>a citizeness</i> .
un Compagnon,	<i>a male companion</i> ;	une Compagne,	<i>a female companion</i>
un Cousin,	<i>a male cousin</i> ;	une Cousine,	<i>a female cousin</i> .
un Danseur,	<i>a male dancer</i> ;	une Danseuse,	<i>a female dancer</i> .
un Diable,	<i>a male devil</i> ;	une Diablesse,	<i>a female devil</i> .
un Ecolier,	<i>a male scholar</i> ;	une Ecolière,	<i>a female scholar</i>
un Epoux,	<i>a husband</i> ;	une Epouse,	<i>a wife</i> .
un Héritier,	<i>an heir</i> ;	une Héritière,	<i>an heiress</i> .
un Héros,	<i>a hero</i> ;	une Héroïne,	<i>a heroine</i> .
un Hôte,	<i>a landlord</i> ;	une Hôtesse,	<i>a landlady</i> .
un Ivrogne,	<i>a drunken man</i> ;	une Ivrognesse,	<i>a drunken woman</i> .
un Juif,	<i>a Jew</i> ;	une Juive,	<i>a Jewess</i> .
un Lapin,	<i>a buck rabbit</i> ;	une Lapine,	<i>a doe rabbit</i> .
un Lévrier,	<i>a greyhound</i> ;	une Lévrrette,	<i>a greyhound bitch</i>
un Lion,	<i>a lion</i> ;	une Lionne,	<i>a lioness</i>

# NOUN.

un Loup,	a male wolf ;	une Louve,	a female
le Maître,	the master ;	la Maîtresse,	the mistress
le Marié,	the bridegroom ;	la Mariée,	the bride
un menteur,	a man who lies ;	une menteuse,	a woman
un Orphelin,	a male orphan ;	une Orpheline,	a female
un Parent,	a male relation ;	une Parente,	a female relation
un Paysan,	a countryman ;	une Paysanne,	a countrywoman
un Prisonnier,	a male prisoner ;	une Prisonnière,	a female prisoner
un Sultan,	a sultan ;	une Sultane,	a sultana
un Tigre,	a tyger ;	une Tigresse,	a tigress
un Tuteur,	a male guardian ;	une Tutrice,	a female guardian
un Veuf,	a widower ;	une Veuve,	a widow
un Voisin,	a male neighbour ;	une Voisine,	a female neighbour

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular*, when we speak of *one being only* ; as, a book, *un livre* ; a house, *une maison* ; a tree, *un arbre* ; a ship, *un navire*, &c.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

General Rule. The plural is generally formed in french, as in english, by adding *s* to the singular ; as, *des livres*, books ; *des maisons*, houses, &c.

1st Exception. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, are the same in the plural ; as, *mon fils*, my son ; *mes fils*, my sons ; *une brebis*, a sheep ; *des brebis*, sheep ; *une voix*, a voice ; *des voix*, voices ; *une noix*, a nut ; *des noix*, nuts ; *le nez*, the nose ; *les nez*, the noses.

2d Exception. Nouns ending in *eu* and *ou*, take *x* instead of *s*, for the sign of the plural number ; as, *chapeau*, hat ; *chapeaux*, hats.

3d Exception. Nouns ending in *eu* and *ou*, take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number ; as, *lieu*, place ; *lieux*, places ; *feu*, fire ; *feux*, fires ; *chou*, cabbage ; *choux*, cabbages.

Except *clou*, nail ; *bijou*, jewel ; *fou*, mad ; *filou*, sharper ; *trou*, hole ; *sou*, penny ; *matou*, ramcat ; which require *s* for their plural, as *clous*, nails, &c.

4th Exception. Nouns ending in *al*, *ail*, change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural ; as, *mal*, evil ; *maux*, evils ; *cheval*, horse ; *chevaux*, horses ; *canal*, canal ; *canaux*, canals ; *travail*,\* labour ; *travaux*, labours.

Except *bal*, ball ; *détail*, detail ; *épouvantail*, bugbear ; *éventail*, fan ; *gouvernail*, rudder ; *portail*, portal ; *sérail*, seraglio ; the plural of which is formed by adding *s* to the singular ; *bals*, balls ; *détails*, details ; *épouvantails*, bugbears ; *éventails*,

\* The word *travail* is also spelled with an *s* in the plural, when it means *traces* or *written summaries in administration*.

*fans* ; *gouvernails*, rudders ; *portails*, portals ; *sérails*, seraglios ; and *bétail*, cattle, the plural of which is *bestiaux*.

*Aïeul*, *grandfather*, used in the plural, and signifying *ancestors*, becomes *aïeux* ; but if it means *grandfathers*, it is regular, and is spelled *aïeuls*.

*Aiguail*, or *aigail*, *morning dew* ; has no plural.

The plural of *ail*, garlic, is *aïlx* ; but it is seldom used. *Gousses d'ail*, cloves of garlic, is preferred. In botany, it is formed regularly *aïls*.

*Bercail*, *sheepfold*, has no plural.

*Ciel*, when it signifies *sky*, or *heaven*, changes into *cieux* ; but, when used to express the *sky in painting*, the *top of a bedstead*, or when it is metaphorically used for *climate*, it remains regular.

*Œil*, *eye*, changes into *yeux*, when it means the eyes of animated or personified beings. In any other instance it is regular ; as,

*Œils-de-bœuf*, *ovals*, (in architecture,) *bull's eyes*.

*Œils-de-chat*, *cat's eyes*, (precious stone,) &c.

Yet we say, *yeux du pain*, *du fromage*, &c. for the holes of bread, of cheese ; and *yeux de la soupe*, *du bouillon* ; for the dross of fat in soup or broth.

*Universel*, *universal*, (a logic term,) makes *universaux*.

## CHAPTER II.

### ARTICLE.

The *same noun* admitting *different meanings*, as for example ; *THE bread*, *THE wine* ; *SOME bread*, *SOME wine* ; *THIS bread*, *THAT wine* ; *MY bread*, *THY bread*, *HIS bread* ; *MY wine*, &c. it was necessary to adopt some *signs* which would fix its proper meaning.

These *signs*, called *ARTICLE*, are various, and generally receive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise,

*DEFINITE*, that which *defines* the object ; as, *THE bread*, *THE wine*.

**PARTITIVE**, that which denotes *a portion* of the object ; as, *SOME bread, SOME wife.*

**NUMERAL**, that which *numbers* the objects ; as, *A OR ONE shilling.\**

**DEMONSTRATIVE**, that which *points out* the object ; as, *THIS OF THAT bread, THESE OF THOSE clothes.*

**POSSESSIVE**, that which expresses the *possession* of the object ; as, *MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread, HER bread, OUR bread, YOUR bread, THEIR bread ; MY wine, THY wine, HIS wine, &c.\**

The signs called **ARTICLE**, are declined in french as follows :

		- SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
		1	2	3
		Masculine.	Feminine.	Masc. and Fem.
<b>DEFINIT.</b>	<i>THE ;</i>	LE,	LA,	LES.
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>THE ;</i>	DU,	de LA,	DES.
<i>To, at</i>	<i>THE ;</i>	AU,	à LA,	AUX.
<b>PARTIT.</b>	<i>SOME ;</i>	DU,	de LA,	DES.
<b>NUMERAL</b>	<i>A, AN ;</i>	UN,	UNE,	
<b>DEMONS.</b>	<i>THIS, THAT ;</i>	CE,	CETTE,*	
	<i>THESE, THOSE ; ...</i>		....	CES.
<b>POSSESS.</b>	<i>MY ;</i>	MON,	MA,*	MES.
	<i>THY ;</i>	TON,	TA,	TES.
	<i>HIS, HER, ITS ;</i>	SON,	SA,	SES.
	<i>OUR ;</i>	NOTRE,	NOTRE,	NOS.
	<i>YOUR ;</i>	VOTRE,	VOTRE,	VOS.
	<i>THEIR ;</i>	LEUR,	LEUR,	LEURS

---

\* To these might be added all the **NUMBERS**, and the words **CHAQUE**, each ; **TOUT** every ; **PLUSIEURS**, several ; which exclude the article from the noun, and have the same property as the words generally known by the name of **ARTICLE**.

## CHAPTER III.

## ARTICLE AND NOUN.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. *The signs called ARTICLE are never used without a NOUN after them, and they must be of the same GENDER and NUMBER as that noun; this, in grammar, is called agreement of the article with the noun; ex.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1	2	3	4	5	6
Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine and Feminine.			
The <i>le Père.</i>	the <i>la Mère.</i>	the <i>les Enfants.</i>			
of The <i>du Père.</i>	of the <i>de la Mère.</i>	of the <i>des Enfants.</i>			
to The <i>au Père.</i>	to the <i>à la Mère.</i>	to the <i>aux Enfants.</i>			
A <i>un Père.</i>	a <i>une Mère.</i>				
Some <i>du Pain.</i>	some <i>de la Viande.</i>	some <i>des Habits.</i>			
This <i>ce Pain.</i>	this <i>cette Viande.</i>	these <i>ces Habits.</i>			
That <i>ce Pain.</i>	that <i>cette Viande.</i>	those <i>ces Habits.</i>			
My <i>mon Père.</i>	my <i>ma Mère.</i>	my <i>mes Enfants.</i>			
of My <i>de mon Père.</i>	of my <i>de ma Mère.</i>	of my <i>de mes Enfants.</i>			
to My <i>à mon Père.</i>	to my <i>à ma Mère.</i>	to my <i>à mes Enfants.</i>			
Thy <i>ton Pain.</i>	thy <i>ta Viande.</i>	thy <i>tes Habits.</i>			
His <i>son Pain.</i>	his <i>sa Viande.</i>	his <i>ses Habits.</i>			
Her <i>son Pain.</i>	her <i>sa Viande.</i>	her <i>ses Habits.</i>			
Our <i>notre Pain.</i>	our <i>notre Viande.</i>	our <i>nos Habits.</i>			
Your <i>votre Pain.</i>	your <i>votre Viande.</i>	your <i>vos Habits.</i>			
Their <i>leur Pain.</i>	their <i>leur Viande.</i>	their <i>leurs Habits.</i>			

## EXERCISES.

The father, the mother, the children. The good nature of the father,  
 \* père, † mère, enfants. † \* bon naturel m.  
 the tenderness of the mother, the civility of the children. Speak to the  
 \* tendresse f. \* civilité f. Parlez  
 father, tell it to the mother, give it to the children. The brother, the  
 dites-le donnez-le frère,  
 sister, the cousins. The complaisance of the brother, the modesty  
 sœur, consins. \* complaisance f. \* modestie f.  
 of the sister, the kindness of the cousins. The horse, the cow, the  
 \* bonté f. cheval, vache,  
 dogs. The bridle of the horse, the horns of the cow, the ears of the  
 chiens. \* bride f. cornes oreilles

\* Before you prefix an article to a noun, never omit to consider,

1 Whether the noun which follows the article is masculine or feminine ;

2 Whether it is singular or plural.

If the noun which follows the article is *masc. sing.* use the signs contained in the 1 column.

If the noun which follows the article is *fem. sing.* use the signs contained in the 2 column.

If the noun which follows the article is *plural*, whether masculine or feminine, use the signs contained in the 3 column.

† Observe also, that if the noun is *singular* in *english*, it must be *singular* in *french* and if it is *plural* in *english*, it must be made *plural* in *french*, agreeably to the rules, page 41.

dogs Bring it to the horse, give it to the cow, leave it to the dog.  
 Apportez-le donnez-le laissez-le  
 The nose, the mouth, the eyes. The tip of the nose, the size of  
 \* nez, m. bouche, f. yeux. \* bout m. grandeur f.  
 the mouth, the beauty of the eyes. A glass, a spoon, a knife, a  
 beauté f. \* verre, m. cuiller, f. couteau, m.  
 fork. Some wine, some beer, some glasses. This dinner, this  
 fourchette. f. \* vin, m. bière, f. \* diner, m.  
 table, these dishes. That cheese, that bottle, those apples. My arm,  
 table, f. plats. fromage, m. bouteille, f. pommes. † bras, m.  
 my hand, my feet. His hat, his shirt, his stockings. Her apron,  
 \* main, f. \* pieds. † | chapeau, m. \* | chemise, f. \* | bas. \* | tablier, m.  
 her || gown, her || scissors. Our garden, our house, our fields. Your  
 \* robe, f. \* ciseaux. jardin, m. maison, f. champs.  
 umbrella, your watch, your gloves. Their coach, their servants.  
 parapluie, m. montre, f. gants. carrosse, m. domestiques.

2. If the noun which follows the article is *singular*, and begins with a *vowel*, or *h* mute, † whether it is *masculine* or *feminine*, use

l'	le,	la;	as	The	child.	l'	Enfant. m.	l'	Histoire. f.
de l'	du,	de la;	of	The	de l'	Enfant.	de l'	Histoire.	
à l'	au,	à la;	to	The	à l'	Enfant.	à l'	Histoire.	
cet	ce;	This	or	That	cel	Enfant.	cette	Histoire.	
mon	ma;	My		mon	mon	Enfant.	mon	Histoire.	
ton	ta;	Thy		ton	ton	Enfant.	ton	Histoire.	
son	sa;	His	or	Her	son	Enfant.	son	Histoire.	

## EXERCISE.

The air.	The water.	My slate.	Her writing.	His school.	Her
2 air.	eau.	2 ardoise.	2 écriture.	2   école.	2

\* See note \* page 44.

† Observe that two of the signs called ARTICLE cannot be used before the same noun; so we say LE bras, the arm; LA main, the hand, LA dame, the lady, UNE dame, a lady; MADAME, my lady, madam, Mrs.; DES dames, some ladies; MESdames, ladies; UNE demoiselle, a young lady; DES demoiselles, some young ladies; MESdemoiselles, ladies; but we do not say, LE mon bras; LA ma main; LA madame; UNE madame; DES mesdames; LA mademoiselle; UNE mademoiselle; DES mesdemoiselle; because each of these signs fixing the proper meaning of the noun, renders another sign superfluous.

N. B. From this rule must be excepted the words MONSIEUR and MESIEURS, which, though they are compounded of the noun SIEUR, and of the article MON, MRS, will in some instances admit of the other articles; for we say; LE monsieur, the gentleman; UN monsieur, a gentleman; CE, monsieur, this gentleman, &c. LES messieurs, the gentlemen; CES messieurs, these gentlemen; NOS messieurs, our gentlemen. These few singularities will be learnt by custom.

‡ The *h* mute is marked in these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark', before it.

If I have frequently been asked if, having only one word to express both HIS and HER, we do not often commit mistakes in the use of that word. No, we never do; because this sign always refers to a noun mentioned before, the gender of which we know; So, when I say, *Mon frère a perdu son couteau*, My brother has lost his knife; I know by Son that it is the knife belonging to my brother. *Ma sœur a perdu son couteau*, My sister has lost her knife; I know by this Son that it is the knife belonging to my sister. But suppose a gentleman and a lady sat at table, and both let their knives fall; and a person said to a servant, *Ramassez son couteau*, meaning the knife of the lady, which knife would the servant pick up? Indeed he would not know, but a Frenchman would not express himself thus; He would say; *Ramassez le couteau de monsieur*, Pick up the gentleman's knife; or *Ramassez le couteau de madame*, Pick up the lady's knife, by which all ambiguity would be avoided.

school. This man. That child. This tree. That bird. The ornament  
 2 'homme, enfant. arbre. oiseau. ornement  
 of the mind. The history of the year. The wing of the bird. He  
 esprit. 2 'histoire année. aile II  
 sacrificed his honour to the interest of the state. She has lost the  
 sacrifié 'honneur intérêt état. Elle a perdu  
 affection of her friend. Her obstinacy is the cause of his inconstancy.  
 affection 2 ami. opiniâtreté est 1 cause f. inconstance.

3. The signs called *article* must be repeated before every noun in french agreeably to the gender and number of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,

The father, mother and children are (gone out,)

Le père, la mère et les enfants sont sortis, i. e. the father, the &c.

Some bread, meat, money and clothes.

Du pain, de la viande, de l'argent et des habits, i. e. some bread, &c.

#### EXERCISE.

Bring the bread and butter; the tea and coffee; some milk or  
 Apportez 1 pain m. et beurre; m. thé m. café; m. 1 lait m. ou  
 cream; a cup and saucer; a knife and fork; some bread and  
 crème; f. tasse f. soucoupe; f. couteau m. fourchette; f.  
 cheese; the dishes and plates; the beans and bacon; the pepper  
 fromage; m. 1 plat † assiettes; fève † lard; m. poivre m.  
 and salt. My brother and sister are (gone out.) His father and  
 sel. m. 1 frère sœur sont sortis. —  
 mother are dead. She has lost her friends and relations.  
 sont morts. Elle a perdu ami † parent. †

#### PARTICULAR RULES.

##### PROPER NAMES.

4. The names of *persons* and *places*, i. e. of *cities, towns, villages, &c.* are used in french as in english, *without* any of the signs called *article*; as,

I like Voltaire, J'aime Voltaire. (A)  
 London. Londres.

I speak of Voltaire, Je parle de Voltaire,  
 of London. de Londres.

I prefer it to Voltaire, Je le préfère à Voltaire,  
 to London. à Londres. (B)

Observe that *de* and *à* which are prefixed to *Voltaire, Lon-*

\* A dash, this mark (—), under a word shows that the word is not expressed in french agreeably to rules which will be seen in the last part of this work.

† See note † page 44.

(A) Some names of *persons*, derived from *common* names, such as, *le Brun, le Blanc, le Noir, la Porte, la Grange, la Fontaine, &c.* are always preceded by an article, but that article is considered as a syllable of the name, and never varies.

(B) Except *le Caire, Cairo; le Catelet, la Chapelle, la Charité, la Ferté, la Flèche, le Havre, la Havanne, Havannah; la Haye, the Hague; la Hogue, le Mars, la Mecque, Mecca; le Plessis, le Put, le Quenoi, la Rochelle*, which require the definite article, for we say, *Je viens du Havre. I come from Havre. Je vais à la Rochelle. I am going to Rochelle.*



*dres*, are not *articles*; they are *prepositions* used to unite the noun to the verb.

## EXERCISE.

I have read almost all *the* works of Voltaire and Rousseau.  
 J' ai lu presque toutes œuvres  
 I am reading now *the* adventures of Telemachus the son of Ulysses  
 Je — lis à présent aventures Télémaque — fils † Ulysse  
 and Penelope. Have you ever been *in* London? Yes, I have, *i. e.* been.  
 \* Pénélope. Avez-vous jamais été à Oui, j'y ai été  
 Is it as large as Paris? London is much larger than Paris.  
 Est-il aussi grand que est beaucoup plus grand que  
 London is *the* largest city in Europe. Have you seen Naples? No;  
 plus grande ville f. de l' vu Non;  
 I have been *at* Florence and Rome, but I have not<sup>55</sup> been *at* Naples.  
 ai été à \* mais je n'ai pas été

5. But the names of *countries* and *provinces*, which are used without an article in english, require in french one of the signs *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

I like	Portugal,	J'aime	le Portugal,
	France,		la France,
	England.		l' Angleterre.
I speak	of Portugal,	Je parle	du Portugal,
	of France, &c.		de la France, &c
I prefer it	to Portugal,	Je le préfère	au Portugal,
	to France, &c.		à la France, &c. (c)

## EXERCISE.

Italy<sup>5</sup> is *the* garden of Europe<sup>5</sup>. France<sup>5</sup> is also a fine country;  
 2Italie: est jardin m. 2Europe.<sup>6</sup> France f. est aussi beau pays; m.  
 it lies between Spain,<sup>5</sup> Italy, Switzerland, Germany,<sup>5</sup> Holland,<sup>5</sup>  
 elle (est située) entre Espagne, 5 Suisse, f. 5 Allemagne, Hollande, f.  
 and England.<sup>5</sup> Spain, with all *the* gold of Mexico<sup>5</sup> and Peru,<sup>5</sup> is  
 et Angleterre, 5 avec tout 2 or Mexique m. \* Pérou, m. n'est  
 not<sup>55</sup> so rich as France. Brazil<sup>5</sup> belongs to Portugal, Mexico to  
 pas si riche que 5 Brésil m. appartient 5 m. 5  
 Spain, Canada<sup>5</sup> to England, Martinique<sup>5</sup> and Gaudeloupe<sup>5</sup> to France.  
 9 Canada m. 5 Martinique f. Guadeloupe f. 5

\* The *preposition*, must be repeated before every noun in french, in the same way as the article.

† When the monosyllables, *le, de, ne, se, je, me, te, la, que*, are followed by a vowel or a *h mute*, the vowel, *e, a*, is left out, and an apostrophe, this mark ('), put in its place.

(c) Some names of *countries*, which take their names from their capital city, such as, *Alger, Algiers; Avignon, Gènes, Genoa; Genève, Geneva; Florence, Maroc, Morocco; Naples, Orange, Tunis, Tripoli, Venise*; or from the name of some person; as *St. Domingue, St. Domingo; St. Vincent, &c.* do not require the article.

‡ The figures at the top of the words or under the words, indicate the number of the paragraph where the rule concerning that word is to be found; if you do not perfectly recollect the rule, never omit to look for it, and read it every time with the example.

§ The *parts of the world* follow the same rules as the names of countries.

6. Observe however that the names of *countries* are used *without* the article in french, when they come after verbs denoting *dwelling* or *movement*, such as *to be in*, *to live in*, *to go to*, *to come from*. In these instances, *in*, *to* are expressed by *en*, and *from* by *de*; as,

He is	<i>in</i>	France.	Il est	<i>en</i>	France.
	<i>in</i>	England.		<i>en</i>	Angleterre.
He is going	<i>to</i>	France.	Il va	<i>en</i>	France.
	<i>to</i>	England.		<i>en</i>	Angleterre.
He comes	<i>from</i>	France.	Il vient	<i>de</i>	France.
	<i>from</i>	England.		<i>d'</i>	Angleterre. (D)

## EXERCISE.

My brother lives *in* Switzerland and my sister *in* France. I intend  
 demeure <sup>6</sup> J' (ai dessein,) <sup>6</sup>  
 to go *to* France and Italy, (as soon) as *the* war is over. I come  
 d'aller <sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup> aussitôt que <sup>6</sup> la guerre f. sera finie. Je viens  
 from Portugal, and I (am going) *to* Holland and England. Have you  
<sup>6</sup> Je vais <sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup> Avez-vous  
 ever been to Spain? No; I (am going) *to* Turkey and *to* Greece,  
 jamais été <sup>6</sup> Non; Je vais <sup>6</sup> Turquie <sup>6</sup> Grèce,  
 whence I (will pass) *into* Spain. I would rather go *to* Italy.  
 (d'ou) je passerai <sup>en</sup> <sup>6</sup> J' aimerais mieux aller <sup>6</sup>

**HE, LE, LA, LES, DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX.**

7. All common names used in a *general* sense; as, *bread is good*; or in a *particular* sense; as, *the bread which I eat is good*; must have before them one of the definite signs *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; ex.

(D) From this rule must be excepted the *countries* discovered by the navigators, and some countries in *Asia* and *Africa*, which are never used without the article. The most essential to be known, on account of their being frequented by the Europeans, are

l' Archipel,	Archipelago.	la Floride,	Florida.	le Mississipi,	Mississipp.
les Barbades,	Barbadoes.	la Grénade,	Grenada.	le Mogol,	Mogul Emp.
le Bengal,	Bengal.	la Guadeloupe,	les Moluques,		Molucca Is.
la Bermuda,	Bermuda.	la Guinée,	Guiana.	la Nigritia,	Irre, Nigritia.
le Brésil, [sic, Brazil,		l' Inde,	India.	la Nou. Angleterre,	New Eng.
la Caléfour-	California.	l' Indostan,	Indostan.	le Paraguay,	Paraguay.
le Canada,	Canada.	la Jamaïque,	Jamaica.	le Péloponèse,	Peloponessus
la Caroline,	Carolina.	le Japon.	Japan.	la Pensylvanie,	Pennsylv.
le Chili,	Chili.	le Levant,	The Levant.	le Pérou,	Peru.
la Chine, [ne, China.	[na.	la Louisiane,	Louisiana.	les Philippines,	The Phil. Is.
la Cochinchine,	Cochinchine.	la Martinique,	Martinique.	la Sonde,	Sunda.
le Congo,	Congo.	le Mexique.	Mexico.	la Virginie,	Virginia.

For we say; J' ai été au Canada. I have been in Canada. Je vais à la Jamaïque, au Mexique, au Pérou, &c. I am going to Jamaica, to Mexico, to Peru, &c. Je viens du Japon, de la Chine, des Indes, &c. I come from Japan, China, the Indies, &c

\* See note \* page 47.

*General sense, no article in english before the noun.*

I like bread,	J'aime le pain,*
meat,	la viande,
money,	l' argent,
clothes.	les habits.

I speak of bread, Je parle du pain,  
of meat, of clothes. de la viande, des habits.  
I prefer it to bread, to meat, &c. Je le préfère au pain, à la viande, &c.

*Particular sense, in english THE before the noun.*

I like the bread	} I have.	J'aime le pain	} que j'ai.*
the meat		la viande	
the money		l' argent	
the clothes		les habits	

I speak of the bread and meat I have. Je parle du pain et de la viande que j'ai.  
I prefer it to the bread and meat he has. Je le préfère au pain et à la viande qu'il a.

## EXERCISE.

Gold<sup>7</sup> and silver<sup>7</sup> are precious, but Tiron<sup>7</sup> and steel<sup>7</sup> are more useful.  
<sup>2or</sup> 2argent sont précieux, mais fer m. 2acier sont plus utiles.  
The gold and silver of Peru<sup>7</sup> are purer<sup>18</sup> than that of Europe.<sup>5</sup>  
<sup>3</sup> 5 Pérou m. sont (plus purs) que celui <sup>2</sup>  
Modesty<sup>7</sup> and virtue are preferable to beauty and riches. I prefer  
modestie f. 3vertu f. sont préférables 7beauté f. trichesse. Je préfère  
the modesty and virtue of your sister, to the beauty and riches of your  
<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> de <sup>1</sup> <sup>†</sup>  
cousin. Peace<sup>7</sup> and plenty<sup>7</sup> make men<sup>7</sup> happy. (Let us preserve) the  
cousine. Paix f. 2abondance rendent hommes heureux. conservons <sup>1</sup>  
peace and plenty which we enjoy. Patience and perseverance are  
<sup>3</sup> dont nous jouissons. 7patience f. 7persévérance f. sont  
necessary to happiness. I admire the patience and perseverance of  
nécessaires 7bonheur. m. J'admire <sup>1</sup> f. <sup>3</sup> f.  
your brother. Pride<sup>7</sup> and vanity are generally the cause of the mis-  
<sup>2orgueil</sup> 7vanité f. ordinairement <sup>1</sup> cause f <sup>1</sup> mal-  
fortunes of men. (Let us go) into the garden to see if the fruit is  
heur 7homme. allons dans <sup>1</sup> jardin m.— voir si <sup>1</sup> fruit m. est.  
ripe. Which fruit do you<sup>51</sup> like best? Gooseberries or strawber-  
mûr. Quel — aimez-vous le mieux? 7groseille ou 7fraise?  
ries? I do not<sup>55</sup> like gooseberries; I like cherries and peaches.  
Je— n' aime pas <sup>7</sup> J' aime 7cerise 7pêche.  
Children generally like fruit. I prefer milk<sup>7</sup> and cheese to fruit  
enfant <sup>7</sup> en général aiment <sup>7</sup> Je préfère lait m. <sup>7</sup> fromage m. <sup>7</sup>

*OF expressed by DE; not by du, de la, des.*

8. Observe that the preposition *of* before a noun used in a

\* When you speak of a substance, you either mean it *Whole*, or in *Parts*.

If you mean the *Whole* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun that names it, is said to be used in a *General sense*; as, *Wine cheers the heart of man*, i. e. that substance in general known by the name of *Wine*, cheers the heart of man.

If you mean some *Particular sort* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun is said to be used in a *Particular sense*: as, *The wine which we drank was good*; in speaking thus, I do not mean to say, that all the substance called wine is good, for there is bad wine, but that *particular sort* which we drank was good.

If you neither mean the whole, nor any particular sort of the substance spoken of, but a certain *Portion*, or *Quantity* of it; as when you say, *Give me some wine*, *A glass of wine*; i. e. a *portion* of the substance called wine, the noun is said to be used in a *Partitive sense*.

† See \* page 47.

*general sense*,\* preceded by another noun, used in a *parative sense*, cannot be expressed by *du, de la, des*, which would render the expression *particular*,\* and mean *of the*, it must be expressed by *de* only, without any regard to gender or number; as,

He gave me a pound <i>of</i> bread,	Il me donna une livre <i>de</i> pain,
a piece <i>of</i> meat,	un morceau <i>de</i> viande,
a bag <i>of</i> money,	un sac <i>d'</i> argent,
a heap <i>of</i> clothes.	un tas <i>d'</i> habits.

Not, Une livre *du* pain; Un morceau *de la* viande, &c. which would mean *a pound of the bread; a piece of the meat, &c.*

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words, which, though they have no sign after them in english, require the connective particle *de* to unite them to the noun which follows them:

assez, <i>enough</i> ;	as,	assez	<i>de</i> pain..
beaucoup, <i>much, many</i> ;		beaucoup	<i>de</i> viande.
combien, <i>how much, how many</i> ;		combien	<i>d'</i> argent.
tant, <i>so much, so many</i> ;		tant	<i>d'</i> habits.
autant, <i>as much, as many</i> ;		autant	<i>de</i> pain.
plus, <i>more</i> ;		plus	<i>de</i> viande.
moins, <i>less</i> ;		moins	<i>d'</i> argent.
trop, <i>too much, too many</i> ;		trop	<i>d'</i> habits.
peu,		peu	<i>de</i> pain.
guère,† } <i>little, few</i> ;		guère	<i>de</i> viande.
pas, point, <i>no, not</i> ;		pas, or point,	<i>d'</i> argent.
jamais, <i>never</i> ;		jamais,	<i>d'</i> habits.

Not, assez *du* pain,‡ &c. which would mean *enough of the bread, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

I have bought a pair *of* boots, and two pairs *of* shoes. Drink a  
 J'ai acheté 1 paire f. 8 botte, deux 8 soulier. Buvez 1  
 glass *of* wine. Have a *little* patience. 8 This is (a day) *of* rest.  
 verre m. vin. Ayez un peu n.b. C' est (aujourd'hui jour) 8 repos.  
 I have *many* things 8 to do. I have *no* money 8, and I have very  
 beaucoup choses n.b. à faire. Je n'ai pas argent n.b. j' ai très  
 few friends. 8 You have *more* property 8 than I have. I have not 55  
 peu ami. n.b. avez plus bien n.b. que moi — Je n'ai pas  
 (so many) friends 8 as you. Your friends have (as much) interest as  
 tant n.b. que ont autant 8 n.b. crédit que

\* See note \* page 49.

† See note † page 47.

‡ Observe that *guère* is used only in *negative* sentences.

§ It appears from the foregoing examples that, when two nouns come together in french, they must be connected by some sign, and this sign is determined by the sense in which the nouns are used.

If, as in the first instance (rule 7.), the nouns are used in an *unlimited* signification, they must be connected by the sign which denotes that idea, viz. *du, de la, des*.

But if, as in the second instance (rule 8), the *extent of the second noun is determined by the first*, then a simple preposition is sufficient to connect them.

mine. Give me *little* wine<sup>8</sup> and *much* water.<sup>8</sup> You give me<sup>24</sup>  
 les miens. Donnez-moi peu <sup>N.B.</sup> eau.<sup>N.B.</sup> Vous me<sup>24</sup> donnez  
 (too much) wine<sup>8</sup>; you do not<sup>55</sup> give me<sup>24</sup> water enough<sup>8</sup>. I never<sup>8</sup>  
 trop <sup>N.B.</sup> vous — ne me<sup>24</sup> donnez pas assez. <sup>N.B.</sup> Je ne<sup>55</sup>  
 drink wine<sup>8</sup> without putting a (*good deal*) of water<sup>8</sup> (into it<sup>24</sup>).  
 bois jamais. <sup>N.B.</sup> sans y<sup>24</sup> mettre — beaucoup <sup>N.B.</sup> —.

## SOME, ANY; DU, de LA, DES.

9. If you want to express only a *part* of the substance of which you are speaking; as, *some bread, some meat, &c.* use before the noun one of the partitive signs *du, de la, des*, agreeably to gender and number. These signs are the same as those of the definite article of *the*; as,

He gave me *some* bread,  
*some* meat,  
*some* money,  
*some* clothes,

Il me donna *du* pain,  
*de la* viande,  
*de l'* argent,  
*des* habits.

i. e. a portion of *the* bread, of *the* meat, of *the* money, of *the* clothes.

N. B. The sign *some* is often understood in english, before such nouns as *bread, meat, money, &c.*, but the sign which represents it in french, cannot be omitted; and it must be repeated before every noun; as,

He gave me bread, meat, money, clothes; i. e. *some* bread, *some* meat.  
 Il me donna *du* pain, *de la* viande, *de l'* argent, *des* habits

## EXERCISE.

*The dinner is on the table. Will you have meat?* <sup>N.B.</sup> or fish<sup>N.B.</sup>?  
 diner m. est sur f. Voulez-vous — viande f. ou poisson m.?  
 Will you have *some* beef and cabbage; *some* mutton and turnips? I  
 — beuf m. 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> choux; plur. mouton m. 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> navet? Je  
 (shall eat) *some* fish and potatoes. Bring me *some* salt and pepper.  
 mangerai 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> (pommes de terre.) Apportez-moi sel m. 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> poivre m.  
 What will you drink? Will you have beer<sup>9</sup>, or cider<sup>9</sup>? I (will drink)  
 Que voulez-vous boire? — bière, f. ou cidre m.? Je boirai  
*some* wine and water.<sup>9</sup> Put *some* bread and cheese, on *the* table.  
 vin m. 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> eau. Mettez pain m. 9 <sup>N.B.</sup> fromage, m. sur f.

Except *some, any*, expressed by *de*; not by *du, de la, des*.

10. The partitive signs *du, de la, des*, require the noun immediately after them; therefore if a noun used in a partitive sense is preceded by an *adjective*, use *de* before that adjective, for both genders and numbers, instead of *du, de la, des*, before the noun; as,

He gave me very *good* bread,  
*excellent* meat,  
*fine* clothes,

Il me donna *de* très bon pain,  
*d'* excellente viande,  
*de* beaux habits

N. B. But if the adjective comes after the noun, then the

noun resumes its proper sign, as in Rule 9th, viz. *du, de la, des*; as,

We have excellent wine,	Nous avons <i>du</i> vin excellent,
well acquired glory,	<i>de la</i> gloire bien acquise,
ready money,	<i>de l'</i> argent comptant,
rural pleasures,	<i>des</i> plaisirs champêtres.

And also when the noun and the adjective forms only one word; as,

New peas,	<i>Des petits pois.</i>
Grand-mothers,	<i>Des grand-mères.</i>

## EXERCISE.

(This is) 10excellent wine, but (that is) 10very bad beer. Have you any  
 Voici excellent vin, mais voilà très mauvaise bière. Avez-vous 10  
 good beer in France? No; but we have 10good wine and good brandy.  
 bonne bière en Non; nous avons bon 10 bonne (eau de vie.)  
 Good small beer is better than bad wine. You must have fine  
 10bonne petite bière est meilleure que 10mauvais devez avoir 10beau  
 fruit in France. Yes; we have very fine fruit. (Are there) any large trees  
 en Oui; avons 10très beau Y a-t-il 10 grands arbre  
 in your garden? No; (There are only) young trees. Have you not  
 dans 1 jardin? Non; (il n'y a que) 10jeunes N'avez-vous pas  
 better pens to lend me? I have good pens, but bad 10 ink.  
 10meilleures plume à me24 prêter 24? J'ai 10bonnes mais mauvaise encre.

*How to place two Nouns together.*

11. When *two nouns* come together, the French always place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with *du, de la, des, de, or à*, before the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

<i>Peter's</i> book,	<i>Le livre DE Pierre.</i>	
<i>i. e.</i> the book of <i>Peter</i> .		
<i>Some</i> London beer,	<i>De la bière DE Londres.</i>	} DE, 4th rule, proper names.
<i>i. e.</i> <i>Some</i> beer of London.		
<i>The master's</i> pen,	<i>La plume DU maître.</i>	
<i>i. e.</i> the pen of the master.		
<i>The street</i> door,	<i>La porte DE LA rue.</i>	} DU, DE LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
<i>i. e.</i> the door of the street.		
<i>A gold</i> watch,	<i>Une montre D' or.</i>	
<i>i. e.</i> a watch of gold.		
<i>Some silk</i> stockings,	<i>Des bas DE soie.</i>	} DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.
<i>i. e.</i> <i>Some</i> stockings of silk.		

## EXERCISE.

Where is William's4 hat? Have you seen Mary's4 apron?

Où est Guillaume chapeau? Avez-vous vu Marie tablier m.?

Will you drink a glass of Port4 wine8? Nature's7 voice7 proclaims  
 Voulez-vous boire verre m. vin? Nature f. voix f. proclame  
 god's4 power7. Ignorance7 is the mother of error7. Have you seen my  
 dieu pouvoir.m. 2 Ignorance mère 2 erreur. vu  
 father's4 horse7? I (will wait for you24) at the garden, gate7, or (at the)  
 cheval? Je (vous24 attendrai) à jardin m. porte, f. ou au

corner of my sister's house<sup>7</sup>. Shut the kitchen door<sup>7</sup>, and open the  
 coin m. maison. f. Fermez <sup>7</sup>cuisine f. porte, f. ouvrez :  
 parlour<sup>7</sup> window. Bring my gold<sup>8</sup> watch, and clean my silver<sup>9</sup>  
 salle f. 7fenêtre. f. Apportez l or montre, f. nettoyez l argent  
 buckles.  
 boucle.

12. Sometimes however the order of the words could not be changed in english in the above manner, without changing also their meaning ; for ex. *a wine glass, an ink bottle, a tea spoon*, could not be changed into *a glass of wine, a bottle of ink, a spoon of tea* ; yet the nouns require this order in french ; but instead of *de* between the two nouns, we use *à*.

N. B. This is done when the first noun denotes the use of the other ; as,

*A wine glass, i. e. a glass used for wine.*

*Un verre à vin.*

*A tea spoon, i. e. a spoon used for tea.*

*Une cuiller à thé.*

## EXERCISE.

Give me the wine<sup>12</sup> bottle, and the water<sup>12</sup> pot. Put some wine<sup>12</sup>  
 Donnez-moi vin bouteille, f. eau pot. m. Mettez  
 glasses on the table. Bring the tea<sup>12</sup> board and the coffee<sup>12</sup> cups.  
 verre sur table. f. Apportez thé cabaret m. café tasse.  
 There is no powder<sup>8</sup> in my powder<sup>12</sup> bag. (Let us go) and sit  
 Il n'y a pas poudren. s. dans sac. m. Allons — (nous asseoir.)  
 in the dining<sup>12</sup> room. Have you any fire<sup>12</sup> arms in your house ?  
 dans dîner chambre f. Avez 9 feu arme maison f. ?

## CHAPTER IV.

## ADJECTIVE.

An *adjective* is a word joined to a noun, to denote some quality or circumstance belonging to that noun ; as, good *bread*, bad *meat*, &c.

13. The *adjective* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which it qualifies.

An adjective is made feminine by adding *e* mute to the masculine ; as,

(That is) a *pretty* boy.

Voilà un *joli* garçon.

(This is) a *pretty* girl.

Voici une *jolie* fille.

He is well *dressed*.

Il est bien *Habillé*.

She is very well *dressed*.

Elle est très bien *habillée*.

Except the adjectives ending in *e* mute, which are of both genders ; as,

Un *jeune* homme *aimable*.

An *amiable* young man.

Une *jeune* femme *aimable*.

An *amiable* young woman.

And the adjectives in *x*, which change *x* into *se* for the feminine ; as,

Mon frère est paresseux.  
Ma sœur est paresseuse.

My brother is lazy.  
My sister is lazy.

The plural number of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* or *x* to the singular ; see nouns, page 41, ex.

Une jolie fille. A pretty girl. Un beau chapeau. A fine hat.  
De jolies filles. Pretty girls. De beaux chapeaux. Fine hats.

N. B. A past participle used to qualify a noun, or coming after the verb to *be* to express an action or the state of the noun, follows the same rules as an adjective ; ex.

My brother is gone out.  
My sister is gone out.

Mon frère est sorti.  
Ma sœur est sortie.

## EXERCISE.

Your brother is diligent ; your sister is diligent<sup>13</sup> ; your brothers are diligent<sup>13</sup> ; your sisters are diligent<sup>13</sup>. Your father is esteemed<sup>13</sup> ; your mother is esteemed<sup>13</sup> ; your sons are esteemed<sup>13</sup> ; your daughters are esteemed<sup>13</sup>. That boy is very civil<sup>13</sup> ; that girl is very civil<sup>13</sup> ; these gentlemen are very civil<sup>13</sup> ; these ladies are very civil<sup>13</sup>. Our man servant is lazy<sup>13</sup> ; our maid servant is lazy<sup>13</sup> ; our men servants are lazy<sup>13</sup> ; our maid servants are lazy<sup>13</sup>. My son is very young<sup>13</sup> ; my daughter is very young<sup>13</sup> ; my sons are very young<sup>13</sup> ; my daughters are very young<sup>13</sup>. Your cousin is very amiable<sup>13</sup> ; she is officious<sup>13</sup> and complaisant<sup>13</sup>.

14. If an adjective qualifies several nouns singular of the same gender, that adjective must be of the same gender as those nouns, and plural ; as,

Her father and her uncle are angry.  
Her mother and her aunt are angry.

Son père et son oncle sont fâchés.  
Sa mère et sa tante sont fâchées.

15. But if the nouns are of different genders, the adjective must be of the masculine gender, and in the plural number ; as,

Her father and mother are angry. Son père et sa mère sont fâchés.

## EXERCISE.

My mother and sister are ready. His daughter and his niece are civil and obliging. Her son and daughter are dead<sup>15</sup>. The horse and civil<sup>14</sup> obligant<sup>14</sup> 1 1 fils 3 mort.\* cheval

\* The masculine singular only of adjectives is here given ; the learner must make the adjective of the gender and number which the noun requires, agreeably to the above rules



the cow have *escaped*<sup>15</sup>. The gate and the door were *open*<sup>14</sup>. The vache (se sont) échappé.\* 1 barrière f. porte f. étaient ouvert.\*  
man and the woman were *gone*. I found a glass and a bottle *broken*. étaient parti\*. Je trouvai verre m. bouteille f. cassé.\*

16. Adjectives are generally placed in english *before* the noun ; in french they are placed *after* the noun ; as,

A red coat.	A round table.	A new house.
Un habit rouge.	Une table ronde.	Une maison neuve.

17. Except these adjectives, which are generally placed *before* the noun ; *premier*, 1st ; *second*, 2d ; and *all* the adjectives of *number*.

<i>beau, bel, m.</i> } fine,	<i>mauvais</i> , bad.
<i>belle, fem.</i> } handsome.	<i>méchant</i> , wicked.
<i>bon, m. bonne, f.</i> good	<i>meilleur</i> , better.
<i>grand</i> , great, large.	<i>moindre</i> , less.
<i>gros, m. grosse, f.</i> big.	<i>petit</i> , little, small.
<i>jeune</i> , young.	<i>tout</i> , all, whole.
<i>joli</i> , pretty.	<i>vieux, m. vieille, f.</i> old ; †
A good husband.	A handsome woman.
Un bon mari.	Une belle femme.
	A pretty little bird.
	Un joli petit oiseau.

## EXERCISE.

England is a *fruitful* country. The *english*<sup>16</sup> nation has made several  
Angleterre est 1 fertile<sup>16</sup> pays. m. 1 anglais<sup>13</sup> nation f. a fait plusieurs†  
*useful*<sup>16</sup> discoveries. Your sister is a *charming*<sup>16</sup> woman. She has the  
utile<sup>13</sup> découverte. est 1 charmant<sup>13</sup> femme. Elle a 1  
most *engaging*<sup>16</sup> manners<sup>7</sup>. Does she<sup>51</sup> know the *french*<sup>16</sup> language ?  
plus engageant<sup>13</sup> manières f. — sait elle<sup>51</sup> 1 français<sup>13</sup> langue f ?  
I have met her near the *white*<sup>16</sup> house. She lives in a *small*<sup>17</sup>  
Je 1 25 ai rencontrée<sup>25</sup> (près de) 1 blanche maison. f. demeure dans 13  
house in a *large* garden. It is an *old*<sup>17</sup> house, and (there is) a *bad*<sup>17</sup> road  
maison f. 1 17 jardin. m. C'est 1 vieille il y a chemin m.  
to go (to it) but it is the best<sup>17</sup> situation in this neighbourhood.  
pour y 24 aller 24 mais c'est 1 meilleur<sup>13</sup> f. dans 1 voisinage. m.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

The same words which serve to qualify nouns, serve also by the means of certain *adverbs* to *compare* their qualities.

18. The comparative of *superiority*, *more* before the adjective, or *r* or *er* added to it, is formed in french by *plus*† before the adjective ; as,

I am more *strong*, or *stronger* than you. Je suis *plus fort que* vous.

19. The comparative of *inferiority*, *less*, or *not so* before the adjective, is formed by *moins*,§ or *pas si* before the adjective ; as,

\* A participle used to qualify a noun, follows the same rule as an adjective ; 13r. n. s.  
† Add to them *MEME*, *same*, and *PLUSIEURS*, *several*, which also come before the noun.

‡ Except *MILLEUR*, better ; *PIRE*, worse ; adjectives, } which are comparatives  
MIEUX, better ; PIS, worse ; adverbs, } of themselves.  
§ Except *MOINDRE*, less ; adjective, }

I am *less* strong than you.

I am *not so* strong as you.

Je suis *moins* fort *que* vous.

Je ne suis *pas si* fort *que* vous.

20. The comparative of *equality*, formed by *as* before the adjective is formed in french by *aussi* before the adjective ; as,

I am *as* strong as you.

Je suis *aussi* fort *que* vous.

21. The superlative *most* or *least* before the adjective, or *st* or *est* added to it, is formed by adding *le*, *la*, *les*, to the comparative words *plus*, *moins*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

My brother is the *strongest*.

My sister is the *least* strong.

Mon frère est *le plus* fort.

Ma sœur est *la moins* forte.

#### EXERCISE.

The country is *more* pleasant than the town. My horse is *younger*  
 1 campagne f. est 18 agréable que 1 ville. f. 1 cheval jeune 18  
 and runs *faster* than yours. That house is *larger* 18 and *more*  
 court vite 18 le vôtre. maison-là f. grand 13 18  
 convenient than this 14, but this 14 is *better* built. You write *better*  
 commode celle-ci. celle-ci (x) bâti. 13 écrivez (x)  
 than I do, because you have 10 *better* pens. Vice 7 is *less* dangerous  
 moi —, parceque (x) plume. f. Vice m. 19 dangereux  
 than hypocrisy 7. She is not *so* handsome as her sister, but she is *more*  
 2 hypocrisie. Elle n'est pas 19 belle 19 sœur, elle est  
 amiable. She is *as* rich as you. She is the *handsomest* woman in  
 aimable 20 riche 20 1 belle 21 (r)  
 the town. Her father is the *proudest* 21 man that I have ever known.  
 ville. f. orgueilleux 16 que aie (a) jamais connu.

## CHAPTER V.

### PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to represent a *noun* ; as, when I say, *I*, instead of naming my own name ; *thou*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, instead of naming that of another being.

(x) Beginners are apt to mistake the words MEILLEUR & MIEUX, which are both expressed by *BETTER*.

MEILLEUR, *better*, is the comparative of *BON*, *good*, an adjective, and is added to nouns ; as,

My pen is *good*, yours is *better*.

Ma plume est *BONNE*, la vôtre est *MEILLEURE*.

MIEUX, *better*, is the comparative of *BIEN*, *well*, an adverb, and is added to verbs ;

as, I write *well*, but you write *better*. J'écris *BIEN*, mais vous écrivez *MIEUX*.

(r) *IN*, after a superlative, is expressed in french in the same manner as *OF* ; ex.

She is the finest woman in the town. C'est la plus belle femme de la ville,

(g) *QUI*, *QUE*, *DONT*, after a superlative require the verb in the subjunctive ; as,  
 She is the finest woman I have ever seen. C'est la plus belle femme que j'aie jamais vue.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of *personal*, *relative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*.

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are either *agents* or *nominatives*, of verbs, or they are *objects*.

The *nominat.* are, I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye, you, they.

The *objects* are, me, thee, him, her, it, us, you, them.

## OF AGENTS OR NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

22. When *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*, are the *nominative* of a verb, i. e. when there is before or after them, a verb of the same *number* and *person* that agrees with them, they are,

<i>I.</i>	<i>Je.</i>	<i>He, it.</i>	<i>Il.</i>
<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Tu.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Ils.</i>
<i>We.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, it.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles.</i>

N. B. The *nominative* pronouns keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english; ex.

*I* have. *Thou* hast. *He* has, &c. Have *I*? Hast *thou*? Has *he*? &c.

*J'ai.* *Tu* as. *Il* a, &c. *Ai je*? *As tu*? *A-t-il*? &c.

## EXERCISE.

*I* speak. *Thou* writest. *He* plays. *She* sings. *We* walk. *You* dance.  
*parle.* *écris.* *joue.* *chante.* *marchons.* *dansez.*  
*They* study. Have *you* done? Is *he* come? Are *they* gone?  
*étudiant.* Avez *fini*? Est *venu*? Sont *partis*?

23. If *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*, have not a verb to agree with them, or if they are joined to another substantive,\* they are,

<i>I.</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	<i>He.</i>	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Eux.</i>
<i>We.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, it.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles, ex.</i>

It is *I* who have done that. C'est *moi* qui ai fait cela.

*He* and *I* have done that. *Lui* et *moi* nous avons fait cela.

*You* and *they* have done that. *Vous* et *eux* vous avez fait cela.

## EXERCISE.

Who has done that? It is not *I*; it is *he*. It was neither  
 Qui a fait cela? Ce n'est pas *23* c'est *23*. Ce n'était ni  
*he* nor *I*, it was either *you* or *they*. *He* and *I* were together.  
*23* ni *23* c' était ou ou *23* *23* *23* (nous étions) ensemble.  
 I can do that better than *he*. You can not do it *24* better than *I*.  
*22* puis faire cela (x) que *23* ne pouvez pas le *24* faire (x) *23*

\* By *substantive* is meant here every word which either *names* or *represents* a substance.

## OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

*A Table showing how the Objective Pronouns are expressed, according to the place which they keep with the Verb.*

	Before the verb. 24, 25, 27, rules.	After the verb. 26 rule.	After a preposition. 28 rule.
<i>Me,</i>	}	<i>Me.</i>	<i>Moi.</i>
<i>to Me.</i>			<i>Moi.</i>
<i>Thee,</i>	}	<i>Te.</i>	<i>Toi.</i>
<i>to Thee.</i>			<i>Toi.</i>
<i>Himself,</i>	}	<i>Se.</i>	<i>Soi.</i>
<i>Herself,</i>			
<i>Itself,</i>			
<i>Themselves.</i>			
Whether before or after the verb. 24, 25, 26, 27, rules.			
<i>Us,</i>	}	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>
<i>to Us.</i>			
<i>You,</i>	}	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>
<i>to You.</i>			
<i>Him,</i>	}	<i>Le.</i>	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>It; mas.</i>			
<i>Her,</i>	}	<i>La.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>It; fem.</i>			
<i>Them.</i>		<i>Les.</i>	{ <i>Eux, m.</i> <i>Elles, f.</i>
<i>to Him,</i>	}	<i>Lui.</i>	
<i>to Her.</i>			
<i>to Them.</i>		<i>Leur.</i>	
<i>of, from,</i>	{ <i>It,</i>	<i>En.</i>	
<i>for, with</i>			
<i>to, at,</i>	{ <i>It,</i>	<i>Y. (н)</i>	
<i>in, by</i>			

This table shows in one point of view all the rules concerning the *objective* pronouns.

These pronouns, as you see in the table above, are sometimes governed by verbs, and sometimes by prepositions.

When the objective pronouns are governed by a verb, they are placed invariably before that verb. See rules 24, 25, and 27.

Except when the verb *commands*, for then the pronouns must be placed *after* the verb, and *moi, toi* must be used, instead of *me, te*. See rule 26.

If the pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are then independent of the verb, and must be placed *after* the preposition. See rule 28.

---

(н) *En, y*, are also adverbs of place, used, *en* for *thence*; *y* for *there, thither*, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

*The order which the Objective Pronouns keep with the Verb.*

## GENERAL RULE.

24. When the pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them*, are governed by a verb, the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, en, y*, which represent them, must be placed immediately before that verb ; ex.

He sees <i>me</i> .	Il <i>me</i> voit.	literally	he <i>me</i>	} sees.
<i>thee</i> .	Il <i>te</i> voit.		he <i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> .	Il <i>nous</i> voit.		he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	Il <i>vous</i> voit.		he <i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	Il <i>le</i> voit.		he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	Il <i>la</i> voit.		he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> .	Il <i>les</i> voit.		he <i>them</i>	} sees he?
Does he see <i>me</i> ?	<i>me</i> voit-il?		<i>me</i>	
<i>thee</i> ?	<i>te</i> voit-il?		<i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	<i>nous</i> voit-il?		<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	<i>vous</i> voit-il?		<i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	<i>le</i> voit-il?		<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	<i>la</i> voit-il?		<i>her, or it</i>	}
<i>them</i> ?	<i>les</i> voit-il?		<i>them</i>	

He does not see *me*; &c. Il *ne me* voit pas. he *me* sees not.  
 Does he not see *me*? &c. Ne *me* voit-il pas? *me* sees he not?  
 Does he not see *thee*? &c. Ne *te* voit-il pas? *thee* sees he not?

## EXERCISE.

I see *you*. I see *him*. I see *her*. I see *them*. Do you<sup>51</sup> see *me*?  
 vois 24 24 24 24 \*— voyez-vous 24  
 Do you see *us*? Do you see *him*? Do you see *her*? Do you see  
 — 51 24 — 51 24 — 51 24 — 51  
*them*? I do not<sup>55</sup> know *you*. I do not know *him*. I do not know  
 24 — ne connais pas 24 — 55 24 — 55  
*her*. I do not know *them*. Do you<sup>51</sup> not know *me*? Do you  
 24 — 55 24 — ne connaissez-vous pas 24! — 51  
 not know *us*? Do you not know *him*? Do you not know *her*?  
 55 24! — 55 24! — 55 24  
 Do you not know *them*? I meet *them* sometimes, but I do not<sup>55</sup>  
 — 55 24! rencontre 24 quelquefois, — ne  
 speak (to *them*.) Have you seen your mother lately? I saw *her*  
 parle pas — leur<sup>24</sup>. Avez vu depuis peu? vis 24  
 yesterday. Did she<sup>51</sup> bring *you* any thing? She brought *me* a  
 hier. —\* apporta-t-elle 24 quelque chose! apporta 24  
 new book. Did you<sup>51</sup> tell *her* that I wished to see *her*?  
 nouveau livre. m. — dites-vous lui<sup>24</sup> que souhaitais — voir la<sup>24</sup>?  
 I told *her* that we (should go) to see *her* on sunday. What did  
 dis lui<sup>24</sup> que irions — voir la<sup>24</sup> — dimanche. Qua  
 she<sup>51</sup> say to *you*? She told *me* that she (would be) glad to see *us*.  
 dit-elle — 24 dit 24 qu' serait (bien aise) de voir 24

\* When the English ask a question, they are obliged to have recourse to the signs *do, does, did*; as, *Do I learn well? Does thou learn well? Does he learn well? Does your brother learn well? Does your sister learn well? Do we learn well? Do you learn well? Do they learn well? Do your brothers learn well? Do your sisters learn well? Did I learn well? &c.*; the French, as you see, do not require any signs, and when these signs occur in english, they must be left out in french.

*The order which several objective pronouns keep together.*

29. When *several* objective pronouns are governed by the same verb they must be placed *together* in the following order :

<i>Before the verb, 24, 25 rules.</i>		<i>After the verb, 26 rule.</i>	<i>Whether bef. or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 r.</i>
Me,	} bef. <i>le, la, les, y, en.</i>	Le,	} bef. <i>moi, toi.</i>
Nous,		La,	
Toi,		Les,	
Vous,		Y,	
Se,			
			Me, } bef. <i>en.</i> Toi, }

*Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.*

Le,	} bef. <i>lui, leur, y, en.</i>
La,	
Les,	
Lui,	} bef. <i>y, en.</i>
Leur,	
Y,	bef. <i>en ?</i>

Having uniformly observed that the arrangement of *several* pronouns together is one of those rules which learners find the greatest difficulty to attain, I have given examples showing how *several* pronouns are placed together in all possible instances, by the means of which errors may always be rectified.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.  
FIRST PERSON. IMPERATIVE COMMANDING.

He gave him or it to me.	Il me le donna.	Donnez-le-moi.	Give it me, &c. Send me there, &c.
He gave her or it to me.	Il me la donna.	Donnez-la-moi.	
He gave them to me.	Il me les donna.	Donnez-les-moi.	
He gave me some.	Il m'en donna.	Donnez-m'en.	
He gave him or it to us.	Il nous le donna.	Donnez-nous-le.	
He gave her or it to us.	Il nous la donna.	Donnez-nous-la.	
He gave them to us.	Il nous les donna.	Donnez-nous-les.	
He gave us some.	Il nous en donna.	Donnez-nous-en.	
He sent me there.	Il m'y envoya.	Envoyez-y-moi.	
He sent him, her, or it to me there.	Il me l'y envoya.	Envoyez-l'y-moi.	
He sent them to me there.	Il me les y envoya.	Envoyez-les-y-moi.	
He sent me some there.	Il m'y en envoya.	Envoyez-y-en-moi.	
He sent us there.	Il nous y envoya.	Envoyez-nous-y.	
He sent him, her, or it to us there.	Il nous l'y envoya.	Envoyez-nous-l'y.	
He sent them to us there.	Il nous les y envoya.	Envoyez-nous-les-y.	
He sent some to us there.	Il nous y en envoya.	Envoyez-nous-y-en.	

SECOND PERSON.

He gave him or it to thee.	Il te le donna.	Représente-le-toi.	Represent it to thee, &c.
He gave her or it to thee.	Il te la donna.	Représente-la-toi.	
He gave them to thee.	Il te les donna.	Représente-les-toi.	
He gave thee some.	Il t'en donna.	Représente-t'en.	
He gave him or it to you.	Il vous le donna.	Représentez-vous-le.	
He gave her or it to you.	Il vous la donna.	Représentez-vous-la.	
He gave them to you.	Il vous les donna.	Représentez-vous-les.	
He gave you some.	Il vous en donna.	Représentez-vous-en.	
He sent thee there.	Il t'y envoya.		
He sent him, her, or it to thee there.	Il te l'y envoya.		
He sent them to thee there.	Il te les y envoya.		
He sent some to thee there.	Il t'y en envoya.		
He sent you there.	Il vous y envoya.	Transportez-vous-y.	
He sent him, her, or it to you there.	Il vous l'y envoya.		
He sent them to you there.	Il vous les y envoya.		
He sent some to you there.	Il vous y en envoya.	Informez-vous-en.	

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

## THIRD PERSON.

He recalls him or it to himself.	Il se le rappelle.	
He recalls her or it to himself.	Il se la rappelle.	
He recalls them to himself.	Il se les rappelle.	
He repents of it, of them.	Il s'en repent.	
He applies himself to it, to them.	Il s'y applique.	
He has given him or it to him, to her.	Il le lui a donné.	Donnez-le-lui.
He has given her or it to him, to her.	Il la lui a donnée.	Donnez-la-lui.
He has given them to him, to her.	Il les lui a donnés.	Donnez-les-lui.
He has given him or it to them.	Il le leur a donné.	Donnez-le-leur.
He has given her or it to them.	Il la leur a donnée.	Donnez-la-leur.
He has given them to them.	Il les leur a donnés.	Donnez-les-leur.
He warned him, or her of it.	Il l'en avertit.	Avertissez-l'en.
He warned them of it.	Il les en avertit.	Avertissez-les-en.
He sent him, her or it there.	Il l'y envoya.	Envoyez-l'y.
He sent them there.	Il les y envoya.	Envoyez-les-y.
He sent him or it to him, to her there.	Il le lui y envoya.	Envoyez-le-lui-y.*
He sent her or it to him, to her there.	Il la lui y envoya.	Envoyez-la-lui-y.
He sent them to him, to her there.	Il les lui y envoya.	Envoyez-les-lui-y.
He sent him or it to them there.	Il le leur y envoya.	Envoyez-le-leur-y.
He sent her or it to them there.	Il la leur y envoya.	Envoyez-la-leur-y.
He sent them to them there.	Il les leur y envoya.	Envoyez-les-leur-y.
He sent some to him, to her.	Il lui en envoya.	Envoyez-lui-en.
He sent some to them, or them some.	Il leur en envoya.	Envoyez-leur-en.
He sent some to him, to her there.	Il lui y en envoya.	Envoyez-lui-y-en.
He sent some to them there.	Il leur y en envoya.	Envoyez-leur-y-en.
He sent some (s) there.	Il y en envoya.	Envoyez-y-en.

Give it him, &amp;c. Send it to him there, &amp;c.

## EXERCISE.

I have brought you the book which I had promised you. Where  
 al apporté 25 livre m. que avais promis 25 Où  
 is it? Shew it<sup>29</sup> me. I (will shew) it<sup>24</sup> you (by and by.) Will you give  
 est-il? Montrez-le 26 montrerai le 29 tantôt. Voulez donner  
 it<sup>24</sup> me? Give it<sup>26</sup> me. I can not give it<sup>24</sup> you. It does not belong  
 le 29 Donnez-le 29 ne puis pas donner let 29 Il — n'est pas  
 to me. I (will lend) it<sup>24</sup> you. When will you<sup>51</sup> lend it<sup>24</sup> me?  
 à 26 prêterai le 29 Quand — prêterez-vous le 29?  
 Lend it<sup>29</sup> me now. I (will return) it<sup>24</sup> to you (to-morrow.) I (will lend)  
 Prêtez-le 26 à présent. rendrai le — 29 demain. prêterai  
 it<sup>24</sup> you next<sup>16</sup> week<sup>7</sup>. I (shall be) in the country then. I (will send)  
 le 29 prochaine semaine. f. serai à campagne f. alors. enverrai  
 them to you there. You will not find (any body) to bring them  
 24 — 29 y 29 — ne trouverez personne pour apporter 24  
 to me there. I (will take) them to you there myself. Has she given  
 — 29 y 29 porterai 24 — 29 moi-même. A-t-elle donné  
 him<sup>25</sup> any money? No; she has lent him<sup>25</sup> a guinea. Tell her<sup>26</sup>  
 (1) 9 argent? Non; prêté (1) 1 guinée, f. Dites (1)  
 not to lend him<sup>24</sup> any more, for he will never return it<sup>24</sup> her.  
 de ne pas prêter (1) (s)<sup>29</sup> davantage, car — ne<sup>55</sup> rendra jamais le (1)<sup>29</sup>

\* LUI y is grammatical, but *é, i*, at the end of a sentence do not sound well, therefore, instead of *y* for *there*, use *là*, and say LUI là instead of LUI y.

(1) When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pronouns, one of them has a preposition expressed or understood, but the preposition is generally understood before the pronoun which represents the person. In these instances *him, her*, must be expressed by LUI, and *them* by LEUR, the same as when *to* is prefixed to them; ex. I will send him money, i. e. money to him. Je LUI enverrai de l'argent; not L'enverrai. I have offered them some, i. e. some to them; Je LEUR EN ai offert; not Je LES EN ai offert.

(s) Some, any, implying, of it, of them, understood after them, are expressed by EN.

† The pronouns *le, la, les*, and the objective pronouns are placed immediately before the verb they govern.

30. As there are only *two* genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the neuter pronouns *it, they, them* must be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles; le, la, les*, the same as *he, she, they; him, her, them*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say:

Of a man or a tree;

*Il est grand; je le vois. He or it is tall; I see him, or it.*

Of a woman or a flower;

*Elle est belle; regardez-la. She or it is fine; look at her, or it. (x)*

Of men or trees;

*Ils sont ici; je les ai vus. They are here; I have seen them.*

Of women or flowers;

*Elles sont belles; je les admire. They are fine; I admire them.*

#### EXERCISE.

You have a fine hat. *Il* is new. I can not wear *it*. *It* is  
avez 1 beau chapeau. m. 30 est neuf. ne saurais porter 30 (x) 30  
too small. (Here is) another; try *it*. 26 This watch has cost me  
trop petit. En voici un autre; essayez 30 (x) 1 montre f. a coûté 25  
a (good deal) of money, 8 but *it* is not 55 good; *It* does not go well.  
— beaucoup argent, n.s. 30 n'est pas bonne; 30 — ne va pas bien.  
Get *it* 26 mended. Give *it* 30 me. (That is) a good house; *it*  
Faites 30 (x) raccommoder. Donnez (x) 30 Voilà 1 bonne maison; f. 30  
is well built, but *it* is not well situated. *It* is too near the road. If  
bien bâti, 13 30 bien situé 13. 30 trop près de route. f. Si  
*it* was mine, 42 I (would sell) *it*. 24 Eat some of these grapes;  
30 était (à moi) vendrais 30 (x) Mangez (quelques-uns) 1 raisins; m.  
*they* are good. I (would rather have) apples, if *they* were ripe.  
30 bon. 13 J'aimerais mieux — 9 pommes, f. 30 étaient mûrs. 13  
*It* is not the time for apples. Is *it* astonishing that *they* are  
(L) n'est pas temps m. des (L) étonnant qu' 30 ne soient  
not 55 ripe? *It* (would be) an astonishing thing if *they* were.  
pas 13 (L) serait étonnante 16 chose f. qu' 30 le fussent.

31. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, are sometimes used without

(x) Learners are sometimes embarrassed how to discriminate *it* the object from *it* the agent or nominative, i. e. when to express *it* by *IL, ELLE*, and when by *LE, LA*.

*It* is the agent, and expressed by *IL, ELLE*, agreeably to the gender of the noun to which *it* relates, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *he or she*; as *He or it is come. IL est venu. She or it will fall. ELLE tombera.*

*It* is the object, and expressed by *LE, LA*, agreeably to the gender of the noun, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *him or her*; as, *I see him or it. Je LE vois. I know her or it. Je LA connais.*

(L) *It* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned in the sentence; as, *it* is glorious, shameful, necessary, &c.

In these instances, *it* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

*It* is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an adjective without a substantive; as,

*It* is glorious, shameful, necessary. *IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, &c.*

*It* is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective; as,

*It* is I. *It* is he. *It* is she. *It* is you. *It* is your brother. *It* is a shameful thing. *C'est moi. C'est lui. C'est elle. C'est vous. C'est votre frère. C'est une chose honteuse.*



relation to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man*, *woman*, or *people* understood; as,

*He* who is honest is esteemed; i. e. *the man* who is honest is, &c.  
Do you know *her* whom I love? i. e. *the woman* whom I love?

In this sense they are expressed;

*He*, } by *Celui*.    *She*, } by *Celle*.    *They*, } by *Ceux*; as,  
*Him*, }    *Her*, }    *Them*, }

*He* who is honest is esteemed.    *Celui* qui est honnête est estimé.  
Do you know *her* whom I love?    Connaissez-vous *celle* que j'aime?

N. B. *Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and the relative *qui*, *que*, *dont* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words sometimes are in English; they must be placed together; as,

*He* knows men but little *who* relies on their promises.

*Celui* qui compte sur les promesses des hommes ne les connaît guère;  
i. e. *He* who relies on the promises of men knows them but little.(M)

## EXERCISE.

*He* who can live dishonoured does not deserve to live. *He* who  
31 qui peut vivre déshonoré — 55 mérite de 31  
betrays a friend is unworthy of friendship. *He* can not be happy  
trahit ami m. indigne amitié 31 ne saurait — être heureux  
*whose* 31 happiness depends on others. Do not 55 trust *him* who  
dont n. s. 7 bonheur m. dépend des autres. — Ne vous fiez pas à 31  
has deceived you. *She* (of whom) you speak (will come) (by and by.)  
trompé 25 31 dont parlez viendra tantôt.  
*She* is not come (of whom) 31 you (were speaking.) Do you 51 know *her*  
31 est 55 venue n. s. parliez. — Connaissez-vous 31  
(of whom) we (are speaking?) *They* who prefer 7 riches to 7 honour  
parions ? 31 préfèrent richesses 7 honneur  
are contemptible. *They* are mistaken *who* 31 think that riches make  
méprisable 15. 31 — se trompent n. s. pensent que 7 rendent  
men 7 happy. Do you 51 know that gentleman? *He* is a physician.  
homme heureux. — Connaissez-vous 1 monsieur ? (N) médecin.  
(That is) his wife. *She* is a fine woman. *They* are 10 very honest people.  
Voilà 1 femme. (N) belle femme. (N) très honnêtes gens.

(M) We may also say without changing the order of the words :

*Celui-là* ne connaît guère les hommes qui compte sur leurs promesses;  
or *C'EST* ne connaître guère les hommes QUE DE compter sur leurs promesses;  
but these two modes of expression are more adapted to oratory than to conversation.

(N) *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, coming with the verb *BE* followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by *CE*, though the noun to which they refer has been mentioned before as,

*He* is a merchant.

*C'est un négociant.*

*She* is a milliner.

*C'est une marchande de modes.*

*They* are great rogues.

*Ce sont de grands fripons.*

N. B. If the substantive which follows the verb denotes *trade* or *profession*, *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, may be expressed by *IL*, *ELLE*, *ILS*, *ELLES*, but the article must be left out; as,

*Il est négociant.*

*ELLE est marchande de modes.*

But the learner will do well, in these instances, to use *CE* until he has seen it more fully explained, N. B., pages 209 and 211.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

<i>Who,</i>	<i>Whom,</i>	<i>Whose,</i>	<i>That,</i>	<i>Which,</i>	<i>What.</i>
<i>Qui,</i>	<i>Que,</i>	<i>Dont,</i>	<i>Quoi,</i>	<i>Quel,</i>	<i>Lequel.</i>

32. *When who, whom, whose, that, which, come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,*

Nominal Object, Present.	<i>Who,</i> <i>That,</i> <i>Which;</i>	} <i>qui.</i>	The man <i>who</i>	} comes.	<i>L' homme qui</i>	} vient.
			The horse <i>that</i>		<i>Le cheval qui</i>	
			The chaise <i>which</i>		<i>La chaise qui</i>	
	<i>Whom,</i> <i>That,</i> <i>Which;</i>	} <i>que.</i> (o)	The man <i>whom</i>	} I see.	<i>L' homme que</i>	} je vois.
			The horse <i>which</i>		<i>Le cheval que</i>	
			The coach <i>that</i>		<i>Le carrosse que</i>	
	<i>Whose,</i> <i>of Whom,</i> <i>of Which;</i>	} <i>dont.</i>	The man <i>of whom</i>	} I speak.	<i>L' homme dont</i>	} je parla.
			The horse <i>of which</i>		<i>Le cheval dont</i>	
			The chaise <i>of which</i>		<i>La chaise dont</i>	

N. B. *Qui, que, dont* must be placed immediately *after* the noun to which they relate ; as,

Is the ship arrived *which* was expected?

Le navire qu'on attendait est-il arrivé?

i. e. the ship *which* was expected, is it<sup>32</sup> arrived?

## EXERCISE.

Do you<sup>51</sup> know the master *who* teaches me french? The scholars  
— Connaissez-vous maître 32 enseigne 24 français m. ? écolliers m.  
*whom* you have recommended to me are very diligent. (This is)  
32 avez recommandés — 25 sont très 12. Voici  
the person *of whom* I (was speaking.) Have you seen the ships *that* 32  
1 personne f. 32 parlais. vu 1 navire (o)  
(are just) (come in?) You have bought a book *which* 32 is very dear.  
viennent d'arriver ! acheté livre m. (o) est très cher.  
The book *which* 32 you have bought is very dear. The book *of which*  
(o) 32  
you speak is very dear. The house is sold *which* 32 you wanted to buy.  
parlez 1 maison f. vendue n.s. voulez — acheter  
The ladies you want to see are here. The gentleman is gone *who* 32  
dame (f) voulez — voir ici. monsieur parti n.s.  
has brought you a letter. He has lost all the money he had.  
apporté 25 1 lettre. f. perdu tout 2 argent (f) avait.

(o) Persons not versed in grammatical terms, are often at a loss to distinguish the object from the *nominative*, i. e. when to express *THAT, WHICH* by *QUI*, and when by *QUE*.

To these I will observe, that *THAT, WHICH* are the *nominative*, and expressed by *QUI*, when they are followed immediately by a verb ; as,  
The coach *that* or *which* is at the door. *Le carrosse qui est à la porte.*

*THAT, WHICH* are the *object* of the verb, and expressed by *QUE*, when, between them and the verb, there is a *noun* or *pronoun* which is the *nominative* of the verb ; as,  
The coach *that* or *which* we have met. *Le carrosse que nous avons rencontré.*

(f) The distinctive pronouns *WHOM, THAT, WHICH* are often left out in english ; as, *The man I saw* ; for *the man whom I saw* ; but the corresponding words *qui, que, dont* must always be expressed in french ; as,

The man I saw, i. e. *whom* I saw.

*L'homme que je vis.*

The wine we drank, i. e. *which* we drank.

*Le vin que nous bûmes.*

The woman I speak of, i. e. *of whom* I speak.

*La femme dont je parle.*

33. After any preposition but *of*, or a preposition synonymous to it, *whom* is expressed by *qui* for both genders and numbers.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Which by	le Quel,	la Quelle,	les Quels,	les Quelles;
From Which by	du Quel,	de la Quelle,	des Quels,	des Quelles;
To, at Which by	au Quel,	à la Quelle,	aux Quels,	aux Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} I come.	L' homme avec <i>qui</i>	} je vins.
The horse <i>on which</i>		Le cheval sur <i>lequel</i>	
The chaise <i>in which</i>		La chaise dans <i>laquelle</i>	
The man <i>from whom</i>	} this fell.	L' homme de <i>qui</i>	} ceci tomba.
The horse <i>from which</i>		Le cheval du <i>quel</i>	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} he gave it.	L' homme à <i>qui</i>	} il le donna.
The horse <i>to which</i>		Le cheval au <i>quel</i>	

## EXERCISE.

You know the lady *to whom* I have spoken. The study *to which*  
 Connaissez dame 33 ai parlé 2 étude f. 33  
 he applies is not very useful. The chair *on which* you sit is  
 s'applique est 55 très utile. chaise f. sur 33 (êtes assis)  
 broken 13. The coach *in which* I came was overturned. The people  
 rompu. n.b. carrosse m. dans 33 vins fut renversé. gens m.  
*with whom* I was were very civil. (This is) the stick *with which*  
 avec 33 étais étaient civil 13. Voici bâton m. 33  
 he struck me. Where is the horse *to which* you have given the corn?  
 frappa 24. Où 33 avez donné. 2 avoine ?

34. *Who, whom, whose* used absolutely, i. e. without reference to any noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood.

*Who, whom* are then expressed by *qui* ; as,

*Who* is there? i. e. *what person* is there? *Qui* est là?  
 I know *whom* you love, i. e. *what person*, &c. Je sais *qui* vous aimez.

*Whose* is expressed by *de qui*, when it is used for *of what person* ; and by *à qui*, when it is used for *to what person* ; as,

*Whose* daughter is she? *De qui* est-elle fille ?

i. e. (*of what person*) is she the daughter ?

*Whose* house is that? *À qui* est cette maison ?

i. e. (*to what person*) does that house belong ?

## EXERCISE.

*Whom* did you send? *Whom* have you found? *Whom* did you  
 34 avez 51 envoyé ? 34 avez trouvé ? 34 avez  
 speak to 56? I know *whom* you are speaking of. 56 *Whose* hat  
 parlé à ? sais 34 — parlez de 34 chapeau m.  
 is this? *Whose* coach is that? I do not know *whose* it is.  
 est 1 ? 34 carrosse m. 1 ? — ne sais pas 34 30  
*Whose* son is he? *Whose* wife is she? *Whose* relations are they ?  
 34 fils femme ? 34 parent sont-ils ?

**WHICH INTERROGATIVE.**

In an interrogative sentence *which* requires *three* distinctions.

*Which interrogative* is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition ; as,

*Which* man?      *Which* carriage?      *Which* horses?

Or, like a substantive, joined to it by the preposition *of* ; as,

*Which of* the men?    *Which of* the carriages?    *Which of* my horses?

Or, like a pronoun used absolutely after the noun ; as,

It is one of these men;      *Which* is it?

35. *Which* interrogative joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is,

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
	<i>Which</i> ;	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles;
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>Which</i> ;	<i>de</i> Quel,	<i>de</i> Quelle,	<i>de</i> Quels,	<i>de</i> Quelles;
<i>To, at</i>	<i>Which</i> ;	<i>à</i> Quel,	<i>à</i> Quelle,	<i>à</i> Quels,	<i>à</i> Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

<i>Which</i> man	} will you have?	<i>Quel</i> homme	} voulez-vous?
<i>Which</i> carriage		<i>Quelle</i> voiture	
<i>Which</i> horses		<i>Quels</i> chevaux	

36. *Which* interrogative joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun ; as,

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
	<i>Which</i> ;	<i>le</i> Quel,	<i>la</i> Quelle	<i>les</i> Quels,	<i>les</i> Quelles;
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>Which</i> ;	<i>du</i> Quel,	<i>de la</i> Quelle	<i>des</i> Quels,	<i>des</i> Quelles;
<i>To, at</i>	<i>Which</i> ;	<i>au</i> Quel,	<i>à la</i> Quelle	<i>aux</i> Quels,	<i>aux</i> Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

<i>Which</i> of these men	} will you have ?
<i>Which</i> of the coaches	
<i>Which</i> of my horses	
<i>Lequel</i> de ces hommes	} voulez-vous ?
<i>Laquelle</i> des voitures	
<i>Lesquels</i> de mes chevaux	
<i>Which</i> is the tallest ?	<i>Lequel</i> est le plus haut ?
<i>Which</i> is the finest ?	<i>Laquelle</i> est la plus belle ?
<i>Which</i> are the best ?	<i>Lesquels</i> sont les meilleurs ?

37. *Which* sometimes implies the *demonstrative* pronoun *that* or *those* understood, this demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and *which*, as including the two words, is expressed by

<i>Celui</i> que m.	} <i>that</i> which;	<i>Ceux</i> que m.	} <i>those</i> which;
<i>Celle</i> que f.		<i>Celles</i> que f.	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

<i>Which</i> of these horses shall I ride ?	<i>Lequel</i> de ces chevaux monterai-je ?
Ride <i>which</i> you will, i. e. <i>that</i> which.	Montez <i>celui</i> que vous voudrez.

## EXERCISE.

*Which* book shall I read? *Which* of these books shall I read?  
 35 livre m. — 51 lirai-je 51! 36 1 51  
 Read *which* you please. *Which* pen shall I make use of? 56?  
 Lisez 37 il vous plaira. 35 plume f. — 51 me servirai-je de?  
*Which* of these pens shall I 51 make use of? Use *which* you will.  
 36 \* 1 — me servirai-je 56? Servez-vous de 37 voudrez  
*Which* boy shall I 51 give this to? *Which* of the boys shall I give  
 35 garçon — donnerai-je ceci 56! 36 \* 1 51  
 this to? Give it to *which* you like. *Which* lady is the handsomest?  
 56! Donnez-le 37 voudrez. 35 dame est belle 21 ?  
*Which* of these ladies is the handsomest? *Which* ladies do you  
 36 1 21 35 — 51  
 speak of 56? To *which* do you 51 give the preference? *Which*  
 parlez-vous 51 ? 36 — donnez-vous 51 préférence f.?  
 fruit do you 51 like best? *Which* of these fruits do you like best?  
 fruit m. — aimez-vous le mieux? \* 1 —  
*Which* is the ripest? Eat of *which* you like. *Which* road shall  
 est mûr 21! Mangez voudrez. route f. —  
 we go by 56? *Which* of these roads shall we go by 56? *Which*  
 51 irons par? 1 51 par ?  
 house shall we 51 go to? *Which* is the best 13? Go to *which*  
 maison f. — irons-nous 56? meilleur? Allez à  
 you choose. *Which* door must I go through? *Which* of these  
 voudrez. porte f. faut-il que je passe par 56 ?  
 doors must I go through? Go through *which* you please.  
 par 56! Passez par il vous plaira.

*What* requires the same distinction as *which*.

38. *What* followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is expressed in the same manner as *which* ;

	<i>What</i> ;	Masc. SING. Fem.	Masc. PLUR. Fem.
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>What</i> ;	Quel, Quelle,	Quels, Quelles ;
<i>To, at</i>	<i>What</i> ;	de Quel, de Quelle,	de Quels, de Quelles ;
		à Quel, à Quelle,	à Quels, à Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

*What* man } *quel* homme }  
*What* carriage } will you have? *quelle* voiture } voulez-vous ?  
*What* horses } *quels* chevaux }

It is my opinion, *what* is yours? C'est mon opinion, *quelle* est la vôtre?

## EXERCISE.

*What* man has he employed? *What* language do you 51 like best?  
 38 a-t-il employé ? 38 langue f. — aimez-vous le mieux?  
*What* study do you 51 apply to 56? *What* sort of books do  
 38 étude f. — vous 24 appliquez vous 51 ? 38 sorte f. 8 livre —  
 you 51 read? To *what* use shall I put it 24? *What* news  
 lisez-vous 51 ? 38 usage m. — 51 mettrai-je 51 le ? 38 nouvelle f  
 are you 51 speaking of? *What* is your sentiment? *What* is yours 41?  
 — parlez-vous 51 56! 38 est sentiment m. ? 38 le vôtre ?

\* *Which* may here be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

39. *What* used *absolutely*, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word *thing* understood, and is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*.

*What* is expressed by *que*, when it is the object of a verb ; as,

*What* are you doing there ? *Que* faites-vous là ?  
I do not know *what* to say to her. Je ne sais *que* lui dire.

*What* is expressed by *quoi*, when it is governed by a preposition, or used as an interjection ; ex.

*What* do you meddle with<sup>56</sup> ? De<sup>56</sup> *quoi* vous<sup>34</sup> mêlez-vous<sup>51</sup> ?  
*What* ! you have not done yet. *Quoi* ! vous n'avez pas encore fini.

## EXERCISE.

*What* do you want ? *What* do you think of that ? *What* shall  
39 — 51 cherchez ? 39 — 51 pensez de cela ? 39 —  
I do with this ? Do you know *what* this is made of ? *What*  
51 ferez de ceci ? — 51 savez 39 ceci fait 56 ? 39  
is it good for<sup>56</sup> ? I do not know *what* you (are talking) about.  
Il bon à ? — 55 sais 39 parlez de 56.  
*What* ! are you not gone yet<sup>53</sup> ? *What* ! you do not answer me.  
39 55 parti encore ? 39 55 répondez 24.

40. *What* sometimes implies the *demonstrative* pronoun *that*, and the *distinctive* *which* ; it is then expressed,

Nom. *What*, *ce qui* ; Always do *what* is right ; i. e. *that which* is right.  
Faites toujours *ce qui* est juste.

Obj. *What*, *ce que* ; *What* I say is true ; i. e. *that which* I say is true.  
(o) *Ce que* je dis est vrai.

But with the preposition *of*, *to*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after *what* ; for,

Of *what* is de *ce qui*, } I speak of *what* is true, i. e. of that which  
de *ce que*, } Je parle de *ce qui* est vrai.

*What of* is ce dont ; as, *What* he speaks of is not true ; i. e. that of which  
Ce dont il parle n'est pas vrai.

To *what* is à *ce qui*, } You do not apply to *what* is useful ; to that which  
à *ce que*, } Vous ne vous appliquez pas à *ce qui* est utile.

*What to* is ce à *quoi* ; as, *What* you apply to is not useful ; that to which  
Ce à *quoi* vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

## EXERCISE.

Say *what* is true, and do *what* is just. *What*<sup>40</sup> we do hastily  
Dites 40 est vrai, et faites 40 juste. (o) faisons (à la hâte)  
is often imperfect. Shew me *what*<sup>40</sup> you have done. Pay attention to  
souvent imparfait. Montrez 26 (o) fait. Faites attention  
*what*<sup>40</sup> I say to you. Are you sure of *what*<sup>40</sup> you say ? It is *what* you  
(o) dis — 24 Etes sûr (o) dites ? C'est 40  
may be sure of. I would not<sup>55</sup> trust to *what*<sup>40</sup> he proposes. *What*  
pouvez être 56 ne voudrais pas me fier (o) propose. 40

you trust to is very uncertain. He complains of *what*40 he has  
 vous vous fiez 58 est très incertain. se plaint (o) a  
 suffered. *What* he complains of is right. They attribute it to *what*40  
 souffert. 40 se plaint 56 juste. attribuent le24 (o)  
 I have told you. *What* they attribute it to has never55 happened.  
 dit 25 40 24 n'est jamais arrivé.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. sing.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Of, from <i>Mine.</i>	le Mien,	la Mienne,	les Miens,	les Miennes.
<i>To, at Mine.</i>	du Mien,	de la Mienne,	des Miens,	des Miennes.
<i>Thine.</i>	au Mien,	à la Mienne,	aux Miens,	aux Miennes.
<i>His.</i>	le Tien,	la Tienne,	les Tiens,	les Tiennes.
<i>Hers.</i>	le Sien,	la Sienné,	les Siens,	les Siennes.
<i>Ours.</i>	le Nôtre,	la Nôtre,	les Nôtres,	les Nôtres.
<i>Yours.</i>	le Vôtre,	la Vôtre,	les Vôtres,	les Vôtres.
<i>Theirs.</i>	le Leur,	la Leur,	les Leurs,	les Leurs.

41. The possessive pronouns *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as,

Your horse is better than *hers*, i. e. her horse.  
 Votre cheval est meilleur que *le sien*.

My house is not so fine as *his*, i. e. his house.  
 Ma maison n'est pas si belle que *la sienné*.

Your histories are prettier than *his*, i. e. his histories.  
 Vos histoires sont plus jolies que *les siennes*.

## EXERCISE.

Why do not55 you51 eat your cake? Your brother has eaten *his*.  
 Pourquoi — ne mangez-vous pas 1 gâteau m.? 1 a mangé 41  
 My sister has not eaten *hers*. I (will eat) *mine* (by and by.) Your  
 a 55 41. mangerai 41 tantôt. 1  
 lesson is shorter18 than *mine*, but (I shall know) *mine* before you  
 leçon f. court 13 41 mais saurai. 41 avant que  
 know *yours*. It is not55 your business, it is *his*. My books are  
 sachiez 41 Ce n'est pas 1 affaire f., c'est 41 livre m. sont  
 finer18 than *yours* and *his*. They are not finer than *mine*. Have  
 beaux 41 41 30 55 18 41  
 you cleaned my boots? *Yours* and *mine* are clean13, but *his* are not.  
 décrotté 1 botte f. 41 41 décrotté, 41 ne le sont pas.

42. The possessive words *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they often come with the verb *be* used in the sense of *belong*, instead of the personal pronouns *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*; as for example,

This book is *mine*, i. e. belongs to *me*;

in this sense, *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, m. à elles, f. as,*

This book is <i>mine</i> .	Ce livre est à <i>moi</i> ;	i. e. belongs to <i>me</i> .
is <i>thine</i> .	est à <i>toi</i> ;	to <i>thee</i> .
is <i>his</i> .	est à <i>lui</i> ;	to <i>him</i> .
is <i>hers</i> .	est à <i>elle</i> ;	to <i>her</i> .
is <i>ours</i> .	est à <i>nous</i> ;	to <i>us</i> .
is <i>yours</i> .	est à <i>vous</i> ;	to <i>you</i> .
is <i>theirs</i> .	est à <i>eux</i> ; m. à <i>elles</i> ; f.	to <i>them</i> .

## EXERCISE.

This stick is <i>mine</i> , and this umbrella is <i>his</i> .	It is neither
1 bâton m. 43	1 parapluie m. 43 n'est ni
<i>yours</i> nor <i>his</i> , it is <i>hers</i> .	Is this horse <i>yours</i> ? It is not <i>mine</i> ;
42 ni 42 30 42	Ce cheval est-il 52 42? 30 55 42
it is my cousin's. If it was <i>yours</i> , what would you	do (with it)?
30 (q) S' 30 était 42 39 — feriez-vous 51 en 24 1	
If it was <i>mine</i> , I (would sell) it.	I wish it was <i>ours</i> .
30 42 vendrais 30 (x) souhaiterais qu' 30 fût 42.	

43. The *possessive* pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *of*; as, *a friend of mine*; *a book of yours*; this possessive pronoun can not be expressed by the possessive pronoun in french; it must be expressed by the possessive article *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, placed *before* the noun, which must always be *plural* in french; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	Un de <i>mes</i> amis;	i. e. one of <i>my</i>	} <i>friends</i> .
of <i>thine</i> .	Un de <i>tes</i> amis;	one of <i>thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis;	one of <i>his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis;	one of <i>her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	Un de <i>nos</i> amis;	one of <i>our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	Un de <i>vos</i> amis;	one of <i>your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	Un de <i>leurs</i> amis;	one of <i>their</i>	

## EXERCISE.

(This is) a relation <i>of mine</i> .	He is a cousin <i>of ours</i> .	A brother <i>of</i>
Voici 1 parent m. 43	(N) est 43	
<i>mine</i> has married a sister <i>of his</i> .	(That is) a child <i>of theirs</i> .	I have
43 a épousé 1 43	Voilà enfant m. 43	
seen to-day a scholar <i>of yours</i> .	I (shall dine) to-morrow with	
vu (aujourd'hui) écolier m. 43	dînerai demain avec	
a friend <i>of ours</i> .	I have found a book <i>of yours</i> amongst mine.	
43	trouvé livre m. 43	parmi 41
It is not mine; it is my brother's.	It is a friend's <i>of mine</i> .	
n'est pas 43 30	(Q) 30 (Q) 43.	

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING. Fem.		Masc. PLUR. Fem.
<i>This</i> , <i>that</i> ;	Celui; Celle.	<i>These</i> , <i>those</i> ;	Ceux; Celles.

44. The *demonstrative* pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles* must

(q) The possession denoted in english by adding *s* to the noun, is expressed in french by *à* before it; as, It is my father's. *Il est à mon père*; Not, *il est de mon père*.



be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent ; as,

He has eaten his apple and *that* of his brother ; i. e. *the apple* of, &c.  
Il a mangé sa pomme et *celle* de son frère.

## EXERCISE

She has spoiled her hat and *that* of her brother. He has torn  
a gâlé 1 chapeau m. 44 1 déchiré  
my gown and *that* of my sister. Bring my shoes and *those* of my  
1 robe f. 44 Apportez 1 souliers m. 44  
mother. (Look at) *these* guineas and *those* which<sup>32</sup> he has given us.  
Regardez (s) guinées f. 44 (o) a données. 25

N. B. The demonstrative words *this*, *these* ; *that*, *those* imply a local distinction which *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles* do not express ; if you wish to make that distinction in french, you must add to these pronouns the adverbs *ci*, here ; and *là*, there ; thus,

*This* ; *Celui-ci*, *Celle-ci*. *These* ; *Ceux-ci*, *Celles-ci*.

*That* ; *Celui-là*, *Celle-là*. *Those* ; *Ceux-là*, *Celles-là* ; as,

*This* horse is better than *that* ;

Ce cheval-*ci* est meilleur que *celui-là* ; i. e. this horse *here*—that *there*.

## EXERCISE.

That<sup>1</sup> horse is young, and *this*<sup>44</sup> is old, but I prefer *this*<sup>44</sup> to  
(s) cheval-là est jeune, n.b. vieux, mais préfère n.b.  
*that*.<sup>44</sup> *These* girls dance much better than *those*.<sup>44</sup>  
n.b. (s) fille-ci dansent beaucoup (s) n.b.

45. If *this*, *that*, are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned, they imply the word *thing* understood, and are expressed,

*This*, by *Ceci* ; *That*, by *Cela* ; as,

*This* is good, i. e. *this thing* is good. *Ceci* est bon.

*That* is better, i. e. *that thing* is better. *Cela* est meilleur.

## EXERCISE.

Take *this*. Leave *that*. Have you seen *this* ? *That* is very pretty.  
Prenez 45 Laissez 45 vu 45 45 très joll.

(s) The demonstrative words *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, have three different properties.

If *this*, *that*, *these* *those* are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *ce*, *cette*, *ces* ; as,

*This* bread, *that* meat, *those* clothes. *Ce* pain, *cette* viande, *ces* habits. See rule 1.

If *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent (rule 44.) ; as, He has eaten his apple & that of his brother. Il a mangé sa pomme & *celle* de son frère.

If *this*, *that* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as substantives, and are expressed *this* by *ceci*, *that* by *cela*.

*This* is good, but *that* is better. *Ceci* est bon, mais *cela* est meilleur. (rule 45.)



*been* permitted to do it. Do you<sup>51</sup> know what is said of you ?  
 48 permis de 24 — savez-vous<sup>51</sup> 40 48 dit de 28 ?  
 What can *be* said of me? It is said that great news *is*  
 39 peut 48 dire 28 ? 47 — dit que 10 grandes nouvelles 48  
 expected. Have the letters *been* received which *were* expected ?  
 attend 48 lettre 48 reçu 32 48 attendait ?

## CHAPTER VI.

### VERB.

A *verb* is a word which expresses either being or acting.

Being ; as, *I am* ; *I exist* ; Thou *art* ; He *is* ; My brother *is* ; We *are*, &c.

Acting ; as, *I speak* ; *I blame* ; *I walk* ; *I drink* ; *I sing*, &c.

Every action requires an agent, i. e. a being to perform that action ; this agent, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb.

49. The *verb* must be of the same *number* and *person* as the agent or *nominative* ; this is called *agreement* of the verb with its *nominative* ; ex.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1p. <i>I sing.</i>	<i>Je chante.</i>	<i>Nous chantons.</i>	} we, you, they sing.
2p. <i>Thou singest.</i>	<i>Tu chantes.</i>	<i>Vous chantez.</i>	
3p. <i>He sings.</i>	<i>Il chante.</i>	<i>Ils chantent.</i>	
<i>She sings.</i>	<i>Elle chante.</i>	<i>Elles chantent.</i>	
<i>My brother sings.</i>	<i>Mon frère chante.</i>	<i>Mes frères chantent.</i>	
<i>My sister sings.</i>	<i>Ma sœur chante.</i>	<i>Mes sœurs chantent.</i>	

#### EXERCISE.

*I speak.* *Thou playest.* *He walks.* *She dances.* *My brother*  
 parler. jouer. marcher. danser.  
*stays.* *My sister forgets.* *We blame.* *You study.* *They look.* *My*  
 rester. oublier. blâmer. étudier. regarder.  
*brothers call or (are calling.\*)* *My sisters dispute or (are disputing.\*)*  
 appeler. disputer.

50. In a *declarative* sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the *nominative* of the verb is placed in french, as in english, *before* the verb ; as,

\* These two modes of expression are rendered in the same manner in french. See the conjugations, page 98 and following.

<i>I</i> sing.	<i>Je</i> chante.	<i>Nous</i> chantons.	} we, you, they sing.
<i>Thou</i> singest.	<i>Tu</i> chantes.	<i>Vous</i> chantez.	
<i>He</i> sings.	<i>Il</i> chante.	<i>Ils</i> chantent.	
<i>She</i> sings.	<i>Elle</i> chante.	<i>Elles</i> chantent.	
<i>My brother</i> sings.	<i>Mon frère</i> chante.	<i>Mes frères</i> chantent.	
<i>My sister</i> sings.	<i>Ma sœur</i> chante.	<i>Mes sœurs</i> chantent.	

## EXERCISE.

*I* speak<sup>49</sup> french. *Thou* speakest french. *He* speaks french. *She*  
parler français. parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>  
speaks french. *My brother* speaks french. *My sister* speaks french.  
parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>  
*We* speak french. *You* speak french. *They* speak french. *My bro-*  
parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>  
*thers* speak french. *My sisters* speak french. *They* speak it very well.  
parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler les<sup>24</sup> très bien.

But when the sentence is *interrogative*, i. e. when a *ques-*  
*tion* is asked, it is necessary to consider whether the *nomina-*  
*tive* of the verb is a *noun* or a *pronoun*.

51. If, when a *question* is asked, the *nominative* of the verb  
is one of the pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles,*  
*on* or *ce*, these pronouns are placed in french, as the corres-  
ponding words are in english, immediately *after* the verb; as,

Do (s) <i>I</i> sing well?	Chante- <i>je</i> bien?	i. e. sing <i>I</i> well?
Doest <i>thou</i> sing well?	Chantes- <i>tu</i> bien?	singest <i>thou</i> well?
Does <i>he</i> sing well?	Chante-t- <i>il</i> bien?	sings <i>he</i> well?
Does <i>she</i> sing well?	Chante-t- <i>elle</i> bien?	sings <i>she</i> well?
Do <i>we</i> sing well?	Chantons- <i>nous</i> bien?	sing <i>we</i> well?
Do <i>you</i> sing well?	Chantez- <i>vous</i> bien?	sing <i>you</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	Chantent- <i>ils</i> bien?	sing <i>they</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	Chantent- <i>elles</i> bien?	sing <i>they</i> well?

## EXERCISE.

Do *I* speak<sup>49</sup> french well<sup>53</sup>? Doest *thou* speak french well? Does  
(s) 51 parler français bien? (s) 51 parler<sup>49</sup> 53 ? (s)  
*he* speak french well? Does *she* speak french well? Do *we* speak french  
51 parler<sup>49</sup> 53 ? 51 parler<sup>49</sup> 53 ? 51 parler<sup>49</sup>  
well? Do *you* speak french well? Do *they* speak french well?  
53 ? 51 parler<sup>49</sup> 53 ? 51 parler<sup>49</sup> 53 ?

52. If, when we ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb  
is a *noun*, that noun is placed *before* the verb in french, the  
same as when the sentence is not interrogative: but to show  
that a *question* is asked, one of the personal pronouns *il, elle,*  
*ils, elles*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, is  
placed immediately *after* the verb; as,

(s) The auxiliary words *do, did, shall, will, should, would, may, might* are not ex-  
pressed in french; their meaning is implied in the *termination* of the verb.

\* When *il, elle*, *on* come after a verb ending with a vowel, -t- is placed between  
these pronouns and the verb to soften the pronunciation.

Does my brother sing	well?	Mon frère chante-t-il bien ?	I. e. my b. sings he?
Does my sister sing		Ma sœur chante-t-elle bien ?	my s. sings she
Do my brothers sing		Mes frères chantent-ils bien ?	my b. sing they
Do my sisters sing		Mes sœurs chantent-elles bien ?	my s. sing they

## EXERCISE.

Does my brother speak49 french well53 ?	Does my sister speak french
(s) 52 parler français bien * ?	(s) 52 parler49
well? Do my brothers speak french well? Do my sisters speak	
52 ? (s) 52 parler49	53 ? (s) 52 parler49
french well? Does your son go to school now? Does your daughter	
53 ? (s) 52 va à l'école à présent ?	52
go to school now? Do your sons go to school now? Do your	
va ? (s) 52 vont ?	
daughters go to school now? Do the boys52 make any progress?	
52 vont ? (s) garçons font 9 progrès plur.	
Do the girls52 make any progress? Is all your family52 well?	
filles 9 ? se porte toute famille f. ?	

## CHAPTER VII.

## ADVERB.

An adverb is a word added to a verb to denote the manner in which an action is performed; as, *I walk fast*; *he walks slowly*; *you write well*; *she writes badly*; the words *fast*, *slowly*, *well*, *badly*, which denote the manner in which the action of the verbs *walk* and *write* is performed, are adverbs.

53. The adverb being to the verb what the adjective is to the noun, i. e. expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed immediately *after* the verb which it modifies; as

I saw your sister <i>yesterday</i> .	Je vis hier votre sœur.
She speaks french <i>very well</i> .	Elle parle très bien français.
I will come to see her <i>soon</i> .	Je viendrai bientôt la voir.*

## EXERCISE:

You read french <i>very well</i> .	I wish to learn it24 ( <i>very much</i> .)
lisez 7français m. très bien53.	souhaite — apprendre 30 fort53.
You will soon53 know it24, if you read the rules <i>attentively</i> .53 I (will do)	
— bientôt saurez 30,	lisez règles attentivement. ferai

\* Place the adverb *bien* before *français*; thus, *bien français*. See 53 rule.

† The perspicuity of a sentence often depends on the placing of the adverbs. These sentences for example: *J'aime beaucoup à lire*, and *J'aime à lire beaucoup*, though formed of the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à lire*; means, I am fond of reading; *J'aime à lire beaucoup*; means, I like to read a great deal.

what you have recommended to me *carefully*.<sup>53</sup> We (shall go) *to*  
 40 recommandé — 25 soigneusement. irons à  
 the country *to-morrow*. I hope you (will come) to see us *often*.<sup>53</sup>  
 campagne f. demain<sup>53</sup>. espère que viendrez — voir 24 souvent.

54. Some adverbs may be placed in english either before or after the verb which they modify ; as, I *often* see him, or I see him *often*. I *very seldom* speak to him, or I speak to him *very seldom* ; but the adverbs which represent them in french, must always be placed *after* the verb ; as

I <i>often</i> see him.	Je le vois <i>souvent</i> .
I <i>sometimes</i> meet her.	Je la rencontre <i>quelquefois</i> .
I <i>seldom</i> speak to them.	Je leur parle <i>rarement</i> .

## EXERCISE.

You *always*<sup>54</sup> walk alone. I *seldom*<sup>54</sup> go to town. I *generally*  
 Vous toujours vous promenez seul. rarement vais à la ville. ordinairement  
 go into the country. I *often*<sup>54</sup> think of you. You *seldom*<sup>54</sup> come  
 vais à campagne f. souvent pense à 28 rarement venez  
 to see us now. I *sometimes* think that you *soon*<sup>54</sup> (will forget)  
 — voir 24 à présent. quelquefois<sup>54</sup> pense que bientôt oublierez  
 us. You *certainly*<sup>54</sup> can not think so. I *sincerely*<sup>54</sup> wish that  
 24 certainement pouvez 55 penser le<sup>24</sup> sincèrement souhaite que  
 you may succeed. I *heartily*<sup>54</sup> wish you the same.  
 puissiez réussir. de bon cœur souhaite 24 la même chose

## 55. The negative adverbs

No, not, are	ne—pas, ne—point.
No more,	} ne—plus.
Not any more ;	
Never ;	ne—jamais.
But little,	} ne—guère.
Very little ;	
By no means ;	ne—nullement.

*Ne* is always placed *before* the verb, and *pas, point, plus, jamais, guère, nullement* are placed *immediately after* the verb ; as,

I do <i>not</i> like that woman.	Je n'aime <i>pas</i> cette femme.
I have <i>never</i> liked her.	Je ne l'ai <i>jamais</i> aimée.
I will <i>not</i> speak to her <i>any more</i> .	Je ne lui parlerai <i>plus</i> .

## EXERCISE.

Do *not* you<sup>51</sup> know that man? Have you *never* seen him before?  
 — 55 connaissez 2 l'homme ? Avez 51 55 vu 25 auparavant!  
 Were you *not* in his company yesterday? I know him *but little*.  
 étiez 51 55 à I compagnie f. hier<sup>53</sup> ? connais 24 55  
 I do *not* wish to see him *any more*. I *by no means* consent (to it.)  
 — 55 souhaite — 24 55 55 consens 24.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PREPOSITION.

*Prepositions* are words which serve to connect other words together, in order to form a sentence ; as,

I am going *to* London *with* my father.

The words *to*, *with*, which connect the substantives, London, father to the verb *go*, are called *prepositions*.

56. The *prepositions* may often be placed in english either *before* or *after* the substantive which they govern ; as,

*With* whom were you, or whom were you *with*? *of* what do you speak, or what do you speak *of*? In french the *prepositions* must always be placed *before* the substantive which they govern ; as,

<i>With</i> whom were you?	}	<i>Avec</i> qui étiez vous?
or whom were you <i>with</i> ?		
<i>To</i> whom did you speak?	}	<i>A</i> qui avez-vous parlé?
or whom did you speak <i>to</i> ?		
<i>Of</i> what are you speaking?	}	<i>De</i> quoi parlez-vous?
or what are you speaking <i>of</i> ?		

## EXERCISE.

What country do you come *from*? What people did you come  
 38 pays m. — 51 venez de56 1 38 gens f. êtes 51 venu  
*with*? What news do you speak *of*? Which road shall  
 avec56! 38 nouvelles f. 51 parlez de56! 35 chemin m. —  
 we go *by*56? Which of these houses shall we go *to*? What  
 51 irons par? 36 1 maisons f. — 51 irous à56! 39  
 are you laughing *at*? It is what you may depend *upon*.  
 51 riez de56! C'est 39 pouvez compter sur 56.

AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR, *To Have* ;

*And* RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.\**

I have a new riband16. She has a new gown16. We have  
 1 neuf ruban m. 1 13 robe f.  
 new13 stockings. You have new13 ruffles. They have a fine  
 9n.s. bas16 9n.s. manchette 1 beau  
 nosegay. I had a good master. She had a good mistress. We  
 bouquet. 1 bon maître. 1 13 maîtresse f.  
 had good brothers. You had good sisters. They had10 good friends.  
 10 frère de sœurs 9n.s. ami

\* The learner must peruse the verbs before he writes these exercises.

I had a large garden. He had a great house. We had two  
 1 grand jardin. 1 13 maison.  
 large13 gardens. You had two great13 houses. They had a young  
 deux 1 jeune  
 turkey for their dinner. I shall have a white horse. He will  
 dindon pour dîner. 1 blanc cheval 16  
 have a white13 waistcoat. We shall have white curtains. You will  
 veste f. 9 rideau16 pl.  
 have a bad supper. They will have a bad excuse. I would  
 mauvais souper. 1 f.  
 have delicious fruit. She would have a delicious13 pear. We would  
 un délicieux m. 16. 1 poire 16 f.  
 have a precious jewel. You would have a precious stone. They  
 1 précieux joyau16 pierre.  
 would have a bloody war. That I may have sincere13 friends.  
 1 sanglant guerre. 16 f. que 9 ami 16 pl.  
 That he may have elevated 9 sentiments.16 That we may have  
 élevé 13 pl.  
 delightful landscapes. That you may have prepossessing13 manners.  
 délicieux9 paysage 16 pl. prévenant 9 manière 16 pl.  
 That they may have enlightened13 judges. That I might have a  
 éclairé 9 juge 16 pl. 1  
 sword, a musket and pistols. That he might have a furnished13 house.  
 épée 1 fusil 9 pistolet pl. 1 garni maison16  
 - That we might have faithful13 servants. That you might have a  
 fidèle 9 domestique 16 pl.  
 pretty dressing-room. That they might have a beautiful drawing-  
 joli cabinet de toilette. 1 superbe salon de  
 room.  
 compagnie.

## ETRE—To Be.

I am sick. Thou art young. He is unhappy. She is unhap-  
 malade jeune malheureux.  
 py.\* We are laborious. You are modest. They are lazy. I  
 laborieux parasseux.  
 was prudent. She was prudent. We were discreet. You were  
 studious. They were jealous. Your sisters were jealous I was  
 studieux. jaloux. sœurs  
 his intimate friend. She was my greatest enemy. We were  
 ami 16 plus grand\* ennemie.  
 generous. You were ungrateful. They were cruel. Your daughters  
 généreux. ingrat. filles.  
 were cruel. I shall be a brave soldier. He will be a handsome  
 soldat - bel  
 man. She will be a handsome woman. We will be faithful to our  
 homme - femme fidèle  
 country. You will be in continual fears. They will be our mortal  
 pays  
 enemies. I should be ready. She would be troublesome. We  
 ennemi prêt. incommode.  
 should be very ridiculous. You would be too eager. They would be  
 très trop empressé.

\* The adjective or adjectives which follows the verb *être*, *to be*, agreed in gender and number with the subject of the verb.



that he may  
may be he  
I might  
attentive.

rate.

RE.

peer. He  
biere f.

p49 to see  
aller\* — voir  
him. He  
lui24.

You were

brought49  
apporter\*  
to stay.  
à rester.

shall dine49  
(s) diner

you. You  
24

should like49  
(s) aimer

for it.29  
— je.

ould avoid his  
éviter 1:

they had  
avaient

on24 for it.29  
(s) — le.

advise me  
conseiller 24

(too much)  
trop

call us ?  
appeler 24?

Were we  
(T) 51

marked in *italic*

et, were, when  
as signs which  
rench.

going too far? *Were* you eating fruit? *Were* they scolding you?  
aller trop loin? 51 manger fruit m? 51 gronder 24?

— *Did* I hurt<sup>49</sup> him? *Did* he shut the door? *Did* we  
(s) 51 blesser 24? 51 fermer l porte f. 51

gain any thing? *Did* you invite them? *Did* they insult you?  
gagner quelque chose? (s) inviter 24? insulter 24

— *Shall* I begin<sup>49</sup> it<sup>24</sup> again? *Will* he bring it with him?  
(s) 51 recommencer le —? (s) apporter 24 28

*Shall* we divide it amongst us? *Will* you think of me? *Will*  
partager 24 entre 28? penser à 28?

they take it<sup>24</sup> along with them? — *Should* I lend it him, <sup>29</sup> if  
emporter le — avec 28? (s) 51 prêter 24 (t),

he asked me for it? *Would* he stay with us, if we asked him?  
demandait 24 — 29? (s) rester avec 28, en prison\* 24

*Should* we dance, if it was not so late? *Would* you shew it<sup>24</sup> me,  
(s) danser, (s) était 55 si tard? (s) montrer 29,

if I called at (your house)? *Would* they change it, if I sent it  
passais chez vous? (s) changer 24, si renvoyais

back to them? *Would* they forgive me, if I begged their pardon?  
— — 29? pardonner 24, demandais leur 24 pardon

NEGATIVELY. I *do* not blame you. He *does* not deny it. We  
(s) 55 blâmer. 24 (s) 55 nier 24

*do* not breakfast so soon. You *do* not give me money<sup>8</sup> enough.  
55 déjeuner<sup>49</sup> si tôt. 55 donner 24 argent n. s. assez.

They *do* not cost (so much). — I *was* not touching it. He *was*  
55 coûter tant. (t) 55 toucher<sup>49</sup> y 25.

not taking it away. We *were* not disputing. You *were* not listening  
emporter le<sup>24</sup> — (t) disputer<sup>49</sup>. écouter

to me. They *were* not looking at you. — I *did* not speak to  
— 24 regarder — 24. (s) 55 parler<sup>49</sup>

her. She *did* not look at me. We *did* not shew it to them.  
24 regarder — 24 montrer 24 29

You *did* not eat any.<sup>24</sup> They *did* not invite us. — I *shall* not stay<sup>49</sup>  
manger? (j) inviter 24 (s) 55 rester

long. He *will* not incommode you. We *shall* not play to-night.  
long temps. (s) incommoder 24 jouer ce soir.

You *will* not fail to ask for it<sup>24</sup>. They *will* not shew it<sup>24</sup> you.  
manquer de demander — le. montrer 29

I *should* not like<sup>49</sup> to go there. He *would* not borrow money,<sup>8</sup> if he  
(s) 55 aimer à aller y<sup>24</sup>. (s) emprunter argent n. s., s'

had any.<sup>24</sup> We should not despise others, if we had no pride.<sup>8</sup>  
avait (j) mépriser les autres, si n'avions pas orgueil n. s.

You *would* never pardon him, if you knew what he has done.  
55 pardonner lui<sup>24</sup>, saviez 40 fait

They *would* not blame me, if they knew the pains I have taken..  
blâmer 24, savaient peines (p) prises.

NEGATIVELY AND INTERROGATIVELY. *Do* I not begin<sup>49</sup> right?  
(s); 51 55 commencer bien!

*Does* she not dance well? *Do* we not incommode you? *Do* you  
(s) 51 55 danser bien? 51 55 incommoder 24? 51

not breakfast this morning? *Do* they not deserve it? — *Was* I  
55 déjeuner 1 matin m.? 51 mériter le<sup>24</sup>? (t) 51

not relating it right? *Was* he not shaking the table? *Were* we not  
55 raconter 24 bien? 51 remuer table f. (t) 51

\* See 6th remark, page 91.

† See 1st remark, page 90.

‡ See \* page 59.

they not  
51

not give  
donner

encourage  
encourager\*

it24 you,  
per le 29 ?

you not  
55

Would not  
(s) 35

our father  
52

himself,  
lui-même,

ent ?  
ait ?

building  
bâir

ishing it24  
30

ecting on  
schir à

We were  
(r)

what they  
40

severely.  
sévèrement.

our orders ?  
ordre ?

as well as  
aussi bien qu'

will rejoice  
réjouir.

ive. You  
avons.

wish them  
24

at once  
out d'un coup

ou would

better, if  
(s) ,

ear? Did  
née f. ? (s)

on, à la ville,  
reflective

page 104.

it30 blossom last16 year? Young trees seldom54 blossom two years  
 51 fleurir dernière 7 ! 7Jeunes rarement fleurir deux  
 together. Do the fruits ripen well? Do they51 not often54 wither on  
 (de suite.) (s) 52 m. mûrir ? 30 souvent se flétrir à  
 the tree? Do they51 not commonly54 (grow rotten)? (Here are) several  
 2 ! (s) 30 ordinairement pourrir ? Voici plusieurs  
 sorts of fruit, choose which you like best. Fill\* your basket  
 sorte f. 8 ; choisir\* 37 aimer le mieux. Remplir corbeille f  
 (with it.) Enjoy it while it will last. We will supply you  
 en26. Jour \* en26 pendant que 39 durer. fournir 24  
 with pears and apples, as fast as they will ripen. The children  
 — 9poire f. 9pomme f., aussi vite qu' 30 mûrir. enfant m.  
 will rejoice (very much,) for they are very54 fond of fruit, and it  
 se rejouir beaucoup, car — beaucoup aimer — 7fruit, 30  
 is growing dearer every day. I hope that they will obey you, for  
 — encherir — tous les jours. espérer qu' obéir 24, car  
 children who disobey their parents seldom54 succeed.  
 7 33 désobéir à 1 parent rarement réussir.

IRREGULAR. I am perusing this book. Does it51 belong to you?  
 (r) parcourir† 1 livre. m. (s) 30 appartenir— 24?  
 It belongs to a friend of mine. Run\* fast. Why do not you run  
 30 appartenir† 43 Courir vite. Pourquoi 55 courir  
 faster? We are running as hard as we can. For whom are  
 vite 18? (r) courir 20 vite 20 pouvons. Pour 34 (r)  
 you gathering these flowers? We are gathering them for your  
 cueillir 1 fleur ? cueillir 24 pour  
 mother. I will offer them to her, that she may remember me.  
 offrir 24 — 29, afinqu' se souvenir de 28  
 Does not your mother hate me? Why should she hate you?  
 (s) 53 haïr† 24? 51 haïr† 24?  
 Because she never comes to see us. He maintains that he has not  
 Paraque 55 venir — voir 24. soutenir qu' 55  
 done it, but I firmly54 believe that he lies. Was your sister asleep,  
 fait 25, fermement crois qu' mentir. (r) 52 dormir,  
 when we set out? They came in as we were going out. They  
 quand partir— ? entrer — comme (r) sortir —  
 were running to us, when we discovered them. I came yesterday  
 accourir vers 28, découvrir 24 venir  
 to see you, but you were not in. I went out early in the morning,  
 pour 24, étiez 55 y24. sortir — de bon — — matin, m.  
 and I did not return till late. I met your father, and he  
 (s) ne† révenir que† tard. rencontrer  
 consented to every thing that I proposed to him. Did my father  
 consentir à tout ce que proposer 24. (s) 52  
 offer you any money? He offered me all the money that I should  
 offrir 24 9 argent? offrir 24 tout dont aurais  
 want. We went out (as soon) as the dinner was over. You did  
 besoin. sortir — aussitôt que dîner m. fut fini.  
 not set out so soon as you intended. They detained us a good  
 partir — si tôt que (aviez dessein.) retenir 24 — long  
 while at the inn. At what time will you set out to-morrow?  
 temps à 2 auberge. a 38 heure f. (s) partir — demain ?

\* 2d person imperative.

† See the irregular verbs in ir

‡ See note † page 106.

† Ne que, without pas, expresses not till

return ?  
revenir ?

Shall I

Will re-  
servir

How more  
venir

see us  
voir 24

When will

as soon  
aussitôt

mother

er's con-  
con.

so soon.  
si tôt.

Should

; they

remember

souvenir

me a

24 —

I do not

55

should tell

(v) dire

He is

devoir(v)

receive it 24

voir 30

ounds ? I

sterling

twelve.

douze.

this

comenade 1

(go out)

sortir

by the con-

the.

was, were,

VOIR ; as.

ller.

before I have said my lesson. Can you say it<sup>24</sup> now? I *do*  
 (avant que) *ais* dit 1 leçon f. Pouvoir dire 30 à présent?  
 not know whether I can say it<sup>24</sup> or not; but I knew it<sup>24</sup> when  
*savoir* si pouvoir dire 30 ou non; *savais* 30, quand  
 I came in. You *do* not know it<sup>24</sup> yet. I shall know it<sup>24</sup> in a little<sup>8</sup>  
*suis* entré. *savoir* 30 encore. *savoir* 30 en — peu<sup>n.b.</sup>  
 time. I can say it<sup>24</sup> now. I see your sister who is coming  
 temps pouvoir dire 30 à présent. voir 33 (r) venir  
 to help us. We *do* not see her often, but we sometimes hear  
 — *aider* 24 voir 24 souvent, quelquefois<sup>24</sup> recevoir  
 (from her.) You *shall* see her to-morrow, if you will, for I know  
 (de ses nouvelles.) voir 24 demain, vouloir, car *savoir*  
 that she intends to call upon you. If you will believe me, we *will*  
*qu'* (a dessein) de passer chez 23. vouloir croire 24,  
 go. I think that it *will* rain soon. If it rains, *do* you know  
*s'en* aller. penser pleuvoir bientôt. pleuvoir, *savoir*  
 what we *will* do? We *will* sit down under that large tree, until  
 40 ferons! s'asseoir sous (a) gros<sup>17</sup> arbre m. (jusqu' à  
 the rain is over. I can not<sup>55</sup> stay. I *do* not know what I must  
 ce que) pluie f. soit passée. pouvoir rester. *savoir* 40 devoir  
 do. It *will* not rain much. It is only a shower.  
 faire. pleuvoir Ce n'est qu'1 ondée. f.

## VERBS IN RE.\*

What *are* you doing there? I *am* waiting for my brother.  
 39 (r) 51 faire là (r) attendre —  
 He is learning his lesson in the garden. If you see him,  
 (r) apprendre 1 leçon f. dans jardin. m. voir 24,  
 tell him<sup>26</sup> that I *am* waiting for him here. I hear you. Why  
 dire (i) que attendre — 24 ici. entendre 24. Pourquoi  
 do you interrupt me so often? Do you pretend to know that better  
 (s) interrompre 24 si souvent? prétendre — savoir 45 (x)  
 than I do? I *will* not interrupt you (any more.) These people  
 que 23 — (s) ne interrompre 24 plus<sup>55</sup> 1 gens  
 sell 10 very bad<sup>17</sup> wine. They sell it<sup>24</sup> very dear. I never drink  
 vendre très mauvais vin. m. vendre 30 cher. 55 boire  
 wine,<sup>8</sup> when they<sup>46</sup> sell it<sup>24</sup> so dear. Do you hear that man?  
 vin n.b., quand n.b. vendre 30 si (s) entendre 2 ?  
 He is speaking to us. I hear him, but I *do* not understand what  
 r) parler — 24. entendre 24, comprendre 40  
 he says. I *was* answering your letter, when I heard that you were  
 dire. (r) répondre à lettre, quand (ai appris) que étiez  
 in town. You surprise us quite, for we *did* not expect you  
 en ville. surprendre 24 (tout à fait), car (s) attendre 24  
 so soon. I came down as soon as I heard you. If I return  
 si tôt. descendre — aussitôt que entendre 24, rendre  
 them<sup>24</sup> their goods, *will* they return me my money? They *would*  
 (i) marchandise, rendre 24 2 argent ?  
 not return you one half (of it.) I *would* lose the whole rather  
 rendre 24 la moitié 24 en 29. perdre tout m. plutôt  
 than submit to such terms. What *are* you learning now?  
 que (de me soumettre) à 10 telles conditions. 39 (r) apprendre à présent ?  
 I *am* learning mathematics. Do you understand them well? I  
 apprendre 7 mathématiques. entendre 24 bien ?

\* See the verbs in re.

will make  
faire

music  
musique

you read  
lire

I do not

I translate  
traduire

why do you  
quoi

please all  
plaire à tout

on them.  
d' 28

ing. Do

himself.  
lui-même

Drink a  
Boire †

wait you to  
attendre 24 de

ou. You  
29.

not believe  
croire

mean to  
vouloir —

often 54

souvent

are you  
(T)

For which  
36

You are

Put out  
Eteindre †

again.

Will the

ask  
demander

Yet,  
Cependant,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Have you seen my mother? I have seen her, but I have not spoken  
 voir 1 voir\* 25, parler  
 to her. Has your sister done what she had promised me to do?  
 25 52 faire 40 avait promettre 25 de faire?  
 Why has she not done it? Has your father forbid her to do  
 Pourquoi 55 faire 25? 52 défendre lui 25 de faire  
 it? Has your brother been where I had told him? Has he  
 le? 52 être ou avais dire lui 25?  
 received the letter which my sister has sent him? Have you read  
 recevoir lettre f. (o) envoyer\* (i) lire\*  
 it? Has your father bought the horse which I had recommended  
 30 (κ) 52 acheter (o) avais recommander  
 to him? Has he tried it? Has my mother brought any body  
 (i) essayer 25? 52 amener quelqu'un  
 with her? Are your brothers gone out? Have your sisters  
 avec 28? 52 sortir plur. —? 52  
 finished the work they had begun? They would not have done  
 finir ouvrage (p) avaient commencer? 55 faire  
 it so soon, if they had not been compelled (to it). I have met  
 25 si tôt, avaient 55 forcées y 25. rencontrer  
 a man on (horseback) who has asked me the way to (your house.  
 à cheval demander 25 chemin m. chez vous 28.

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.†

AFFIRMAT. I am getting up. He is washing himself. We  
 (r) se lever — (r) se laver 24  
 are dressing ourselves. You are amusing yourselves. They are  
 (r) s'habiller 24 s'amuser 24  
 getting ready to (go out.) I was getting up, when you called me.  
 s'apprêter — à sortir —. (r) se lever —, quand appeler. 24  
 He was warming himself in the parlour. We were conversing by  
 se chauffer 24 dans salle f. (r) s'entretenir près  
 the fire. You were (making merry.) They were laughing at us.  
 du feu. se divertir. se moquer de 28.

INTERROG. Do I get up too late? Does that man (run away)?  
 (s) 51 se lever — trop tard? (s) 2 52 s'enfuir?  
 Does your bird (grow tame)? Do we warm ourselves  
 (s) oiseau m. s'apprivoiser? 51 se chauffer 24  
 (too much)? How do you do? How does your sister do?  
 trop? Comment 15 se porter? 52 se porter?  
 Was I coming too near? Was he hiding himself? Did we  
 (r) s'approcher près? se cacher 24? 51  
 expose ourselves (too much)? Were you inquiring after them?  
 s'exposer 24 trop? s'informer d' 28?

NEGATIV. I do not care for him. He does not mistrust them.  
 (s) 55 se soucier de 28 (s) 55 se méfier de 28  
 We do not repent (of it). You do not rise early enough. They  
 se repentir en 24. se lever assez matin  
 do not meddle with his affairs. I did not stop. He did not  
 se mêler de 1 affaire. (s) s'arrêter. 55

\* This participle must be *feminine*.† See the *reflective verb se BLANCHIR*.





## THE CONJUGATIONS OR ACCIDENCE OF VERBS:

A VERB, as has been seen, page 77, is a word which expresses either being or acting. As the same action may be performed in different manners, at different times, and by different persons, it was found necessary to modify or vary the same word, so as to denote the manner in which an action is done, the time in which it is done, and the person or persons, by whom it is done, and this is what grammarians call *conjugation*.

The manners of acting, in grammar called *modes* or *moods*, are four; *infinitive*, *imperative*, *indicative*, *subjunctive*, or *conjunctive*.

The times, in grammar called *tenses*, are properly three only: *past*, *present*, and *future*; but, in order to express time with more precision, these are again divided into other tenses, the use of which will be seen in the syntax of verbs.

The persons who act in a verb are generally three for each number.

1. The person or persons who speak; as, *I blame*; *we blame*.
2. The person or persons spoken to; as, *thou blamest*; *you blame*.
3. The person, persons, or things spoken of; as *he, she, my brother, my sister blames*, *they, my brothers, my sisters blame*.

The modifications or variations by which these moods, tenses, and persons are known, differ, according to the different languages.

In english, the difference is shown by the means of certain signs prefixed to the verb; as, *do blame*; *did blame*; *shall or will blame*; *should or would blame*; *may blame*, *might blame*.

In french, it is made by changing the last syllable of the word; as, *je blâm e*, *tu blâm es*, *il blâm e*, *nous blâm ons*, *vous blâm ez*, *ils blâm ent*; *je blâm ais*; *je blâm ai*; *je blâmer ai*; *je blâmer ais*, &c.\*

This variation in the tenses and persons, simple as it is, because it is nearly uniform, is nevertheless found embarrassing by some persons.

The difficulty lies chiefly in the present and perfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and in the imperative.

In order to remove it as much as possible, I have placed in one point of view, the tenses which are either similar or partly similar, or formed from one another, that, by perceiving at once the similarity or the difference, the learner's mind may be more easily impressed with it.

## REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

REMARK 1. In verbs terminating in *ger*, the *g* ought always to be followed by an *e* mute, before the vowels *a* and *o*, in order to give softness to the pronunciation; *nous partageons*, *je mangeais*, *il jugea*. Thus conjugate:

*Affiger*, *alléger*, *alonger*, *arranger*, *changer*, *charger*, *corriger*, *dédommager*, *héberger*, *interroger*, *juger*, *manger*, *ménager*, *nager*, *partager*, *plonger*, *protéger*, *ranger*, *ravager*, *ronger*, *saccager*, *songer*, *venger*, *voyager*, &c.

REMARK 2. In verbs terminating in the infinitive with *cer*, as *menacer*, *placer*, we place a cedilla under the *c* before the vowels *a* and *o*, which gives it the soft sound of *s*; as, *il menaça*, *nous plaçons*. Thus conjugate:

*Avancer*, *amorcer*, *balancer*, *divorcer*, *ensemencer*, *enfoncer*, *forcer*, *gercer*, *glacer*, *influencer*, *lancer*, *menacer*, *percer*, *pincer*, *prononcer*, *renoncer*, *sucer*, *tracer*.

\* The signs by which these inflections or variations are made, not being the same in all verbs, the conjugations must also be various.

The number of them is not exactly fixed, and varies in almost every grammar. Some fix it at four, some at six, some at ten, some at eleven, some at twelve.

It appears to me that their number must either be limited to four, or extended to twelve.

As amongst such a number of conjugations, out of which there will still be a great number of irregular verbs, it is very difficult for learners to distinguish of what conjugation a verb is; and as the infinitive of all the french verbs ends in one of these terminations *er*, *ir*, *oir*, *re*, the only signs by which each different conjugation may be discriminated, I have thought it more simple to fix their number at four.

All verbs which may be conjugated after the same manner as one of these four, are called *regular*.

Those verbs which can not be conjugated like one of these four, are called *irregular*, and set in an alphabetical order after the regular, so that the learner can never be mistaken as to the manner of conjugating any verb which he may have need of, by paying attention to the termination of the infinitive only.

**REMARK 3.** Those verbs in *er*, having the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by an *é* acute, as *considérer, régler*, change this *é* acute, into *è* grave before a mute syllable : *céler, je cèle; répéter, je répèterai*. Thus conjugate :

*Altérer, céder, célébrer, céler, décider, décèler, digérer, empiéter, espérer, excéder, exister, modérer, opérer, persévérer, préférer, régner, révéler, tempérer, tolérer.*

**REMARK 4.** Those verbs in *er* having the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by an *e* mute, as *lever, mener*, change this *e* mute into *è* grave before a mute syllable : *lever, je lève, je lèverai; semer, tu sèmes, il sèmerait, que tu sèmes*. Thus conjugate :

*Dépecer, enlever, lever, mener, peser, promener, ramener, relever.*

**REMARK 5.** Verbs that terminate in the infinitive with *eler* or *eter*, as *appeler, niveler, jeter, projeter*, double the consonants *l* and *t* before an *e* mute : *j'appelle, j'appellerai, qu'il jette, il jetterait*, &c. ; but we say with only one *l* or one *t* : *nous appelons, vous appelez, il jeta, ils jetèrent*, &c. ; the vowel which follows *l* and *t*, not being an *e* mute. Thus conjugate :

*Acheter, beaqueter, cacheter, caqueter, crocheter, décacheter, emballer, épousseter, étiqueter, feuilletter, fureter, jeter, projeter, rejeter, souffleter.*—*Amonceler, appeler, atteler, bourreler, carreler, chanceler, ciseler, ensorceler, épeler, étinceler, ficeler, geler, harceler, niveler, peler, rappeler, renouveler*, &c.

**N. B.** This observation is not applicable to the verbs *céler, révéler, empiéter, végéter*, &c., which terminate with *éler, éter*, and not with *eler, eter*.

**REMARK 6.** Verbs whose present participle terminates in *iant*, as, *prier, lier, nier*, &c., the present participles of which are *priant, liant, niant*, take *ii* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive : *nous priions, vous priez; que nous liions, que vous lieez*. Thus conjugate :

*Allier, amplifier, apprécier, associer, bonifier, certifier, colorier, décrier, dédier, étudier, espier, gratifier, imiter, lier, manier, négocier, parier, plier, remercier, sacrifier, supplier, simplifier, terrifier, varier, vérifier, vicier.*

**REMARK 7.** Verbs whose present participle terminates in *yant*, as *payer, ployer, appuyer*, &c., the present participles of which are *payant, ployant, appuyant*, take *y* and *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive : as, *nous payions, vous ployiez; que nous payions, que vous ployiez*. These verbs also change the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute : *je paie, tu esuies, ils essaient; j'appuierai, tu paierais*. Thus conjugate :

*Balayer, bégayer, choyer, côtoyer, coudoyer, débayer, défrayer, délayer, déployer, effrayer, employer, ennuyer, essayer, essuyer, grasseier, louer, nettoyer, noyer, octroyer, planchéier, rayer, rudoyer, tutoyer*, &c.

**N. B.** The rules which we have given on the verbs of the first conjugation, of which the present participle ends in *iant* or *yant*, apply equally to verbs of other conjugations whose present participle has either of these two terminations ; such as *rire, croire, voir*, &c. Imperfect of the indicative : *nous riions, vous riez; nous croyions, vous croyiez*. Present of the subjunctive : *que nous riions, que vous riez; que nous croyions, que vous croyiez*, &c.

**REMARK 8.** Verbs that terminate in the infinitive with *éer*, as *créer, agréer*, take *ee* at the end of the present of the indicative, the future absolute, the conditional present, the imperative, the present of the subjunctive, and the past participle masculine : *je crée, tu crées, je créerai, je créerais, crée*, &c. The past participle feminine, takes *eee* : *une proposition agréée*. Thus conjugate :

*Agriér, créer, récrier, supplier.*

## AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR.

*Infinitive Mood or Manner.**To have.**A voir.*

<i>Have.</i>		<i>Imperative Mood.</i>		<i>Ayez, plur.*</i>	
<i>Let us have.</i>		<i>Aie, sing.</i>		<i>Ayons.</i>	
<i>Indicative Mood.</i>				<i>Subjunctive Mood.</i>	
<i>I have.</i>	<i>J'</i>	<i>ai.</i> 5†		<i>J'</i>	<i>aie.</i> 6
<i>Thou hast.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i> 26.		<i>Tu</i>	<i>aies.</i>
<i>He has.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>		<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i> 26
<i>We have.</i>	<i>Nous</i> 25	<i>av ons.</i> 26		<i>Nous</i>	<i>ayons.</i> 4
<i>You have.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>av ez.</i> 26		<i>Vous</i>	<i>ayez.</i>
<i>They have.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont.</i> 26		<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i> 6
<i>I had.</i>	<i>J'</i>	<i>av ais.</i> 6			
<i>Thou hadst.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>av ais.</i> ‡			
<i>He had.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>av ait.</i> 26			
<i>We had.</i>	<i>Nous</i> 25	<i>av ions.</i>			
<i>You had.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>av iez.</i>			
<i>They had.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>av aient.</i>			
<i>I had.</i>	<i>J'</i> †	<i>eus.</i> 12		<i>J'</i>	<i>eusse.</i> 2
<i>Thou hadst.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eus.</i> ‡		<i>Tu</i>	<i>eusses.</i> 26
<i>He had.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>eut.</i> 26		<i>Il</i>	<i>eût.</i> 26
<i>We had.</i>	<i>Nous</i> 25	<i>eûmes.</i>		<i>Nous</i>	<i>eussions.</i>
<i>You had.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eûtes.</i> 26		<i>Vous</i>	<i>eussiez.</i>
<i>They had.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eurent.</i> 18		<i>Ils</i>	<i>eussent.</i> 18
<i>I shall or will have.</i>	<i>J'</i>	<i>aurai.</i> 5			
<i>Thou shalt, wilt have.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>auras.</i> 26			
<i>He shall, will have.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>aura.</i>			
<i>We shall, will have.</i>	<i>Nous</i> 25	<i>aurons.</i>			
<i>You shall, will have.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i> aurez.</i>			
<i>They shall, will have.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>auront.</i> 26			
<i>I should, would have.</i>	<i>J'</i>	<i>Saurais.</i> 6			
<i>Thou shd., wld. have.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>aurais.</i> ‡			
<i>He should, would have.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>aurait.</i> 26			
<i>We should, would have.</i>	<i>Nous</i> 25	<i>aurions.</i>			
<i>You should, wld. have.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>auriez.</i>			
<i>They shld., wld. have.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>auraient.</i> 6			

*have, may have.**had, might have.**Gerund, or Present Participle.**Having.**Ayant.**Participle Past.**Eu.**Had.**The same Verb conjugated Interrogatively.*

<i>Have I?</i>	<i>ai-je</i> 51 ¶ ?	<i>Avons-nous</i> 51 ?
<i>Hast thou?</i>	<i>as-tu</i> 51 ?	<i>Avez-vous</i> 51 ?
<i>Has he?</i>	<i>a-t-il</i> 51 ?	<i>Ont-il</i> 51 ?
<i>Has she?</i>	<i>a-t-elle</i> 51 ?	<i>Ont-elles</i> 51 ?
<i>Has my brother?</i>	<i>Mon frère a-t-il</i> 52 ?	<i>Mes frères ont-il</i> 52 ?
<i>Has my sister?</i>	<i>Ma sœur a-t-elle</i> 52 ?	<i>Mes sœurs ont-elles</i> 52 ?

*have we? &c.*

\* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note † page 47.

‡ These figures refer to the pronunciation, see page 2.

§ See note 6, page 4.

|| See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *avoir* and *être*.

¶ These figures refer to the rules.

*The same Verb Avoir conjugated Negatively.*

*Infinitive.*

Not to have.

Ne pas avoir.

*Imperative.*

Have not.

Let us not have.

N<sup>ne</sup> aie, or N' ayez }  
N' ayons } pas ††

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I have not.	Je n' ai5	} pas.†	Je n' aie6	} pas.	may not have.
Tou hast not.	Tu n' as		Tu n' aies		
He has not.	Il n' a		Il n' ait26		
We have not.	Nous n' avons26	} pas.	Nous n' ayons	} pas.	may not have.
You	Vous n' avez		Vous n' ayez		
They	Ils n' ont26		Ils n' aient18		
I had not.	Je n' avais6	} pas.	Je n' eusse	} pas	might not have.
Thou	Tu n' avais		Tu n' eusses		
He	Il n' avait26		Il n' eût26		
We had not.	Nous n' avions	} pas.	Nous n' eussions	} pas	might not have.
You	Vous n' aviez		Vous n' eussiez		
They	Ils n' avaient6		Ils n' eussent18		
I shall, will not have.	Je n' eus26	} pas.	Je n' eusse	} pas	might not have.
Thou	Tu n' eus		Tu n' eusses		
He	Il n' eût26		Il n' eût26		
We shall, will not have.	Nous n' eûmes	} pas.	Nous n' eussions	} pas	might not have.
You	Vous n' eûtes		Vous n' eussiez		
They	Ils n' eurent18		Ils n' eussent18		
I shall, will not have.	Je n' aurais6	} pas.	Je n' eusse	} pas	might not have.
Thou	Tu n' aurais		Tu n' eusses		
He	Il n' aurait		Il n' eût26		
We shall, will not have.	Nous n' aurions	} pas.	Nous n' eussions	} pas	might not have.
You	Vous n' auriez		Vous n' eussiez		
They	Ils n' auraient26		Ils n' eussent18		
I should, would not have.	Je n' aurais6	} pas.	Je n' eusse	} pas	might not have.
Thou	Tu n' aurais		Tu n' eusses		
He	Il n' aurait		Il n' eût26		
We should, would not have.	Nous n' aurions	} pas.	Nous n' eussions	} pas	might not have.
You	Vous n' auriez		Vous n' eussiez		
They	Ils n' auraient6		Ils n' eussent18		

*Gerund.*

Not having. N' ayant pas.

*Participle.*

Pas eu. Not had.

*The same Verb conjugated Negatively and Interrogatively.*

Have I	} not?	N' ai-je51†	} pas?	N' avons-nous	} pas?
Hast thou		N' as-tu51		N' avez-vous	
Has he		N' a-t-il51		N' ont-ils51	
Has she		N' a-t-elle		N' ont-elles51	
Has not my brother? Mon frère n'a-t-il52 pas? Mes frères n'ont-ils pas?					
Has not my sister? Ma sœur n'a-t-elle52 pas? Mes sœurs n'ont-elles pas?					

\* See note ‡ page 43.

† See the negative adverbs, rule 55

‡ See note ¶ page 92.

AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*.

*Infinitive Mood.*  
To be. *Etre.*

	Be.	Imperative.	Sois, sing.	Soyez, plur.*	Soyons.	
	Let us be.					
	<i>Indicative.</i>				<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	I am.	Je3	suis.26	Je3	sois.23	be, may be.
	Thou art.	Tu	es.26	Tu	sois.26	
	He is.	Il	est.26	Il	soit.26	
	We are.	Nous	sommes.	Nous	soyons.4	
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	You are.	Vous	êtes 26	Vous	soyez.	were, might be
	They are.	Ils	sont.26	Ils	soient.18	
	I was.	J'	ét ais.6			
	Thou wast.	Tu	ét ais.			
<i>Past tense.</i>	He was.	Il	ét ait.26			
	We were.	Nous	ét ions.26.			
	You were.	Vous	ét iez.			
	They were.	Ils	ét aient.6			
<i>Part. tense.</i>	I was.	Je3	tus.26	Je3	fusse.2	
	Thou wast.	Tu	fus †	Tu	fusses.26	
	He was.	Il	fut.26	Il	fût.26	
	We were.	Nous	fûmes.	Nous	fussions.	
<i>Fut. positive.</i>	You were.	Vous	fûtes.26	Vous	fussiez.	
	They were.	Ils	furent.18	Ils	fussent.18	
	I shall or will be.	Je3	serai.5			
	Thou shalt, will be.	Tu	seras.26			
<i>Fut. conditional.</i>	He shall, will be.	Il	sera.			
	We shall, will be.	Nous	serons.			
	You shall, will be.	Vous	serrez.26			
	They shall, will be.	Ils	seront.26			
	I should, would be.	Je3	serais.6			
	Thou should, would be.	Tu	serais.			
	He should, would be.	Il	serait.26			
	We should, would be.	Nous	serions.			
	You should, would be.	Vous	seriez.			
	They should, would be.	Ils	seraient.6			

*Gerund, or Present Participle.*

Being.

Et ant.

*Participle Past.*

Êté. Been

*The same Verb conjugated Interrogatively.*

Am I?	Suis-je51 ?	Sommes-nous51 ?	are we? &c.
Art thou?	Es-tu51 ?	Etes-vous51 ?	
Is he?	Est-il51 ?	Sont-ils51 ?	
Is she?	Est-elle51 ?	Sont-elles51 ?	
Is my brother?	Mon frère est-il52 ?	Mes frères sont-ils52 ?	
Is my sister?	Ma sœur est-elle52 ?	Mes sœurs sont-elles52 ?	

\* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note 2, page 1.

‡ See, syntax, rule 140 the distinction between *étais* and *fus*.

*The same Verb être conjugated Negatively.*

*Infinitive.*

Not to be

Ne pas être.

*Imperative.*

Be not.

Ne sois, or Ne soyez

Let us not be.

Ne soyons } pas.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I am not.	Je3 ne suis	} pas.	Je3 ne sois23	} pas.	} may not be.
Thou art not.	Tu n' es26		Tu ne sois		
He is not.	Il n' est26		Il ne soit26		
We	Nous ne sommes		Nous ne soyons		
You } are not.	Vous n' êtes	} pas.	Vous ne soyez	} pas.	} might not be.
They }	Ils ne sont26		Ils ne soient18		
I	Je3 n' étais0				
Thou } was not.	Tu n' étais*				
He	Il n' était26	} pas.		} pas.	}
We	Nous n' étions				
You } were not.	Vous n' étiez				
They }	Ils n' étaient6				
I	Je3 ne fus	} pas.	Je3 ne fusse	} pas.	} might not be.
Thou } was not.	Tu ne fus*		Tu ne fusses		
He	Il ne fut26		Il ne fût26		
We	Nous ne fûmes		Nous ne fussions		
You } were not.	Vous ne fûtes	} pas.	Vous ne fussiez	} pas.	}
They }	Ils ne furent18		Ils ne fussent18		
I	Je3 ne serai5				
Thou	Tu ne seras	} pas.		} pas.	}
He } shall, will	Il ne sera				
We	Nous ne serons				
You } not be.	Vous ne serez				
They }	Ils ne seront26	} pas.			
I	Je3 ne serais6				
Thou	Tu ne serais	} pas.			
He } shld. wld.	Il ne serait				
We	Nous ne serions				
You } not be.	Vous ne seriez				
They }	Ils ne seraient6				

*Gerund.*

Being not. n'étant pas.

*Participle.*

pas été. not been.

*The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.*

Am I	} not ?	ne suis-je	} pas ?	ne sommes-nous	} pas ?
Art thou		n' es-tu		n' êtes-vous	
Is he		n' est-il		ne sont-ils	
Is she		n' est-elle		ne sont-elles	
Is not my brother ?		Mon frère n'est-il pas ?		Mes frères ne sont-ils pas ?	
Is not my sister ?		Ma sœur n'est-elle pas ?		Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?	

\* See, syntax, rule 40, the distinction between *sois* and *es* ; *étais* and *fus*

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS *ER*, *IR*, *OIR*, *RE*.\*

*A Table, shewing in one point of view, the difference between*

	ER.			IR.		
	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>	<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
	<i>Blâmer</i> <i>er</i> .	<i>ant.</i>	<i>é.</i>	<i>Fin ir.</i>	<i>issant.</i>	<i>i.</i>
	<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>	<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>Je blâm</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>Fin is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>e. es.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>isses.</i>
	<i>Il</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>il.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons. ions.</i>	<i>issons.</i>	<i>issons</i>	<i>issions.</i>
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez. iez.</i>	<i>issez.</i>	<i>issez.</i>	<i>issiez.</i>
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ent.</i>	<i>ent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	<i>Je blâm</i>	<i>ais.†</i>		<i>Fin issais.†</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>		<i>issais.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>		<i>issait.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>		<i>issions.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>		<i>issaient</i>		
<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>Je blâm</i>	<i>ai.</i>	<i>asse.</i>	<i>Fin is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>asses.</i>	<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>
	<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>ât.</i>	<i>il.</i>		<i>ît.</i>
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>âmes.</i>	<i>assions.</i>	<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>âtes.</i>	<i>assiez.</i>	<i>îles.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>èrent.</i>	<i>assent.</i>	<i>îrent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
<i>Future positive.</i>	<i>Je blâmer</i>	<i>ai.</i>		<i>Finir ai.</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>		<i>as.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>		<i>a.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>		<i>ons.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>		<i>ez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont.</i>		<i>ont.</i>		
<i>Future conditional.</i>	<i>Je blâmer</i>	<i>ais.†</i>		<i>Finir ais.†</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>		<i>ais.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>		<i>ait.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>		<i>ions.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>		<i>iez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>		<i>aient.</i>		

\* After the same manner as *Blâmer* are conjugated all the verbs the are conjugated about 220 verbs in infinitive of which ends in *er*, (about *ir*, both *primitive* and *compound*. 2700 in number) except *Aller* and *Compound verbs* are those whose *Envoyer*. Observe only, that in the signification changes by the means verbs in *ger*, as, *Changer*, *Manger*, of a preposition prefixed to them; *Songer*, the *e* is retained before *a*, *o*, as *déflourir*, to lose the blossom; re- in order to soften the sound of *g*; so *fleurir*, to blossom again; which are instead of saying *Changons*, *Mang-* conjugated like their primitive *fleur-* *ons*, *Songons*; *Changais*, *Mangais*, *rir*, to blossom; *défaire*, to undo; *Songais*; we say, *Changeons*, *Mang-* *refaire*, to do again; which are *eons*, *Songeons*; *Changeais*, *Mang-* conjugated like their primitive *eais*, &c. *faire*, to do.

\* These are the *only signs* by which it can be known to what conjugation a verb belongs. By paying attention to the *termination* of the *infinitive*, and *altering* the same *number of letters* as are here marked in *italics*, i. e. those ending in *er* after *BLÂMER*.



*the Four Conjugations, and how the tenses of a Verb proceed from one another.*

OIR.			RE.		
<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>	<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>
<i>Dev oir.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>Dû.</i>	<i>Attend re.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>u.</i>
<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>	<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>
Dois.		Doive.	Attend s.		e.
Dois.	Dois.	Doives.	s.	s.	es.
Doit.		Doive.	Attend		e.
<i>Dev ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
<i>ex.</i>	<i>ex.</i>	<i>iez.</i>	<i>ex.</i>	<i>ex.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
Doivent.		Doivent.	<i>ont.</i>		<i>ont.</i>
<i>Dev ais.†</i>			<i>Attend ais.†</i>		
ais.			ais.		
ait.			ait.		
ions.			ions.		
iez.			iez.		
aient.			aient.		
Dus.		Dusse.	Attend is.		isse.
Dus.		Dusses.	is.		isses.
Dut.		Dût.	it.		it.
Dûmes.		Dussions.	imes.		issions.
Dâtes.		Dussiez.	ies.		issiez.
Durent.		Dussent.	irent.		issent.
<i>Dev rai.</i>			<i>Attendrai.</i>		
ras.			as.		
ra.			a.		
rons.			ons.		
rez.			ex.		
ront.			ont.		
<i>Dev rais.†</i>			<i>Attendrais.†</i>		
rais.			ais.		
rait.			ait.		
rions.			ions.		
riez.			iez.		
raient.			aient.		

After the same manner as *Devoir* are conjugated *Redevoir*, *Percevoir*, *Apercevoir*, *S'apercevoir*, *Concevoir*, *Recevoir*.

N. B. This verb is not regular ; if it is found here amongst the regular, it is because its termination requires a conjugation of its own. The words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in roman characters ; the *regular* are the *italic terminations* added to the roman letters.

After the same manner as *Attendre* are conjugated *Batre*, *Abatre*, *Combatre*, *Debatre*, *Rabatre*, *Rebatre*, *Fendre*, *Défendre*, *Descendre*, *Condescendre*, *Fondre*, *Confondre*, *Refondre*, *Morfondre*, *Rempire*, *Corrompre*, *Interrompre*, *Pondre*, *Répondre*, *Correspondre*, *Répandre*, *Mordre*, *Démordre*, *Tendre*, *Etendre*, *Entendre*, *Prétendre*, *Rendre*, *Pendre*, *Dépendre*, *Vendre*, *Perdre*, *Tordre*, *Retordre*, *Tondre*.

those in *ir* after *FIN* *ir*, those in *oir* after *DEV* *oir*, and those in *re* after *ATTEND* *re*, and with the assistance of the tables of the irregular verbs, it is impossible for any person to commit errors which he is not himself able to rectify.

† See note 6, page 4.

## REGULAR VERBS IN ER.

## Infinitive Mood.

To Blame.

Blâm *er*.

## Imperative.

Blame.

Blâm *e*, sing.Blâm *ez*, plur.

Let us blame.

Blâm *ons*.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

Pres. tense.	I blame, or am blaming.	Je3	Blâm <i>e</i> .2	Je3	Blâm <i>e</i> .2	blame, may blame.
		Tu	Blâm <i>es</i> .26	Tu	Blâm <i>es</i> .26	
		Il	Blâm <i>e</i> .	Il	Blâm <i>e</i> .	
		Nous	Blâm <i>ons</i> .	Nous	Blâm <i>ions</i> .	
Imper. tense.	We blame, or are blaming.*	Vous	Blâm <i>ez</i> .	Vous	Blâm <i>iez</i> .	blamed, might blame
		Il26	Blâm <i>ent</i> .18	Il26	Blâm <i>ent</i> .18	
		Je3	Blâm <i>ais</i> .6	Je3	Blâm <i>asse</i> .2	
		Tu	Blâm <i>ais</i> .	Tu	Blâm <i>asses</i> .	
Fut. tense.	I was blaming.*	Il	Blâm <i>ait</i> .26	Il	Blâm <i>ât</i> .26	
		Nous	Blâm <i>ions</i> .	Nous	Blâm <i>issions</i> .	
		Vous	Blâm <i>iez</i> .	Vous	Blâm <i>assiez</i> .	
		Il26	Blâm <i>aient</i> .6	Il26	Blâm <i>assent</i> .18	
Fut. tense.	We were blaming.	Je3	Blâm <i>ai</i> .5	Je3	Blâm <i>asse</i> .2	
		Tu	Blâm <i>as</i> .26	Tu	Blâm <i>asses</i> .	
		Il	Blâm <i>a</i> .	Il	Blâm <i>ât</i> .26	
		Nous	Blâm <i>âmes</i> .	Nous	Blâm <i>issions</i> .	
Fut. positive.	I shall, will blame, or be blaming.	Vous	Blâm <i>âtes</i> .	Vous	Blâm <i>assiez</i> .	
		Il26	Blâm <i>èrent</i> .18	Il26	Blâm <i>assent</i> .18	
		Je3	Blâmer <i>ai</i> .5	Je3	Blâmer <i>asse</i> .2	
		Tu	Blâmer <i>as</i> .26	Tu	Blâmer <i>asses</i> .	
Fut. const.†.	I should, would, blame, or be blaming.	Il	Blâmer <i>a</i> .	Il	Blâmer <i>ât</i> .26	
		Nous	Blâmer <i>ons</i> .	Nous	Blâmer <i>ions</i> .	
		Vous	Blâmer <i>ez</i> .	Vous	Blâmer <i>iez</i> .	
		Il26	Blâmer <i>aient</i> .6	Il26	Blâmer <i>aient</i> .6	

## Gerund.

## Participle.

Blaming.

Blâm *ant*.Blâm *é*.

Blamed.

## Interrogatively.

## Negatively.

## Interrogative. and Negative.

Blâme-je?	Je	ne Blâme	Ne Blâme-je	do I not blame?
Blâmes-tu?	Tu	ne Blâmes	Ne Blâmes-tu	
Blâme-t-il?	Il	ne Blâme	Ne Blâme-t-il	
Blâmons-nous?	Nous	ne Blâmons	Ne Blâmons-nous	
Blâmez-vous?	Vous	ne Blâmez	Ne Blâmez-vous	
Blâment-ils?	Il26	ne Blâment	Ne Blâment-ils	

N. B. After the same manner as *Blâmer* conjugate all the verbs, the infinite of which ends in *er*, except *aller* and *envoyer*, p. 102, 103.†

\* Never say *je suis blâmant*, *tu es blâmant*, *il est blâmant*, *j'étais blâmant*, &c. See note (r) p. 61.

† See note \* page 96.

participle

may have blamed.

blâmé.

might have blamed.

blâmé.

had blamed.

Nega'ty.

pas  
blâmé?

*The verb Blamer made reflexive.\***Infinitive.*

To Blame oneself.

Se Blâmer.

*Imperative.*

Commanding 36 rule, page 60.

Forbidding 27 rule, page 61.

Blame thyself.	blâm e - toi.	Ne te blâm e	} pas
yourself.	blâm ez - vous.	Ne vous blâm ez	
Let us blame ourselves.	blâm ons-nous.	Ne nous blâm ons	

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

I	myself.	Je	me	blâm e.	Je	me	blâm e.	} may blame myself.
Thou	thyself.	Tu	te	blâm ez.	Tu	te	blâm ez.	
He	himself.	Il	se	blâm e.	Il	se	blâm e.	
We	ourselves.	Nous	nous	blâm ons.	Nous	nous	blâm ions.	
You	yourselves.	Vous	vous	blâm ez.	Vous	vous	blâm iez.	
They	themselves.	Ils	se	blâm ent.	Ils	se	blâm ent.	} might blame myself.
I	myself.	Je	me	blâm ais.	Je	me	blâm asse.	
Thou	thyself.	Tu	te	blâm ais.	Tu	te	blâm asses.	
He	himself.	Il	se	blâm ait.	Il	se	blâm ât.	
We	ourselves.	Nous	nous	blâm ions.	Nous	nous	blâm assions.	
You	yourselves.	Vous	vous	blâm iez.	Vous	vous	blâm assiez.	} might blame myself.
They	themselves.	Ils	se	blâm aient.	Ils	se	blâm assent.	
I	myself.	Je	me	blâm ai.	Je	me	blâm asse.	} might blame myself.
Thou	thyself.	Tu	te	blâm as.	Tu	te	blâm asses.	
He	himself.	Il	se	blâm a.	Il	se	blâm ât.	
We	ourselves.	Nous	nous	blâm âmes.	Nous	nous	blâm assions.	
You	yourselves.	Vous	vous	blâm âtes.	Vous	vous	blâm assiez.	
They	themselves.	Ils	se	blâm ârent.	Ils	se	blâm assent.	} might blame myself.
I	myself.	Je	me	blâmer ai.	Je	me	blâmer as.	
Thou	thyself.	Tu	te	blâmer as.	Tu	te	blâmer asses.	
He	himself.	Il	se	blâmer a.	Il	se	blâmer ât.	
We	ourselves.	Nous	nous	blâmer ions.	Nous	nous	blâmer assions.	
You	yourselves.	Vous	vous	blâmer iez.	Vous	vous	blâmer assiez.	} might blame myself.
They	themselves.	Ils	se	blâmer aient.	Ils	se	blâmer assent.	
I	myself.	Je	me	blâmer ais.	Je	me	blâmer asse.	} might blame myself.
Thou	thyself.	Tu	te	blâmer ais.	Tu	te	blâmer asses.	
He	himself.	Il	se	blâmer ait.	Il	se	blâmer ât.	
We	ourselves.	Nous	nous	blâmer ions.	Nous	nous	blâmer assions.	
You	yourselves.	Vous	vous	blâmer iez.	Vous	vous	blâmer assiez.	
They	themselves.	Ils	se	blâmer aient.	Ils	se	blâmer assent.	

*Interrogatively.**Negatively.**Interro'ly and Neg'ty.*

Me	blâme-je?	Je	ne	me	blâme	Ne	me	blâme-je	} pas?
Te	blâmes-tu?	Tu	ne	te	blâmes	Ne	te	blâmes-tu	
Se	blâme-t-il?	Il	ne	se	blâme	Ne	se	blâme-t-il	} pas?
Nous	blâmons-nous?	Nous	ne	nous	blâmons	Ne	nous	blâmons-nous	
Vous	blâmez-vous?	Vous	ne	vous	blâmez	Ne	vous	blâmez-vous	} pas?
Se	blâment-ils?	Ils	ne	se	blâment	Ne	se	blâment-ils	

\* Sometimes it happens that the agent, or person who acts, is also the object, i. e. acts upon himself, as when I say; *I blame myself; Thou preparest thyself; He distinguishes himself; We wash ourselves; You dress yourself; They expose themselves,*

Compound tenses of the reflexive Verb *Se Blâmer*, formed by adding the participle *Blâmé*, to the auxiliary verb *être*.

### Infinitive Compound.

To have blamed oneself.

*S'être blâmé.*

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
<i>I</i>	myself.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>uis</i>	} Blâmé, m. téc. f.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>ois</i>	Blâmé. may have blamed. Blâmé. might have blamed
<i>Thou</i>	thyself.	<i>Tu</i> t' <i>es</i>		<i>Tu</i> t <i>e</i> s <i>ois</i>	
<i>He</i>	himself.	<i>Il</i> a' <i>est</i>		<i>Il</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>oit</i>	
<i>We</i>	ourselves.	<i>Nous</i> nous s <i>ommes</i>	} Blâmés, m. téc. f.	<i>Nous</i> nous s <i>oyons</i>	
<i>You</i>	yourselves.	<i>Vous</i> vous <i>êtes</i>		<i>Vous</i> vous s <i>oyez</i>	
<i>They</i>	themselves.	<i>Ils</i> s <i>ont</i>		<i>Ils</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>oient</i>	
<i>I</i>	myself.	<i>Je</i> m' <i>étais</i>	} Blâmé, m. téc. f.		
<i>Thou</i>	thyself.	<i>Tu</i> t' <i>étais</i>			
<i>He</i>	himself.	<i>Il</i> a' <i>était</i>			
<i>We</i>	ourselves.	<i>Nous</i> nous <i>étions</i>	} Blâmés, m. téc. f.		
<i>You</i>	yourselves.	<i>Vous</i> vous <i>étiez</i>			
<i>They</i>	themselves.	<i>Ils</i> a' <i>étaient</i>			
<i>I</i>	myself.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> f <i>us</i>	} Blâmé, m. téc. f.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> f <i>usse</i>	
<i>Thou</i>	thyself.	<i>Tu</i> t <i>e</i> f <i>us</i>		<i>Tu</i> t <i>e</i> f <i>usses</i>	
<i>He</i>	himself.	<i>Il</i> s <i>e</i> f <i>ut</i>		<i>Il</i> s <i>e</i> f <i>ût</i>	
<i>We</i>	ourselves.	<i>Nous</i> nous f <i>ûmes</i>	} Blâmés, m. téc. f.	<i>Nous</i> nous f <i>ussions</i>	
<i>You</i>	yourselves.	<i>Vous</i> vous f <i>ûtes</i>		<i>Vous</i> vous f <i>ûtes</i>	
<i>They</i>	themselves.	<i>Ils</i> s <i>e</i> f <i>urent</i>		<i>Ils</i> s <i>e</i> f <i>ussent</i>	
<i>I</i>	myself.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>erai</i>	} Blâmé, m. téc. f.		
<i>Thou</i>	thyself.	<i>Tu</i> t <i>e</i> s <i>eras</i>			
<i>He</i>	himself.	<i>Il</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>era</i>			
<i>We</i>	ourselves.	<i>Nous</i> nous s <i>erons</i>	} Blâmés, m. téc. f.		
<i>You</i>	yourselves.	<i>Vous</i> vous s <i>erez</i>			
<i>They</i>	themselves.	<i>Ils</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>eront</i>			
<i>I</i>	myself.	<i>Je</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>erais</i>	} Blâmé, m. téc. f.		
<i>Thou</i>	thyself.	<i>Tu</i> t <i>e</i> s <i>erais</i>			
<i>He</i>	himself.	<i>Il</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>erait</i>			
<i>We</i>	ourselves.	<i>Nous</i> nous s <i>erions</i>	} Blâmés, m. téc. f.		
<i>You</i>	yourselves.	<i>Vous</i> vous s <i>eriez</i>			
<i>They</i>	themselves.	<i>Ils</i> s <i>e</i> s <i>eraient</i>			
<i>Interrogatively.</i>			<i>Negatively.</i>		
<i>Me</i>	s <i>uis-je</i>	<i>Je</i> n <i>e</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>uis</i>	} pas blâmé.	<i>Ne</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>uis-je</i>	Blâmé ?
<i>T'</i>	s <i>es-tu</i>	<i>Tu</i> n <i>e</i> t' <i>es</i>		<i>Ne</i> t' <i>es-tu</i>	
<i>S'</i>	s <i>est-il</i>	<i>Il</i> n <i>e</i> a' <i>est</i>		<i>Ne</i> a' <i>est-il</i>	
<i>Nous</i>	s <i>ommes-nous</i>	<i>Nous</i> n <i>e</i> nous s <i>ommes</i> pas	} blâmés.	<i>Ne</i> nous s <i>ommes-nous</i> pas	
<i>Vous</i>	s <i>êtes-vous</i>	<i>Vous</i> n <i>e</i> vous s <i>êtes</i> pas		<i>Ne</i> vous s <i>êtes-vous</i> pas	
<i>Se</i>	s <i>ont-ils</i>	<i>Ils</i> n <i>e</i> s <i>ont</i> pas		<i>Ne</i> s <i>ont-ils</i> pas	
<i>Interrogatively and Negatively.</i>			<i>Interrogatively and Negatively.</i>		
<i>Me</i>	s <i>uis-je</i>	<i>Je</i> n <i>e</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>uis</i>	} pas blâmé.	<i>Ne</i> m <i>e</i> s <i>uis-je</i>	Blâmé ?
<i>T'</i>	s <i>es-tu</i>	<i>Tu</i> n <i>e</i> t' <i>es</i>		<i>Ne</i> t' <i>es-tu</i>	
<i>S'</i>	s <i>est-il</i>	<i>Il</i> n <i>e</i> a' <i>est</i>		<i>Ne</i> a' <i>est-il</i>	
<i>Nous</i>	s <i>ommes-nous</i>	<i>Nous</i> n <i>e</i> nous s <i>ommes</i> pas	} blâmés.	<i>Ne</i> nous s <i>ommes-nous</i> pas	
<i>Vous</i>	s <i>êtes-vous</i>	<i>Vous</i> n <i>e</i> vous s <i>êtes</i> pas		<i>Ne</i> vous s <i>êtes-vous</i> pas	
<i>Se</i>	s <i>ont-ils</i>	<i>Ils</i> n <i>e</i> s <i>ont</i> pas		<i>Ne</i> s <i>ont-ils</i> pas	

4c. by which you see that the person who is the agent, performs the action on himself, and consequently is also the object. These verbs the French call *réflexifs*; i. e. reflexive, or reflected, because the energy of the verb returns to its agent. They differ in nothing from the other verbs, but in requiring an objective pronoun of the same number and person as the agent, or nominative, and in having their compound tenses formed with the auxiliary *ÊTRE*, instead of the auxiliary *AVOIR*.

N. B. These verbs are known in the dictionaries by having *se* before their infinitive.

\* See note † page 47.

† See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the past participle.

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN ER.\*

		<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Aller.</i>		
		<i>To go.</i>				
		<i>Imperative.</i>				
		<i>Go.</i>	<i>Va, sing.</i>	<i>All ex, plur.</i>	<i>All ons.</i>	
		<i>Let us go.</i>				
		<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	go, or am	<i>Je</i> 3 vais.6	<i>J'</i>	aille.	
	<i>Thou</i>	goest, art	<i>Tu</i> vas.26	<i>Tu</i>	ailles.	
	<i>He</i>	goes, or is	<i>Il</i> va.	<i>Il</i>	aille.	
	<i>We</i>	go, or are going.	<i>Nous</i> all ons.	<i>Nous</i>	all ions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> all ez.	<i>Vous</i>	all iez.	
<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> vont.26	<i>Ils</i>	ailent.18		
<i>Imparf. tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	was going.	<i>J'</i>	all ais.6		
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	all ais.		
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	all ait.26		
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	all ions.		
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	all iez.		
<i>They</i>	were going.	<i>Ils</i>	all aient.6			
<i>Perf. tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	went, or did go.	<i>J'</i>	all ai.5†	<i>J'</i>	all asses.2
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	all as.26	<i>Tu</i>	all asses.
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	all a.	<i>Il</i>	all at.26
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	all âmes.	<i>Nous</i>	all assions.
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	all âtes.	<i>Vous</i>	all assiez.
<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	all ârent.18	<i>Ils</i>	all assent.	
<i>Future tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	shall, will go, or be going.	<i>J'</i>	irai.5		
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	iras.26		
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	ira.		
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	irons.		
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	irez.		
<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	iront.26			
<i>Future perfect.</i>	<i>I</i>	should, wd. go or be going.	<i>J'</i>	irais.6		
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	irais.		
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	irait.26		
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	irions.		
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	iriez.		
<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	iraient.6			
		<i>Gerund.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>		
		<i>Going.</i>	<i>All ant.</i>	<i>All é.</i>	<i>Gone.</i>	

*go, may go.*

*went, might go.*

*N. B.* *Aller, to Go, requires a place mentioned after it; as, Je Vais à la maison, à la ville, &c. I am going home, to town, &c.*

*If no place is mentioned, we make the verb reflective as follows:*

\* A verb is called *irregular*, when all its tenses and persons cannot be formed from the infinitive, by changing only the last syllable, as you see in the verb *BLAVER*.

In order to render the difference more obvious, the tenses or persons which are formed regularly from the infinitive, have their terminations printed in *italic* characters, the words which are *irregular* are printed *wholly* in *roman*.

† *Fus, Fus, Fut; Fûmes, Fûtes, Furent*, the perfect tense of *ETER*, is often used instead of *Allai, Allas, Alla; Allâmes, Allâtes, Allèrent*, the perfect of *ALLER*; as, *J'allai* or *je fus en France l'année dernière*; I went to France last year. I would prefer *allai* to *fus*.

*Infinitive.*

To go away.

S'en All er.

*Imperative.*

Commanding rule 26, p. 60.

• Forbidding rule 27, p. 61.

Go away, or } Va-t-en, sing. Ne t'en va pas. } do not go  
be gone. } Allez-vous-en, pl. Ne vous-en allez pas. } away.  
Let us go away. Allons-nous-en. Ne nous-en allons pas. let us not go.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I go, or am	going	Je	m'en vais.	Je	m'en aille.	may go away.
Thou goest, art	going	Tu	t'en vas.	Tu	t'en ailles.	
He goes, or is	going	Il	s'en va.	Il	s'en aille.	
We	go, are	Nous	nous en allons.	Nous	nous en allions.	
You	going	Vous	vous en allez.	Vous	vous en alliez.	
They	away.	Ils	s'en vont.	Ils	s'en aillent.	
I was going away.		Je	m'en allais.			
I went away.		Je	m'en allai.	Je	m'en allasse.	
I shd. will go away.		Je	m'en irai.			
I shd. wld go away.		Je	m'en irais.			
I am not going away.		Je ne	m'en vais pas, &c			

Compound tenses, formed by adding the participle *allé* to the auxiliary verb *être*.

I have	gone away.	Je	m'en suis allé.
Thou hast		Tu	t'en es allé.
He has		Il	s'en est allé.
We have		Nous	nous en sommes allés.
You have		Vous	vous en êtes allés.
They have		Ils	s' en sont allés.

ENVOYER.

To Send.

The sole irregularity of this verb is in the *future* and in the *conditional*, the other tenses being formed regularly in the same manner as *Blâmer*.

*Infinitive.*

To send.

Envoy er.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

Pres. I send.		J'	envoie.*	J'	envoie, &c.
Imp. I did send.		J'	envoyais.		
Perf. I sent.		J'	envoyai, &c.	J'	envoyasse, &c.
Futu. I	shall, or will send.	J'	envèrai.5		
Thou		Tu	envèras.		
He		Il	envèra.		
We		Nous	envèrons.		
You		Vous	envèrez.		
They		Ils	envèront.26		
Cond. I	shd. or wld. send.	J'	envèrais.6		
Thou		Tu	envèrais.		
He		Il	envèrait.26		
We		Nous	envèrions.		
You		Vous	envèriez.		
They		Ils	envèraient.6		

Conjugate in the same manner, *Renvoy er*, to Send back, to Dismiss.

\* The modern grammarian changes the y into i before an e mute.

## REGULAR VERBS IN IR.

		<i>Infinitive.</i>			
		<i>To finish.</i>		<i>Fin ir.</i>	
		<i>Imperative.</i>			
		<i>Finish.</i>	<i>Fin ie, sing.</i>	<i>Fin issez, plur.</i>	<i>Fin issons.</i>
		<i>Let us finish.</i>			
		<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
Pres. tense.	I finish, or am finishing.	finishing.	Je320fin ie.26	Je320fin isse.20	finish, may finish.
	Thou finishest, art finishing.		Tu fin is.	Tu fin isses.	
	He finishes, or is finishing.		Il fin it.26	Il fin isse.	
	We finish, or are finishing.		Nous fin issons.	Nous fin issons.	
	You finish, or are finishing.		Vous fin issez.	Vous fin issez.	
	They finish, or are finishing.		Ils fin issent.18	Ils fin issent.18.	
	I was finishing.		Je3 fin issais.6		
	Thou wast finishing.		Tu fin issais.		
	He was finishing.		Il fin issait.26		
	We were finishing.		Nous fin issions.		
	You were finishing.		Vous fin issiez.		
	They were finishing.		Ils fin issaient.6		
Imper. tense.	I finished, did finish.	finished, did finish.	Je3 fin is.26	Je3 fin isse.2	finished, might finish.
	Thou finished, did finish.		Tu fin is.	Tu fin isses.	
	He finished, did finish.		Il fin it.26	Il fin it.26	
	We finished, did finish.		Nous fin imes.	Nous fin issons.	
	You finished, did finish.		Vous fin ites.	Vous fin issez.	
	They finished, did finish.		Ils fin irent.23	Ils fin issent.26	
Perfe. tense.	I shall, will finish, be finishing.	shall, will finish, be finishing.	Je3 finir ai.5		
	Thou shalt, wilt finish, be finishing.		Tu finir as.		
	He shall, will finish, be finishing.		Il finir a.		
	We shall, will finish, be finishing.		Nous finir ons.		
	You shall, will finish, be finishing.		Vous finir ez.		
	They shall, will finish, be finishing.		Ils finir ont.26		
Fut. positive.	I should, would finish, be finishing.	should, would finish, be finishing.	Je3 finir ais.6		
	Thou shouldst, wouldst finish, be finishing.		Tu finir ais.		
	He should, would finish, be finishing.		Il finir ait.26		
	We should, would finish, be finishing.		Nous finir ions.		
	You should, would finish, be finishing.		Vous finir iez.		
	They should, would finish, be finishing.		Ils finir aient.6		

		<i>Gerund.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>	
		<i>Finishing.</i>	<i>Fin issant.</i>	<i>Fin i.</i>	<i>Finished.</i>
		<i>Interrogatively.</i>		<i>Interrogatively and Negatively.</i>	
do I fin?	Finis-je ?	Je	ne finis	do I not finish?	Ne finis-je ?
	Finis-tu ?	Tu	ne finis		Ne finis-tu ?
	Finit-il ?	Il	ne finit		Ne finit-il ?
	Finissons-nous ?	Nous	ne finissons		Ne finissons-nous pas ?
	Finissez-vous ?	Vous	ne finissez		Ne finissez-vous pas ?
	Finissent-ils ?	Ils	ne finissent		Ne finissent-ils pas ?

After the same manner as *finir*, are conjugated the following verbs,

*s'Abatardir*, to degenerate.  
*s'Abêtir*, to grow stupid.

*Abolir*, to abolish.  
*Abonnir*, to better.

*Aboutir*, to end.  
*s'Abrutir*, to become stupid.  
*Accomplir*



Accomplir, to accomplish.	Déranger, to take off redness.	Pervertir, to pervert.
Accourir, to shorten.	Désobéir, to disobey.	Pétrir, to knead.
s'Accroupir, to sit squat.	se Dessaisir, to give up.	Polir, to polish.
Adoucir, to soften.	Désunir, to disunite.	Pourir, to grow rotten.
Affadir, to render tasteless.	Divertir, to divert.	Prémunir, to provide.
Affermir, to strengthen.	Durcir, to harden.	Punir, to punish.
Affablir, to weaken.	Eblourir, to dazzle.	Raccourcir, to shorten.
Afranchir, to free.	Eclaircir, to brighten.	Racornir, to make tough.
Agir, to act.	Elargir, to widen.	Radoucir, to soften.
Agrandir, to enlarge.	Embellir, to embellish.	Raffermir, to strengthen again.
Aguerrir, to inure to war.	Emplir, to fill.	Rafralchir, to refresh.
Algrir, to exasperate.	Encherir, to grow dearer.	Ragrandir, to enlarge again.
Alentir, to slacken.	Endurcir, to harden.	Rajeunir, to grow young again.
Amaigrir, to grow lean.	Enforcir, to grow strong.	Ralentir, to slacken.
Ameublir, to make moveable.	Enfouir, to bury.	Ramoitir, to moisten.
Amoindrir, to lessen.	Enhardir, to embolden.	Ramollir, to soften.
Amollir, to soften.	Engloutir, to swallow up.	Rancir, to grow rancid.
Amortir, to redeem.	Engourdir, to benumb.	Ravilir, to debase.
Anéantir, to annihilate.	Enlaidir, to grow ugly.	Ravir, to ravish, to delight.
Anoblir, to ennoble.	s'Enorgueillir, to grow proud.	Rebâtir, to build again.
Appauvrir, to impoverish.	Enrichir, to enrich.	Reblanchir, to whiten again.
Appesantir, to make heavy.	Ensevelir, to put in a shroud.	Rebondir, to rebound.
Applanir, to level.	Envahir, to invade.	Réfléchir, to reflect.
Applâtrir, to flatten.	Epa'ssir, to thicken.	Reflourir, to blossom again.
Applaudir, to applaud.	Epanouir, the bud opening.	Refondir, to cool.
Approfondir, to fathom.	Equarrir, to square.	Régir, to rule, to govern.
Asservir, to enslave.	Etablir, to establish.	Rejaillir, to spurt up.
Assortir, to match.	Etourdir, to stun.	Réjouir, to rejoice.
Assoupir, to make drowsy.	Etrécir, to narrow.	Rembrunir, to darken.
Assouplir, to supple.	s'Evanouir, to faint.	Remplir, to fill again.
Assourdir, to deafen.	Farcir, to stuff.	Renchérir, to grow dearer.
Assouvir, to glut, to satiate.	Fléchir, to bend, to move.	Rendurcir, to make harder.
Assujettir, to subdue.	Flétrir, to wither.	Renhardir, to grow bold again.
Attendrir, to move to pity.	Fleurir, to blossom, to flourish.	Répartir, to distribute equally.
Atterrir, to approach the land.	Fouir, to dig.	Repolir, to polish again.
Avertir, to warn.	Fourbir, to furbish.	Résaisir, to seize again.
Avilir, to revile, to debase.	Fournir, to supply.	Resplendir, to shine.
Bannir, to banish.	Franchir, to leap over.	Ressortir, to resort.
Bâtir, to build.	Frémir, to shudder.	Retenir, to resound.
Bénir, to bless.	se Froidir, to grow cold.	Rétrécir, to straiten.
Blanchir, to whiten.	Garantir, to warrant.	Reverdir, to grow green again.
Blêmir, to grow pale.	Garnir, to furnish.	Réunir, to reunite.
Bleuir, to make blue.	Gémir, to groan.	Réussir, to succeed.
Blondir, to grow fair.	Grandir, to grow tall.	Rôtir, to roast.
se Blottir, to lie squat.	Grossir, to grow big.	Rougir, to blush.
Bondir, to skip.	Guérir, to cure.	Rouir, to steep.
Brandir, to brandish.	Hennir, to neigh.	Roussir, to make reddish.
Brouir, to blast.	Investir, to invest.	Rugir, to roar.
Brunir, to burnish.	Jaillir, to spout out.	Saillir, to gush out.
Candir, to candy.	Jaunir, to grow yellow.	Saisir, to seize.
Chérir, to cherish.	Jouir, to enjoy.	Salir, to soil.
Choisir, to choose.	Languir, to languish.	Sévir, to exercise severity.
Clapir, to squat, to clap.	Meurtrir, to bruise.	Subir, to undergo.
Compatir, to compassionate.	Moisir, to grow mouldy.	Subvertir, to subvert.
Convertir, to convert.	Mollir, to grow soft.	se Tapir, to squat.
Crépir, to roughcast.	Mugir, to low.	Tarir, to drain.
Croupir, to stagnate.	Munir, to store.	Ternir, to tarnish.
Débrutir, to take the roughness.	Mûrir, to ripen.	Terrir, to land.
Définir, to define.	Nantir, to give security.	Trahir, to betray.
Déflourir, to lose the blossom.	Noircir, to blacken.	Transir, to chill.
Dégarnir, to disgarish.	Nourrir, to feed.	Travestir, to disguise.
Dégourdir, to warm a little.	Obéir, to obey.	Unir, to unite.
Dégourperir, to move off.	Obscurcir, to obscure.	Verdir, to grow green.
Démolir, to demolish.	Ourdir, to warp.	Vernir, to varnish.
Dépérir, to decay.	Pâir, to grow pale.	Vieillir, to grow old.
Dépolir, to unpolish.	Parfournir, to take up.	Vomir, to vomit.
Dérôidir, to take off stiffness.	Pâtir, to suffer.	
	Périr, to perish.	

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN IR.\*

The *Irregular* verbs belonging to this conjugation are,

s' <i>Abstenir</i> , to abstain	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Accourir</i> , to run to	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Accueillir</i> , to welcome	- - -	like <i>cueillir</i> .
<i>Appartenir</i> , to belong	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
AQUERIR, to acquire	- - -	page 108.
BOUILLIR, to boil	- - -	page 109.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Conquérir</i> , to conquer	- - -	like <i>acquérir</i> .
<i>Consentir</i> , to consent	- - -	like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Contenir</i> , to contain	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Contrevenir</i> , to contravene	- - -	
<i>Convénir</i> , to agree	- - -	
COURIR, to run	- - -	page 110.
<i>Couvrir</i> , to cover	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
CUEILLIR, to gather	- - -	page 111.
<i>Découvrir</i> , to discover	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Démentir</i> , to give the lie	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
se <i>Départir</i> , to give up	- - -	
<i>Déservir</i> , to take off the dishes	- - -	
<i>Détenir</i> , to detain	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Devenir</i> , to become	- - -	
se <i>Dévêtir</i> , to undress	- - -	
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Endormir</i> , to lull asleep	- - -	
s' <i>Endormir</i> , to fall asleep	- - -	
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
s' <i>Enfuir</i> , to run away	- - -	like <i>fuir</i> .
<i>Entretenir</i> , to keep up	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Entr'ouvrir</i> , to open a little	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
FUIR, to flee, to shun, to avoid	- - -	page 112.
<i>Hair</i> , to hate†	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene	- - -	
<i>Maintenir</i> , to maintain	- - -	

\* Several of these irregular verbs having a similarity in their conjugation, as, for example, the verbs in *tir*, which are all but two (*vêtir* and *revêtir*) conjugated like *SENTIR*, the verbs in *entr* which are conjugated like *VENIR*; I have conjugated only one verb of each termination, as a model for the others; and all the verbs which may be conjugated in the same manner as that verb are found under it.

† *HAIR* is regular only in the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons singular of the *present* of the *indicative*, and in the *second* person singular of the *imperative*, where at are pronounced in one syllable,

Je <i>hais</i> .	I hate.	pronounce	<i>haye</i> .
Tu <i>hais</i> .	Thou hatest.		<i>haye</i> .
Il <i>hait</i> .	He hates.		<i>hay</i> .

In the other tenses and persons *ai* are pronounced in two distinct syllables, and the *i* is marked over with two dots,

Nous <i>h<sup>ai</sup>ssons</i> .	We hate.	pronounce	<i>ha-iss<sup>on</sup></i> .
Vous <i>h<sup>ai</sup>ss<sup>ez</sup></i> .	You hate.		<i>ha-iss<sup>ay</sup></i> .
Ils <i>h<sup>ai</sup>ss<sup>ent</sup></i> .	They hate.		<i>ha-iss<sup>ent</sup></i> .
Je <i>h<sup>ai</sup>ssais</i> .	I did hate.		<i>ha-iss<sup>ays</sup></i> .
Je <i>h<sup>ai</sup>s</i> .	I hated.		<i>ha-<sup>es</sup></i> .
Je <i>h<sup>ai</sup>trai</i> .	I shall hate.		<i>ha-<sup>es</sup></i> .
Je <i>h<sup>ai</sup>rais</i> .	I should hate, &c. like <i>FIN</i> , IR.		<i>ha-<sup>es</sup>ray</i> .

<i>Mentir</i> , to lie	- - -	like <i>sentir</i> .
<b>MOURIR</b> , to die	- - -	page 113.
<i>Obtenir</i> , to obtain	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Offrir</i> , to offer	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<b>OUVRIR</b> , to open	- - -	page 114.
<i>Parcourir</i> , to over-run	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Partir</i> , to set out	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Pressentir</i> , to have a foresight	- - -	
<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent	- - -	
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed	- - -	
<i>Quérir</i> , to fetch*	- - -	
<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse to	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Recouvrir</i> , to cover again	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Recueillir</i> , to collect	- - -	like <i>cueillir</i> .
<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>se Rendormir</i> , to sleep again	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Repartir</i> , to set out again	- - -	
<i>se Repentir</i> , to repent	- - -	
<i>Requérir</i> , to require,	- - -	like <i>acquérir</i> .
<i>Ressentir</i> , to resent	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Ressortir</i> , to go out again	- - -	
<i>Ressouvenir</i> , to remember	- - -	
<i>Retenir</i> , to retain	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Revenir</i> , to return	- - -	
<b>REVER</b> , to invest	- - -	page 115.
<i>Secourir</i> , to succour	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<b>SENTIR</b> , to feel, to smell	- - -	page 116.
<i>Servir</i> , to serve, to use	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out	- - -	
<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Soutenir</i> , to maintain	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>se Souvenir</i> , to remember	- - -	
<i>Subvenir</i> , to afford	- - -	
<i>Survenir</i> , to befall	- - -	
<i>Tenir</i> , to hold	- - -	
<b>TRESSAILLIR</b> , to start	- - -	page 117.
<b>VENIR</b> , to come	- - -	page 118.
<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe.	- - -	like <i>revêtir</i> .

\* Used only in the infinitive after *Aller* and *Envoyer* : as,  
*Aller quérir*, to go and fetch. *Envoyer quérir*, to send for.

*Infinitive.*

To acquire.

\*Aquerir

*Imperative.*

Acquire.

Let us acquire.

Aquier, *sing.*Aquer *ex, plur.*

Aquer ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense. Imper. tense. Perfect tense Fut. positive. Fut. cond <sup>l</sup> .	I Thou He We You They	acquire, or am acquiring. acquirest, art acquiring. acquires, or is acquiring. are acquiring.	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquiers. aquiers. aquiert.26 aquér ons. aquér ez. aquièrent.18	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquièr. aquièr. aquièr. aquér ions. aquér iez. aquièrent.18	acquire, may acquire. acquired, might acquire.
	I Thou He We You They	was acquiring. were acquiring.	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquér ais.6 aquér ais. aquér ait.26 aquér ions. aquér iez. aquér aient.6	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquisse.2 aquisse. aquit.26 aquisitions. aquissez. aquisseient.18	
	I Thou He We You They	acquired, did acquire.	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquis.† aquis. aquit.26 aquimes. aquites. aquirent.	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquisse.2 aquisse. aquit.26 aquisitions. aquissez. aquisseient.18	
	I Thou He We You They	shall, will acquire, be acquiring.	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquér rais.5† aquér ras. aquér ra. aquér rons. aquér rez. aquér ront.26	J' Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	*aquér rais.6† aquér rais. aquér rait.26 aquér rions. aquér riez. aquér raient.6	

*Gerund.*

Acquiring.

Aquer ant.

*Participle.*

Aquis.

Acquired.

Conjugate in the same manner,

Requérir, to require, and Conquérir, to conquer.

N. B. Conquerir is used only in the *infinitive*, in the *gerund* Conquérant, in the *participle* Conquis, and in the *perfect*

Je conquis.	I conquered.	Je conquisse.	might conquer.
Tu conquis.	Thou conqueredst.	Tu conquisses.	
Il conquit.	He conquered.	Il conquit.	
Nous conquimes, &c.	We conquered.	Nous conquissions.	

\* See *qu*, page 16.

† See note 4, page 2.

‡ These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*.

*Infinitive.*

To boil. Bouillir.

*Imperative.*

Boil. Bouill es, plur.  
Let us boil. Bouill ons.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

<i>Present tense.</i>	<i>I</i> boil, or am boiling.	<i>Je</i> 3 14bous26.	<i>Je</i> bouill e.	
	<i>Thou</i> boilest, art boiling.	<i>Tu</i> bous.	<i>Tu</i> bouill es.	
	<i>He</i> boils, or is boiling.	<i>Il</i> bout26.	<i>Il</i> bouill e.	
	<i>We</i> } boil, or are boiling.	<i>Nous</i> bouill ons.	<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.	
	<i>You</i> } are boiling.	<i>Vous</i> bouill ez.	<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.	
	<i>They</i> } are boiling.	<i>Ils</i> bouill ent18.	<i>Ils</i> bouill ent18.	boil, may boil.
<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>I</i> was boiling.	<i>Je</i> 14bouill ais6.		
	<i>Thou</i> } was boiling.	<i>Tu</i> bouill ais.		
	<i>He</i> } was boiling.	<i>Il</i> bouill ait26.		
	<i>We</i> } were boiling.	<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.		
	<i>You</i> } were boiling.	<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.		
	<i>They</i> } were boiling.	<i>Ils</i> bouill aient6.		
<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>I</i> boiled.	<i>Je</i> 14bouill is26.	<i>Je</i> bouill isses2.	
	<i>Thou</i> } boiled.	<i>Tu</i> bouill is.	<i>Tu</i> bouill isses.	
	<i>He</i> } did boil.	<i>Il</i> bouill it26.	<i>Il</i> bouill it26.	
	<i>We</i> } did boil.	<i>Nous</i> bouill imes.	<i>Nous</i> bouill issions.	
	<i>You</i> } did boil.	<i>Vous</i> bouill ites.	<i>Vous</i> bouill issiez.	
	<i>They</i> } did boil.	<i>Ils</i> bouill irent18.	<i>Ils</i> bouill issent.	boiled, might boil
<i>Future tense.</i>	<i>I</i> shall, will boil.	<i>Je</i> 14bouillir ai5.		
	<i>Thou</i> } shall, will boil.	<i>Tu</i> bouillir as.		
	<i>He</i> } shall, will boil.	<i>Il</i> bouillir a.		
	<i>We</i> } shall, will boil.	<i>Nous</i> bouillir ons.		
	<i>You</i> } shall, will boil.	<i>Vous</i> bouillir ez.		
	<i>They</i> } shall, will boil.	<i>Ils</i> bouillir ont26.		
<i>Future conditional.</i>	<i>I</i> should, would boil.	<i>Je</i> 14bouillir ais6.		
	<i>Thou</i> } should, would boil.	<i>Tu</i> bouillir ais.		
	<i>He</i> } should, would boil.	<i>Il</i> bouillir ait26.		
	<i>We</i> } should, would boil.	<i>Nous</i> bouillir ions.		
	<i>You</i> } should, would boil.	<i>Vous</i> bouillir iez.		
	<i>They</i> } should, would boil.	<i>Ils</i> bouillir aient6.		

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

Boiling. Bouill ant. Bouill i. Boiled.

*N. B.* To Boil, used in an active sense, i. e. followed by an object, is not expressed by bouillir, but by faire bouillir; as,

<i>I</i> } boil, or am boiling,	water, meat, &c.	<i>Je</i> fais bouillir	de l'eau, de la viande
<i>Thou</i> } am boiling,		<i>Tu</i> fais bouillir	
<i>He</i> } is boiling,		<i>Il</i> fait bouillir	
<i>We</i> } boil, or are boiling,		<i>Nous</i> faisons bouillir	
<i>You</i> } are boiling,		<i>Vous</i> faites bouillir	
<i>They</i> } are boiling,		<i>Ils</i> font bouillir	

*I have* } boiled, or been boiling. *J' ai* fait bouillir, &c.  
*Thou hast* } boiled, or been boiling. *Tu as* fait bouillir, &c.

And so on, by adding the infinitive bouillir to the verb faire. See Faire

Acqui  
Let u.

*I* acquire, *acq*  
*Thou* acqu  
*He* acquire  
*We* } *acq*  
*You* } *are*  
*They* } *r*  
*I* }  
*Thou* } *was*  
*He* }  
*We* } *wer*  
*You* }  
*They* }  
*I* } *acq*  
*Thou* } *d*  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }  
*I* }  
*Thou* } *sha*  
*He* } *n*  
*We* } *be a*  
*You* }  
*They* }  
*I* } *sho*  
*Thou* } *t*  
*He* } *be*  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

Acquiri

N. B. Co  
 quérant, in  
 Je conqu  
 Tu conqu  
 Il conqu  
 Nous conqu

\* See *qu*, I  
 † These t  
 first r.

*Infinitive.*

To gather. Cueillir.

*Imperative.*

Gather. Cueill es, sing. Cueill ez, plur.  
Let us gather. Cueill ons.

*Indicative.*

Present tense.	I gather, or am gathering.	Je cueill <sup>e</sup> .
	Thou gatherest, art gathering.	Tu cueill es2b.
	He gathers, or is gathering.	Il cueill e.
	We gather or are gathering.	Nous cueill ons.
	You	Vous cueill ez.
	They	Ils cueill ent18.
Imperfect tense.	I was gathering.	Je cueill ais6.
	Thou	Tu cueill ais.
	He	Il cueill ait26.
	We were gathering.	Nous cueill ions.
	You	Vous cueill iez.
	They	Ils cueill aient6.
Perfect tense.	I gathered.	Je cueill is26.
	Thou	Tu cueill is.
	He	Il cueill it26.
	We did gather.	Nous cueill imes.
	You	Vous cueill ites.
	They	Ils cueill irent18.
Future tense.	I shall, will gather.	Je cueill erai5.
	Thou	Tu cueill eras.
	He	Il cueill era.
	We be gathering.	Nous cueill erons.
	You	Vous cueill eriez.
	They	Ils cueill eront26.
Future conditional.	I should, would gather.	Je cueill erais6.
	Thou	Tu cueill erais.
	He	Il cueill erait26.
	We be gathering.	Nous cueill erions.
	You	Vous cueill eriez.
	They	Ils cueill eraient6.

*Subjunctive.*

Je cueill e.
Tu cueill es.
Il cueill e.
Nous cueill ions.
Vous cueill iez.
Ils cueill ent18.

gather, may gather.

gathered, might gather.

*Gerund.*

Gathering. Cueill ant.

*Participle.*

Cueill i. Gathered.

After the same manner as Cueillir are conjugated,  
Accueillir, to welcome, and Recueillir, to receive, to collect.

N. B. Accueillir is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use *Faire bon accueil*; as,  
They welcomed us. Ils nous firent bon accueil.

To be welcome is, *Être bien venu*; as,  
You are welcome.

Vous êtes bien venu.

\* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of Cueill, is thought.

## Infinitive.

To run. 14 Courir.

## Imperative.

Run. Cour s, sing. Cour ez, plur.  
 Let us run. Cour ons.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

Present tense.	I run, or am	Je 3 14 cour 26.	Ja 14 cour e.	run, may run.
	Thou runnest, art	Tu cour a.	Tu cour es.	
	He runs, or is	Il cour 26.	Il cour e.	
	We } run, or	Nous cour ons.	Nous cour ions.	
Imperfect tense.	You } are running.	Vous cour ez.	Vous cour iez.	
	They }	Il cour ent 18.	Il cour ent 18.	
	I } was running.	Je 14 cour ais 6.		
	Thou }	Tu cour ais.		
Past tense.	He }	Il cour ait 26.		run, might run.
	We } were running.	Nous cour ions.		
	You }	Vous cour iez.		
	They }	Il cour aient 6.		
Future tense.	I } ran,	Je 14 cour us 26.	Je 14 cour ussés.	
	Thou } did run.	Tu cour us.	Tu cour usses.	
	He }	Il cour ut 26.	Il cour ut 26.	
	We }	Nous cour âmes.	Nous cour ussions.	
Future positive.	You }	Vous cour âtes.	Vous cour ussiez.	
	They }	Il cour urant 18.	Il cour ussent.	
Future conditional.	I } shall, will run,	Je 14 cour rais 5.*		
	Thou } be running.	Tu cour ras.		
	He }	Il cour ra.		
	We }	Nous cour rons.		
Future conditional.	You }	Vous cour rez.		
	They }	Il cour rent 26.		
Future conditional.	I } shd, wd run,	Je 14 cour rais 6.*		
	Thou } be running.	Tu cour rais.		
	He }	Il cour rait 26.		
	We }	Nous cour rions.		
Future conditional.	You }	Vous cour riez.		
	They }	Il cour raient 6.		

## Gerund.

## Participle.

Running. Cour ant.

Cour u. Run.

After the same manner as Courir, conjugate

Accourir. to run to.	Parcourir. to peruse, to overrun.
Concourir. to concur.	Recourir. { to run again, to have
Discourir. to discourse.	recourse to.
Encourir. to incur.	Secourir. to succour, to relieve.

N. B. The compound tenses of Accourir are formed with either *Avoir* or *Etre*; as,  
 I have run, J ai accouru, or Je suis accouru.  
 Thou hast run, Tu as accouru, Tu es accouru.  
 He has run, Il a accouru, Il est accouru.  
 We have run, &c. Nous avons accouru, Nous sommes accourus, &c.

\* These two rr must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first.



*Infinitive.*

To gather.

Cueillir\*.

*Imperative.*

Gather.

Cueill es, sing.

Cueill ez, plur.

Let us gather.

Cueill ons.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

<i>Present tense.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Present tense.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
I gather, or am gathering.	I shall, will gather.	Je cueill *e.	Je cueill e.
Thou gatherest, art gathering.	Thou shalt, wilt gather.	Tu cueill es26.	Tu cueill es.
He gathers, or is gathering.	He shall, will gather.	Il cueill e.	Il cueill e.
We gather or are gathering.	We shall, will gather.	Nous cueill ons.	Nous cueill ions.
You are gathering.	You shall, will gather.	Vous cueill ez.	Vous cueill iez.
They are gathering.	They shall, will gather.	Ils cueill ent18.	Ils cueill ent18.
<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Future possible.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Future possible.</i>
I was gathering.	I should, would gather.	Je cueill ais6.	Je cueill isses2.
Thou wast gathering.	Thou shouldst, wouldst gather.	Tu cueill ais.	Tu cueill isses.
He was gathering.	He should, would gather.	Il cueill ait26.	Il cueill it26.
We were gathering.	We should, would gather.	Nous cueill ions.	Nous cueill issions.
You were gathering.	You should, would gather.	Vous cueill iez.	Vous cueill issiez.
They were gathering.	They should, would gather.	Ils cueill aient6.	Ils cueill issent.
<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>Future perfect.</i>	<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>Future perfect.</i>
I gathered.	I shall have gathered.	Je cueill is26.	Je cueill isses2.
Thou gathered.	Thou shalt have gathered.	Tu cueill is.	Tu cueill isses.
He gathered.	He shall have gathered.	Il cueill it26.	Il cueill it26.
We did gather.	We shall have gathered.	Nous cueill imes.	Nous cueill issions.
You did gather.	You shall have gathered.	Vous cueill ites.	Vous cueill issiez.
They did gather.	They shall have gathered.	Ils cueill irent18.	Ils cueill issent.
<i>Future perfect.</i>	<i>Future perfect.</i>	<i>Future perfect.</i>	<i>Future perfect.</i>
I shall have gathered.	I shall have gathered.	Je cueill erais5.	Je cueill isses2.
Thou shalt have gathered.	Thou shalt have gathered.	Tu cueill eras.	Tu cueill isses.
He shall have gathered.	He shall have gathered.	Il cueill era.	Il cueill it26.
We shall have gathered.	We shall have gathered.	Nous cueill erons.	Nous cueill issions.
You shall have gathered.	You shall have gathered.	Vous cueill eriez.	Vous cueill issiez.
They shall have gathered.	They shall have gathered.	Ils cueill eront26.	Ils cueill issent.
<i>Future conditional.</i>	<i>Future conditional.</i>	<i>Future conditional.</i>	<i>Future conditional.</i>
I should have gathered.	I should have gathered.	Je cueill erais6.	Je cueill isses2.
Thou shouldst have gathered.	Thou shouldst have gathered.	Tu cueill erais.	Tu cueill isses.
He should have gathered.	He should have gathered.	Il cueill erait26.	Il cueill it26.
We should have gathered.	We should have gathered.	Nous cueill erions.	Nous cueill issions.
You should have gathered.	You should have gathered.	Vous cueill eriez.	Vous cueill issiez.
They should have gathered.	They should have gathered.	Ils cueill eraient6.	Ils cueill issent.

gather, may gather.

gathered, might gather.

*Gérund.*

*Participle.*

Gathering.

Cueill ant.

Cueill i.

Gathered.

After the same manner as Cueillir are conjugated,  
Accueillir, to welcome, and Recueillir, to receive, to collect.

N. B. Accueillir is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use Faire bon accueil ; as,  
They welcomed us. Ils nous firent bon accueil.

To be welcome is, Être bien venu ; as,  
You are welcome.

Vous êtes bien venu.

\* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of Cueill, is although.

*Infinitive.**To shun ; To flee.**Fu ir.**Imperative.**Shun.**Let us shun.**Fu is, sing.**Fui ex, plur.**Fui ons.**Indicative.*

*I shun, or am*  
*Thou shunnest, art*  
*He shuns, or is*  
*We*  
*You* } *shun, or*  
*They* } *are shunning.*

*I*  
*Thou* } *was shunning.*  
*He*  
*We* } *were shunning.*  
*You*  
*They* }

*I*  
*Thou* } *shunned,*  
*He* } *did shun.*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* }

*I*  
*Thou* } *shall, will shun,*  
*He* } *be shunning.*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* }

*I*  
*Thou* } *shd, wd shun,*  
*He* } *be shunning.*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* }

*Je 3 23fu is26.*  
*Tu fu is.*  
*Il fu it26.*  
*Nous fu yons.*  
*Vous fu yez.*  
*Is fu ient18.*

*Je 4fu yais6.*  
*Tu fu yais.*  
*Il fu yait26.*  
*Nous fu yions.*  
*Vous fu yiez.*  
*Is fu yaient6.*

*Je fu is26.*  
*Tu fu is.*  
*Il fu it26.*  
*Nous fu tmes.*  
*Vous fu ttes.*  
*Is fu irent18.*

*Je fuir ai5.*  
*Tu fuir as.*  
*Il fuir a.*  
*Nous fuir ons.*  
*Vous fuir ez.*  
*Is fuir ont26.*

*Je fuir ais6.*  
*Tu fuir ais.*  
*Il fuir ait26.*  
*Nous fuir ions.*  
*Vous fuir iez.*  
*Is fuir aient6.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Je fu ie.*  
*Tu fu ies.*  
*Il fu ie.*  
*Nous fu yions.*  
*Vous fu yiez.*  
*Is fu ient.*

*Je fu isses2.*  
*Tu fu isses.*  
*Il fu it26.*  
*Nous fu issions.*  
*Vous fu issiez.*  
*Is fu issent.*

*Gerund.**Shunning.**Fuy ant26.**Participle.**Fu i. Shunned.**After the same manner is conjugated s'Enfuir, to run away ; thus,*

*I run, or am*  
*Thou runnest, art*  
*He runs, or is*  
*We run, are*  
*You run, are*  
*They run, are*

*running away.*

*Je m' enfuis.*  
*Tu t' enfuis.*  
*Il s' enfuit26.*  
*Nous nous enfuyons.*  
*Vous vous enfuyez.*  
*Is s' enfuient18.*

*N. B. The compound tenses of s'Enfuir are formed with Etre, not Avoir ; as*

*I have run away.*  
*Thou hast run away.*  
*He has run away*

*Je me suis*  
*Tu t' es*  
*Il s' est* } *Enfui, &c.*

*shun, may shun**shunned, might shun*

*Mourir*

*To die.*

*Mourir.*

*Imperative.*

*Die.*  
*Let us die.*

*Meurs, sing.*

*Mour ez, plur.*  
*Mourr ons.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*I die, or am dying.*  
*Thou diest, art dying.*  
*He dies, or is dying.*  
*We die, or are dying.*  
*You die, or are dying.*  
*They die, or are dying.*

*Je meurs26.*  
*Tu meurs.*  
*Il meurt26.*  
*Nous mour ons.*  
*Vous mour ez.*  
*Ils meurent18.*

*Je meure.*  
*Tu meures.*  
*Il meure.*  
*Nous mour ions.*  
*Vous mour iez.*  
*Ils meurent.*

*die, may die.*

*I was dying.*  
*Thou wast dying.*  
*He was dying.*  
*We were dying.*  
*You were dying.*  
*They were dying.*

*Je mour ais6.*  
*Tu mour ais.*  
*Il mour ait26.*  
*Nous mour ions.*  
*Vous mour iez.*  
*Ils mour aient6.*

*Je mour usse2.*  
*Tu mour usses.*  
*Il mour ait26.*  
*Nous mour ussions.*  
*Vous mour ussiez.*  
*Ils mour ussent.*

*die, might die.*

*I died.*  
*Thou didst die.*  
*He died.*  
*We did die.*  
*You did die.*  
*They did die.*

*Je mour us26.*  
*Tu mour us.*  
*Il mour ut26.*  
*Nous mour ûmes.*  
*Vous mour ûtes.*  
*Ils mour urent18.*

*I shall, will die.*  
*Thou shalt, wilt die.*  
*He shall, will die.*  
*We shall, will die.*  
*You shall, will die.*  
*They shall, will die.*

*Je mour rai5.\**  
*Tu mour ras.*  
*Il mour ra.*  
*Nous mour rons.*  
*Vous mour rez.*  
*Ils mour ront26.*

*I should, would die.*  
*Thou shouldst, wouldst die.*  
*He should, would die.*  
*We should, would die.*  
*You should, would die.*  
*They should, would die.*

*Je mour rai6.\**  
*Tu mour rais.*  
*Il mour rait26.*  
*Nous mour rions.*  
*Vous mour riez.*  
*Ils mour raient6.*

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

*Dying.* *Mourr ant26.*

*Mort26.* *Dead.*

*After the same manner as Mourir is conjugated so Mourir, to be dying ;*

<i>Je me meurs.</i>	<i>I am</i>	} <i>dying away.</i>
<i>Tu te meurs.</i>	<i>Thou art</i>	
<i>Il se meurt.</i>	<i>He is</i>	
<i>Nous nous mour ons.</i>	<i>We are</i>	
<i>Vous vous mour ez.</i>	<i>You are</i>	
<i>Ils se meurent.</i>	<i>They are</i>	

*N. B.* The compound tenses of *Mourir* are formed by adding *Mort* to the auxiliary *Etre* ; as,  
*He has died.* *Il est mort.*  
*They have died.* *Ils sont morts, &c.*

\* These two *rai* must be sounded distinctly ; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*.

*Infinitive.**To open.**Ouvr tr.**Imperative.**Open.**Ouvr es, sing.**Ouvr ez, plur.**Let us open.**Ouvr ons.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.**I open, or am**J' 14ouvtr e.**J' 14ouvtr e.**Thou openest, art**Tu ouvtr es.**Tu ouvtr es.**He opens, or is**Il ouvtr e.**Il ouvtr e.**We**Nous ouvtr ons.**Nous ouvtr ions.**You**Vous ouvtr ez.**Vous ouvtr iez.**They**Ils ouvtr ent18.**Ils ouvtr ent.**I**J' 14ouvtr ais6.**Thou**Tu ouvtr ais.**He**Il ouvtr ait26.**We**Nous ouvtr ions.**You**Vous ouvtr iez.**They**Ils ouvtr aient6.**I**J' 14ouvtr it26.**J' 14ouvtr issiez.**Thou**Tu ouvtr is.**Tu ouvtr isses.**He**Il ouvtr it26.**Il ouvtr it26.**We**Nous ouvtr imes.**Nous ouvtr issions.**You**Vous ouvtr ites.**Vous ouvtr issiez.**They**Ils ouvtr irent18.**Ils ouvtr issent.**I**J' 14ouvtr aie5.**Thou**Tu ouvtr as.**He**Il ouvtr a.**We**Nous ouvtr ons.**You**Vous ouvtr ez.**They**Ils ouvtr ont26.**I**J' 14ouvtr aie6.**Thou**Tu ouvtr ais.**He**Il ouvtr ait26.**We**Nous ouvtr ions.**You**Vous ouvtr iez.**They**Ils ouvtr aient6.**Gerund.**Participle.**Opening.**Ouvtr ant26.**Ouvtr ant26.**Opened.**After the same manner as Ouvrir, are conjugated**Entr'ouvrir, to open a little.**Recouvrir, to cover again.**Couvrir, to cover.**Offrir, to offer.**Méconvenir, to discover.**Souffrir, to suffer.**open, may open.**opened, might open.*

*Infinitive*

To invest with.\*

Revêt w.

*Imperative.*

Invest. Revêt s, sing.  
Let us invest.

Revêt ez, plur.  
Revêt ons.

*Indicative.*

Present tense.	I invest, or am investing.	Je	revêt s26.
	Thou investest, art investing.	Tu	revêt s.
	He invests, or is investing.	Il	revêt 26.
	We invest, are investing.	Nous	revêt ons.
	You invest, are investing.	Vous	revêt ez.
Imperfect tense.	I was investing.	Je	revêt ais6.
	Thou wast investing.	Tu	revêt ais.
	He was investing.	Il	revêt ait26.
	We were investing.	Nous	revêt ions.
	You were investing.	Vous	revêt iez.
Perfect tense.	I have invested, did invest.	Il	revêt aient6.
	Thou hast invested, didst invest.	Je	revêt is26.
	He has invested, did invest.	Tu	revêt is.
	We have invested, did invest.	Il	revêt it26.
	You have invested, did invest.	Nous	revêt imes.
Future positive.	I shall, will invest, be investing.	Nous	revêt ites.
	Thou shalt, wilt invest, be investing.	Vous	revêt irent18.
	He shall, will invest, be investing.	Je	revêt irai5.
	We shall, will invest, be investing.	Tu	revêt iras.
	You shall, will invest, be investing.	Il	revêt ira.
Future conditional.	I should, would invest, be investing.	Nous	revêt irions.
	Thou shouldst, wouldst invest, be investing.	Vous	revêt iriez.
	He should, would invest, be investing.	Il	revêt irait26.
	We should, would invest, be investing.	Je	revêt irais26.
	You should, would invest, be investing.	Tu	revêt irais.

*Subjunctive.*

Je	revêt e.
Tu	revêt es.
Il	revêt e.
Nous	revêt ions.
Vous	revêt iez.
Il	revêt ent.

Invest, may invest.

Invested, might invest.

*Gerund.*

Investing. Revêt ant26.

*Participle.*

Revêt u. Invested.

After the same manner as Revêtir, are conjugated

Vêtir, to clothe; and Dêvêtir, to undress;

but these two verbs are seldom used, except in the infinitive *Vêtir*, *Dêvêtir*, and in the participle *Vêtu*, clothed; instead of the former, we make use of *Habiller*, to clothe, to dress; and instead of the latter, we use *Déshabiller*, to undress.

\* To invest with honours, dignities, &c. but not to surround.

*Infinitive.*

To feel; To smelt.

Sent 87.

*Imperative.*

Feel. Sans, sing.

Sent ex, plur.

Let us feel.

Sent ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	I feel, or sm	Je	sent 16	Je	sent e2.	feel, may feel
	Thou feelst, art	Tu	sens.	Tu	sent es.	
	He feels, or is	Il	sent 26.	Il	sent e.	
	We } feel,	Nous	sent ons.	Nous	sent ions.	
	You } are feeling.	Vous	sent ex.	Vous	sent iex.	
Imperfect tense.	They }	Ils	sent ent 18.	Ils	sent ent 18.	
	I } was feeling.	Je	sent ais 6.			
	Thou }	Tu	sent ais.			
	He }	Il	sent ait 26.			
	We } were feeling.	Nous	sent ions.			
Perfect tense.	You }	Vous	sent iex.			felt, might feel
	They }	Ils	sent aient 6.			
	I } felt,	Je	sent is 26.	Je	sent isses 2.	
	Thou } did feel.	Tu	sent is.	Tu	sent isses.	
	He }	Il	sent it 26.	Il	sent it 26.	
Future positive.	We }	Nous	sent ites.	Nous	sent issions.	
	You }	Vous	sent ites.	Vous	sent isses ex.	
	They }	Ils	sent irent 18.	Ils	sent issent.	
	I }	Je	sentir ai 5.			
	Thou } shall, will feel,	Tu	sentir as.			
Future conditional.	He } be feeling.	Il	sentir a.			
	We }	Nous	sentir ons.			
	You }	Vous	sentir ex.			
	They }	Ils	sentir ont 26.			
	I }	Je	sentir ais 6.			
	Thou } should, would feel,	Tu	sentir ais.			
	He } be feeling.	Il	sentir ait.			
	We }	Nous	sentir ions.			
	You }	Vous	sentir iex.			
	They }	Ils	sentir aient 6.			

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Feeling.

Sent ant 26.

Sent i.

Felt.

After the same manner as *Sentir* are conjugated

Consentir, to consent.	Partir, to set out; to depart
Démëntir, to give the lie.	Présëntir, to have a foresight.
Se départir, to give up.	Repartir, to set out again; to reply
Desservir, to take off the dishes;	Se repentir, to repent.
Dormir, to sleep. [to do an ill office.]	Remëntir, to resent.
Endormir, to lull asleep.	Remsortir, to go out again.
*Endormir, to fall asleep.	Servir, to serve; se servir to use.*
Mëntir, to lie; to tell a lie.	Sortir, to go out.

\* Observe that the third person singular of the present tense of *Servir*, is *sert* not *sers*.

*Infinitive.*

To leap for joy. } *Tressaillir de joie, de peur.\**  
To start out of fear. }

*Imperative.*

Start. *Tressaill es, sing.* *Tressaill ez, plur.*  
Let us start. *Tressaill ons.*

*Indicative.*

*Present tense.*  
*I start, or am starting.*  
*Thou startest, art starting.*  
*He starts, or is starting.*  
*We start, are starting.*  
*You are starting.*  
*They are starting.*

*Je* *tressaill e.†*  
*Tu* *tressaill es.*  
*Il* *tressaill e.*  
*Nous* *tressaill ons.*  
*Vous* *tressaill ez.*  
*Ils* *tressaill ent18.*

*Imperfect tense.*  
*I was starting.*  
*Thou wast starting.*  
*He was starting.*  
*We were starting.*  
*You were starting.*  
*They were starting.*

*Je* *tressaill ais.6*  
*Tu* *tressaill ais.*  
*Il* *tressaill ait.26.*  
*Nous* *tressaill ions.*  
*Vous* *tressaill iez.*  
*Ils* *tressaill aient6.*

*Perfect tense.*  
*I started, did start.*  
*Thou started, did start.*  
*He started, did start.*  
*We did start.*  
*You did start.*  
*They did start.*

*Je* *tressaill is.26.*  
*Tu* *tressaill is.*  
*Il* *tressaill it.26.*  
*Nous* *tressaill imes.*  
*Vous* *tressaill ites.*  
*Ils* *tressaill irent18.*

*Future positive. Fut. conditional.*  
*I shall, will start, be starting.*  
*Thou shalt, wilt start, be starting.*  
*He shall, will start, be starting.*  
*We shall, will start, be starting.*  
*You shall, will start, be starting.*  
*They shall, will start, be starting.*

*Je* *tressaillir ai.5.*  
*Tu* *tressaillir as.*  
*Il* *tressaillir a.*  
*Nous* *tressaillir ons.*  
*Vous* *tressaillir ez.*  
*Ils* *tressaillir ont.26.*

*Future conditional.*  
*I should, wd start, be starting.*  
*Thou shouldst, wd start, be starting.*  
*He should, wd start, be starting.*  
*We should, wd start, be starting.*  
*You should, wd start, be starting.*  
*They should, wd start, be starting.*

*Je* *tressaillir ais.6.*  
*Tu* *tressaillir ais.*  
*Il* *tressaillir ait.26.*  
*Nous* *tressaillir ions.*  
*Vous* *tressaillir iez.*  
*Ils* *tressaillir aient.6.*

*may start.*

*might start.*

*Gerund.*

Starting. *Tressaill ant.26.*

*Participle.*

Tressaill i. Started.

After the same manner as *Tressaillir* are conjugated  
*Assaillir*, to assault, but it is not used in the first, second, and third persons singular of the present tense, and is seldom used, except in the infinitive *Assaillir*, and in the participle *Assailli*, assaulted.

*Saillir*, to jet out, used only in the infinitive *Saillir*, in the gerund *Saillant*, in the participle *Sailli*, and in the third person of each tense.

\* *Tressaillir* is seldom used without the words *joie*, joy; or *peur*, fear.  
† See II preceded by t, page 14.

To come.		Venir.	
Imperative.			
Come.		Viens, sing.	
Let us come.		Ven ex, plur.	
		Ven ons.	
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present tense.	I come, or am coming.	Je3 viens23.	Je3 vienne2.
	Thou comest, art coming.	Tu viens.	Tu viennes.
	He comes, or is coming.	Il vient26.	Il vienne.
	We } come, or are coming.	Nous ven ons.	Nous ven ions.
	You }	Vous ven ex.	Vous ven iez.
	They }	Ils viennent18.	Ils viennent.
Imperfect tense.	I } was coming.	Je3 ven ais6.	
	Thou }	Tu ven ais.	
	He }	Il ven ait26.	
	We } were coming.	Nous ven ions.	
	You }	Vous ven iez.	
	They }	Ils ven aient6.	
Perfect tense.	I } came, or did come.	Je 19vins26.	Je3 vins2.
	Thou }	Tu vins.	Tu vinses.
	He }	Il vint26.	Il vint26.
	We }	Nous vinmes.	Nous vinsions.
	You }	Vous vintes.	Vous vinsiez.
	They }	Ils vinrent18.	Ils vinrent18.
Future tense.	I } shall, will come, or be coming.	Je3 viendrai5.	
	Thou }	Tu viendras.	
	He }	Il viendra.	
	We }	Nous viendrons.	
	You }	Vous viendrez.	
	They }	Ils viendront26.	
Future conditional.	I } should, would come, or be coming.	Je3 viendrais.	
	Thou }	Tu viendrais.	
	He }	Il viendrait26.	
	We }	Nous viendrions.	
	You }	Vous viendriez.	
	They }	Ils viendraient6.	
Coming.		Ven ant26.	Ven u. Come.

After the same manner as Venir are conjugated,

s'Abstenir,	to abstain.	Obtenir,	to obtain.
Appartenir,	to belong.	Parvenir,	to attain, to arrive.
Convenir,	to agree, to become.	Prévenir,	to prevent, to anticipate.
Contrevenir,	to contravene.	Provenir,	to proceed.
Contenir,	to contain.	Revenir,	to come again, to return.
Disconvenir,	to disagree, to disown.	Retenir,	to retain, to keep.
Détenir,	to detain.	Soutenir,	to maintain.
Devenir,	to become.	se Souvenir,	to remember.
Entretenir,	to keep up.	Subvenir,	to afford.
Intervenir,	to intervene.	Survénir,	to befall, to happen.
Maintenir,	to maintain.	Tenir,	to hold.

N. B. The compound tenses of Venir, Convenir, Devenir, Disconvenir, Parvenir, Provenir, Revenir, and Survénir, are formed with the auxiliary Être, *être*, as, I have agreed, *J'ai convenu*; not *J'ai convenus*.



~~Showing how:~~ ~~we give~~ all the verbs in IR, both regular and irregular.

[illegible]

In the same manner conjugate Con-  
querir, Reconquerir.

**Like** *Courir* conjugate  
**Accourir, Concourir, Dis-**  
**courir, Encourir, Parcour-**  
**rir, Recourir, Secourir.**

Like *Fuir* conjugate  
s'Enfuir, to run away.

## A TABLE

**Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in FR, both regular and irregular.**

[illegible]

In the same manner En-tourir, Couvrir, Découvrir, Recouvrir, Offrir, Souffrir

<i>Infinitive.</i>				
<i>To owe.</i>			<i>Dev oir.</i>	
<i>Imperative.</i>				
<i>Owe.</i>	<i>Dois, sing.</i>		<i>Dev ez, plur.</i>	
<i>Let us owe.</i>			<i>Dev ons.</i>	
<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
<i>I owe.</i>	<i>Je</i> 23 <i>dois</i> 26.		<i>Je</i> <i>doive</i> 2.	<i>owe, may owe</i>
<i>Thou owest.</i>	<i>Tu</i> <i>dois.</i>		<i>Tu</i> <i>doives.</i>	
<i>He owes.</i>	<i>Il</i> <i>doit</i> 26.		<i>Il</i> <i>doive.</i>	
<i>We</i> } <i>owe.</i>	<i>Nous</i> <i>dev ons.</i>		<i>Nous</i> <i>dev ions.</i>	
<i>You</i> } <i>owe.</i>	<i>Vous</i> <i>dev ez.</i>		<i>Vous</i> <i>dev iez.</i>	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>doivent</i> 18.		<i>Ils</i> <i>doivent.</i>	
<i>I</i> } <i>did owe.</i>	<i>Je</i> 3 <i>dev ais</i> 6.			<i>owed, might owe</i>
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> <i>dev ais.</i>			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> <i>dev ait</i> 26.			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> <i>dev ions.</i>			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> <i>dev iez.</i>			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>dev aient</i> 6.			
<i>I</i> } <i>owed.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>dus</i> †		<i>Je</i> <i>dusses</i> 2.	
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> <i>dus.</i>		<i>Tu</i> <i>dusses.</i>	
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> <i>dut</i> 26.		<i>Il</i> <i>dût</i> 26.	
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> <i>dûmes.</i>		<i>Nous</i> <i>dussions.</i>	
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> <i>dûtes.</i>		<i>Vous</i> <i>dussiez.</i>	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>durent</i> 18.		<i>Ils</i> <i>dussent</i> 18.	
<i>I</i> } <i>shall, will owe.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>dev rais</i> 5.			
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> <i>dev ras.</i>			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> <i>dev ra.</i>			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> <i>dev rons.</i>			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> <i>dev rez.</i>			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>dev ront</i> 26.			
<i>I</i> } <i>shd, wd owe.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>dev rais</i> 6.			
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> <i>dev rais.</i>			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> <i>dev rait</i> 26.			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> <i>dev rions.</i>			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> <i>dev riez.</i>			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>dev raient</i> 6.			

<i>Gerund.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>	
<i>Owing.</i>	<i>Dev ant</i> 26.	<i>Dû.</i>	<i>owed.</i>
<i>Interrogatively.</i>	<i>Negatively.</i>	<i>Interrogatively and Negative.</i>	
<i>Dois-je ?</i>	<i>Je ne dois</i>	<i>Ne dois-je</i>	<i>do I not owe ?</i>
<i>Dois-tu ?</i>	<i>Tu ne dois</i>	<i>Ne dois-tu</i>	
<i>Doit-il ?</i>	<i>Il ne doit</i>	<i>Ne doit-il</i>	
<i>Devons-nous ?</i>	<i>Nous ne devons</i>	<i>Ne devons-nous</i>	<i>pas ?</i>
<i>Devez-vous ?</i>	<i>Vous ne devez</i>	<i>Ne devez-vous</i>	
<i>Doivent-ils ?</i>	<i>Ils ne doivent</i>	<i>Ne doivent-ils</i>	

After the same manner as Devoir are conjugated,

<i>Apercevoir,</i>	<i>to perceive.</i>	<i>Percevoir, (a law term) to receive.</i>
<i>’ Apercevoir,</i>		<i>Recevoir, to receive.</i>
<i>Concevoir,</i>	<i>to conceive.</i>	<i>Redevoir, to owe still.</i>

\* See N. B. under *devoir*, page 97.

† See note 2, page 1.

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are

Assavoir, to sit down; page 193.	PREVOIR, to foresee; ----- page 193.
se Assavoir, to prevail; ----- see Valoir.	Prévaloir, to prevail; ----- see Valoir.
Choir, to fall ----- *	se Prévaloir to avail oneself; ----- like Valoir.
Déchoir, to decay ----- *	Rassoir, return like for like; ----- like Valoir.
Echoir, to expire, to be out. ----- *	Réssoir, to sit down; ----- like Assavoir.
Emouvoir, to stir up. ----- like Mouvoir.	se Rassoir, to again; ----- like Assavoir.
Entrevoir, to have a glimpse; like Voir.	Revoir, to see again; ----- like Voir.
Équivaloir, to be equivalent; ----- like Valoir.	Savoir, to know; ----- page 197.
Falloir, must; to be necessary. ----- †	Seoir, to sit, to suit, to become; ----- †
Mouvoir, to move; ----- page 194.	Surseoir, to supercede; ----- see Prevoir.
Pourvoir, to provide; ----- see Prevoir.	VALOIR, to be worth; ----- page 195.
Pouvoir, to be able; ----- page 195.	Voir, to see; ----- page 195.
	Vouloir, to will, to be willing; page 196.

\* These three verbs are now hardly ever used, but are found in many ancient writings; they are conjugated thus:

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Ch oir.	To fall.	Ch u.	Fallen. No other tenses
Déch oir.	To decay.	Déchu u.	Decayed.
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Je déchois. I decay, or am decaying.	decaying.	Je déchais. I	decay, may decay.
Tu déchois. Thou decayest, art decaying.		Tu déchais. Thou	
Il déchoit. He decays, or is decaying.		Il déchait. He	
Nous déchoyons. We are decaying.		Nous décheyions. We	
Vous déchoyez. You are decaying.		Vous décheyiez. You	
Us déchoient. They are decaying.		Us déchoyaient. They	
Je déchus. I decayed, did decay.	decayed, did decay.	Je déchusss. I	decayed, might decay.
Tu déchus. Thou decayed, did decay.		Tu déchusss. Thou	
Il déchut. He decayed, did decay.		Il déchût. He	
Nous déchûmes. We decayed, did decay.		Nous déchûssions. We	
Vous déchûtes. You decayed, did decay.		Vous déchûssiez. You	
Us déchûrent. They decayed, did decay.		Us déchûssent. They	
Je décherrai. I shall, will decay, be decaying.	shall, will decay, be decaying.	Je décherrais. I	should, would decay, be decaying.
Tu décherras. Thou shall, will decay, be decaying.		Tu décherrais. Thou	
Il décherra. He shall, will decay, be decaying.		Il décherrait. He	
Nous décherrons. We shall, will decay, be decaying.		Nous décherrions. We	
Vous décherrerez. You shall, will decay, be decaying.		Vous décherreriez. You	
Us décherront. They shall, will decay, be decaying.		Us décherreraient. They	
Je décherrois. I should, would decay, be decaying.	should, would decay, be decaying.	Je décherrois. I	should, would decay, be decaying.
Tu décherrois. Thou should, would decay, be decaying.		Tu décherrois. Thou	
Il décherrait. He should, would decay, be decaying.		Il décherrait. He	
Nous décherrions. We should, would decay, be decaying.		Nous décherrions. We	
Vous décherreriez. You should, would decay, be decaying.		Vous décherreriez. You	
Us décherraient. They should, would decay, be decaying.		Us décherraient. They	

#### Infinitive.

Echoir. To expire; speaking of the end of a term; as,  
The rent is due, the time is expired. La rente est due, le terme est échu.

#### Indicative.

Pres. Il écholt.	It expires.
Perf. Il échu.	It expired.
Fut. Il écherra.	It will expire.
Con. Il écherrait.	It would expire.

#### Subjunctive.

Il écholt.	It may expire.
Il échût.	It might expire.

#### Gerund.

#### Participle.

Eche ant. Expiring. Ech u. Expired.

† FALLON. PREVOIR, see the Impersonal Verbs, page 160, 162.

† SEIOIR, To fit, to suit, has only the third person of each tense in use.

Il s'ad.	It fits.	Il s'adroit.	It fitted.
Us s'adent.	They fit.	Us s'adroient.	They fitted.
Il s'aira.	It will fit.	Il s'airait.	It would fit.
Us s'airaient.	They will fit.	Us s'airaient.	They would fit.

*Infinitive.*

*To sit down.*

*s' Asséoir.*

*Imperative.*

Sit down. *Assieds-toi, sing.*  
Let us sit down.

*Assé iez-vous, plur.*  
*Assé ions-nous.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	I sit, or am	Je	3	m'	23	assieds	26.	Je	m'	assé	ie	2.	may sit down.
	Thou sittest, art	Tu	t'			assieds.		Tu	t'	assé	iez.		
	He sits, or is	Il	s'			assied	26.	Il	s'	assé	ie.		
	We	Nous	nous			assé	ions.	Nous	nous	assé	yons.		
	You sit, are	Vous	vous			assé	iez.	Vous	vous	assé	yez.		
Imperfect tense.	They sitting down	Ils	s'			assé	ient	18.	Ils	t'	assé	ient.	might sit down.
	I was sitting	Je	m'			assé	iais	6.					
	Thou wast, did	Tu	t'			assé	iais.						
	He was sitting	Il	s'			assé	iait	26.					
	We were sitting	Nous	nous			assé	yions	4.					
Perfect tense.	You were sitting	Vous	vous			assé	yez.						might sit down.
	They sitting down.	Ils	s'			assé	aient	6.					
	I sat, did	Je	m'			assis	26.	Je	m'	assis	ee	2.	
	Thou sat, did	Tu	t'			assis.		Tu	t'	assis	ee.		
	He sat, did	Il	s'			assis	26.	Il	s'	assis	26.		
Future tense.	We sat down.	Nous	nous			assimes.		Nous	nous	assisions.			might sit down.
	You sat down.	Vous	vous			assites.		Vous	vous	assissiez.			
	They sat down.	Ils	s'			assirent	18.	Ils	s'	assissent.			
	I shall, will sit,	Je	m'			asseirai	5.						
	Thou shalt, wilt sit,	Tu	t'			asseiras.							
Future conditional.	He shall, will sit,	Il	s'			asseira.							might sit down.
	We shall, will sit,	Nous	nous			asseirons.							
	You shall, will sit,	Vous	vous			asseirez.							
	They shall, will sit,	Ils	s'			asseiront	26.						
	I should, would sit,	Je	m'			asseirais	6.						
Future conditional.	Thou shouldst, wouldst sit,	Tu	t'			asseirais.							might sit down.
	He should, would sit,	Il	s'			asseirait	26.						
	We should, would sit,	Nous	nous			asseirions.							
	You should, would sit,	Vous	vous			asseiriez.							
	They should, would sit,	Ils	s'			asseiraient	6.						

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

Sitting down. *s' Asséyant* 26.

*Assis.* sat down.

Interrogatively.	M' assieds-je ?	Je	ne	m'	assieds	} pas.	I do not	Interrogatively and Negative.	ne	m'	assieds-je	} pas ?
	T' assieds-tu ?	Tu	ne	t'	assieds				ne	t'	assieds-tu	
	S' assied-il ?	Il	ne	s'	assied				ne	s'	assied-il	

Compound tenses formed by adding *assis* to the auxiliary être.

I have	Je	me	suis	} assis.	Je	me	sois	} assis.
Thou hast	Tu	t'	es		Tu	te	sois	
He has	Il	s'	est		Il	se	soit	
We have	Nous	nous	sommes		Nous	nous	soyons	

In the same manner, conjugate *Rasseoir*, *se Rasseoir*, to sit down again.

*Infinitive.*

To move.

Mouv *oir*.\**Imperative.*

Move.

Mouv, *sing.*Mouv *ex, plur.*

Let us move.

Mouv *ens.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

*Present tense.*  
 I move, or am  
 Thou movest, art  
 He moves, or is  
 We  
 You  
 They

*Moving.*  
 Je 12mouv26.  
 Tu meus.  
 Il meut26.  
 Nous mouv *ens.*  
 Vous mouv *ex.*  
 Ils meuvent18.

*Subjunctive.*  
 Je meus2.  
 Tu meus26.  
 Il meuve.  
 Nous mouv *ions.*  
 Vous mouv *iez.*  
 Ils meuvent.

move, may move.

*Imperfect tense.*  
 I  
 Thou  
 He  
 We  
 You  
 They

*Moving.*  
 Je 14mouv aie6.  
 Tu mouv *aie.*  
 Il mouv *aie*26.  
 Nous mouv *ions.*  
 Vous mouv *iez.*  
 Ils mouv *aient*6.

*Subjunctive.*  
 Je meus2.  
 Tu meus26.  
 Il mût26.  
 Nous mussions.  
 Vous mussiez.  
 Ils müssent18.

moved, might move

*Perfect tense.*  
 I  
 Thou  
 He  
 We  
 You  
 They

*Moving.*  
 Je 1mus28.  
 Tu mus.  
 Il mut26.  
 Nous mûmes.  
 Vous mûtes.  
 Ils murent18.

*Future positive.*  
 I  
 Thou  
 He  
 We  
 You  
 They

*Moving.*  
 Je 14mouv rai5.  
 Tu mouv *rai*26.  
 Il mouv *ra.*  
 Nous mouv *rons.*  
 Vous mouv *rez.*  
 Ils mouv *ront*26.

*Future conditional.*  
 I  
 Thou  
 He  
 We  
 You  
 They

*Moving.*  
 Je 14mouv rais6.  
 Tu mouv *rais.*  
 Il mouv *rait*26.  
 Nous mouv *riens.*  
 Vous mouv *riez.*  
 Ils mouv *raient*6.

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Moving.

Mouv *ant*26.

Mu.

Moved.

After the same manner as *Mouvoir* is conjugated *émouvoir*, to move, to stir up, speaking of vapours, or the passions; as,

Le soleil émeut les vapeurs.

The sun stirs up the vapours.

Cet homme s'émeut de rien.

That man is moved with the least thing.

\* *Mouvoir* is a technical term, used only in some general propositions; as for example, Every free body moves in a straight line. *Tout corps libre se meut en ligne droite*

The general acceptation of move is *remuer*; as, Move your arm, your leg, your foot, the chair, the dish, the table, &c.

Remuez le bras, la jambe, le pied, la chaise, le plat, la table, &amp;c

† See note 2, page 1.

*Infinitive.*

*To be able.*

*Pouv. ess.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*I can, or am able.*  
*Thou canst, art able.*  
*He can, or is able.*  
*We*  
*You* } *can, are able.*  
*They*

*Je* 23*puis*26.  
*Tu* 12*peux*.  
*Il* *peut*26.  
*Nous* *pouv. ons.*  
*Vous* *pouv. ez.*  
*Ils* *peuvent*18.

*Je* *puisse*2.  
*Tu* *puisses*26.  
*Il* *puisse*.  
*Nous* *puissions*.  
*Vous* *puissiez*.  
*Ils* *puissent*18.

*may,\* may be able.*

*I*  
*Thou* } *could,*  
*He* } *was able.*  
*We*  
*You* } *could,*  
*They* } *were able.*

*Je* 14*pouv. ais*6.  
*Tu* *pouv. ais*.  
*Il* *pouv. ait*26.  
*Nous* *pouv. ions*.  
*Vous* *pouv. iez*.  
*Ils* *pouv. aient*6.

*Je* *pusse*2.  
*Tu* *puisses*.  
*Il* *pût*26.  
*Nous* *puissions*.  
*Vous* *puissiez*.  
*Ils* *puissent*18.

*might,\* might be able.*

*I*  
*Thou* } *could,*  
*He* } *was able.*  
*We*  
*You* } *could,*  
*They* } *were able.*

*Je* *tpus*26.  
*Tu* *pus*.  
*Il* *put*26.  
*Nous* *pûmes*.  
*Vous* *pûtes*.  
*Ils* *purent*18.

*I*  
*Thou* } *shall, will be*  
*He* } *able.*  
*We*  
*You* } *able.*  
*They*

*Je* 14*pourai*5.  
*Tu* *pouras*26.  
*Il* *poura*.  
*Nous* *pourons*.  
*Vous* *pourrez*.  
*Ils* *pouront*26.

*I*  
*Thou* } *could, shd,*  
*He* } *would be able.*  
*We*  
*You* } *would be able.*  
*They*

*Je* 14*pourais*6.  
*Tu* *pourais*.  
*Il* *pourait*26.  
*Nous* *pourions*.  
*Vous* *pouriez*.  
*Ils* *pouraient*6.

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

*Being able.*

*Pouv. ant*26.

*Pu.*

*Been able.*

\* MAY, MIGHT have, through the verbs, been considered only as *signs* of the *subjunctive mood*; but these words are not always *signs*; they are sometimes *verbs* denoting *power*.

In order to discriminate whether MAY, MIGHT, are *verbs*, or only *signs*, change them into the tenses of the verb BE, that will make the best sense with the word *power* or *able*.

If MAY, MIGHT, thus changed, answer to the tenses of the *indicative* of the verb BE, they must be expressed by the *same tenses* of the verb *pouvoir*; as,

*I may see it, if I choose, i. e. it is in my power, or I am able to see it, if I choose.*  
*Je puis le voir, si je veux.*

*I might see it, if I chose, i. e. it would be in my power, or I should be able to see it, if I chose.* *Je pourais le voir, si je voulais.*

If MAY, MIGHT, answer to the tenses of the *subjunctive* of the verb BE, they may be expressed either by the *subjunctive* of the *following verb*, or by the *subjunctive* of *POUVOIR*; as,

Bring it me, that I may see it, i. e. that I may be able to see it.

*Apportez-le-moi, afin que je le voie, or afin que je puisse le voir.*

He brought it me, that I might see it, i. e. that I might be able to see it.

*Il me l'apporta, afin que je le visse, or afin que je pusse le voir.*

† See note 2, page 1.

J. A. MAY.

*Infinitive.*

To foresee.

Prév oir.

*Imperative.*

Foresee.

Prév ois, sing.

Prév oyez, plur.

Let us foresee.

Prév oyons.

*Indicative.**I* foresee.

Je prév ois23.

*Subjunctive.*

Je prév oie23.

*Thou* foreseest.

Tu prév ois.

Tu prév oies26.

*He* foresees.

Il prév oit26.

Il prév oie.

*We* foresee.

Nous prév oyons4.

Nous prév oyions.

*You* foresee.

Vous prév oyez.

Vous prév oyiez.

*They* foresee.

Ils prév oient18.

Ils prév oient.

*I* did foresee.

Je prév oyais6.

*Thou* didst foresee.

Tu prév oyais.

*He* did foresee.

Il prév oyait26.

*We* did foresee.

Nous prév oyions.

*You* did foresee.

Vous prév oyiez.

*They* did foresee.

Ils prév oyaient6.

*I* foresaw.

Je prév i236.

Je prév iais2.

*Thou* didst foresee.

Tu prév is.

Tu prév iais.

*He* foresaw.

Il prév it26.

Il prév it26.

*We* foresaw.

Nous prév imes.

Nous prév iissions.

*You* foresaw.

Vous prév ites.

Vous prév iissiez.

*They* foresaw.

Ils prév irent18.

Ils prév iissent18.

*I* shall, will foresee.

Je prévoir ai5.

*Thou* shalt, wilt foresee.

Tu prévoir as26.

*He* shall, will foresee.

Il prévoir a.

*We* shall, will foresee.

Nous prévoir ons.

*You* shall, will foresee.

Vous prévoir ez.

*They* shall, will foresee.

Ils prévoir ont26.

*I* should, would foresee.

Je prévoir ais6.

*Thou* shouldst, wouldest foresee.

Tu prévoir ais.

*He* should, would foresee.

Il prévoir ait26.

*We* should, would foresee.

Nous prévoir ions.

*You* should, would foresee.

Vous prévoir iez.

*They* should, would foresee.

Ils prévoir aient26.

Foreseeing.

Prév oyant26.

Prév u.

Foreseen.

After the same manner is conjugated *surseoir*, to supersede, participle *sursum*. *Pouvoir*, to provide, except the perfect tense,

*I* provided.

Je pourv us.

Je pourv uss2.

*Thou* provided.

Tu pourv us.

Tu pourv usses.

*He* provided.

Il pourv ut26.

Il pourv ut26.

*We* provided.

Nous pourv ûmes.

Nous pourv ussions.

*You* provided.

Vous pourv ûtes.

Vous pourv ussiez.

*They* provided.

Ils pourv urent18.

Ils pourv ussent18.

N. B. *MAY*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present of the subjunctive of *avoir*; as *May you be happy!* *Puissez-vous être heureux!*  
But observe that, these instances excepted, the subjunctive never begins a sentence; as this, *May I see it?* *Peux-je le voir?* Not *Le vois-je*, or *Puisse-je le voir?*



*Infinitive.*

To know.                      Sav oir.\*

*Imperative.*

Know.      Sachez, sing.      Sachez, plur.  
Let us know.      Sachons.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

<i>Present tense.</i>	I know.	Je sais6.	Je sache.†	know, may know.
	Thou knowest.	Tu sais.	Tu saches2.	
	He knows.	Il sait26.	Il sache.	
	We } know.	Nous sav ons.	Nous sachions.	
	You } They }	Vous sav ez. Ils sav ent18.	Vous sachiez. Ils sachent18.	
<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je sav ais6. Tu sav ais. Il sav ait26. Nous sav ions. Vous sav iez. Ils sav aient6.		know, might know.
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je3 sus26 Tu sus. Il sut26. Nous sûmes. Vous sûtes. Ils surent18.	Je susse2. Tu susses. Il sût26. Nous sussions. Vous sussiez. Ils sussent18.	
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais5. Tu sauras26. Il saura. Nous saurons. Vous saurez. Ils sauront26.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais6. Tu saurais. Il saurait26. Nous saurions. Vous sauriez. Ils sauraient6.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
<i>Future positive.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais5. Tu sauras26. Il saura. Nous saurons. Vous saurez. Ils sauront26.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais6. Tu saurais. Il saurait26. Nous saurions. Vous sauriez. Ils sauraient6.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
<i>Future conditional.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais5. Tu sauras26. Il saura. Nous saurons. Vous saurez. Ils sauront26.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je8 saurais6. Tu saurais. Il saurait26. Nous saurions. Vous sauriez. Ils sauraient6.		
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }			

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

Knowing.      Sachant26.      Su.      Known.

\* Meaning mental knowledge, science, information; as,

I know my lesson, French, English, mathematics.

Je sais ma leçon, le Français, l'Anglais, les mathématiques.

I know your brother will come.      Je sais que votre frère viendra.

But To know, meaning to be acquainted with, to know by sight, is not expressed

by SAVOIR, it is expressed by CONNAÎTRE; as,

I know your brother, your sister, i. e. I am acquainted with them, I know them by sight. Je connais votre frère, votre sœur, &c. See Connaitre.

† Not that I know, &c. so often used in answer to a question, is expressed by the present of the subjunctive of this verb; thus,

Not that I know.

Non pas que je sache.

Not that we know.

Non pas que nous sachions.

## Infinitive.

To be worth.

Valoir.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present tense.	<i>I am worth.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>vaux</i> 26.
	<i>Thou art worth.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>vaut.</i>
	<i>He is worth.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>vaut</i> 26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>val ons.</i>
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>val ez.</i>
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> } <i>are worth.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>val ent</i> 18.
	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>val ais</i> 6.
	<i>Thou</i> } <i>was worth.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>val ais.</i>
	<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>val ait</i> 26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>val ions.</i>
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> } <i>were worth.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>val iez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>val aient</i> 6.
	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>val us</i> 26.
	<i>Thou</i> } <i>was worth.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>val us.</i>
	<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>val ut</i> 26.
Future tense.	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>val ions.</i>
	<i>You</i> } <i>were worth.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>val iez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>val aient</i> 18.
	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>vaudrais</i> 5.
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>vaudras</i> 26.
Future positive. Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> } <i>shall, will</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>vaudra.</i>
	<i>We</i> } <i>be worth.</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>vaudrons.</i>
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>vaudrez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>vaudront</i> 26.
	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>vaudrais</i> 6.
	<i>Thou</i> } <i>should, would</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>vaudrais.</i>
	<i>He</i> } <i>be worth.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>vaudrait</i> 26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>vaudrions.</i>
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>vaudriez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>vaudraient</i> 6.

may be worth.

might be worth.

## Gerund.

Being worth.

Val ant26.

## Participle.

Val u.

Been worth.

After the same manner as Valoir are conjugated

Equivaloir, to be equivalent.

Prévaloir, to prevail.

Revaloir, to return like for like.

se prévaloir, to avail oneself.

But observe that prévaloir and se prévaloir have an imperative.

Préval.

Prévaux, sing.

Préval ez, plur.

Let us prevail.

Préval ons.

And, I may

Thou mayest

He may

We may

You may

They may

} prevail, is

*Je* prév ale,*Tu* prév ales,*Il* prév ale,*Nous* prév alions,*Vous* prév aliez,*Ils* prév alent,

} not

prév aile, &amp;c.

*Infinitive.*

*To see.*

*V oir.*

*Imperative.*

*See.*

*V ois, sing.*

*V oyez, plur.*

*Let us see.*

*V oyons.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*I see.*  
*Thou seest.*  
*He sees.*  
*We* }  
*You* } *see.*  
*They*

*Je* 23v *ois*26.  
*Tu* v *ois.*  
*Il* v *oit*26.  
*Nous* v *oyons*4.  
*Vous* v *oyez.*  
*Ils* v *oient*18.

*Je* v *oie*23.  
*Tu* v *oies*26.  
*Il* v *oie.*  
*Nous* v *oyions.*  
*Vous* v *oyiez.*  
*Ils* v *oient*6.

*see, may see.*

*I* }  
*Thou* } *did see.*  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They*

*Je* v *oyais*6.  
*Tu* v *oyais.*  
*Il* v *oyait*26.  
*Nous* v *oyions.*  
*Vous* v *oyiez.*  
*Ils* v *oyaient*6.

*I* }  
*Thou* } *saw, did see.*  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They*

*Je* v *is*6.  
*Tu* v *is.*  
*Il* v *it*26.  
*Nous* v *imes.*  
*Vous* v *ites.*  
*Ils* v *irent*18.

*Je* v *isse*2.  
*Tu* v *isses.*  
*Il* v *it*26.  
*Nous* v *issions.*  
*Vous* v *issiez.*  
*Ils* v *issent*18.

*saw, might see.*

*I* }  
*Thou* } *shall, will*  
*He* } *see.*  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They*

*Je* \*verrai5.  
*Tu* verras26.  
*Il* verra.  
*Nous* verrons.  
*Vous* verrez.  
*Ils* verront26.

*I* }  
*Thou* } *should would*  
*He* } *see.*  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They*

*Je* \*verrais6.  
*Tu* verrais.  
*Il* verrait26.  
*Nous* verrions.  
*Vous* verriez.  
*Ils* verraient6.

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

*Seeing.*

*V oyant*26.

*V u.*

*Seen.*

*After the same manner as voir are conjugated*

*Entrevoir, to have a glimpse.*

*Revoir, to see again.*

\* Only one r is sounded, the other r serves to make the preceding e long.

## Infinitive.

To will, To be willing.

Vouloir.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present tense.	<i>I will,* or am willing.</i>	<i>Je 13veux26.</i>	<i>Je 13veuille2.</i>
	<i>Thou wiltest, art willing.</i>	<i>Tu 13veux.</i>	<i>Tu 13veuilles26.</i>
	<i>He wills, or is willing.</i>	<i>Il 13vout36.</i>	<i>Il 13veuille.</i>
	<i>We } will,</i>	<i>Nous 13voul ons.</i>	<i>Nous 13voul ions.</i>
	<i>You } are willing.</i>	<i>Vous 13voul ez.</i>	<i>Vous 13voul iez.</i>
	<i>They } are willing.</i>	<i>Ils 13veulent18.</i>	<i>Ils 13veulent18.</i>
Imperfect tense.	<i>I } would,*</i>	<i>Je 14voul ais6.</i>	
	<i>Thou } was willing.</i>	<i>Tu 14voul ais.</i>	
	<i>He } was willing.</i>	<i>Il 14voul ait26.</i>	
	<i>We } would,</i>	<i>Nous 14voul ions.</i>	
	<i>You } were willing.</i>	<i>Vous 14voul iez.</i>	
	<i>They } were willing.</i>	<i>Ils 14voul aient6.</i>	
Perfect tense.	<i>I } would,</i>	<i>Je 14voul us26.</i>	<i>Je 14voul ussiez2.</i>
	<i>Thou } willed.</i>	<i>Tu 14voul us.</i>	<i>Tu 14voul ussiez.</i>
	<i>He } willed.</i>	<i>Il 14voul ut36.</i>	<i>Il 14voul ut36.</i>
	<i>We } willed.</i>	<i>Nous 14voul âmes.</i>	<i>Nous 14voul ussions.</i>
	<i>You } willed.</i>	<i>Vous 14voul âtes.</i>	<i>Vous 14voul ussiez.</i>
	<i>They } willed.</i>	<i>Ils 14voul urent18.</i>	<i>Ils 14voul ussient18.</i>
Future tense.	<i>I } will,* shall,</i>	<i>Je 14voudrais.</i>	
	<i>Thou } will be willing.</i>	<i>Tu 14voudras.</i>	
	<i>He } will be willing.</i>	<i>Il 14voudra.</i>	
	<i>We } will be willing.</i>	<i>Nous 14voudrons.</i>	
	<i>You } will be willing.</i>	<i>Vous 14voudrez.</i>	
	<i>They } will be willing.</i>	<i>Ils 14voudront26.</i>	
Conditional.	<i>I } would,*</i>	<i>Je 14voudrais6.</i>	
	<i>Thou } should, wld</i>	<i>Tu 14voudrais.</i>	
	<i>He } be willing.</i>	<i>Il 14voudrait26.</i>	
	<i>We } should, wld</i>	<i>Nous 14voudrions.</i>	
	<i>You } be willing.</i>	<i>Vous 14voudriez.</i>	
	<i>They } should, wld</i>	<i>Ils 14voudraient6.</i>	

may be willing.

might be willing.

## Gerund.

Being willing.

Voulant26.

## Participle.

Voulant. Born willing.

\* Frequent mistakes are committed in the use of the word WILL, which sometimes is a verb implying will, wish, desire, inclination, and sometimes, as has been seen through the conjugations, only the sign of some of the tenses of verbs.

Though the distinction between WILL, the verb, and WILL, the sign, in some instances be nice, yet it is necessary it should be made, as it changes the idea.

If WILL, WOULD can be changed into the words *be willing*, they denote the WILL, and are expressed by the tenses of *vouloir* as above.

If WILL, WOULD cannot properly be changed into *be willing*, they are mere signs expressed in French by the termination of the verb. This sentence, for example ;

Will you go to the play to-night ? may be translated these two ways ;  
*Voulez-vous aller à la comédie ce soir ?* or, *Irez-vous à la comédie ce soir ?* with this difference that in the first instance, I inquire whether it is the wish, desire, or inclination of the person I am speaking to, to go to the play, yet he may not go for all that ; in the second, I do not consult his will or inclination, for a person may do a thing against his inclination ; but I ask whether *he is going* to the play with *actually* takes place, either because he has resolved to go, or because he is compelled to go.



## A TABLE

**Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in OIR, both regular and irregular.**

[illegible]

**Equivaloir, Revaloir, (Prévaloir, as Prévaloir, subconjunctive, Prévala, not Prévalle.)**

[The main body of the document is heavily obscured by a dense, dark, and noisy pattern, likely due to severe degradation or redaction. Only faint, illegible traces of text are visible through the noise.]

ative.  
22.  
26.  
t.  
ons.  
ez.  
18.

wait may wait

sec2.  
sec.  
26.  
ations.  
lassic.  
tent18.

waited, might wait

Waited.

at again, to  
it again.  
er, to return.  
surrender.  
mill, to shed.  
swer.  
not anew.  
ach.  
uspend.  
to bend.  
to writing.

The irregular verbs belonging to this conjugation are

<i>Aboudre</i> , to absolve, -----	see <i>Ressoudre</i> .	<i>Ecrire</i> , to write, -----	page 143.
<i>Abstraire</i> , to abstract, -----	see <i>Traire</i> .	<i>Elire</i> , to elect, -----	like <i>Lire</i> .
<i>Accroître</i> , to accrue, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Encoqure</i> , to whet, to grind, like <i>Moudre</i> .	
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>Encoqure</i> , to encompass, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Enclorre</i> , to enclose, -----	
<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn, -----	page 136.	<i>Enduire</i> , to daub, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Astrindre</i> , to restrain, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Enfreindre</i> , to infringe, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Atteindre</i> , to reach, to hit, -----		<i>Enjoindre</i> , to enjoin, -----	
<i>Boire</i> , to drink, -----	page 137.	<i>Entremettre</i> , to intermeddle, like <i>Mettre</i> .	
<i>Braver</i> , to brave,* -----		<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under- take, -----	like <i>Apprendre</i> .
<i>Coudre</i> , to gird, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Eprendre</i> , to squeeze out, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Circonscrire</i> , to circumscribe, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .	<i>Extirper</i> , to extirpate, -----	see <i>Conclure</i> .
<i>Clover</i> , to close, to shut, -----		<i>Extraire</i> , to extract, -----	like <i>Traire</i> .
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>FAIRE</i> , to do, to make, -----	page 144.
<i>Comparaître</i> , to appear, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>FEINDRE</i> , to feign, -----	page 145.
<i>Complaire</i> , to comply with, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Frûre</i> , to fry, -----	see <i>Rire</i> .
<i>Comprendre</i> , to understand, like <i>Apprendre</i> .		<i>Induire</i> , to induce, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Comprendre</i> , to comprehend, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude, -----	page 136.	<i>Instruire</i> , to instruct, -----	page 146.
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, to lead, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce, -----	like <i>Inscrire</i> .
<i>Confer</i> , to pickle, -----	see <i>Dire</i> .	<i>Joindre</i> , to join, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Conjoindre</i> , to join together, like <i>Feindre</i> .		<i>LIRE</i> , to read, -----	page 147.
<i>CONNAÎTRE</i> , to know, -----	page 136.	<i>Luire</i> , to shine, -----	see <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Construire</i> , to construct, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse, -----	see <i>Dire</i> .
<i>Contraindre</i> , to compel, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Médire</i> , to slander, -----	
<i>Contradire</i> , to contradict, -----	see <i>Dire</i> .	<i>Méconnaître</i> , not to know, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .
<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake, -----	like <i>Apprendre</i> .
<i>Convaincre</i> , to convince, -----	like <i>Valpire</i> .	<i>METTRE</i> , to put, -----	page 148.
<i>Coudre</i> , to sew, -----	page 140.	<i>Moudre</i> , to grind, -----	page 149.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Nuire</i> , to come to life, -----	see <i>Connaitre</i> .
<i>CROIRE</i> , to believe, -----	page 141.	<i>Nuire</i> , to harm, to hurt, -----	see <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Croître</i> , to grow up, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Onâdre</i> , to amount, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Cuire</i> , to do violence, to cook, -----	see <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>Omettre</i> , to omit, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .
<i>Découdre</i> , to unsew, -----	like <i>Coudre</i> .	<i>Pâître</i> , to graze, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .
<i>Décrire</i> , to describe, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .	<i>Paraître</i> , to appear, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Décrûre</i> , to decrease, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Peindre</i> , to paint, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .
<i>Dédire</i> , to recant, to retract, -----	see <i>Dire</i> .	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Déduire</i> , to deduct, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>PLAINdre</i> , to complain, -----	page 150.
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to defeat, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>PLAINdre</i> , to please, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .
<i>Défaire</i> , to get rid of, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Poursuivre</i> , to pursue, -----	like <i>Suivre</i> .
<i>Déjoindre</i> , to disjoin, -----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretell, -----	see <i>Dire</i> .
<i>Démêtrer</i> , to disjoin, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>Prendre</i> , to take, -----	like <i>Apprendre</i> .
<i>Déplaire</i> , to displease, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
<i>Déapprendre</i> , to unlearn, like <i>Apprendre</i> .		<i>Produire</i> , to produce, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Détendre</i> , to take off the die, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Premettre</i> , to promise, -----	like <i>Mettre</i> .
<i>Détruire</i> , to destroy, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
<i>DIRE</i> , to say, -----	page 143.	<i>Reboire</i> , to drink again, -----	like <i>Boire</i> .
<i>Disparaître</i> , to disappear, -----	like <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Reconduire</i> , to lead back, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Dissoudre</i> , to dissolve, -----	like <i>Ressoudre</i> .	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to know again, like <i>Connaitre</i> .	
<i>Distraindre</i> , to disturb attention, -----	like <i>Traire</i> .	<i>Reconduire</i> , to sew again, -----	like <i>Coudre</i> .
<i>Esclorre</i> , to smother, -----		<i>Récrire</i> , to write again, -----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
		<i>Recuire</i> , to do or cook again, -----	see <i>Instruire</i> .
		<i>Redifaire</i> , to undo again, -----	like <i>Faire</i> .
		<i>Rédire</i> , to say again, -----	like <i>Dire</i> .
		<i>Réduire</i> , to reduce, -----	like <i>Instruire</i> .

\* Braver is used only in the following tenses and persons :

Present	
<i>Il brave.</i>	<i>He, it braves.</i>
<i>Ilse bravent.</i>	<i>They brave.</i>
Future.	
<i>Il bravera.</i>	<i>He, it will brave.</i>
<i>Ilse braveront.</i>	<i>They will brave.</i>
Conditional.	
<i>Il bravrait.</i>	<i>He, it would brave.</i>
<i>Ilse bravraient.</i>	<i>They would brave.</i>

† Chose, and its compounds *Esclorre*, *Esclorre*, have only the following tenses and



<i>Rafaire</i> , to do again,-----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Sourire</i> , to smile,-----	like <i>Rire</i> .
<i>Relire</i> , to read again,-----	like <i>Lire</i> .	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe,-----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
<i>Reluire</i> , to shine,-----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>Soustraire</i> , to subtract,-----	like <i>Traire</i> .
<i>Remettre</i> , to put again,-----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>Suivre</i> , to follow,-----	page 153.
<i>Remoudre</i> , to grind again,-----	like <i>Moudre</i> .	<i>Suffire</i> , to be sufficient,-----	see <i>Dir</i> .
<i>Renaitre</i> , to revive,-----	see <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact,-----	like <i>Faire</i> .
<i>Retraire</i> , to fine-draw,-----	like <i>Traire</i> .	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise,-----	like <i>Apprendre</i> .
<i>Repaitre</i> , to feed,-----	see <i>Connaitre</i> .	<i>Survivre</i> , to outlive, survive,-----	like <i>Vivre</i> .
<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again,-----	like <i>Apprendre</i> .	<i>se Traire</i> , to hold one's tongue,-----	like <i>Plaire</i> .
<i>RESOUDRE</i> , to resolve,-----	page 151.	<i>Teindre</i> , to dye,-----	like <i>Feindre</i> .
<i>Restreindre</i> , to restringe,-----	like <i>Feindre</i> .	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate,-----	like <i>Instruire</i> .
<i>Revivre</i> , to live again,-----	like <i>Vivre</i> .	<i>TRAIRE</i> , to milk,-----	page 154.
<i>Rire</i> , to laugh,-----	page 153.	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe,-----	like <i>Ecrire</i> .
<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy,-----	like <i>Faire</i> .	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit,-----	like <i>Mettre</i> .
<i>Seduire</i> , to seduce,-----	like <i>Instruire</i> .	<i>VAINCRA</i> , to vanquish,-----	page 155.
<i>Se soumettre</i> , to submit,-----	like <i>Mettre</i> .	<i>VIVRE</i> , to live,-----	page 156.

persons in use :

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Clo re.	To close.	Clo s.	Closed.
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
<i>Je</i> clo s.	<i>I</i> close, or am closing.	<i>Je</i> close.	may close
<i>Tu</i> clo s.	<i>Thou</i> closesst, art closing.	<i>Tu</i> closes.	
<i>Il</i> clo t.	<i>He</i> closes, is closing.	<i>Il</i> close.	
<i>Je</i> clor ai.	<i>I</i>		
<i>Tu</i> clor as.	<i>Thou</i>		
<i>Il</i> clor a.	<i>He</i>		
<i>Nous</i> clor ons.	<i>We</i> } shall, will close, or be closing.		
<i>Vous</i> clor ez.	<i>You</i>		
<i>Ils</i> clor ont.	<i>They</i>		
<i>Je</i> clor ais.	<i>I</i>		should, would close, or be closing.
<i>Tu</i> clor ais.	<i>Thou</i>		
<i>Il</i> clor ait.	<i>He</i>		
<i>Nous</i> clor ions.	<i>We</i> }		
<i>Vous</i> clor iez.	<i>You</i>		
<i>Ils</i> clor aient.	<i>They</i>		
Compound Tenses.			
<i>Pr.</i> <i>I have</i>	<i>J'</i> ai	<i>J'</i> ais	may have closed.
<i>Thou hast</i>	<i>Tu</i> as	<i>Tu</i> aies	
<i>He has</i>	<i>Il</i> a	<i>Il</i> ait	
<i>We have</i>	<i>Nous</i> avons	<i>Nous</i> ayons	clos.
<i>You have</i>	<i>Vous</i> avez	<i>Vous</i> ayez	
<i>They have</i>	<i>Ils</i> ont	<i>Ils</i> aient	
<i>I had closed, &amp;c.</i>	<i>J'</i> avais clos, &c.		

Conjugate in the same manner, *Enclorre*,

*To enclose.*

*Eclorre* has only the following tenses and persons in use :

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Eclo rs.	To be hatching.	Eclo s.	Hatched.
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
<i>Il</i> eclot.	<i>It</i> is hatching.	<i>Il</i> eclosse.	may be hatching.
<i>Ils</i> eclossent.	<i>They</i> are hatching.	<i>Ils</i> eclossent.	
<i>Il</i> eclora.	<i>It</i> will be hatching.		
<i>Ils</i> ecloront.	<i>They</i> will be hatching.		
<i>Il</i> eclorait.	<i>It</i> would be hatching.		
<i>Ils</i> ecloreraient.	<i>They</i> would be hatching.		

*Infinitive.*

To learn.

\*Apprendre.

*Imperative.*

Learn.

Apprend *a, sing.*Apprenez, *plur.*

Let us learn.

Apprenons.

*Indicative.**I learn, or am**Thou learnest, art**He learns, or is**We**You**They**are learning.**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**was learning.**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**did learn.**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**shall, will learn,**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**be learning.**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**should, would learn,**I**Thou**He**We**You**They**be learning.**learning.**J†**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille**J**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille**J†**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille**J**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille**J**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille*

\*apprendre 26.

Tu 16 apprendre a.

Il apprend 26.

Nous apprenons.

Vous apprenez.

Ille apprennent 18.

J apprenais 6.

Tu apprenais.

Il apprenait 26.

Nous apprenions.

Vous appreniez.

Ille apprenaient 6.

J appris 26.

Tu appris.

Il apprit 26.

Nous apprîmes.

Vous apprîtes.

Ille apprîrent 18.

J apprendrai 5.

Tu apprendras 26.

Il apprendra a.

Nous apprendrons.

Vous apprendrez.

Ille apprendront 26.

J apprendrais 6.

Tu apprendrais.

Il apprendrait 26.

Nous apprendrions.

Vous apprendriez.

Ille apprendraient 6.

*Subjunctive.**J**Tu**Il**Nous**Vous**Ille*

apprenne 2.

apprennes 26.

apprenne.

apprenions.

appreniez.

apprennent.

J apprîsse 2.

Tu apprîsses.

Il apprît 26.

Nous apprîssions.

Vous apprîssiez.

Ille apprîssent 18.

J apprendrais 2.

Tu apprendrais.

Il apprendrait 26.

Nous apprendrions.

Vous apprendriez.

Ille apprendraient 18.

learn, may learn

learned, might learn

*Gerund.*

Learning.

Apprenant 26.

*Participle.*

Appris 26.

Learned.

After the same manner as Apprendre, are conjugated

{mistake.

Déapprendre, to unlearn.

Prendre, to take.

Comprendre, to comprehend, to understand.

Entreprendre, to undertake.

se Méprendre to commit a

Reprendre, { to take again,

{ to rebuke.

Surprendre, to surprise.

\* Sound only one p; see pp, page 16.

† See note † page 47.

*Infinitive.*

To drink.

Boire.

*Imperative.*

Drink.

Bois, sing.

Buvez, plur.

Let us drink.

Buvons.

*Indicative.*

*I drink, or am drinking.*  
*Thou drinkest, art drinking.*  
*He drinks, or is drinking.*  
*We drink, are drinking.*  
*You*  
*They*

*Je* 23bois 226.  
*Tu* bois s.  
*Il* boit 226.  
*Nous* buvons.  
*Vous* buvez.  
*Ils* boivent 18.

*Subjunctive.*

*Je* 23bois 22.  
*Tu* boies 226.  
*Il* boie 22.  
*Nous* buvions.  
*Vous* buviez.  
*Ils* boivent 18.

drink, may drink.

*I was drinking.*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They*

*Je* \*buvais 6.  
*Tu* buvais.  
*Il* buvait 26.  
*Nous* buvions.  
*Vous* buviez.  
*Ils* buvaient 6.

*I drank, did drink.*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They*

*Je* \*bus 26.  
*Tu* bus.  
*Il* but 26.  
*Nous* bûmes.  
*Vous* bûtes 26.  
*Ils* burent 18.

*Je* \*busses 2.  
*Tu* busses.  
*Il* bût 26.  
*Nous* bussions.  
*Vous* bussiez.  
*Ils* bussent 18.

drank, might drink.

*I shall, will drink, be drinking.*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They*

*Je* 23boir ai 5.  
*Tu* boir as 26.  
*Il* boir a.  
*Nous* boir ons.  
*Vous* boir ez.  
*Ils* boir ont 26.

*I should, would drink, be drinking.*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They*

*Je* 23boir ais 6.  
*Tu* boir ais.  
*Il* boir ait 26.  
*Nous* boir ions.  
*Vous* boir iez.  
*Ils* boir aient 6.

*Gerund.*

Drinking.

Buvant 26.

*Participle.*

Bu.

Drunk.

After the same manner as Boire is conjugated

Reboire, to drink again; to drink afresh.

*Infinitive.*

To conclude.

Conclu re.

*Imperative.*

Conclude. Conclu s, sing.  
 Let us conclude.

Conclu ex, plur.  
 Conclu ens.

*Indicative.*

*Present tense.*  
 I conclude, or am } Je 21conclu a26  
 Thou concludest, art } Tu conclu s.  
 He concludes, or is } Il conclu t26.  
 We } conclude, are } Nous conclu ons.  
 You } concluding. } Vous conclu ex.  
 They } } Ils conclu ent18

*Imperfect tense.*  
 I } was conclud- } Je 21conclu aie6.  
 Thou } ing. } Tu conclu ais.  
 He } } Il conclu ait26.  
 We } were conclud- } Nous conclu ions.  
 You } ing. } Vous conclu iez.  
 They } } Ils conclu aient6.

*Perfect tense.*  
 I } } Je 21conclu a26.  
 Thou } concluded, } Tu conclu s.  
 He } did conclude. } Il conclu t26.  
 We } } Nous conclu mes.  
 You } } Vous conclu tes.  
 They } } Ils conclu rent18.

*Future positive.*  
 I } } Je 21conclur ai5.  
 Thou } shall, will } Tu conclur as26.  
 He } conclude, } Il conclur a.  
 We } be concluding. } Nous conclur ons.  
 You } } Vous conclur ex.  
 They } } Ils conclur ont26.

*Future conditional.*  
 I } } Je 21conclur ais6.  
 Thou } should, would } Tu conclur ais.  
 He } conclude, } Il conclur ait26.  
 We } be concluding. } Nous conclur ions.  
 You } } Vous conclur iez.  
 They } } Ils conclur aient6.

*Gerund.*

Concluding. Conclu ant26.

*Participle.*

Conclu. Concluded.

After the same manner as Conclure, is conjugated

Exclure, to exclude; observe only that the participle of Exclure is *ex-clus*, excluded.

conclude, may conclude.  
 concluded, might conclude

*Infinitive.*

To know.\*

†Connait re

*Imperative.*

Know.

Connais, sing.

Connaissez, plur.

Let us know.

Connaissons.

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

<i>I know.</i>	<i>Je</i> 3	†connais6.	<i>Je</i>	connais6.	know, may know.
<i>Thou knowest.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	connais.	<i>Tu</i>	connais6.	
<i>He knows.</i>	<i>Il</i>	connait26.	<i>Il</i>	connaisse.	
<i>We</i> } know.	<i>Nous</i>	connaissons.	<i>Nous</i>	connaissons.	
<i>You</i> } know.	<i>Vous</i>	connaissez.	<i>Vous</i>	connaissez.	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	connassent18.	<i>Ils</i>	connassent18.	
<i>I</i> } did know.	<i>Je</i>	connaisais6.			know, might know.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	connaisais.			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	connassait26.			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	connassions.			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	connassiez.			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	connassaient6.			
<i>I</i> } knew, did know.	<i>Je</i>	connus26.	<i>Je</i>	connusse2.	
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	connus.	<i>Tu</i>	connusses.	
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	connut26.	<i>Il</i>	connut26.	
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	connûmes.	<i>Nous</i>	connussions.	
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	connûtes.	<i>Vous</i>	connussiez.	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	connurent18.	<i>Ils</i>	connussent18.	
<i>I</i> } shall, will know.	<i>Je</i>	connaitr ai5.			
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	connaitr as26.			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	connaitr a.			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	connaitr ons.			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	connaitr ez.			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	connaitr ont26.			
<i>I</i> } should, would know.	<i>Je</i>	connaitr ais6.			
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	connaitr ais.			
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	connaitr ait26.			
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	connaitr ions.			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	connaitr iez.			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	connaitr aient6.			

Knowing.

Connaisant26.

Connu.

Known.

After the same manner as Connaitre, are conjugated

Méconnaitre, not to know.	Paraître, to appear.
Reconnaitre, to know again.	Apparaître, to appear, speaking of ghosts.
Croître, to grow up, to increase.	Comparaître, (a law term,) to appear.
Accroître, to accrue.	Disparaître, to disappear.
Décroître, to decrease.	Pâître, to graze.
Recroître, to grow again.	Repâître, to feed.
Renaitre, to revive.	

Naitre, to come to life, { perf. ind. Naq -is, -is, -it; -imes, -ites, -irent.  
part. n6. { perf. sub. Naq-isse, -isses, -it; -issions, -issions, -issent.

\* Meaning to know by sight, or to be acquainted with; as,  
I know that man, this horse, that house, your brother, your sister, &c. by sight.  
Je connais cet homme, ce cheval, cette maison, votre frère, votre sœur.  
See Savoir, p. 127. † Sound only one n, and lay the accent upon e

*Infinitive.*

To sew.

Good ra.

*Imperative.*Sew.      Could s, sing.  
Let us sew.Cousez, plur.  
Cousez.*Indicative.*

<i>I</i> sew, or am	<i>Je</i> s 14coud a26.
<i>Thou</i> sewest, art	<i>Tu</i> coud s.
<i>He</i> sews, or is	<i>Il</i> coud 26.
<i>We</i> } sew,	<i>Nous</i> cousez.
<i>You</i> } are sewing.	<i>Vous</i> cousez.*
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> cousent18.

*Subjunctive.*

<i>Je</i> 14couse2.
<i>Tu</i> couse26.
<i>Il</i> couse.
<i>Nous</i> cousez.
<i>Vous</i> cousez.
<i>Ils</i> cousent18.

<i>I</i> } was sewing.	<i>Je</i> 14cousais6.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> cousais.
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> cousait26.
<i>We</i> } were sewing.	<i>Nous</i> cousions.
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> cousiez.
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> cousaient6.

<i>I</i> } sewed,	<i>Je</i> 14cousis.†	<i>Je</i> 14cousissais2.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> cousis26.	<i>Tu</i> cousissais.
<i>He</i> } did sew.	<i>Il</i> cousit26.	<i>Il</i> cousit26.
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> cousîmes.	<i>Nous</i> cousissions.
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> cousîtes.	<i>Vous</i> cousissiez.
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> cousirent18.	<i>Ils</i> cousissaient18.

<i>I</i> } shall, will sew,	<i>Je</i> 14coudrai5.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> coudras26.
<i>He</i> } be sewing.	<i>Il</i> coudra s.
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> coudrons.
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> coudrez.
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> coudront26.

<i>I</i> } should, would sew,	<i>Je</i> 14coudrais6.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> coudrais.
<i>He</i> } be sewing.	<i>Il</i> coudrait26.
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> coudrions.
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> coudriez.
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> coudraient6.

*Gerund.*

Sewing.      Couseant26.

*Participle.*

Couseu.      Sewed.

After the same manner as Coudre, are conjugated

Découdre, to unsew.

Recoudre, to sew again.

*Infinitive.*

To believe.

Croi re.

*Imperative.*

Believe. Crois, sing.

Let us believe.

Croyez, plur.

Croyons.

*Indicative.*

Present tense.	I	believe.	Je	croi	es	26.
	Thou	believest.	Tu	crois	e.	
	He	believes.	Il	croi	t	26.
	We	} believe.	Nous	croyons.		
	You		Vous	croyez	4.	
	They		Ils	croi	ent	18.

*Subjunctive*

*Je* 23*croi e.*  
*Tu* *croi es*26.  
*Il* *croi e.*  
*Nous* *croyons.*  
*Vous* *croyiez*4.  
*Ils* *croi ent*18.

believe, may believe.

Imperfect tense.	I	} did believe.	Je	23croya	is	4.
	Thou		Tu	croyais.		
	He		Il	croyait	26.	
	We		Nous	croyions.		
	You		Vous	croyiez.		
	They		Ils	croyaient	6.	

Perfect tense.	I	} believed, did believe.	Je	crus	26.
	Thou		Tu	crus.*	
	He		Il	crut	26.
	We		Nous	crûmes.	
	You		Vous	crûtes.	
	They		Ils	crurent	18.

Je	crusse	2.
Tu	crusses.	
Il	crût	26.
Nous	crussions.	
Vous	crussiez.	
Ils	crussent	18.

believed, might believe.

Future positive.	I	} shall, will believe.	Je	23croir	ai	5.
	Thou		Tu	croir	as	26.
	He		Il	croir	a.	
	We		Nous	croir	ons.	
	You		Vous	croir	ez.	
	They		Ils	croir	ont	26.

Future conditional.	I	} should, would believe.	Je	23croir	ais	6.
	Thou		Tu	croir	ais.	
	He		Il	croir	ait	26.
	We		Nous	croir	ions.	
	You		Vous	croir	iez.	
	They		Ils	croir	aient	6.

*Gerund.*

Believing. Croyant 26.

*Participle.*

Believed.

*Infinitive.*

To say, To tell.

Dire.

*Imperative.*Say.  
Let us say.

Di s, sing.

Dites, plur.  
Di sons.*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	I say, or am saying.	Je3	di s26.	Je	di s2.	say, may say
	Thou sayest, art saying.	Tu	di s.	Tu	di s26.	
	He says, or is saying.	Il	di s26.	Il	di s.	
	We say, are saying.	Nous	di sons.	Nous	di sions.	
	You say, are saying.	Vous	dites26.	Vous	di siez.	
	They say, are saying.	Ils	di sent18.	Ils	di sent18.	
Imperfect tense.	I was saying.	Je	di saie6.	Je	di sae2.	said, might say.
	Thou wast saying.	Tu	di saie.	Tu	di sae2.	
	He was saying.	Il	di saie26.	Il	di sae2.	
	We were saying.	Nous	di sions.	Nous	di sions.	
	You were saying.	Vous	di siez.	Vous	di siez.	
	They were saying.	Ils	di saient6.	Ils	di saient18.	
Perfect tense.	I said, did say.	Je	di s26.	Je	di sae2.	
	Thou saidst, didst say.	Tu	di s.	Tu	di sae2.	
	He said, did say.	Il	di s26.	Il	di sae2.	
	We said, did say.	Nous	di mes.	Nous	di sions.	
	You said, did say.	Vous	di tes.	Vous	di saies.	
	They said, did say.	Ils	di rent18.	Ils	di saient18.	
Future positive.	I shall, will say, be saying.	Je	dir ai5.	Je	dir ai5.	
	Thou shalt, wilt say, be saying.	Tu	dir as26.	Tu	dir as26.	
	He shall, will say, be saying.	Il	dir a.	Il	dir a.	
	We shall, will say, be saying.	Nous	dir ons.	Nous	dir ons.	
	You shall, will say, be saying.	Vous	dir ez.	Vous	dir ez.	
	They shall, will say, be saying.	Ils	dir ont26.	Ils	dir ont26.	
Future conditional.	I shd, wd say, be saying.	Je	dir ais6.	Je	dir ais6.	
	Thou shdst, wdst say, be saying.	Tu	dir ais.	Tu	dir ais.	
	He shd, wd say, be saying.	Il	dir ait26.	Il	dir ait26.	
	We shd, wd say, be saying.	Nous	dir ions.	Nous	dir ions.	
	You shd, wd say, be saying.	Vous	dir iez.	Vous	dir iez.	
	They shd, wd say, be saying.	Ils	dir aient6.	Ils	dir aient6.	

Saying.

Di sent26.

Di s26.

Said.

*After the same manner as Dire, are conjugate.*

Contredire, to contradict.

Prédire, to foretell.

se Dédire, to retract, to recant.

Redire, to say again.

Interdire, to interdict.

Confire, to confect, preserve fruit in sugar.

Maudire, to curse.

Circoncire, to circumcise. part. Circoncis.

Médire, to slander.

Suffire, to be sufficient. part. Suffi.

Observe only, that except Redire, the second person plural of the present of the indicative, and of the imperative of all these verbs ends in *sez*. and not in *tes*; so, *Vous confisez*, *Vous contredisez*; and that in Maudire the *s* is doubled in the middle of the word; so, *Nous maudissons*, *Vous maudissez*; *Je maudisais*, &c. not *Nous maudissons*, &c.



*Infinitive.*

To write.

Ecri re.

*Imperative.*

Write.

Ecri e, sing.

Ecri ves, plur.

Let us write.

Ecri vous.

*Indicative.*

*Present tense.*  
I write, or am writing.  
Thou writest, art writing.  
He writes, or is writing.  
We write.  
You are writing.  
They are writing.

J<sup>e</sup> écri s26.  
Tu écri s.t  
Il écri t26.  
Nous écri vons.  
Vous écri vez.  
Ils écri vent18.

*Subjunctive.*  
J<sup>e</sup> écri ve2.  
Tu écri ves26.  
Il écri ve.  
Nous écri vions.  
Vous écri viez.  
Ils écri vent18.

write, may write.

*Imperfect tense.*  
I was writing.  
Thou wast writing.  
He was writing.  
We were writing.  
You were writing.  
They were writing.

J<sup>e</sup> écri vais6.  
Tu écri vais.  
Il écri vait26.  
Nous écri vions.  
Vous écri viez.  
Ils écri vaient6.

J<sup>e</sup> écri vis.t  
Tu écri vis.  
Il écri vit26.  
Nous écri vissions.  
Vous écri vissiez.  
Ils écri vissent18.

wrote, might write.

*Preterite tense.*  
I wrote.  
Thou didst write.  
He wrote.  
We did write.  
You did write.  
They did write.

J<sup>e</sup> écri vis.t  
Tu écri vis.  
Il écri vit26.  
Nous écri vîmes.  
Vous écri vîtes.  
Ils écri virent18.

*Future tense.*  
I shall write.  
Thou shalt write.  
He shall write.  
We shall write.  
You shall write.  
They shall write.

J<sup>e</sup> écri ai5.  
Tu écri aas6.  
Il écri a.  
Nous écri ons.  
Vous écri ez.  
Ils écri ont26.

*Future conditional.*  
I should write.  
Thou shouldst write.  
He should write.  
We should write.  
You should write.  
They should write.

J<sup>e</sup> écri ais6.  
Tu écri ais.  
Il écri ait26.  
Nous écri ions.  
Vous écri iez.  
Ils écri aient6.

*Gerund*

Writing.

Ecri vant26.

*Participle.*

Ecri t26.

Written.

After the same manner as Ecrire, are conjugated

Circonscrire, to circumscribe.

Proscrire, to proscribe.

Décrire, to describe.

Récrire, to write again.

Inscrire, to inscribe

Souscrire, to subscribe.

Prescrire, to prescribe.

Transcrire, to transcribe, to copy.

*Infinitive.*

To do, To make.

Fai re.

*Imperative.*Do.  
Let us do.

Fai s, sing.

Faites, plur.  
Fai sons.*Indicative.*

*Present tense.*  
*I* do, or am  
*Thou* dost, art  
*He* does, or is  
*We* } do,  
*You* } are doing.  
*They* }

*Je*3 fai e6.  
*Tu* fai e.  
*Il* fai e26  
*Nous* fai sons.  
*Vous* faites.  
*Ils* font26.

*Subjunctive.*

*Je* fasse2.1  
*Tu* fasses26.  
*Il* fasse.  
*Nous* fassions.  
*Vous* fassiez.  
*Ils* fassent18.

*Imperfect tense.*  
*I* } was doing.  
*Thou* }  
*He* }  
*We* } were doing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* fai eais6.  
*Tu* fai eais.\*  
*Il* fai eait26.  
*Nous* fai sions.  
*Vous* fai siez.  
*Ils* fai eaient6.

*Perfect tense.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } did, or made.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* fis26.  
*Tu* fis.  
*Il* fit26.  
*Nous* fîmes.  
*Vous* fîtes.  
*Ils* firent18.

*Je* fisse2.  
*Tu* fisses.  
*Il* fît26.  
*Nous* fissions.  
*Vous* fissiez.  
*Ils* fissent18.

*Future positive.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shll, will do,  
*We* } be doing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* ferais5.  
*Tu* feras26.  
*Il* fera.  
*Nous* ferons.  
*Vous* ferez.  
*Ils* feront26.

*Future conditional.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shd, wd do,  
*We* } be doing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* ferais6.  
*Tu* ferais.  
*Il* ferait26.  
*Nous* ferions.  
*Vous* feriez.  
*Ils* feraient6.

*Gerund.*

Doing.

Fai sant26.

*Participle.*

Fai 26.

Dons, made.

After the same manner as Faire, are conjugated

Contrefaire, to counterfeit.  
 Défaire, to undo, to defeat.  
 se Défaire, to get rid of.  
 Redefaire, to undo again.

Refaire, to de again.  
 Satisfaire, to satisfy.  
 Surfaire, to exact, to ask too much.

\* See e between two vowels, page 17. † Pronounce *froy*, *frym*, &c. ‡ See ee, p. 12

pretend, may pretend,

pretended, might pretend,

pretending, 26.  
pretending, 18.

pretending, 22.  
pretending, 23.  
pretending, 24.  
pretending, 25.  
pretending, 26.  
pretending, 27.  
pretending, 28.  
pretending, 29.  
pretending, 30.  
pretending, 31.  
pretending, 32.  
pretending, 33.  
pretending, 34.  
pretending, 35.  
pretending, 36.  
pretending, 37.  
pretending, 38.  
pretending, 39.  
pretending, 40.  
pretending, 41.  
pretending, 42.  
pretending, 43.  
pretending, 44.  
pretending, 45.  
pretending, 46.  
pretending, 47.  
pretending, 48.  
pretending, 49.  
pretending, 50.  
pretending, 51.  
pretending, 52.  
pretending, 53.  
pretending, 54.  
pretending, 55.  
pretending, 56.  
pretending, 57.  
pretending, 58.  
pretending, 59.  
pretending, 60.  
pretending, 61.  
pretending, 62.  
pretending, 63.  
pretending, 64.  
pretending, 65.  
pretending, 66.  
pretending, 67.  
pretending, 68.  
pretending, 69.  
pretending, 70.  
pretending, 71.  
pretending, 72.  
pretending, 73.  
pretending, 74.  
pretending, 75.  
pretending, 76.  
pretending, 77.  
pretending, 78.  
pretending, 79.  
pretending, 80.  
pretending, 81.  
pretending, 82.  
pretending, 83.  
pretending, 84.  
pretending, 85.  
pretending, 86.  
pretending, 87.  
pretending, 88.  
pretending, 89.  
pretending, 90.  
pretending, 91.  
pretending, 92.  
pretending, 93.  
pretending, 94.  
pretending, 95.  
pretending, 96.  
pretending, 97.  
pretending, 98.  
pretending, 99.  
pretending, 100.

Pretended

pretended, 26.  
pretended, 27.  
pretended, 28.  
pretended, 29.  
pretended, 30.  
pretended, 31.  
pretended, 32.  
pretended, 33.  
pretended, 34.  
pretended, 35.  
pretended, 36.  
pretended, 37.  
pretended, 38.  
pretended, 39.  
pretended, 40.  
pretended, 41.  
pretended, 42.  
pretended, 43.  
pretended, 44.  
pretended, 45.  
pretended, 46.  
pretended, 47.  
pretended, 48.  
pretended, 49.  
pretended, 50.  
pretended, 51.  
pretended, 52.  
pretended, 53.  
pretended, 54.  
pretended, 55.  
pretended, 56.  
pretended, 57.  
pretended, 58.  
pretended, 59.  
pretended, 60.  
pretended, 61.  
pretended, 62.  
pretended, 63.  
pretended, 64.  
pretended, 65.  
pretended, 66.  
pretended, 67.  
pretended, 68.  
pretended, 69.  
pretended, 70.  
pretended, 71.  
pretended, 72.  
pretended, 73.  
pretended, 74.  
pretended, 75.  
pretended, 76.  
pretended, 77.  
pretended, 78.  
pretended, 79.  
pretended, 80.  
pretended, 81.  
pretended, 82.  
pretended, 83.  
pretended, 84.  
pretended, 85.  
pretended, 86.  
pretended, 87.  
pretended, 88.  
pretended, 89.  
pretended, 90.  
pretended, 91.  
pretended, 92.  
pretended, 93.  
pretended, 94.  
pretended, 95.  
pretended, 96.  
pretended, 97.  
pretended, 98.  
pretended, 99.  
pretended, 100.

*Infinitive.*

To instruct.

Instrui re.

*Imperative.*

Instruct.

Instrui s, sing.

Instrui ses, plur.

Let us instruct.

Instrui sons.

*Indicative.*

<i>I</i> instruct, or am	<i>J</i> 19instrui es6.
<i>Thou</i> instructest, art	<i>Tu</i> instrui s.
<i>He</i> instructs, or is	<i>Il</i> instrui es6.
<i>We</i> instruct, are	<i>Nous</i> instrui sons.
<i>You</i> instructing.	<i>Vous</i> instrui ses.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> instrui sent18.

*Subjunctive.*

<i>J</i> instrui es6.
<i>Tu</i> instrui ses26.
<i>Il</i> instrui se.
<i>Nous</i> instrui sions.
<i>Vous</i> instrui siez.
<i>Ils</i> instrui sent18.

<i>I</i> was instruct-	<i>J</i> 19instrui esie6.
<i>Thou</i> ing.	<i>Tu</i> instrui esie.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i> instrui esie26.
<i>We</i> were instruct-	<i>Nous</i> instrui sions.
<i>You</i> ing.	<i>Vous</i> instrui siez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> instrui saient6.

<i>I</i> instructed, did instruct.	<i>J</i> 19instrui esie26.	<i>J</i> instrui siesse2.
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i> instrui esie.	<i>Tu</i> instrui siesse.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i> instrui esie26.	<i>Il</i> instrui esie26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i> instrui simes.	<i>Nous</i> instrui sissions.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> instrui sites.	<i>Vous</i> instrui siesies.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> instrui sient6.	<i>Ils</i> instrui sissent.

<i>I</i> shall, will	<i>J</i> 19instruire ai5.
<i>Thou</i> instruct,	<i>Tu</i> instruire as26.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i> instruire a.
<i>We</i> be instructing.	<i>Nous</i> instruire ons.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> instruire es.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> instruire ont26.

<i>I</i> should, would	<i>J</i> 19instruire ais.
<i>Thou</i> instruct,	<i>Tu</i> instruire ais.
<i>He</i> be instructing.	<i>Il</i> instruire ais26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i> instruire ions.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> instruire iez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> instruire aient6.

*Gerund.*

Instructing.

Instrui sent26.

*Participle.*

Instrui es6. Instructed.

After the same manner as Instruire, are conjugated

Conduire, to conduct.	Introduire, to introduce.
Reconduire, to take or lead back.	Luire, } to shine, part. Lui, Relui.
Construire, to construct.	Reluire, }
Cuire, to do victuals, to cook.*	Nuire, to hurt, to injure, part. Nui.
Recuire, to do or cook over again.	Produire, to produce.
Déduire, to deduct.	Réduire, to reduce, to compel.
Détruire, to destroy.	Séduire, to seduce.
Enduire, to daub.	Traduire, to translate.

\* To cook, followed by an object, is generally expressed by *Faire cuire*; as, *I cook, or am cooking meat, fish, &c. Je fais cuire de la viande, du poisson, &c.*

read, may read.

read, might read.

principle.

Road.

## Infinitive.

To put.

\*Mettre.

## Imperative.

Put.

Let us put.

Mets, sing.

Mett ex, plur.

Mett ons.

## Indicative.

*I* put, or am putting.  
*Thou* puttest, art putting.  
*He* puts, or is putting.  
*We* put, are putting.  
*You* put, are putting.  
*They* are putting.

*Je* mets26.  
*Tu* mets.  
*Il* met26.  
*Nous* mett ons.  
*Vous* mett ex.  
*Ils* mett ent18.

## Subjunctive.

*Je* \*mett e.  
*Tu* mett ent26.  
*Il* mett e.  
*Nous* mett ions.  
*Vous* mett iex.  
*Ils* mett ent18.

*I* was putting.  
*Thou* wast putting.  
*He* was putting.  
*We* were putting.  
*You* were putting.  
*They* were putting.

*Je* \*mett ais6.  
*Tu* mett ais.  
*Il* mett ait26.  
*Nous* mett ions.  
*Vous* mett iex.  
*Ils* mett aient6.

*I* put, did put.  
*Thou* puttest, didst put.  
*He* put, did put.  
*We* put, did put.  
*You* put, did put.  
*They* put, did put.

*Je* tins26.  
*Tu* mis.  
*Il* mit26.  
*Nous* mimes.  
*Vous* mites.  
*Ils* mirent16.

*Je* tins2.  
*Tu* mimes.  
*Il* mit26.  
*Nous* missions.  
*Vous* missiez.  
*Ils* missent18.

*I* shall, will put, be putting.  
*Thou* shalt, wilt put, be putting.  
*He* shall, will put, be putting.  
*We* shall, will put, be putting.  
*You* shall, will put, be putting.  
*They* shall, will put, be putting.

*Je* \*mettr ais6.  
*Tu* mettr ais.  
*Il* mettr ait26.  
*Nous* mettr ons.  
*Vous* mettr ex.  
*Ils* mettr aient26.

*I* should, would put, be putting.  
*Thou* shouldst, wouldst put, be putting.  
*He* should, would put, be putting.  
*We* should, would put, be putting.  
*You* should, would put, be putting.  
*They* should, would put, be putting.

*Je* \*mettr ais6.  
*Tu* mettr ais.  
*Il* mettr ait26.  
*Nous* mettr ions.  
*Vous* mettr iex.  
*Ils* mettr aient6.

## Gerund.

Putting.

Mett ent26.

## Participle.

Mett.

Put.

After the same manner as Mettre, are conjugated

Admettre, to admit.

Omettre, to omit.

Commettre, to commit.

Permettre, to permit.

Compromettre, to compromise.

Promettre, to promise.

Démettre, to put out of joint.

Remettre, to put again, to deliver up

se Démettre, to abdicate.

Soumettre, to submit.

se Entremettre, to intermeddle.

Transmettre, to transmit

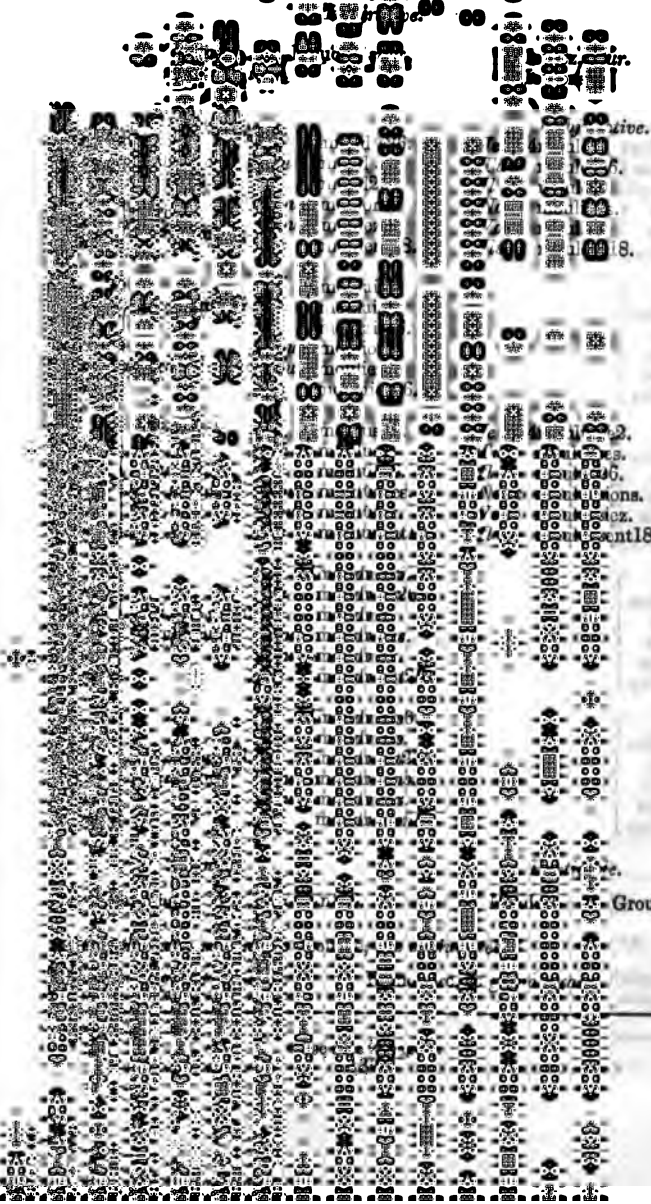
\* Sound only one t

† See Note 4, page 4.

grind may grind

grind may grind

Ground.



Infinitive.					
To laugh.			Ri re.		
Imperative.					
Laugh.	Ri a, sing.	Ri ex, plur.			
Let us laugh.	Ri ons.	Ri ons.			
Indicative.			Subjunctive.		
Present tense.	<i>I</i> laugh, or am laughing.	<i>Je</i> 3 *ri a26.	<i>Je</i> *ri a2.		
	<i>Thou</i> laughest, art laughing.	<i>Tu</i> ri a.	<i>Tu</i> ri a26.		
	<i>He</i> laughs, or is laughing.	<i>Il</i> ri t26.	<i>Il</i> ri e.		
	<i>We</i> laugh.	<i>Nous</i> ri ons.	<i>Nous</i> ryons4.		
	<i>You</i> are laughing.	<i>Vous</i> ri ex.	<i>Vous</i> ryex.		
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> are laughing.	<i>Ils</i> ri ent18.	<i>Ils</i> ri ent18.		
	<i>I</i> was laughing.	<i>Je</i> *ri aie6.			
	<i>Thou</i> wast laughing.	<i>Tu</i> ri ais.			
	<i>He</i> was laughing.	<i>Il</i> ri aie26.			
	<i>We</i> were laughing.	<i>Nous</i> ryons4.			
Pluperfect tense.	<i>You</i> were laughing.	<i>Vous</i> ryex.			
	<i>They</i> were laughing.	<i>Ils</i> ri aient6.			
Past tense.	<i>I</i> laughed.	<i>Je</i> *ri a26.	<i>Je</i> *ri aec2.		
	<i>Thou</i> didst laugh.	<i>Tu</i> ri a.	<i>Tu</i> ri aec.		
	<i>He</i> laughed.	<i>Il</i> ri t26.	<i>Il</i> ri a26.		
	<i>We</i> did laugh.	<i>Nous</i> ri mes.	<i>Nous</i> ri aions.		
	<i>You</i> did laugh.	<i>Vous</i> ri tes.	<i>Vous</i> ri aiez.		
Future tense.	<i>They</i> did laugh.	<i>Ils</i> ri rent18.	<i>Ils</i> ri aient18.		
	<i>I</i> shall, will laugh.	<i>Je</i> *rir ai5.			
	<i>Thou</i> shalt, wilt laugh.	<i>Tu</i> rir a26.			
	<i>He</i> shall, will laugh.	<i>Il</i> rir a.			
	<i>We</i> shall, will be laughing.	<i>Nous</i> rir ons.			
Future perfect tense.	<i>You</i> shall, will be laughing.	<i>Vous</i> rir ex.			
	<i>They</i> shall, will be laughing.	<i>Ils</i> rir ont26.			
Conditional tense.	<i>I</i> should, would laugh.	<i>Je</i> *rir ais6.			
	<i>Thou</i> shouldst, wouldst laugh.	<i>Tu</i> rir ais.			
	<i>He</i> should, would laugh.	<i>Il</i> rir ait26.			
	<i>We</i> should, would be laughing.	<i>Nous</i> rir ions.			
	<i>You</i> should, would be laughing.	<i>Vous</i> rir iex.			
Conditional perfect tense.	<i>They</i> should, would be laughing.	<i>Ils</i> rir aient6.			
Gerund.			Participle.		
Laughing.	Ri ant26.	Ri.	Laughed.		

## Gerund.

Laughing. Ri ent26.

## Participle.

Ri. Laughed.

After the same manner as *Rire*, are conjugated

Sourire, to smile.

Frire, to fry, part. Frit, fried.

*N. B.* *Frire* is used only in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person of the present of the indicative, *je frie*, *tu frie*, *il frit*; in the future, *je frirai*, *tu friras*, &c. and in the conditional, *je frirais*, *tu frirais*, &c.; the other tenses are formed with the verb *Faire*, and the infinitive of this verb; so, *We fry*, *nous faisons frire*; *you fry*, *vous faites frire*; *they fry*, *ils font frire*.

*Fry this fish, these eggs, that meat.* *Faites frire ce poisson, ces œufs, cette viande.*



*Infinitive.*

To follow.

Suiv *re*.

*Imperative.*

Follow.      Suis, *sing.*  
Let us follow.

Suiv *ez, plur.*  
Suiv *ons.*

*Indicative.*

*I follow, or am following.* Je 3 suis 26.  
*Thou followest, art following.* Tu 23 suis.  
*He follows, or is following.* Il suit 26.  
*We follow, are following.* Nous suiv *ons.*  
*You follow, are following.* Vous suiv *ez.*  
*They follow, are following.* Ils suiv *ent* 18.

*Subjunctive.*  
Je suiv *e* 2.  
Tu suiv *es* 26.  
Il suiv *e.*  
Nous suiv *ions.*  
Vous suiv *iez.*  
Ils suiv *ent* 18.

follow, may follow

*Imperfect tense.*  
*I was following.* Je 23 suiv *ais* 6.  
*Thou was following.* Tu suiv *ais.*  
*He was following.* Il suiv *ait* 26.  
*We were following.* Nous suiv *ions.*  
*You were following.* Vous suiv *iez.*  
*They were following.* Ils suiv *aient* 6.

Je suiv *isse* 2.  
Tu suiv *isses.*  
Il suiv *ît* 26.  
Nous suiv *issions.*  
Vous suiv *issiez.*  
Ils suiv *issent* 18.

followed, might follow.

*Perfect tense.*  
*I followed, did follow.* Je 23 suiv *i* 26.  
*Thou followed, did follow.* Tu suiv *is.*  
*He followed, did follow.* Il suiv *it* 26.  
*We followed, did follow.* Nous suiv *îmes.*  
*You followed, did follow.* Vous suiv *îtes.*  
*They followed, did follow.* Ils suiv *irent* 18.

*Future positive.*  
*I shall, will follow, be following.* Je 23 suiv *rai* 5.  
*Thou shall, will follow, be following.* Tu suiv *ras* 26.  
*He shall, will follow, be following.* Il suiv *ra.*  
*We shall, will follow, be following.* Nous suiv *rons.*  
*You shall, will follow, be following.* Vous suiv *rez.*  
*They shall, will follow, be following.* Ils suiv *ront* 26.

*Future conditional.*  
*I should, would follow, be following.* Je 23 suiv *rais* 6.  
*Thou should, would follow, be following.* Tu suiv *rais.*  
*He should, would follow, be following.* Il suiv *rait* 26.  
*We should, would follow, be following.* Nous suiv *rions.*  
*You should, would follow, be following.* Vous suiv *riez.*  
*They should, would follow, be following.* Ils suiv *raient* 6.

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

Following.      Suiv *ant* 26.

Suiv *i.*      Followed.

After the same manner as Suivre, are conjugated

*s'Ensuivre, to follow from, i. e. a consequence.*

*Poursuivre, to pursue.*

*Infinitive.*

To milk.

Traire.

*Imperative.*

Milk.

Let us milk.

Traire, sing.

Traitez, plur.

Traisons.

*Indicative.**Present tense.*  
I milk, or am milking.

Thou milkest, art milking.

He milks, or is milking.

We } milk,

You } are milking.

They }

*Imperfect tense.*  
I } was milking.

Thou } was milking.

He } was milking.

We } were milking.

You } were milking.

They }

*Perfect tense.*  
I } milked,

Thou } did milk.

He } did milk.

We } did milk.

You } did milk.

They }

*Future tense.*  
I } shall, will milk,

Thou } be milking.

He } be milking.

We } be milking.

You } be milking.

They }

*Conditional.*  
I } should, would milk,

Thou } be milking.

He } be milking.

We } be milking.

You } be milking.

They }

Je3 traire6.

Tu traire a.

Il traire26.

Nous trayons4.

Vous trayez.

Ils traient18.

Je4 trayais6.

Tu trayais.

Il trayait26.

Nous trayions.

Vous trayiez.

Ils trayaient6.

Je tirai.\*

Tu tiras26.

Il tira.

Nous tirâmes.

Vous tirâtes.

Ils tirèrent18.

Je traire ai5.

Tu traire as26.

Il traire a.

Nous traire ons.

Vous traire ez.

Ils traire ont26.

Je traire ais6.

Tu traire ais.

Il traire ait26.

Nous traire ions.

Vous traire iez.

Ils traire aient6.

*Subjunctive.*

Je traire es2.

Tu traire es26.

Il traire e.

Nous trayions.

Vous trayiez.

Ils traient18.

Je tirasses2.

Tu tirasses.

Il tirât26.

Nous tirassions.

Vous tirassiez.

Ils tirassent18.

*Gerund.*

Milking. Trayant.

*Participle.*

Traire26. Milked.

After the same manner as Traire, are conjugated

Abstraire, to abstract.

Rentraire, to fine-draw.

Distraindre, to disturb one's attention. Soustraire, to subtract.

Extraire, to extract.

N. B. These verbs have no perfect tense.

\* Traire having no perfect tense, we supply its place with the perfect of the verb tirer, which may be used in the same sense as traire; example,  
I milked my cows, my goats, &c. Je tirai mes vaches, mes chèvres, &c

may vanquish.

might vanquish.

quished.

are, are not

## Infinitive.

To live, To have life.\*

Viv re.

## Imperative.

Live.  
Let us live.

Vis, sing.

Viv ex, plur.  
Viv ons.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*I live.*  
*Thou livest.*  
*He lives.*  
*We*  
*You* } live.  
*They*

*Je* viv<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* vis.  
*Il* vit<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* viv ons.  
*Vous* viv ex.  
*Ils* viv ent<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* viv e<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* viv es<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* viv e.  
*Nous* viv ions.  
*Vous* viv iez.  
*Ils* viv ent<sup>18</sup>.

live, may live.

*I*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* } did live.

*Je* tiv<sup>26</sup> ais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* tiv<sup>26</sup> ais.  
*Il* tiv<sup>26</sup> ait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* tiv<sup>26</sup> ions.  
*Vous* tiv<sup>26</sup> iez.  
*Ils* tiv<sup>26</sup> aient<sup>6</sup>.

*I*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* } lived, did live.

*Je* vécus.<sup>1</sup>  
*Tu* vécus.  
*Il* vécut<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* vécûmes.  
*Vous* vécûtes.  
*Ils* vécurent<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* vécusse<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* vécusses.  
*Il* vécût<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* vécussions.  
*Vous* vécussiez.  
*Ils* vécussent<sup>18</sup>.

lived, might live.

*I*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* } shall, will live.

*Je* tiv<sup>26</sup> ais<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* tiv<sup>26</sup> as<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* tiv<sup>26</sup> a.  
*Nous* tiv<sup>26</sup> ons.  
*Vous* tiv<sup>26</sup> ex.  
*Ils* tiv<sup>26</sup> ent<sup>26</sup>.

*I*  
*Thou*  
*He*  
*We*  
*You*  
*They* } should, would live.

*Je* tiv<sup>26</sup> ais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* tiv<sup>26</sup> ais.  
*Il* tiv<sup>26</sup> ait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* tiv<sup>26</sup> ions.  
*Vous* tiv<sup>26</sup> iez.  
*Ils* tiv<sup>26</sup> aient<sup>6</sup>.

## Gerund.

## Participle.

Living. Viv ant<sup>26</sup>.

Vécu. Lived.

After the same manner as Vivre, are conjugated

Revivre, to revive, to come to life again. Survivre, to survive, to outlive.

\* To live, meaning to dwell, is expressed by *demeurer*; as,  
We live in London, in town, in the country.  
*Nous demeurons à Londres, à la ville, & la campagne.*

† See note 4, page 4.

‡ See note 2, page 1.

oth regu-

Part.  
bu.  
Subj.  
as  
ces  
pe  
pavien  
beriez  
vent.

buses  
buses  
bdt  
butions  
busses  
bessent.

Reboire.

connu.  
connasse  
connasses  
connassent  
connassions  
connassiez  
connassent.

connusse  
connusses  
connut  
connussent  
connussiez  
connussent.

Reconnaître,  
paraître, Com-  
paraître, Croi-  
re, Décroître,  
paraître, Repaître,  
re. (See re-  
29.)

Reconnaître, te  
used, have  
seen in their



TABLES showing how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.

Li re.				Plai re.				Sulv re.						
		Infm.	Ger. Part.			Infm.	Ger. Part.			Infm.	Ger. Part.			
		ant.	lu.			ant.	lu.			ant.	l.			
		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.			Indic.	Imp.	Subj.			Indic.	Imp.	Subj.
Je	Il	s	a.	so	Plai	s	a.	so	Sulv	suis	a	suis	a	suis
Tu		s.	a.	so		s.	a.	so		suis	a	suis	a	suis
Il		t		so		t		so		suis	a	suis	a	suis
Nous		sens,	sens,	sions		sens,	sens,	sions		Suis	ons,	ons,	ions	
Vous		sez,	sez,	siez		sez,	sez,	siez		ez,	ez,	iez		ont.
Ils		sont.		sont.		sont.		sont.		ont.		ont.		
Je		sais				sais				aie				
Tu		sais				sais				aie				
Il		sait				sait				aie				
Nous		sions				sions				aie				
Vous		siez				siez				aie				
Ils		saisent.				saisent.				aient.				
Je		lus		luses		plus		pluses		te		tes		
Tu		lus		luses		plus		pluses		te		tes		
Il		lit		lites		plut		plutes		te		tes		
Nous		limes		limes		plimes		plimes		tes		tes		
Vous		liez		liez		pliez		pliez		tes		tes		
Ils		lurent.		lurent.		plurent.		plurent.		trant.		trant.		
Je	Il	ai			Plai	ai			Sulv	ai				
Tu		a				a				a				
Il		a				a				a				
Nous		ons				ons				ons				
Vous		ez				ez				ez				
Ils		ont.				ont.				ont.				
Je		aie				aie				aie				
Tu		aie				aie				aie				
Il		aie				aie				aie				
Nous		ions				ions				ions				
Vous		iez				iez				iez				
Ils		aient.				aient.				aient.				
Like Lire conjugate like Lire, Reire.				Déplaire, se Plaire, se Faire.				s'Ennuire, Pournuire.						
Mett re.				Ri re.				Viv re.						
		ant.	mis			ant.	ri			ant.	vécu.			
Je		met		s		s		vis		s				
Tu		met		s.		s.	as	vis		as				
Il		met		t		t		vit		s				
Nous		mettons,		ons,		ons,	ryons	ons,		ons,				
Vous		ez,		ez,		ez,	ryez	ez,		ez,				
Ils		ont.		ont.		ont.		ont.		ont.				
Je		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Tu		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Il		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Nous		ions		ions,		ions,		ions		ions				
Vous		iez		iez		iez		iez		iez				
Ils		aient.		aient.		aient.		aient.		aient.				
Je		mis		s		s		vécus		vécus				
Tu		mis		s.		s.	as	vécus		vécus				
Il		mit		t		t		vécut		vécut				
Nous		mis		mes		mes	sons	vécûmes		vécûmes				
Vous		mis		tes		tes	sez	vécûtes		vécûtes				
Ils		misent.		vont.		vont.	seont.	vécurent.		vécurent.				
Je	mettr	ai		Ri	ai			Viv	ai					
Tu		a			a				a					
Il		a			a				a					
Nous		ons			ons				ons					
Vous		ez			ez				ez					
Ils		ont.			ont.				ont.					
Je		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Tu		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Il		aie		aie		aie		aie		aie				
Nous		ions		ions		ions		ions		ions				
Vous		iez		iez		iez		iez		iez				
Ils		aient.		aient.		aient.		aient.		aient.				
Admettre, Com-				Sourire, Fri-				Revivre, Survivre.						
mettre, Com-				re. (See re-										
mettre, Démet-				mark under Lire, p. 129.)										
tre, Extremet-														
re, Omettre,														
aient.														
Permettre, Pro-														
mettre, Remettre, Remettre, Trans-														
mettre.														

Some verbs which have only the *third person singular*, and sometimes the *third person plural* of their tenses in use, are called *impersonal*, though they would perhaps be more properly called *monopersonal*, i.e. verbs of *one person*; the most frequently used are the following:

### Infinitives.

Tonner.	Éclairer.	Pleuvoir.	Geler.	Neiger.	Grêler.	Venter.
To Thunder.	To Lighten.	To Rain.	To Freeze.	To Snow.	To Hail.	To Blow.

#### Indicative.

*Present tense.*  
*It* thunders.  
*It* lightens.  
*It* rains.  
*It* freezes.  
*It* snows.  
*It* hails.  
 The wind blows.

*Il* tonne.  
*Il* éclaire.  
*Il* pleut.  
*Il* gèle.  
*Il* neige.  
*Il* grêle.  
*Il* vente.

#### Subjunctive.

*Il* tonne.  
*Il* éclaire.  
*Il* pleuve.  
*Il* gèle.  
*Il* neige.  
*Il* grêle.  
*Il* vente.

*It may thunder, &c.*

*Imperfect tense.*  
*It* did thunder.  
*It* did lighten.  
*It* did rain.  
*It* did freeze.  
*It* did snow.  
*It* did hail.  
 The wind did blow.

*Il* tonnait.  
*Il* éclairait.  
*Il* pleuvait.  
*Il* gelait.  
*Il* neigeait.  
*Il* grêlait.  
*Il* ventait.

*Perfect tense.*  
*It* thundered.  
*It* lightened.  
*It* rained.  
*It* froze.  
*It* snowed.  
*It* hailed.  
 The wind blew.

*Il* tonna.  
*Il* éclaira.  
*Il* plut.  
*Il* gela.  
*Il* neigea.  
*Il* grêla.  
*Il* venta.

*Il* tonnât.  
*Il* éclairât.  
*Il* plût.  
*Il* gelât.  
*Il* neigerât.  
*Il* grêlât.  
*Il* ventât.

*It might thunder, &c.*

*Future positive.*  
*It* will thunder.  
*It* will lighten.  
*It* will rain.  
*It* will freeze.  
*It* will snow.  
*It* will hail.  
 The wind will blow.

*Il* tonnera.  
*Il* éclairera.  
*Il* pleuvra.  
*Il* gèlera.  
*Il* neigera.  
*Il* grêlera.  
*Il* ventera.

*Future conditional.*  
*It* would thunder.  
*It* would lighten.  
*It* would rain.  
*It* would freeze.  
*It* would snow.  
*It* would hail.  
 The wind would blow.

*Il* tonnerait.  
*Il* éclairerait.  
*Il* pleuvrait.  
*Il* gèlerait.  
*Il* neigerait.  
*Il* grêlerait.  
*Il* venterait.

*Interrogatively.*  
 Tonne-t-il ?  
 Éclaire-t-il ?  
 Pleut-il ?  
 Gèle-t-il ?  
 Neige-t-il ?  
 Grêle-t-il ?

*Does it thunder ?*

*Negatively.*  
*Il* ne tonne.  
*Il* n' éclaire.  
*Il* ne pleut.  
*Il* ne gèle.  
*Il* ne neige.  
*Il* ne grêle.

*pas.*

*It does not thunder.*

*Interrogatively and Negatively.*  
 Ne tonne-t-il ?  
 N' éclaire-t-il ?  
 Ne pleut-il ?  
 Ne gèle-t-il ?  
 Ne neige-t-il ?  
 Ne grêle-t-il ?

*pas ?*

*Does it not thunder ?*



*Infinitive.*

*There be. Y avoir.*

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

*Afirmatively.*

*There is,*  
*There are.....Il y a.*  
*There was,*  
*There were.....Il y avait.*  
*There was,*  
*There were.....Il y eut.*  
*There will be.....Il y aura.*  
*There would be.....Il y aurait.*

*Il y ait.*

*Il y eût.*

*there may be*

*There is not,*  
*There are not.....Il n'y a pas.*  
*There was not,*  
*There were not.....Il n'y avait pas.*  
*There was not,*  
*There were not.....Il n'y eut pas.*  
*There will not be.....Il n'y aura pas.*  
*There would not be.....Il n'y aurait pas.*

*Il n'y ait pas.*

*Il n'y eût pas*

*there may not be.*

*Interrogatively.*

*Is there,*  
*Are there?.....Y a-t-il?*  
*Was there,*  
*Were there?.....Y avait-il?*  
*Was there,*  
*Were there?.....Y eut-il?*  
*Will there be?.....Y aura-t-il?*  
*Would there be?.....Y aurait-il?*

*Is there not,*  
*Are there not?.....N'y a-t-il pas?*  
*Was there not,*  
*Were there not?.....N'y avait-il pas?*  
*Was there not,*  
*Were there not?.....N'y eut-il pas?*  
*Will not there be?.....N'y aura-t-il pas?*  
*Would not there be?.....N'y aurait-il pas?*

*Compound tenses.*

*There has been,*  
*There have been.....Il y a eu.*  
*There had been.....Il y avait eu.*  
*There had been.....Il y eut eu.*  
*There will have been.....Il y aura eu.*  
*There would have been.....Il y aurait eu.*

*Il y ait eu.*

*Il y eût eu.*

*There has not been,*  
*There have not been.....Il n'y a pas eu.*

*Has there been? Y a-t-il eu? Has not there been? N'y a-t-il pas eu?*

Must.

Falloir.

The verb *Must* is conjugated through its *different persons*; but its representative *Falloir* has only the *third person singular* of each tense, with *Il* for nominative; then the nominative of *Must* becomes the nominative of the following verb in French, which verb must be in the present of the subjunctive after *Il faut*, *Il faudra*; and in the perfect, after *Il fallait*, *Il fallut*, *Il faudrait*, as appears by the following example,

<i>I must</i>	} go out.	<i>Il faut</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>We must</i>			<i>que nous sortions.</i>
<i>You must</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I, thou,</i> <i>he, &amp;c. should</i> go out.	<i>Il fallait</i> <i>Il fallut</i>	<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>They must</i>			<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>It was necessary</i>			<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for him</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I</i> go out.	<i>Il faudra</i>	<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que nous sortirions.</i>
<i>for us</i>			<i>que vous sortiriez.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>qu' ils sortiraient.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>
<i>It will be necessary</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que nous sortirions.</i>
<i>for us</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>It would be necessary</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for thee</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>que nous sortirions.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que vous sortiriez.</i>
<i>for us</i>			<i>qu' ils sortiraient.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>
<i>for them</i>			

Negatively.

<i>I must not</i>	} go out.	<i>Il ne faut pas</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must not</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must not</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>

Interrogatively.

<i>Must I</i>	} go out ?	<i>Faut-il</i>	<i>que je sorte ?</i>
<i>Must thou</i>			<i>que tu sortes ?</i>
<i>Must he</i>			<i>qu' il sorte ?</i>
<i>Must my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte ?</i>
<i>Must I not</i>	} go out ?	<i>Ne faut-il pas</i>	<i>que je sorte ?</i>
<i>Must thou not</i>			<i>que tu sortes ?</i>
<i>Must he not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte ?</i>
<i>Must not my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte ?</i>

*Must have,* meaning *To be in need of a thing*, is expressed thus :

<i>I must have</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{money, books ;} \\ \text{or, } I, \text{thou, he, \&c.} \\ \text{want money,} \\ \text{books.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il faut de l'argent, des} \\ \text{livres.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Thou must have</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>He must have</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>We must have</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>You must have</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>They must have</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		
<i>My brother must have</i>		<i>Il faut des livres à mon frère.</i>		

<i>Il me faut de l'argent.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ wanted} \\ \text{money, books.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fallait, or fallut de} \\ \text{l'argent, des livres.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>for me</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>for thee</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>for him</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>for us</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>for you</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		
<i>for them</i>				

<i>Il me faudra de l'argent.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ shall} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{faudra de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>for me</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>for thee</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>for him</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>for us</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>for you</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		
<i>for them</i>				

<i>Il me faudrait de l'argent.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ should} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{faudrait de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>for me</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>for thee</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>for him</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>for us</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>for you</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		
<i>for them</i>				

The impersonal verb **TARDER**, *To long*, is also conjugated in the same manner as the above ;

<i>I long</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tarde de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Thou longest</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>He longs</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>We long</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>You long</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>They long</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		
<i>My brother longs</i>		<i>Il tarda à mon frère de la voir.</i>		

<i>I did long</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Il te} \\ \text{Il lui} \\ \text{Il nous} \\ \text{Il vous} \\ \text{Il leur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tardait de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Thou didst long</i>		<i>Il te</i>		
<i>He did long</i>		<i>Il lui</i>		
<i>We did long</i>		<i>Il nous</i>		
<i>You did long</i>		<i>Il vous</i>		
<i>They did long</i>		<i>Il leur</i>		

<i>I</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{longed,} \\ \text{did long} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tarda de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il te</i>	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il lui</i>	

<i>I</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{shall,} \\ \text{will long} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Il me</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tardera de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il te</i>	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il lui</i>	

<i>I</i>	<i>should long to see her, \&amp;c.</i>	<i>Il me</i>	<i>tarderait de la voir.</i>
----------	---	--------------	------------------------------

I.	1,	one.	<i>*Un, m. Une, f.</i>
II.	2,	two.	<i>Deux.</i>
III.	3,	three.	<i>Trois.†</i>
IV.	4,	four.	<i>Quat re.</i>
V.	5,	five.	<i>Cinq.</i>
VI.	6,	six.	<i>Six.</i>
VII.	7,	seven.	<i>Sept.</i>
VIII.	8,	eight.	<i>Huit.</i>
IX.	9,	nine.	<i>Neuf.</i>
X.	10,	ten.	<i>Dix.</i>
XI.	11,	eleven.	<i>Onze.</i>
XII.	12,	twelve.	<i>Douze.</i>
XIII.	13,	thirteen.	<i>Treize.</i>
XIV.	14,	fourteen.	<i>Quatorze.</i>
XV.	15,	fifteen.	<i>Quinze.</i>
XVI.	16,	sixteen.	<i>Seize.</i>
XVII.	17,	seventeen.	<i>Dix-sept.</i>
XVIII.	18,	eighteen.	<i>Dix-huit.</i>
XIX.	19,	nineteen.	<i>Dix-neuf.</i>
XX.	20,	twenty.	<i>Vingt.</i>
XXI.	21,	twenty-one.	<i>Vingt et un.</i>
XXII.	22,	twenty-two.	<i>Vingt-deux.</i>
XXIII.	23,	twenty-three.	<i>Vingt-trois.</i>
XXIV.	24,	twenty-four.	<i>Vingt-quatre.</i>
XXV.	25,	twenty-five.	<i>Vingt-cinq.</i>
XXVI.	26,	twenty-six.	<i>Vingt-six.</i>
XXVII.	27,	twenty-seven.	<i>Vingt-sept.</i>
XXVIII.	28,	twenty-eight.	<i>Vingt-huit.</i>
XXIX.	29,	twenty-nine.	<i>Vingt-neuf.</i>
XXX.	30,	thirty.	<i>Trente.</i>
XXXI.	31,	thirty-one.	<i>Trente et un.</i>
XXXII.	32,	thirty-two, &c.	<i>Trente-deux, &amp;c.</i>
XXXIX.	39,	thirty-nine.	<i>Trente-neuf.</i>
XL.	40,	forty.	<i>Quarante.</i>
XLI.	41,	forty-one.	<i>Quarante et un.</i>
XLII.	42,	forty-two, &c.	<i>Quarante-deux, &amp;c.</i>
XLIX.	49,	forty-nine.	<i>Quarante-neuf.</i>
L.	50,	fifty.	<i>Cinquante.</i>
LI.	51,	fifty-one.	<i>Cinquante et un.</i>
LII.	52,	fifty-two, &c.	<i>Cinquante-deux, &amp;c.</i>
LIX.	59,	fifty-nine.	<i>Cinquante-neuf.</i>
LX.	60,	sixty.	<i>Soixante.</i>
LXI.	61,	sixty-one, &c.	<i>Soixante et un, &amp;c.</i>
LXIX.	69,	sixty-nine.	<i>Soixante-neuf.</i>
LXX.	70,	seventy.	<i>Soixante-dix.</i>
LXXI.	71,	seventy-one.	<i>Soixante-onze.</i>

\* These words are both *Articles* and *Substantives*.

*Articles* when prefixed to a noun; as, *Un homme, Une femme; Un livre, Deux livres; Trois hommes; Quatre maisons; Cinq chevaux; Dix écus, &c.*

*Substantives* when preceded by an article; as, *un Deux; un Trois; un Quatre; le Deux, le Trois, le Quatre, de janvier, de février; de cœur, de pique, &c. des Trois; des Quatre, &c.*

† The chapter on pronunciation contains rules which show how to pronounce all these words.

1. sept.  
 2. huit.  
 3. neuf.  
 4. dix.  
 5. onze.  
 6. douze.  
 7. treize.  
 8. quatorze.  
 9. quinze.  
 10. seize.  
 11. dix-sept.  
 12. dix-huit.  
 13. dix-neuf.

14. vingt.

15. numbers in

16. quatre-vingts  
 17. when they  
 18. cinquante

19. smaller number,  
 20. and twenty  
 21. if the noun  
 22. an accom-

23. not mille;

From the foregoing numbers are formed the *adjectives of number* :

1 <sup>st</sup> , the first.	le Premier, m. la Première, f.
2 <sup>nd</sup> , the second.	{ le Second, m. la Seconde, f. le or la Deuxième, m. and f.*
3 <sup>rd</sup> , the third.	le Troisième.
4 <sup>th</sup> , the fourth.	le Quatrième.
5 <sup>th</sup> , the fifth.	le Cinquième.
6 <sup>th</sup> , the sixth.	le Sixième.
7 <sup>th</sup> , the seventh.	le Septième.
8 <sup>th</sup> , the eighth.	le Huitième.
9 <sup>th</sup> , the ninth.	le Neuvième.
10 <sup>th</sup> , the tenth.	le Dixième.
11 <sup>th</sup> , the eleventh.	le Onzième, or l'Onzième
12 <sup>th</sup> , the twelfth.	le Douzième.
13 <sup>th</sup> , the thirteenth.	le Treizième.
14 <sup>th</sup> , the fourteenth.	le Quatorzième.
15 <sup>th</sup> , the fifteenth.	le Quinzième.
16 <sup>th</sup> , the sixteenth.	le Seizième.
17 <sup>th</sup> , the seventeenth.	le Dix-septième.
18 <sup>th</sup> , the eighteenth.	le Dix-huitième.
19 <sup>th</sup> , the nineteenth.	le Dix-neuvième.
20 <sup>th</sup> , the twentieth.	le Vingtième.
21 <sup>st</sup> , the twenty-first.	le Vingt et unième.
22 <sup>nd</sup> , the twenty-second.	le Vingt-deuxième.
23 <sup>rd</sup> , the twenty-third.	le Vingt-troisième.
24 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-fourth.	le Vingt-quatrième.
25 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-fifth.	le Vingt-cinquième.
26 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-sixth.	le Vingt-sixième.
27 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-seventh.	le Vingt-septième.
28 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-eighth.	le Vingt-huitième.
29 <sup>th</sup> , the twenty-ninth.	le Vingt-neuvième.
30 <sup>th</sup> , the thirtieth.	le Trentième.
31 <sup>st</sup> , the thirty-first.	le Trent et unième.
32 <sup>nd</sup> , the thirty-second, &c.	le Trente-deuxième, and so on, by adding ième, to the substantive numbers, pages 164, 165.

Observe only, that in those ending in *e*, the *e* is left out ; as, *Quatre*, *Quatrième* ; *Douze*, *Douzième* ; and in those ending in *f*, the *f* is changed into *v*, for softness of sound ; as, *Neuf*, *Neuvième* ; *Dix-neuf*, *Dis-neuvième*.

From the above adjectives are also formed the *numeral adverbs* :

1 <sup>stly</sup> , firstly.	Premièrement.
2 <sup>ndly</sup> , secondly.	{ Secondement.
	{ Deuxièmement.
3 <sup>rdly</sup> , thirdly.	Troisièmement.
4 <sup>thly</sup> , fourthly.	Quatrièmement.
5 <sup>thly</sup> , fifthly.	Cinquièmement.
6 <sup>thly</sup> , sixthly.	Sixièmement.

and so on, by adding *ment* to the above adjectives.

---

\* *Second* and *Deuxième* are used indiscriminately, when they are followed by a noun ; as, *Le second*, or *Le deuxième* jour ; *La seconde*, or *La deuxième* semaine ; but after another number, *Deuxième* alone can be used ; so we could not say, *Vingt second* ; *Trente second* ; we must say, *Vingt deuxième* ; *Trente deuxième*, &c.

## CHAPTER I.

## SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE AND NOUN.

1. The use of the article being to convey a determinate signification to substantives or nouns which follow it, must be used before adjectives, the infinitives of some verbs, adverbs prepositions or conjunctions, when substantively used ; as,

*le bon,\* le mauvais, le savoir, le pour, le contre,*  
the good, the bad, the learning, the for, the against.

## EXERCISE.

There are no means to satisfy those that will know the  
il n'y a pas moyens 168 satisfaire 88 74 veulent savoir  
why from the wherefore. Good and bad seem to be blended  
*pourquoi* *pourquoi.* *1 bon* *1 mauvais* sembler mêlé 29  
together through all nature, and sometimes to be confounded with each  
ensemble dans quelquefois confondu 29 l'un avec  
other. White and black are two opposite colours, green hurts the sight  
l'autre. *1 blanc* *1 noir* opposés 29 couleur, *1 vert* blesser vue f.  
less than red. The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool de-  
moins que *1 rouge.* *1 sage*, chercher *1 sagesse* fou mé-  
spiseth understanding. Newton says, that there are seven primitive  
priser raison. dire qu'il y a  
colours, called 1 orange, colour 1 red, 1 yellow, 1 green, 1 blue, 1 indigo,  
29 couleur appelé — rouge,\* jaune, vert, bleu,  
and 1 violet.

2. The article is omitted—1st, When the substantive denotes neither a *species* nor an *individual* nor any part of a thing, i. e. when nothing is determinate on the extent of its signification ; as,

Il est dans un état d'ignorance,  
He is in a state of ignorance.

2dly, Before nouns apostrophized, i. e. addressed to, as to individuals ; as,

Rochers, soyez sensibles à ma douleur,  
Rocks, be sensible of my grief.

3dly, Often also when we make an enumeration ; as,

Le grand feu de New York détruisit maisons, magasins, marchan-  
dises, &c.

The great fire of New York destroyed houses, warehouses, merchan-  
dise, &c.

## EXERCISE.

You are in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust. Corrupted 32 men and  
état doute, 2 crainte, 2 défiance. Corrompu

\* Observe that all adjectives, verbs, prepositions, &c. when substantively used are masculine in French.

of ill lives easily believe that there is no more 2 virtue, 2 probity,  
 mauvaise 184 croire il n'y a pas plus  
 and 2 sincerity in others than in themselves. Charming flowers, through  
 les autres Charmante 23 par  
 you nature is more beautiful. Soldiers! be firm. 2 Citizens, strangers, 2  
 plus belle. Soldats! Citoyens  
 enemies, 2 people, 2 kings, 2 emperors, 2 pity and respect him.\* The  
 empereurs le plaignent et le 4 révérent 54.  
 river carried away 2 houses, flocks, trees, bridges, &c. Generals, offi-  
 rivière emporter — troupeaux ponts Généraux  
 cers, soldiers, all promised that they would resist with great intrepidity.  
 promettre 74 résisteraient intrepidité.

3. The article is omitted, but the preposition (de or d') is used after the words *sorte*, sort; *genre*, kind; *mélange*, mixture; *espèce*, species; or any other of the same signification; as

*L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.*  
 Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities.

## EXERCISE.

There are two kinds of curiosity; the one of interest, which excites us  
 il y a sorte f. intérêt, 74 porter 84  
 to desire to learn what may be useful to us; and the other of pride, which  
 à désirer d'apprendre 84 178 84: l'autre orgueil, 74  
 proceeds from the desire of knowing what others are ignorant of.  
 venir désir savoir 84 les autres ignorer  
 (Old age) is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the  
 vieillesse f. sorte tyran, 74 défend sous mort  
 pleasures of youth. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, complacency,  
 plaisir jeunesse. Politesse mélange complaisance,  
 and circumspection. Praises are a kind of tribute (that is paid) to true  
 louange sorte à tribut qu'on paie 1 vrai  
 merit. There is in goodness a kind of magnet which attracts all men to  
 il y a dans aimant 74 attirer  
 itself. The hieroglyphics of the Egyptians were figures of men, birds,  
 sol. hiéroglyphes Egyptiens oiseaux.  
 animals, and reptiles.  
 animaux.

4. The preposition *to*, translated by *de*.

The preposition *to*, is translated into French by the preposition *de*—1st, Before nouns expressing *consanguinity*, appropriation to a particular *person*, *kindred*, *kinsfolk*, *kinsman*, *kinswoman*; as,

*Le roi d'Espagne, frère de Napoléon premier.*  
 The king of Spain, brother to Napoleon the first.

2d, After the words *road*, *way*, *path*, *alley*; as,

*Nous sommes sur la route de Newark.*  
 We are on the road to Newark.

## EXERCISE.

On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four hundred and seventy-  
 (A) dixhuit (B) février 21 mil (C) (D)

\* See † page 63. † See † page 81. ‡ See \* page 47. || See \* page 103.

(A) On is never represented in French with expressions of time.  
 (B) The preposition of when immediately followed by the name of the month, is generally omitted.

(C) When mentioning the date of the Christian era, we write *mil*, instead of *quatre*.

(D) The conjunction *and* is now omitted in French before cardinal numbers.



eight the duke *of* Clarence, brother *to* king Edward *the* fourth, was  
 drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine. Mr. P. jeweller *to* the queen,  
 has a very prudent wife. The road *to* Croyden is very bad in winter.  
 Go *to* the ferry boat to inquire the road *to* Paterson, and then you  
 will see Mr. Smith, cousin *to* your friend who went to the theatre  
 with Miss Charlotte, sister *to* the director of the bank. The  
 heir to the crown of Portugal is called prince of Brazil.  
 héritier 4 couronne appelé 28

5. *A, an, no*, expressed by *de*. The article *a*, or *an*, or the negative\* *no*, is expressed by the preposition *de*, after a verb negatively used, except the verb *to be*.

Il n'a pas d'ami.

He has not a friend

Vous n'êtes pas un Cicéron.

You are not a Cicero.

## EXERCISE.

He has no sugar. She has no beer. We have no cider. You have  
 no coffee. They have no tea. They have no water. I have had no  
 wine. Thou hast had no china. She has had no saucer. You have  
 had no soup. They had no cloaks. Thou wilt have no hat. He  
 will have no handkerchief. She will have no pencil. We shall have  
 no boy. I should have no waistcoat. Thou wouldst have no watch.  
 garçon. gilet. montre.

6. The sign *un, une*, can be used when the intention is to name one person or thing only, whether the verb is used negatively, or negatively and interrogatively, but then *un, une*, means *one*, not *a* or *an*, and *de* is considered its plural; as,

Je n'ai pas un livre.

I have not a book; i. e. not one single book.

Je n'ai pas de livre.

I have no book; i. e. not any of any kind.

## EXERCISE.

I have no peaches. Thou hast no strawberries. We have had no  
 plates. They have had no cups. I have not a cent. I have no cents.  
 assiettes. tasses. sou. sous.

(c) The article *the* is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *first, second, third, &c.* when they come after the words *book, chapter, section, &c.* or the name of a sovereign, Charles the Second, chapter the sixth.

chapitre six.

\* *No*, between a verb and a substantive is translated like *not any*.

Have we no cook? <sup>cuisinier?</sup> Have we not a cook? <sup>cuisinier?</sup> I can not conceive <sup>Je ne puis pas concevoir</sup>  
 why this gentleman feeds his horse himself. <sup>pourquoi</sup> <sup>fait paître</sup> <sup>lui même.</sup> <sup>domestique</sup> Has he no servant  
 to do that work for him? <sup>170</sup> <sup>besogne</sup> No, sir; he can not keep a servant; he <sup>garder</sup>  
 has no property, and his lady, who is considered a beauty, <sup>bien</sup> <sup>épouse,</sup> <sup>considérée</sup> <sup>depenser</sup> spends  
 perhaps too much on her daughters, who are no beauties. <sup>peut-être</sup> <sup>ne sont pas des beautés.</sup>

7. *Some, any*, expressed by *de*, not by *du, de la, des*. The partitive sign, *some, any*, after a verb used negatively is expressed by the preposition *de* alone, because the substantive is used in an indeterminate sense; as,

This year they will not have any peaches.  
 Cette année ils n'auront pas de pêches.

## EXERCISE.

Never give her<sup>57</sup> any<sup>7</sup> advice, for you see (s) she does not shew  
 Ne jamais donnez <sup>†</sup> conseil car voir montrer  
 any<sup>7</sup> talent, after all the pains (s) you have taken with her.<sup>58</sup> I will  
 toutes peines prises  
 not drink any<sup>7</sup> water, nor eat any<sup>7</sup> fruit. Your brother bought a  
 boire ni ne manger acheter  
 fine horse yesterday, but he ought to remember (s) he will not always  
 hier <sup>184</sup> doit se rappeler n'aura toujours  
 have money. I went last Saturday to market, but could not get  
 aller dernier Samedi<sup>182</sup> marché Je ne pas trouver  
 any<sup>7</sup> gooseberries. I have not had any oysters yet.<sup>183</sup>  
 groseilles. eu huitres encore.

8. *Some, any*, expressed by *du, de la, des*, not by *de*. The partitive signs, *some, any*, resume their proper form *du, de la, des*, after a negative verb;

1st. When the verb is used negatively and interrogatively; because then the substantive means a certain portion; † as,

N'avez vous pas des livres? Have you no books

2dly. When the noun is qualified by an adjective placed after the substantive; as,

Je ne vous ferai pas des reproches frivoles.  
 I shall not make you frivolous reproaches.

3dly. When the noun is determined by any words following it; as,

Je ne vous donnerai pas des pêches de cet arbre.  
 I will not give you any peaches of that tree.

\* When the substance is restrained to a little, a few, some is expressed by *quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an unlimited number or quantity.

† See (i) page 63

‡ See \* page 49.

4thly. When there are in the sentence words which limit the effect of the negation ; as,

Les Turcs ne portent pas tous des turbans.  
Turks do not all wear turbans.

## EXERCISE.

Have we not any<sup>8</sup> books? Have they not any ribands? Have  
Avoir 133 190 ! Avoir 133 190 rubans ?  
we convenient<sup>32</sup> houses? Had they had extensive<sup>32</sup> fields\*? Had  
commode \* 133 190 spacieux champs? Avoir  
you not had fashionable gowns? I shall not make you frivolous<sup>32</sup>  
133 190 à-la-mode robes? frivoles  
reproaches. I will not send spoiled<sup>32</sup> oranges. I informed him<sup>54</sup>  
\* reproches. † envoyer gâtés informai  
that I would† not send him any fruit of my garden. I beg her not  
(bb.n.b.) envoyer † prier 54 190  
to play tunes of your composition. He desires us not to tell  
(n.b.) jouer \* airs composition. prier 54 raconter  
stories without explaining the personages mentioned in them,  
\*histoires lai: expliquer personages qui y sont mentionnés 55  
and not bring him any books contrary to \*good morals, for he  
190(n.b.) apporter † 8 contraires mœurs, car  
knows that men have not all sentiments calculated to appreciate  
(bb.n.b.) propre à apprécier  
what they read.  
84 lisent.

9. The partitive sign *some* is understood (i. e. not expressed) in french, after the preposition *de*, whatever be the english preposition which *de* represents ;

Il nous donna du cidre au lieu de vin ;

He gives us some cider instead of wine ;

and the english prepositions *at*, *about*, *of*, *from*, *by*, *with*, are translated by *de* alone, without the article, when they follow an adjective or a participle ; as,

Plein de charmes.

Estimé de tout.

Full of charms.

Esteemed by all.

## EXERCISE.

Human life is full of disappointments. (To die) for one's country  
Humaine vie plein 9 revers. Mourir son pays  
is a death full of charms. A noble but confused thought is a diamond  
mort charme. 32pensée diamant  
covered with dust. If fortune has blessed you with her gifts, if  
couvert - 9 poussière. favorise 55 9 don  
besides you are endowed with wit and judgment, be not puffed up  
outre - cela doué esprit 9jugement, ne vous enfiez pas  
with pride, and do not contemn others. No one is fit for friendship;  
orgueil, mépriser les autres. On n'est pas propre à l'amitié

\* See 7th Rule, page 48.

† See note (s) page 76.

‡ See (i) page 63

§ The adjectives or participles which signify plenty or scarcity, are generally followed in french by *de* without any article ;

Je suis content de vous. I am satisfied with you.

who is not endowed with virtue. Whoever attacks the sacred  
 quand on 190 doué vertu. Quiconque attaque sacré  
 person of a king, is guilty of high treason. The ladies of the  
 32personne f. roi, coupable hauts<sup>32</sup> trahison. f. —  
 present day buy mousseline de laine instead of silk, but they  
 — aujourd'hui acheter \*mousseline de laine soie,  
 (cannot use) ink instead of paint. These amiable children, after  
 ne peuvent se servir d'encre fard.  
 a long walk, have returned and brought us pears, instead of  
 longue promenade, † revenir apporter 54 poires,  
 apples.  
 pommes.

10. The suppression of the partitive sign does not take place when the above prepositions are used in their proper form or after any other preposition ; as,

*En hiver on couvre les pommes de terre avec de la paille.*  
 In winter people cover potatoes with some straw.

## EXERCISE.

See that lady, she has trimmed her dress with \*green<sup>32</sup> ribbon.  
 Voyez orné robe vert ruban.  
 The minister is really satisfied with men whom the people hate. The  
 ministre vraiment satisfait \* see p.106.  
 Egyptian ladies cover 15their face with \*veils. The English  
 Égyptiennes 39 se couvrent le visage voiles  
 manufacture their superfine cloths<sup>32</sup> with \* Spanish<sup>27</sup> wool.<sup>32</sup>  
 manufacturer drap laine.

## NUMERAL ARTICLE.

*A, AN; UN, UNE.*

11. *A, an* denoting individuality, i. e. *one* only of the substance spoken of, is expressed in french by the number *un*, *une*, and no distinction is made between *a* and *one* ; as,

<i>A</i> or <i>one</i> bottle	<i>une</i> bouteille.
<i>A</i> or <i>one</i> dozen.	<i>une</i> douzaine.
<i>A</i> or <i>one</i> pound.	<i>une</i> livre.
<i>A</i> or <i>one</i> hundred.	<i>un</i> cent.(f)

## EXERCISE.

*A glass, a bottle, a pound, a day, a year.*  
 verre, m. bouteille, f. livre, f. jour, m. an, m.

12. But *a, an* before the names of measures, weight, number and periods of time, used in a collective sense, i. e. not denoting individuality, is not expressed by *un, une*, it is expressed by *le, la* ; as,

\* See Rule 9 N.B. page 51.

† See N. B., page 118.

(f) Any number prefixed to a noun may be considered as an article, since, like the article, it serves to determine the acceptation of that noun ; as *Deux* hommes, two men ; *Trois* femmes ; *three* women ; *Quatre* livres, four books ; *Six* bouteilles, six bottles, &c.

Wine sells at six shillings a bottle; Le vin se vend six shélins la bou-  
 i. e. six shilling per bottle. teille ; not, une bouteille.  
 Butter twenty pence a pound; Le beurre vingt sous la livre;  
 i. e. per pound. not, une livre.  
 Eggs a shilling a dozen; Les œufs un shelin la douzaine;  
 i. e. one shilling per dozen. not, une douzaine.  
 Oranges a guinea a hundred; Les Oranges une guinée le cent;  
 i. e. one guinea per hundred. not, une guinée un cent.  
 I go to town once a day; Je vais à la ville une fois le jour,  
 i. e. each day, or daily. or par jour; not, un jour.  
 Three times a week, or weekly. Trois fois la semaine, or par sem.

By these words *a bottle, a pound, a dozen, a hundred*, I do not mean that *one single* or individual bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred sells at that price; but *each* bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred; nor that I go to town *one single* day or week; but *each* day, *each* week.

## EXERCISE.

I must<sup>181</sup> buy\* a pound of plums. (How much) do they  
 Il faut que j'achette<sup>11</sup> prune. Combien — on<sup>183</sup>  
 sell them a pound? They<sup>90</sup> sell<sup>125</sup> them two pence a dozen.  
 vend les<sup>54</sup> ! On n.s. vendre les<sup>54</sup> deux sou douzaine. f.  
 Beer sells<sup>125</sup> at four pence a pint, wine five shillings a bottle,  
 Bière f. se vendre — quatre sou pinte, f. vin m. cinq shelin  
 brandy six pence a glass, and rum five shillings a quart. I go<sup>125</sup>  
 eau-de-vie rum. m. quart. f. aller  
 to school once a day. I take<sup>125</sup> lessons three times a week.  
 école une fois prendre leçon fois semaine. f.  
 We have (holidays) only once a year.  
 n'avons vacances qu't une fois année.

## DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE

*THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, CE, CET, CETTE, CES.*

13. The demonstrative words, *ce, cet, cette, ces* are used in the same instances as the corresponding signs are in english; they serve to point out the objects we name, and follow the same rule as *le, la, les*; ex.

I like <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> wine,	J'aime <i>ce</i> vin,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> beer,	<i>cette</i> bière,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> money,	<i>cel</i> argent,
<i>these</i> or <i>those</i> fruits.	<i>ces</i> fruits.

*N. B.* *ce, cet, cette, ces* do not express that local distinction which is implied in the words *this, these; that, those*; so, if you wish to make the same distinction in french, you must add to the noun, *ci* to denote the nearest object, and *là* to denote the remotest; as,

\* See 5th remark, page 91.

† The adverb *Only* may be expressed two ways, either by *Seulement* after the verb, or by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Que* after it; so, *Nous avons vacances seulement une fois*, or *Nous n'avons vacances qu'une fois*, &c.

I prefer *this* wine to that,  
*this* beer to that.\*  
 I prefer *that* wine to this,  
*that* beer to this,\*  
*this* money to that,  
*those* fruits to these.

Je préfère *ce* vin-ci à celui-là.  
*cette* bière-ci à celle-là.  
 Je préfère *ce* vin-là à celui-ci.  
*cette* bière-là à celle-ci.  
*cet* argent-ci à celui-là.  
*ces* fruits-là à ceux-ci.

## EXERCISE.

This man, this woman, these children. That horse, that  
 homme, femme, enfant. cheval,  
 house, these trees. This field, that grass, these people, those  
 maison, f. arbre. champ, m. herbe, f. gens,  
 flocks. This man is taller than that. 88 That woman is  
 troupeau. grand41 celui-là. n.s.  
 handsomer than this.88 These children play better than those.88  
 belle41 n.s. jouer125 † n.s.  
 Those trees are larger than these.88 This field is better than that.88  
 125 gro41 n.s. † n.s.

## POSSESSIVE ARTICLE.

MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR.

MON, MA, MES; TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES; NOTRE, &c.

14. These words follow the same rule as the article *le, la, les*; they agree in gender and number with the noun which follows them; so,

*Her* father, is, *son* père. †His or her son, *son* fils.  
*His* mother, *sa* mère. His or her daughter, *sa* fille.

## EXERCISE.

My book, my pen, my papers. His coach, his chaise, his  
 livre, m. plume, f. papier. carrosse, m. chaise, f.  
 horses; Her coach, her chaise, her horses. Our friends, your  
 chevaux; ami,  
 children, their relations.  
 enfant, parent.

15. The possessive article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their* is expressed by the definite *le, la, les*, when prefixed to the name of any part of the body, after a verb denoting a natural action of the body; as,

I open <i>my</i>	} mouth.	J' ouvre	} <i>la</i> bouche;
Thou openest <i>thy</i>		Tu ouvres	
He opens <i>his</i>		Il ouvre	

\* *This, that, these, those*, are also pronouns; see note (p.)

† See note (x) page 56.

‡ See § page 45.

¶ When I say, *J'ouvre la bouche*, I open *the* mouth; the hearer understands that it is of my own mouth that I am speaking, for if it was the mouth of another being, I should name that being. Again, *Je me suis coupé le doigt*, corresponds with the english, I have cut *myself* in the finger; and *J'ai mal au doigt*, with, I have a pain in *the* finger. Here also the possession being sufficiently determined by the pronoun *me*, or by the verb *J'ai*, any other possessive expression would be superfluous; however, these are idioms which practice alone can render familiar.

Or when the verb denotes an action done upon the body ; as,

I have cut my	} finger.	Je me suis	} coupé le doigt.
Thou hast cut thy		Tu t'es	
He has cut his		Il s'est*	

Never say ; J'ai coupé mon doigt ; Tu as coupé ton doigt ; Il a coupé son doigt, &c.

*N. B.* Observe that in speaking of an action done upon the body, the person on whom the action is done must be denoted by a personal pronoun ; so, if the verb is not reflective, i. e. if the agent does not act upon itself, as it does above, one of the pronouns *me, nous, te, vous, lui, leur*, agreeably to number and person, must be added to the verb ; as,

He has cut	{ my thy his or her }	} finger.	Il m'	{ a coupé le doigt.
			Il t'	
			Il lui	
He has cut	{ our your their }	} fingers.	Il nous	{ a coupé les doigts.
			Il vous	
			Il leur	

Never say ; Il a coupé mon doigt ; Il a coupé ton doigt ; Il a coupé son doigt, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Raise your arm.	Move your leg.	Advance your foot.	She
Lever† bras, m.	Remuer† jambe, f.	Avancer† pied, m.	

shuts<sup>125</sup> her eyes, and opens her mouth ; I have<sup>237</sup> hurt my arm. You fermer yeux, ouvrir<sup>125</sup> bouche ; f. † blessé

have<sup>237</sup> cut your hand. He has<sup>237</sup> broken his leg. She has<sup>237</sup> put † coupé main, f. † rompu † —

her foot (out of joint.) You have hurt my arm. He has cut my hand. démis † blessé † coupé

You have put her foot (out of joint.) The carriage ran<sup>136</sup> over his † — démis voiture f. a passé par-dessus †

body, and broke<sup>136</sup> his leg. a rompu †

16. If in instances similar to the above, i. e. before the names of the parts of the body, the possessive words *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their* come with the verbs, To have a pain, *Avoir mal* ; To hurt, *se Faire mal* ; To be cold, *Avoir froid* ; To be warm, *Avoir chaud* ; they are expressed by *au, à la, aux* ; as,

I have a pain in my	} finger.	J'ai	} mal au doigt ;
Thou hast a pain in thy		Tu as	
He has a pain in his		Il a	

\* See 237 rule.

† Second person of the imperative.

‡ These sentiments must be expressed as if the words were construed in this manner : I to myself have<sup>237</sup> hurt the arm. You to yourself have<sup>237</sup> cut the hand. He — me suis blessé — vous êtes coupé

to himself has<sup>237</sup> broken the leg. She to herself has<sup>237</sup> disjoined the foot. You to — s' est rompu — s' est démis

me have hurt the arm. He to me has cut the hand. You to her have disjoined the m' avez blessé — m' a coupé — lui avez démis

foot. The carriage to him has run<sup>136</sup> over the body, and to him has broken the leg. voiture f.— lui a passé par-dessus — lui a rompu

<i>I have hurt my</i>	} hand.	<i>Je me suis</i>	} fait mal à la main;
<i>Thou hast hurt thy</i>		<i>Tu t'es</i>	
<i>He has hurt his</i>		<i>Il s'est</i>	
<i>My feet are</i>	} cold.	<i>J'ai</i>	} froid aux pieds;
<i>Thy feet are</i>		<i>Tu as*</i>	
<i>His or her feet are*</i>		<i>Il or elle a</i>	

## EXERCISE.

I have a pain in my head. My mother has a pain in her side.  
 24 mal + tête. f. 24 mal côté. m.  
 My father has got the gout in his feet. Have<sup>237</sup> you not hurt your  
 270 goutte f. † Ne vous êtes-vous pas fait mal +  
 leg? No; but I have<sup>237</sup> hurt my knee. In the last<sup>29</sup> battle, my  
 jambe f. † 191; me suis fait mal † genou m. Dans dernier bataille, f.  
 brother was wounded in his arm, and I was wounded in the shoulder.  
 fut blessé † fus blessé † épaule.  
 My hands are<sup>239</sup> warm, but my feet are<sup>239</sup> very cold.  
 avoir chaud, † avoir grand froid.

17. *Its* and *their* neuter, are also expressed by *le, la, les*, and the pronoun *en* is prefixed to the verb, when the noun to which they are prefixed is not governed by the same verb as the noun to which they refer; as,

That tree is fine, but *its* fruit is good for nothing.

Cet arbre est beau, mais *le* fruit n'*en* vaut rien; i. e. the fruit of it.

But they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur*, if the nouns are governed by the same verb; as,

I like that tree, *its* shape and *its* leaves.

J'aime cet arbre, *sa* forme et *ses* feuilles.

## EXERCISE.

That water is good,<sup>29</sup> I know<sup>125</sup> *its* qualities (turn, the qualities  
 eau f. bon, (g) connaître qualités,  
*of it*), and I have experienced *its* effects, (i. e. the effects *of it*.) To<sup>170</sup>  
 en, 54 j'ai éprouvé effet, en 55. Pour  
 paint the human heart (it is necessary) to know all *its* springs, (i. e.  
 peindre humain<sup>32</sup> cœur m. il faut 172 — connaître tous ressort,  
 the springs *of it*.) London astonishes strangers; They admire *its*  
 en 54 Londres étonner<sup>125</sup> étranger; admirer<sup>125</sup>  
 extent, and *its* riches, i. e. (*of it*.)  
 étendue, richesse, f. en 54.

18. The possessive *mon, ma, mes* must be prefixed to names of kindred and friendship, when we call or answer any one by those names; as,

Come here, brother.

Venez ici, *mon* frère.

I can not, sister.

Je ne saurais, *ma* sœur.

\* See 239 rule.

† Say; At the head; at the side; at the feet; at the leg; at the knee; at the arm; at the shoulder. N. B. *at the* is expressed in the same manner as *to the*.

‡ Turn, have warmth at the hands, but I have great cold at the feet.



## EXERCISE.

Mother, you are<sup>92</sup> wanted. I am coming, child. Daughter,  
 , on vous demande. J' — y vais,<sup>135</sup> enfant. fille,  
 are you ready? Yes, father. Come, friends, (let us be) merry.  
 prêt<sup>29</sup>? Oui, Allons, ami, — — soyons gai.<sup>9</sup>

19. The article is left out in french, when expressed in english, at the title page, or before any of the parts of a book; as,

A french grammar. Grammaire française.  
 The preface. The first part. Préface. Première partie.

## EXERCISE.

A treatise upon the immortality of the soul. An introduction to  
 traité sur immortalité âme. introduction  
 the french<sup>32</sup> language. The preface. The first<sup>29</sup> part. The end.  
 français<sup>29</sup> langue. f. préface. premier partie. f. fin.

20. The article *a* *an* which comes after *what*, is omitted in french; as,

What *a* man? Quel homme! not quel *un* homme!  
 What *a* woman! Quelle femme! — quelle *une* femme!

## EXERCISE.

What<sup>82</sup> a pretty dog! What a funny head he has! What  
 Quel joli<sup>33</sup> chien! 82 drôle de tête f. 82  
 a large<sup>33</sup> house! What a cold<sup>32</sup> day! What a beautiful woman!  
 grand<sup>29</sup> maison! f. 82 froid jour! m. 82 belle<sup>33</sup> femme!  
 2 /

21. The article *a*, *an* coming before *hundred* or *thousand*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun, is not expressed in french, the words *cent* and *mille* having the property of an article\*; as,

I have won *a* thousand guineas; J'ai gagné *mille* guinées;  
 Will you have *a* hundred of them? En voulez-vous *cent*? not, *un* cent.

## EXERCISE.

Can<sup>125</sup> you lend me a thousand pounds? I can<sup>125</sup> lend  
 Pouvoir (kk) prêter 54 mille livres sterling! pouvoir prêter  
 you<sup>54</sup> a hundred, but I can not<sup>190</sup> lend you<sup>54</sup> a thousand. We  
 vous en 70 cent, pouvoir<sup>125</sup> vous en 70 mille.  
 have an army of a hundred thousand men. They have a hundred  
 125 armée f. homme. 125  
 field<sup>25</sup> pieces.  
 pièces de campagne.

22. No article is used in french, before a noun added to illustrate or explain another noun; and the article which is prefixed to such nouns in english, must be omitted in french; as,

Zaira *a* tragedy of Voltaire. Zaire tragédie de Voltaire.  
 Paris the capital of France. Paris capitale de la France.  
 Never, Zaire *une* tragédie; nor Paris *la* capitale, &c.

\* See note (f) page 172.

## EXERCISE.

Neptune the god of the sea. Telemachus an epic poem  
                                   dieu                                  mer.                                  Télémaque                                  épique poëme.  
 Madrid the capital city of Spain. My brother is a citizen of  
                                   capitale ville                                  Espagne.                                  citoyen  
 Geneva, a small republic between France and Switzerland. He is a  
                                   Genève,                                  république entre                                  f.                                  Suisse. f  
 counsel and a member of the great council.  
                                   avocat                                  membre                                  grand conseil. m.

23. But if we left out the first noun, we should say ,

J'ai vu une tragédie de Voltaire. J'ai vu la capitale de la France.

The article *a, an* is also omitted in french after some neuter verbs, such as *Etre*, to be ; *Dévenir*, to become ; *se Faire*, to turn ; *Passer pour*, to be reckoned, to pass for ; the noun which follows these verbs being considered as an adjective which serves to illustrate their nominative ; as,

Is he a Frenchman ? Est-il Français ?  
 He passes for a German. Il passe pour Allemand.  
 His father is a merchant. Son père est négociant; not, un négoc.

But the article must be expressed, if the noun is attended by an adjective or by a relative pronoun, for it then returns into the class of substantives ;

His father is a wealthy merchant. Son père est un riche négociant.

## EXERCISE.

Are you a Frenchman ? No ; I am a Spaniard. He passes  
                                   133 Français ? 191 ; 125 Espagnol. passer  
 for a Portuguese. His father was a physician. He was a jew, and he  
                                   pour Portugais. était médecin. juif,  
 is turned a christian.  
                                   s'est fait chrétien.

24. No article is used in french, 1st, before a noun which, being joined to a verb, forms only one idea with that verb ; as, *Avoir peur*, to fear, to be afraid ; *Avoir mal*, to ache, to have a pain ; *Avoir raison*, to be right, to be in the right, &c.

2dly. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the preposition antecedent : such as *avec ardeur*, for *ardement*, with eagerness ; *sans considération*, without consideration : and when the substantive is not particularised.

3dly. Before the cardinal numbers, one, two, three, four, five, six.\*

Lend me twenty pounds I have six oranges.  
 Prêtez-moi vingt livres. J'ai six oranges.

\* The article must be used before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined have a fixed number ; such as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons ; *les neuf muses*, the nine muses ; and also if it be specified : as, *les deux lettres que j'ai écrites*, the two letters which I have written ; *le dix de Janvier*, the tenth of January

## EXERCISE.

I am<sup>239</sup> in the right. She is<sup>239</sup> in the wrong. I have a pain  
avoir — raison. avoir — tort. avoir mal  
in my head. He made<sup>125</sup> me a sign. He has done me an injury.  
16 faire 54 signe. faire 55 tort.  
Those who speak *without* reflection are exposed to many errors. We  
ceux parler sans reflexion exposés bien erreur.  
often do *by* self-love what we think we do *through* (good nature.)  
184 faire amour-propre ce que croire (nn) par bienveillance.  
Bibliographers arrange books in *five* principal classes; divinity, juris-  
phe ger livre en 32 théologie  
prudence, history, polite letters, and arts. The mouth of the Danube  
histoire belle lettres f. embouchure m.  
has *five* large canals in the (Euxine sea.) The temple of Solomon was  
grand Pont Euxin. m.  
begun *four hundred* and *eighty* years after the departure of the Israel-  
commence quatre-vingts départ  
ites from Egypt. I have *pity* (on the) poor. —  
Egypte. pitié des pauvre pl.

25. Sometimes *two nouns* come together, having a dependence on each other, and forming a kind of complex idea; as,  
John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.

The English have *two ways* of using these *nouns*; they say,

1. The horse of John. The sword of the prince. The gown of the lady. A gown of silk
2. John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.

The French, on the contrary, have only *one* of these modes of placing *two nouns* together; they, as in the 1st instance, always place *first* the noun which is the *subject* of discourse, with *du, de la, des, de, or à* before the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

John's horse. Le cheval *de* Jean; i. e. the horse of John.  
The prince's sword. L'épée *du* prince; the sword of the prince.  
The lady's gown. La robe *de la* dame; the gown of the lady.  
A silk gown. Une robe *de* soie; a gown of silk.

## EXERCISE.

Which<sup>80</sup> do you admire<sup>125</sup> most, Cato's perseverance, or  
laquelle — 133 admirer le plus, Caton persévérance, f.  
Cæsar's intrepidity? Will you have any London porter? No; I  
Césa intrépidité? — 174 Londres porter? m. 191;  
will drink a glass of Lisbon wine. I have lost my gold watch. I had  
boire<sup>125</sup> verre m. Lisbonne vin. perdu or montre f. avais  
it<sup>54</sup> at the park gate. I am afraid<sup>125</sup> I have left it<sup>55</sup> (in the)  
l' parc m. porte f. — craindre (nn) de 155 avoir laissée au  
(coffee room.) Put this gentleman's horse into my brother's stable.  
café m. Mettre\* monsieur cheval dans écurie.  
Have you seen my mother's silk gown, and my sister's new† bonnet?  
vu soie robe, f. nouveau m.?  
It<sup>65</sup> is a present from the brother of her children's guardian. After  
C' présent m. de tuteur m.  
her husband's death, all his father's friends forsook<sup>137</sup> her.  
mari mort, f. tous ami abandonner<sup>125</sup> l'<sup>54</sup>.

\* Second person imperative.

† Put this adjective before the noun.

26. Sometimes however the order of the nouns could not be changed in the above manner in english, without changing also the meaning; for *ex.* these expressions, a *wine glass*, a *tea spoon*, could not be turned into a *glass* of wine, a *spoon* of tea; yet the nouns require this order in french: instead of changing the order of the words to alter the idea, as the English do, the French change the preposition, and instead of *de*, they use *à*; so,

A glass of wine, is, Un verre *de* vin; and

A wine glass, is, Un verre *à* vin; i. e. a glass used for wine.\*

N. B. When the nouns are compounded of the words *fair*, *foire*; market, *marché*, and in speaking of messes, and the ingredients which they are made of, the *two nouns* are connected by *au*, *à la*, *aux*; as,

The *hay* market. Le marché *au* foin; i. e. the market *for* hay.

Some *cream* tarts. Des tartes *à la* crème; tarts made *with* cream.

#### EXERCISE.

Bring me a wine glass, and a tea spoon. Take the coffee  
Apportez moi<sup>156</sup> vint verre, m. thé cuiller. f. Porter café  
cups into the dining room. He has broken the water pot. Where  
tasse dans diner chambre. f. cassé eau pot. m. Où  
is my sister's work bag? It<sup>162</sup> is in my mother's bed room. Have  
ouvrage sac! m. Il dans coucher chambre. f.  
you ever seen a steam mill? No; but I have seen several water  
jamais vu vapeur moulin? m. 191; mais plusieurs eau  
mills and many wind mills. Will<sup>125</sup> you come to the horse  
moulin vent moulin. Vouloir venir chevaux  
fair? I want to go to the poultry market. Let us go through the  
foire f. † J'ai besoin d'aller volaille f. marché. m. — — aller; par  
hay market.  
foin.

27. Sometimes the name of a *country* is changed in english into an adjective, and prefixed to the name of its production; as, spanish wine, french brandy, english beer, dutch cheese, &c.; that adjective must be expressed by the substantive in french, and placed *after* the name of the production, connected by the preposition *de*; as,

Spanish wine. Vin *d'*Espagne; i. e. wine *of* Spain.

French brandy. Eau-de-vie *de* France; i. e. brandy *of* France.

\* This rule is not without some exceptions, for we say, Un pot de chambre, a chamber pot; Une fille de chambre, a chamber maid; Un bonnet de nuit, a night cap; Un mouchoir de poche, a pocket handkerchief; Un cheval de carrosse, a coach horse; Un cochon de lait, a suckling pig, &c. these few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these compound names are expressed by a single word in french; as, Coachman, Cocher; Footman, Laquais; Countinghouse, Comptoir; Coachhouse, Remise. These expressions are found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

† When I say to a person, bring me a *wine glass*, it is evident that it is the *glass* I want, not the wine, so I ought to mention the *glass* first.

‡ First person imperative.

## EXERCISE.

Have you got any french brandy? No; but I have good  
 123 270 France eau-de-vie? 191; bon  
 spanish wine. Do you like 125 english beer? No; I do 70 not;  
 Espagne vin. m. — 133 aimer \* Angleterre bière f. 191; Je ne l'aime pas;  
 I prefer 125 dutch beer or french cider. Will 125 you have english  
 J'aimerais mieux Hollande France cidre. m. Vouloir — 174 Angleterre  
 cheese, or swiss cheese?  
 fromage, m. Suisse l.

28. Before the name of a *country*, after a noun denoting dignity or authority, such as emperor, king, prince, &c. *of* is expressed by *de*; as,

The emperor *of* Russia. L'empereur *de* Russie.  
 The parliament *of* England. Le parlement *d'*Angleterre.

After any other noun, *of* is expressed by *du*, *de la*, *des*; as,  
 The south *of* France. Le sud *de la* France.  
 The north *of* England. Le nord *de l'*Angleterre.

## EXERCISE.

The king of Congo. The queen of Angola. The stadtholder  
 roi reine stathouder  
 of Holland. The cortes of Spain. The petty states of Italy. The  
 Holland. cortes plur. Espagne. petits état Italie.  
 air of France is more healthful than that 88 of Italy. The soil of  
 air m. f. plus salubre celui sol m.  
 Spain and Portugal would be 125 very fertile, if it was well cultivated.  
 m. — être très fertile, s'il était bien cultivé.  
 The south of England is warmer than the north of France.\*  
 sud m. chaud 41 nord m.

\* The gender of nouns will no longer be marked in these exercises with the initial letters *m. f.*; the learner must now find out the gender by the rules given page 33 and following, according to the termination of the noun. But observe that it is by the *sound* of the last syllable of the word, not by the spelling that we know the gender of the noun. Now suppose you want to find out the gender of these twelve nouns, *France, Pays, Nation, Besoin, Agrément, délice, Vie, Secours, Pêche, Abricot, Fruit, Gibier*, which you will find in the beginning of the following exercise. 1st. *France*; this noun ends in *e mute*; see page 35 a general rule for the mute termination, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Pays*; see either the termination 1 page 33; or s page 35, and you will find that these terminations are both *masc.* *Nation*; look for *on*, page 34; you will find that nouns of this termination, a few excepted, are all *fem.* *Besoin*; look for the termination *oir*, page 34, and you will find it to be *masc.* *Agrément*; look for *ent*, page 34, you will find that nouns of this termination are all, but one, *masc.* *Délice*; look for the termination *ce*, page 36, you will find *délice, masc.*, being an exception to the general rule, which is *fem.* *Vie*; see page 35, the general rule for common names ending in *e mute*, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Secours*; look for *our*, page 35, and you will find it to be a *masc.* termination. *Pêche*; look for *ce*, page 37; you will not find that word in the exceptions, which are *masc.* then you conclude that it is included in the general rule, which is of the contrary gender. *Abricot*; look for *o* or *ot*, page 34; you will find that nouns of that termination are all *masc.* *Fruit*; look for *i*, page 33, a *masculine* termination. *Gibier*; look for *er*, page 34; you will find it to be a *masc.* termination; and so on for any other noun the gender of which you want to know. But impress your mind with the general rule, and read often the exception, that by such frequent readings you may retain the most useful words contained in it; for you must not expect to retain them all at once. The advantage of these rules must appear obvious. By making the gender at the end of the noun, or by referring to the dictionary for it, you learn only the gender of one word, whilst by referring to these rules, you learn the gender of a whole set of words.

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

This recapitulatory exercise contains likewise the ten first rules of the introduction, beginning page 44, and following.

I come from France and Italy. I have been at Paris, Bordeaux,  
venir<sup>125</sup> Italie. à <sup>204</sup>  
Lyons, Geneva, Florence, Leghorn, Naples and Rome. How do  
Lyon, Genève, Livourne, Comment —  
you like<sup>268</sup> France and Italy? I like<sup>126</sup> them both<sup>122</sup> (very  
133 trouver I aimer les<sup>54</sup> l'une et l'autre beau-  
much<sup>183</sup>), but I would<sup>125</sup> rather live in France than in Italy.  
coup n.s., aimer mieux (kk) vivre qu'  
France is certainly a most beautiful country. It<sup>62</sup> has within itself  
certainement très beau <sup>230</sup> Elle en elle-même  
every thing that can<sup>125</sup> minister to the wants, comforts and delights  
tout ce qui pouvoir servir (kk) besoin, agrément délice  
of life. France produces<sup>125</sup>, almost without the assistance of art,  
vie. produire presque sans secours art,  
all<sup>129</sup> sorts of delicious fruit; pears, apples, grapes, peaches, apricots,  
tout sorte délicieux<sup>33</sup> fruit; poire, pomme, raisin, pêche, abricot,  
plums, cherries, figs, olives, a (great deal) more corn, wine and oil  
prune, cerise, figue, — beaucoup plus blé vin 'huile  
than the inhabitants can<sup>125</sup> consume; and the country abounds<sup>125</sup>  
que habitant 47pouvoir consommer; pays abonder  
with game, 204poultry, and 204cattle. The population of France,  
en gibier, volaille, bétail.  
(considering 17its extent) is immense. They<sup>90</sup> reckon in France  
si on en considère l'étendue On n.s. compter<sup>135</sup>  
twenty-five millions of souls. France is undoubtedly the most  
vingt cinq âme 135 sans contredit plus  
powerful nation in<sup>49</sup> Europe. It<sup>62</sup> alone has withstood the efforts of  
puissant<sup>29</sup> de l' Elle seule résisté <sup>202</sup> aux  
Russia, Prussia, Germany, England, Holland, Spain, and Sardinia,  
Russie, Prusse, Allemagne, Angleterre, Hollande, Espagne, Sardaigne,  
that wanted to<sup>172</sup> subdue it; but after twenty years of uninterrupted<sup>32</sup>  
74 voulaient — subjuguier la<sup>54</sup>; vingt an continue<sup>29</sup>  
victories, that brave and warlike<sup>32</sup> nation was (at last) overcome by  
victoire, 13 32 guerrier<sup>29</sup> fut enfin accablé<sup>156</sup> par  
all<sup>129</sup> those powers combined,<sup>29</sup> and compelled to submit to the  
tout puissance combiné, n.s. forcé<sup>239</sup> de se soumettre  
greatest<sup>29</sup> humiliation to which men can<sup>50</sup> be condemned, that<sup>88</sup>  
plus grand 76 puissent être condamné<sup>156</sup>, celle  
of obeying<sup>202</sup> beings whom they despise.<sup>125</sup> Now that I have a  
154 obéir à être 74 mépriser. A présent que un

\* The recapitulatory exercise at the end of each part of speech, is intended to try how far the learner understands the rules on which he has been practising on that part of speech. An infallible way to ascertain it, is to induce him to mark under every word on that part of speech the rule by which he makes use of such word; for instance, in the above exercise on the article and the noun, to make him mark under every noun, the rule by which, or at least to make him give a reason why he uses such and such an article, and so on with the other parts of speech; for unless he can do this, it is evident that he does not understand that part of speech, that he has no foundation to build upon, and he must read the rules over again, till he is able to do it.

† Do not put any article after en.

little time to myself, I am going to<sup>172</sup> travel. I (am fond) of<sup>169</sup>  
 peu temps à moi, 155 aller — voyager. aimer<sup>125</sup> à  
 travelling. In travelling one sees (so many) new\* things, and  
 voyager<sup>154</sup>. En voyageant on<sup>90</sup> voit<sup>125</sup> tant nouvelle<sup>29</sup> chose,  
 every new\* object furnishes some new idea to the mind. In a few  
 chaque nouvel objet fournir<sup>125</sup> † nouvelle idée esprit. Dans — peu  
 days I will go to France, and after spending some time with my  
 jour — aller , après avoir passé † avec  
 friends at Paris, I will go to Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, where I  
 ami à — 125 Suisse, 204 , 204 , où  
 will embark<sup>125</sup> for America. I long to see that country of liberty  
 — m'embarquer pour Amérique. Il me tarde de voir 13 230 liberté  
 and independence, where rational<sup>32</sup> beings may<sup>125</sup> communicate  
 indépendance, où raisonnable<sup>29</sup> être pouvoir communiquer.  
 their ideas to their (fellow beings) without fearing<sup>154</sup> the holy<sup>29</sup>  
 idée semblable sans craindre saint\*  
 political<sup>32</sup> or religious inquisition. After having<sup>154</sup> visited the prin-  
 politique ou religieuse<sup>32</sup> avoir visité  
 cipal<sup>29</sup> cities of the wise republic of the immortal Washington, I will  
 \* ville sage\* république immortel\* , —  
 go to Mexico, Chili, and Peru. I want to see if the tree of liber-  
 aller<sup>125</sup> Mexique, , Pérou. ai envie de voir si arbre  
 ty, lately<sup>184</sup> planted in the new\* world, is<sup>156</sup> thriving better than it<sup>62</sup>  
 , depuis peu planté 213 nouveau monde, — réussir<sup>152</sup> mieux qu' il n' 47  
 has done in the old, and if it is spreading its enlivening<sup>32</sup> branches  
 a faire 213 ancien, 62 155 étendre<sup>125</sup> ses vivifiant<sup>29</sup>  
 over the fertile<sup>32</sup> plains of that immense and rich<sup>32</sup> continent. What  
 sur 29 plaine 13 39 riche Quel  
 a pleasure to see millions of intelligent<sup>32</sup> beings uniting all their  
 plaisir 168 voir 29 être unir<sup>154</sup> 29  
 energies to<sup>170</sup> break the chains of superstition and despotism, those  
 pour rompre chaîne despotisme,  
 two satanic<sup>32</sup> enemies of reason, that divine spark of the supreme  
 deux satanique<sup>29</sup> ennemi raison, 13 32 étincelle 32  
 wisdom! If the father of light deigns<sup>125</sup> to cast a look on the actions  
 sagesse ! lumière daigner 172 jeter regard sur  
 of men, it is surely in such a work that he must delight to see his  
 , c' sûrement 213 tel 36 ouvrage qu' doit se complaire à voir  
 image employed. What is the reason that trade is so languishing,  
 occupé. Quelle que commerce 125 si languissant,  
 and that money is so scarce now? (People in trade) think<sup>125</sup> that  
 argent rare à présent? Commerçants penser que  
 it is the war. Oh! war is a dreadful thing. War is the scourge of  
 65 guerre. Oh! 125 affreuse<sup>32</sup> chose. fléau  
 mankind. How preferable<sup>29</sup> are peace and harmony amongst all  
 genre humain. Combien préférable<sup>185</sup> 125 paix 'harmonie parmi tous  
 men! If men were reasonable, they (would never go to) war. War  
 ! Si étaient raisonnable, 29 ne se feraient jamais  
 begets<sup>125</sup> taxes, taxes beget poverty, and plunge<sup>125</sup> people into  
 engendrer taxe, 125 pauvreté, plonger peuple 213  
 misery. Thus whole<sup>32</sup> nations are made<sup>158</sup> miserable<sup>29</sup> to gratify  
 misère. Ainsi entier<sup>29</sup> rendre 170 satisfaire

\* Put this adjective before the noun.

† When the substance is restrained to a little, a few, SOME is expressed by *quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an unlimited number or quantity.

the ambition of a few vain<sup>32</sup> beings whom often chance  
petit nombre vain<sup>29</sup> être 74 souvent hazard  
 alone raises to the supreme rank, and who have the art of inciting  
seul élever<sup>125</sup> 32 rang, 74 125 exciter<sup>154</sup>  
 men to slaughter men, by calling them<sup>66</sup> heroes, who<sup>66</sup> are merely  
à égorger en appelant ceux \* héros, n. n. ne sont que  
 the base executioners of their inhuman<sup>32</sup> orders. Will you come  
vil<sup>129</sup> exécuter inhumain<sup>29</sup> ordre. Vouloir 133 venir  
 and take a walk along the river side before dinner? The sight of  
(na) faire tour sur rivière bord 206 dîné? vue  
 the water is pleasant at this time of the year. (Is there) any fish in  
eau agréable temps année Y a-t-il<sup>246</sup> poisson  
 this river? Not many; (there are) eels and carps, and some  
! Pas ; il y a<sup>246</sup> anguille carpe, †  
 trouts; But we are not far from the sea, and our fish-market is  
truit ; 190 loin de mer, poissonnerie  
 well supplied with sea<sup>25</sup> fish. We have salmon, turbot, soles,  
bien pourvu<sup>158</sup> de de mer poisson. saumon, sole,  
 mackerel, codfish, excellent<sup>32</sup> oysters, crabs, and lobsters. Let us  
maquereau, morue, † 31 huître, crabe, homard. —  
 go and see your market. What an abundance of (every thing)  
aller (na) voir marché. Quelle<sup>83</sup> abondance 107  
 (there is in it!) What a deal of hares, rabbits and partridges!  
il y a<sup>246</sup> —! 83 quantité lièvre, lapin perdrix!  
 I see people yonder<sup>183</sup> who are selling<sup>125</sup> woodcocks, snipes and  
voir gens<sup>239</sup> là-bas n. n. 75 155 vendre bécasse, bécassine  
 (wild pigeons.) (Here are) also pheasants and quails. Do you  
ramier 247 aussi faisan caille. — 153  
 like quails? Yes; (very much.) We must<sup>181</sup> walk towards  
aimer ? ; beaucoup. Il faut que nous allions vers  
 home. It<sup>62</sup> is dinner time. Let us walk into the dining room.  
la maison. C' n. n. dîner heure. — Entrer 213 dîner salle  
 The dinner is on the table. What have we for dinner? A  
sur Qu' 83 125 133 pour !  
 round of beef with cabbage and carrots, and a loin of veal with  
rouelle bœuf avec choux † carotte, longe veau,  
 peas and spinage. Bring me some mustard, salt, pepper, a coffee  
pois épinards. † Apporter<sup>56</sup> moutarde, sel, poivre, café  
 cup, and a table spoon. (How much) do they<sup>90</sup> sell<sup>125</sup> meat a  
tasse, soupe cuiller. Combien — 133 n. n. vendre viande  
 pound in this town? Beef and mutton sell<sup>125</sup> eight pence a  
livre 213 ville † mouton se vendre huit sou  
 pound, and veal seven pence. That is very dear. Yet we often  
veau sept C' très † cher. Cependant 184

\* Turn by calling heroes them who &c.

† See note † p. 183.

‡ Put this adjective after all these nouns.

§ This word is plural in french.

|| Très can be used before adjectives derived from participles; such as, *intéressant*, interesting; *occupé*, busy, &c.; but as in these instances *fort* or *bien* would answer just as well, it is more prudent to use these.

Très must be always followed by an adjective. Thus, the English *very*, used alone as a reply to, or an affirmation of what precedes, must be translated by *beaucoup*, or any other adverb.

The Academy and some grammarians connect *très* by a hyphen with the adjective that follows it; but the majority of writers, editors, printers, and grammarians, omit it as useless.



buy<sup>125</sup> a hundred pounds weight at a time. Corn sells<sup>125</sup> twelve  
 en<sup>70</sup>acheter cent livre — à 12 fois. Blé se vendre douze  
 shillings a bushel, and bread three pence a pound; but good<sup>33</sup>  
 shelin boisseau, pain trois livre; bon<sup>29</sup>  
 workmen get<sup>125</sup> four shillings a day. Bring a bottle of wine,  
 ouvrier gagner quatre jour. Apporter\* bouteille vin,  
 and some wine glasses. Will you have french wine or spanish wine ?  
 verre. Vouloir — 174 France Espagne ?  
 I will drink a glass of Port wine, if you have any.<sup>54</sup> (There is)  
 — boire , si en.(p) il n'y a <sup>946</sup>  
 no wine in the bottle. Is there no<sup>5</sup> wine in the wine cellar ?  
 pas <sup>213</sup> N'y a-t-il pas cave ?  
 Go to the wine merchant, and tell him to send me<sup>54</sup> a  
 Aller\* chez de vin marchand, dire\* lui de envoyer m'  
 dozen bottles of Port wine at sixty shillings a dozen. This  
 douzaine de à soixante schelin  
 wine costs me five shillings a bottle. You have a very fine  
 coûter <sup>54</sup> cinq belle  
 gold watch. It<sup>62</sup> has cost a hundred guineas. It<sup>65</sup> is a present  
 or montre. Elle coûté guinée. C' présent  
 from my cousin's guardian. Have you seen my brother's powder bag ?  
 cousin tuteur. vu poudre sac ?  
 It<sup>62</sup> is in my father's bed room. Let us walk up to that hill.  
 Il <sup>213</sup> coucher chambre. — — Aller\* — colline.  
 What<sup>89</sup> a fine prospect we have from here! What a deal of fine  
 Quelle belle perspective d' ici ! <sup>82</sup> quantité belle<sup>89</sup>  
 flowers (there is) here! Let us gather some<sup>96</sup> to<sup>170</sup> make  
 fleur il y a ici ! — — cueillir\* en<sup>70</sup> quelques-unes pour faire  
 nosegays for your sister's children who (are so fond of) flowers.  
 bouquet pour <sup>74</sup> aiment tant —  
 (Here are) some violets. What a pretty rose bud ! I see<sup>125</sup> yonder  
 Voici<sup>247</sup> violette.† <sup>82</sup> joli<sup>33</sup> rose bouton ! voir là-bas  
 some hawthorns, (honey suckles) and sweet<sup>32</sup> briars. (That is)  
 aubépinet, chèvre-feuille† odorant églantier.† Voilà<sup>247</sup>  
 my sister's husband's country house. Your father's house is finer<sup>41</sup>  
 mari de campagne maison. belle  
 than that.<sup>88</sup> (There are) people who are looking<sup>125</sup> at the flower  
 n.s. voilà<sup>247</sup> gens<sup>229</sup> <sup>155</sup> regarder <sup>201</sup> fleur  
 pots which are at your mother's window. My brother's coachman  
 pot : <sup>74</sup> à fenêtre. cocher  
 fell<sup>137</sup> from his horse yesterday<sup>183</sup> ; He broke<sup>137</sup> his leg, and put<sup>137</sup>  
 tomber de — cheval hier ; n.s. se casser jambe, se démettre  
 his arm out of joint.  
 bras — —→

\* Imperative.

† Use the singular in french.

‡ If you mean pots with flowers in, you must say, pots de fleurs ; if you mean pots to put flowers in, you must say, pots à fleurs.

♦ Out of joint is expressed in the verb démettre.

## CHAPTER IV.

## ADJECTIVE.

An *adjective* is a word added to a *noun*, to denote some quality or circumstance belonging to that noun ; as, *good* wine, *fine* flowers.

29. The *adjective* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun to which it is added ; as,

That is a *handsome* man. Voil   un *bel* homme.  
That is a *handsome* woman. Voil   une *belle* femme. (g)

N. B. A past participle, used to qualify a substantive, follows the same rules as an adjective ; ex.

He is very well *made*. Il est tr  s bien *fait*.  
She is very well *made*. Elle est tr  s bien *faite*.

(g) The *feminine* gender of an *adjective*, or of a *participle* used adjectively, is formed by adding *e* mute, that is to say, *e* not accented, to the masculine ; as,  
loved ; pretty ; lost ; great ; fine ; last ; precise ; little ; learned.  
Masc. *aim  , joli, perdu, grand, fin, dernier, pr  cis, petit, savant.*  
Fem. *aim  e, jolie, perdue, grande, fine, derni  re, pr  cise, petite, savante.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

E. Adjectives ending in *e* mute, are the same for both genders ; as, Un *honn  te* homme ; an *honest* man. Une *honn  te* femme ; an *honest* woman. Un *jeune* homme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young man. Une *jeune* femme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young woman.

I. The feminine of *b  ni*, blessed, is *b  n  e* ; that of *favori*, favourite, is *favorite*.

U. The feminine of *beau*, fine ; *nouveau*, new ; *meu*, soft ; *fou*, mad ; is *belle, nouvelle ; molle, folle*, from *bel, nouvel, mol, fol* used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

C. The feminine of *blanc*, white ; *franc*, frank ; *sec*, dry ; *caduc*, decayed ; *public*, public ; *grec*, greek ; *turc*, turkish ; is *blanche, franche, s  che, caduque, publique, greeque, turque*.

D. The feminine of *nud*, naked, *crud*, raw ; is *nue, crue* ; and that of *verd*, green, is *verle*.

F. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* in *ve* for the feminine ; as,  
Masc. *br  f*, brief ; *neuf*, new ; *na  f*, candid ; *actif*, active ; *plaintif*, sorrowful.  
Fem. *br  ve*, brief ; *neuve*, new ; *na  ve*, candid ; *active*, active ; *plaintive*, sorrowful.

G. The feminine of *long*, long, the only adjective ending in *g*, is *longue*.

I, N, } Adjectives ending in *el,   l, ul,   n,   n, on,   s,   is,   t,   s,   t*, double the final  
S, T, } consonant, and take *e* mute for the feminine gender ; as,

cruel ; rosy ; null ; ancient ; good ; big ; fat ; thick ; clean ; foolish.  
Masc. *cruel, vermeil, nul, ancien, bon, gros, gras,   pais, net, sot.*  
Fem. *cruelle, vermeille, nulle, ancienne, bonne, grosse, grasse,   paisse, nette, sotte.*

Except the adjectives of nations ; as, *fran  ais*, french ; *anglais*, english ; &c. *mauvais*, bad ; *ma  s*, silly ; *ras*, shorn ; *complet*, complete ; *discret*, discreet ; *inquiet*, uneasy ; *replet*, replete ; *secret*, secret ; which follow the general rule, *fran  aise, anglaise, mauvaise ; &c. frais*, fresh ; *tiers*, third ; which make *fraiehe, tierce* ; and *benin*, benign ; *malin*, mischievous ; which make *benigne, maligne*, in the feminine.

X. Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* for the feminine ; as,  
Masc. *heureux*, happy ; *parasseux*, lazy ; *jaloux*, jealous ; *faux*, false ;  
Fem. *heureuse*, happy. *parasseuse*, lazy. *jalouse*, jealous. *fausse*, false.  
Except *doux*, sweet soft ; which makes *douce* ; and *vieux*, old, which makes *vieille*.

N. B. The plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the singular.

## EXERCISE.

That young man is (in love.) That young woman is (in love.) He  
 (bb) jeune homme amoureux (bb) femme \*  
 is very young. She is very young. He is married. She is married.<sup>29</sup>  
 très jeune. \* marié. 158 \* n.s.  
 He is capricious. She is capricious. All<sup>29</sup> men are capricious.  
 capricieux. \* Tout  
 All<sup>29</sup> women are capricious.

30. When an adjective qualifies several nouns singular of the same *gender*, that adjective must be of the same *gender* as those nouns, and *plural*; as,

My father and brother are *gone* out. Mon père et mon frère sont *sortis*.  
 My mother and sister are *gone* out. Ma mère et ma sœur sont *sorties*.

## EXERCISE.

Miss A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. They will  
 Mademoiselle amoureux.\* Elles très heureux.\* —  
 soon<sup>184</sup> be married. That<sup>89</sup> makes the mother and daughter very  
 bientôt être \* (bb) rendre très  
 proud.\* They are both<sup>122</sup> very capricious; but they are civil and  
 orgueilleux. Elle toutes deux \* ; civil \*  
 obliging. That<sup>13</sup> lady has a gown and a petticoat very well matched.  
 obligeant.\* (bb) dame robe jupe très bien assorti.\*  
 The tea and the sugar are good, but the cream and the water are  
 thé sucre bon, crème eau  
 bad.  
 mauvais.

31. But if the nouns are of different genders, the adjective must be of the *masculine* gender, and in the *plural* number; as,  
 My father and mother are *gone* out. Mon père et ma mère sont *sortis*.  
 He found his son and daughter *dead*. Il trouva son fils et sa fille *morts*. (A)

## EXERCISE.

Mr. A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy.  
 Monsieur amoureux. Ils  
 Are they not married yet<sup>183</sup>? They are both<sup>122</sup> very capricious;  
 190 marié<sup>158</sup> encore! tous deux  
 but they are civil and obliging. He makes<sup>125</sup> his son and daughter  
 civil obligeant. rendre  
 unhappy. You have a coat and a waistcoat very well matched. The  
 malheureux. (A) habit veste très assorti.  
 tea and the water are good, but the cream and the sugar are very  
 thé eau bon, crème sucre  
 bad.  
 mauvais.

\* See note (g), how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed, page 186.

(A) When the adjective is not separated from the nouns by a verb, some authors make it agree with the last noun; thus, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille morts*; but they except the adjectives which express union; as, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille réunis, réconciliés, &c.*

These exceptions and exceptions of exceptions are very difficult for learners to retain; therefore I would advise them to follow the general rule, which is perfectly agreeable to the fundamental principles of the French language.

32. Adjectives in english are generally placed *before* the noun, in french they are generally placed *after* it ; as,

A <i>black</i> coat.	Un habit <i>noir</i> .
A <i>well made</i> man.	Un homme bien <i>fait</i> .
The <i>french</i> language.	La langue <i>française</i> .

## EXERCISE.

All<sup>29</sup> the polite people in<sup>49</sup> Europe speak the french<sup>29</sup> language.  
 Tout poli<sup>29</sup> gens m. de l' parler français langue.  
 (I am told) that it is a very difficult language. Eat\* a piece of new  
 on m'a dit<sup>29</sup> que c' difficile Manger morceau frais  
 bread, and drink a glass of white wine. England is a delightful  
 pain, boire\* verre blanc vin. Angleterre délicieux  
 country ; but (their is) always a cold and damp air. (There are)  
 230 ; il y a<sup>246</sup> froid humide 246  
 charming<sup>29</sup> women, opulent cities, fruitful lands, and pleasant  
 charmant<sup>29</sup> opulent<sup>29</sup> ville, fertile<sup>29</sup> terre, agréable<sup>29</sup>  
 country 25houses. I like<sup>125</sup> their simple<sup>29</sup> and cordial<sup>29</sup> manners.  
 de campagne maison. aimer 14 simple cordial manière.

33. Except these adjectives, which are generally placed *before* the noun ;

Premier, 1st ; second, 2d ; and other adjectives of number.	
Beau bel, m. { fine,	Méchant, wicked.
Belle, fem. { handsome.	Meilleur, better.
Bon, m. bonne, f. good.	Même, same.
Grand, great, large.	Moindre, less.
Gros, m. grosse f. big.	Petit, little, small.
Jeune, young.	Plusieurs, several.
Joli, pretty.	Tout, all, whole.
Mauvais, bad.	Vieux, m. vieille, f. old ; as,
She is a handsome woman.	C'est une belle femme.
She has a good husband.	Elle a un bon mari.

## EXERCISE.

(That is) a large house. It<sup>62</sup> is in a fine situation. It belongs  
 Voilà<sup>247</sup> grand<sup>29</sup> Elle 213 belle situation. 62 appartenir  
 to a young man. He has lately married an old woman. He<sup>65</sup> is a  
 jeune depuis peu épousé vieille C'  
 big man. She is a little woman. They have two pretty children.  
 gros 65 petit<sup>29</sup> deux joli<sup>29</sup>

34. But if any one of the above adjectives comes with another adjective that can not be placed before the noun, they must *both* be placed *after*, connected by a *conjunction* ; as,

A handsome, amiable woman. Une femme belle et aimable.  
 A good, complaisant husband. Un mari bon et complaisant. (i.)

\* Imperative

† See note (g) how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed.

(i) The rules for the placing of adjectives are not very strictly adhered to, especially in poetry. Even in prose many adjectives may be placed either *before* or *after* the noun, according as their position is more agreeable to the ear, of which a learner can be no judge ; so his surest way is to follow the rules, and to notice in reading, those

## EXERCISE.

(That is) a large convenient house. It<sup>62</sup> is in a fine healthy  
 247 grand<sup>29</sup> commode Elle 213 belle saine  
 situation. It belongs to a profligate young man. He has<sup>lately</sup>  
 63 appartenir débauché 33 39 depuis peu  
 married an old rich woman. He<sup>65</sup> is a great man. He is a tall  
 épousé riche C' (i) 65 (i)  
 man. They are very honest<sup>29</sup> people. They are very civil<sup>29</sup>  
 65 sont très honnête (i) gens. 65 honnête (i)  
 people.

35. The adjectives of number, *premier*, first; *second*, *deuxième*, second; *troisième*, third; *quatrième*, fourth; *cinquième*, fifth, &c. are placed in french as in english, *before* the noun; as,

The *first* day.

Le *premier* jour.

The *fourth* month.

Le *quatrième* mois.

## EXERCISE.

The first day of the week. The third month of the year. The  
 jour semaine. mois année.  
 fourth year of the reign of the fifth monarch.  
 règne monarque.

36. But when the adjectives *third*, *fourth*, *fifth*, *sixth*, &c. are used as a distinction to some personage; as, George *the third*, Henry *the eighth*; or to date the months: as, July *14th*,

adjectives which he finds sometimes before and sometimes after the noun. Yet custom, for want of other expressions, has fixed a place for some adjectives which must be attended to, as the placing the adjective before or after the noun, changes the idea; the most common are,

Un brave homme.	A well behaved man.	Un homme vilain.	A niggardly fellow.
Un homme brave.	A courageous man.	Un pauvre homme.	A man without genius
De braves gens.	Well behaved people.	Un homme pauvre.	A poor man.
Des gens braves.	Courageous people.	Une cruelle femme.	An unfeeling woman.
Un bon homme.	A simple man.	Une femme cruelle.	A cruel woman.
Un homme bon.	A good natured man.	Une sage femme.	A midwife.
Un honnête homme.	An honest man.	Une femme sage.	A wise woman.
Un homme honnête.	A civil man.	Une grosse femme.	A big, fat woman.
D'honnêtes gens.	Honest people.	Une femme grosse.	A woman with child.
Des gens honnêtes.	Civil people.	Un furieux animal.	A huge creature.
Un gentil homme.	A noble man.	Un animal furieux.	A fierce animal.
Un homme gentil.	A genteel man.	Un certain nou-	A certain piece of
Un galant homme.	A liberal man.	velle.	[tain news.
Un homme galant.	A galant.	Une nouvelle cer-	True or sure news.
Un grand homme.	A great man.	De nouveau vin.	Fresh wine.
Un homme grand.	A tall man. [low.	Du vin nouveau.	Wine newly made.
Un plaisant homme.	An odd sort of a fel-	La morte eau.	The neap tides.
Un homme plaisant.	A pleasant man.	De l'eau morte.	Standing water.
Un vilain homme.	A disagreeable man.		

The adjective *Cher* placed before the noun signifies *dear*, *affectionate*; as, Mon *cher* père, my *dear* father; placed after it, it signifies *of high price*; as, Une *livre cher*, a *dear* book.

*New* is both *neuf* and *nouveau*; *neuf* is said of things newly made; as, A *new* coat, Un *habit neuf*, i. e. made of *new* cloth; un *livre neuf*, a *new* book, i. e. a book that has not been used, &c. *Nouveau* is said of things newly invented, of new productions; as, Un *habit nouveau*, a coat of a *new* fashion; Un *nouveau* livre, or un *livre nouveau*, a *new* book, i. e. a *new* production. Un *nouvel* habit means a *new* dress.

November 5<sup>th</sup>; they are changed into the *substantive* numbers *deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, &c.*

If used as a distinction, they are put *after* the name of the personage; as,

George *the third*.  
Henry *the eighth*.

George *trois*, i. e. *george three*.  
Henri *huit*, i. e. *henry eight*.

If used as a date, they are put *before* the name of the month; as,

July 14<sup>th</sup>.  
November 5<sup>th</sup>.

Le *quatorze* de Juillet.  
Le *cinq* de Novembre. (*k*)

## EXERCISE.

Henry the fourth was a great man and a good king; he succeeded  
 Henri \* grand roi; succéder à  
 Henry the third, brother to Charles the ninth, the greatest villian  
 \* 48 \* 44 scélérat  
 that<sup>74</sup> ever reigned<sup>136</sup> over a civilized people. Henry the eighth,  
 qui n'ait<sup>50</sup> jamais régné sur civilisé<sup>32</sup> 228 Henri \*  
 after having<sup>154</sup> been the friend of Pope Clement the seventh, became  
 après avoir été ami Pape \* devenir  
 the greatest enemy of the papal<sup>132</sup> authority, and was excommunicated  
 44 ennemi papal<sup>130</sup> autorité, fut excommunié  
 from the Catholic Church.  
 Catholique Eglise.

37. Adjectives of measure and dimension, such as, *high, tall, low, deep, thick, big, wide, broad, long, short, &c.* which are placed after the number in english, must be placed *before* it in french, joined to it by *de*; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

Une chambre *longue de* douze pied, et *large de* dix;

Literal. A room *long* of twelve feet, and *broad* of ten.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur *haut de* dix pieds, et *épais de* deux;

Literal. A wall *high* of ten feet, and *thick* of two.

N. B. The adjectives of *measure* and *dimension* are frequently expressed in french by their *substantives*; † then the words remain in the same order in french as they are in english, but both the number and the noun of measure must be preceded by *de*; as,

(*k*) Except *Premier* in dating the days, and *Premier* and *Second* when used for a distinction, for we do not say, Le *un* de Janvier, the *one* of January; but, Le *premier* de Janvier, Le *deux*, Le *trois*, &c. nor do we say, George *un*, George *one*; George *deux*, George *two*; but George *premier*, George *second*, and then, George *trois*, George *three*; George *quatre*, &c.

\* See numbers, p. 164.

† See note (o) p. 66.

‡ The substantive may be formed by adding *ur* to the adjective when it ends with a vowel; as, *Large*, *largeur* and *cur* when it ends with a consonant; as, *Haut*, *hauteur*, &c.

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

Une chambre de douze pieds de *longueur*, et de dix de *largeur*.

**Literal.** A room of twelve feet *of length*, and *of ten of breadth*.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur de dix pieds de *hauteur*, et de deux d';

**Literal.** A wall of ten feet *of height*, and *of two of thickness*.

But observe that when the adjective is changed into its substantive, the verb *être* must be changed into *avoir*, and *de* is omitted before the number ; as,

Our room *is* twelve feet long, and ten broad.

**Adject.** Notre chambre *est* longue de douze pieds, et large de dix.

**Subst.** Notre chambre a douze pied, de longueur, et dix de largeur ;

i. e. Our room *has* twelve feet *of length*, and ten *of breadth*.

**Adject.** Ce mur *est* haut de dix pieds, et épais de deux.

**Subst.** Ce mur a dix pieds de hauteur, et deux d'épaisseur ;

i. e. This wall *has* ten feet *of height*, and two *of thickness*.

## EXERCISE.

Our garden is two hundred paces long, and a hundred and fifty  
 jardin \* pas long, 21 †  
 broad. It is surrounded by a wall twelve feet high, two feet thick,  
 large. Il est entouré d' mur \* pieds haut, épais,  
 and a hundred yards long. Our garden has two hundred paces of  
 21 verge pas  
 length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth. It is surrounded by a  
 longueur, 21 † largeur. Il est entouré d'  
 wall of twelve feet of height, and of two of thickness. Our garden is  
 pieds hauteur, épaisseur.  
 long of two hundred paces, and broad of a hundred and fifty ; or, our  
 long pas, large 21 † ; ou,  
 garden has two hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of  
 pas longueur,  
 breadth.  
 largeur.

## REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

38. The adjective can *not* be separated by an article from the noun which it qualifies, therefore those articles which come *between* the adjective and the noun in english, must be placed *before* them in french ; as,

Such a man.

Un tel homme ; *not* tel un homme

So great a thing.

Une si grande chose.

Except *tout*, all, whole, which requires the article *after* it ;  
 as,

All his time.

Tout son tems

The whole day.

Tout le jour.

A whole day.

Tout un jour.†

\* See numbers p. 164.

† See note \* p. 165.

‡ And if *tout* is governed by a preposition, the preposition must be placed *before* *tout*, and the article *after* ; as,  
 Of the whole regiment. De tout le régiment. To the whole fleet. A toute la flotte.

Except also, when the adjective is used to distinguish some particular person from another person of the same name ; as,

Peter <i>the</i> cruel.	Pierre <i>le</i> cruel.
Cato <i>the</i> elder.	Caton <i>l'</i> ancien.
Alexander <i>the</i> great.	Alexandre <i>le</i> grand.

## EXERCISE.

Did<sup>136</sup> you ever see such a man ? I never saw<sup>136</sup> so tall<sup>29</sup> a wo-  
 Avez jamais vu tel ? 190 ai vu si grand  
 man. It is not so great a thing.  
 Ce 190 si grand<sup>29</sup> chose.

39. By prefixing to an adjective, an article of the same gender and number as the noun to which it refers, that adjective has often the property of a *substantive*, and the words *man*, *woman*, *people*, which are expressed in english, may be omitted in french ; as,

The wise <i>man</i> is happy.	<i>Le sage</i> est heureux.
He is a troublesome <i>man</i> .	C'est un importun.
She is a little brown <i>woman</i> .	C'est une petite brune.
The great ; the covetous <i>people</i> .	Les grands ; les avares.*

## EXERCISE.

An English man. A French woman. He is a drunken man ; a  
 Anglais Française 65 ivrogne ;  
 covetous man. She is an idle woman ? They are ungrateful  
 avare. 65 paresseux (g) 65 sont ingrat  
 people. Learned men are esteemed.<sup>29</sup> Ignorant people are  
 Savant estimé. n.b. Ignorant  
 despised.<sup>29</sup> Take notice of these words in reading authors, and in  
 méprisé. n.b. Faites attention à (66) en lisant auteur, 213  
 the dictionaries.  
 dictionnaire.

40. As an article *prefixed* to an adjective without a noun, gives to it the property of a *substantive*, so when the article is taken from a noun, that noun assumes the power of an *adjective* ; for example,

I know *a poet*.  
 I speak of *a philosopher*.

Here the words *poet* and *philosopher* are *substantives*, because they name the *objects* spoken of, consequently they require an article ; so,

Je connais un *poète*.  
 Je parle d'un *philosophe*.

But when I say,

The *man* I speak of is *a poet* and *a philosopher*.  
 He is *a poet*, but he is not *a philosopher*.

The substance I am speaking of is *man*, the words *poet* and

---

\* This rule extends to many adjectives, but not to all ; they should be taken notice of in reading.



*philosopher* are only *attributes* of that substance, and they no more require an article than if I said ;

The man I speak of is *witty*, is *wise* ; so the French,

L'homme dont je parle est *poète* et *philosophe*.

Il est *poète*, mais il n'est pas *philosophe*.

A *philosopher* is seldom a *poet*, but a *poet* is seldomer a *philosopher*.

*Philosopher* in the first part of the sentence is a *substantive*, in the second an *adjective*. *Poet* in the first part of the sentence is an *adjective*, in the second a *substantive* ; so the French,

Rarement un philosophe est *poète*, mais plus rarement un *poète* est *philosophe*.  
(See the 23d rule.)

## EXERCISE.

My brother is a colonel, and my father is a general. He is the colonel, général. II commander in chief. That man was a tailor. He lately turned a commandant en chef. 140 tailleur. depuis peu s'est fait school 25master. He passes for a doctor. His son was a bookseller ; école maître. passer pour médecin. 140 libraire : now he is a surgeon. chirurgien.

## COMPARISONS.

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also, by the means of certain *adverbs* prefixed to them, to *compare* their qualities.

The quality of a substance, when compared with another, is either *superior*, *inferior*, or *equal* to the other ; this is called *comparative*.

Or the quality is *raised above*, or *lowered below* several others, and this is called *superlative*.

## OF COMPARATIVES.

41. The comparative of superiority, *more* before the adjective, or *r* or *er* added to it, as *more* strong or stronger, is formed in french by *plus* before the adjective ;\* as,

My horse is *more* strong or stronger *than* yours.

Mon cheval est *plus* fort *que* le vôtre.

## EXERCISE.

Spain is larger than France ; but France is richer and more powerful than Spain. This field is better than that, because it is better cultivated. Your watch is finer than mine, because it is newer and dearer ; but mine is better, and will last longer than yours,   
 Espagne grand29 que ; riche   
 puissant29 N.B. champ † N.B., parce qu'il   
 † cultivé. montre belle 85 elle   
 neuve, cher29 ; 85 † — durer long temps 85

\* Except *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse, adjectives, } which are comparatives of  
 *mieux*, better ; *pis*, worse, adverbs, } themselves.

† See note (x) page 56.

42. The comparative of inferiority, *less* before the adjective, is formed in french by *moins* before the adjective ;\* as,

My horse is *less* strong *than* yours.

Mon cheval est *moins* fort *que* le vôtre.

The same comparative formed by *so* before the adjective, and *as* after it, is expressed, *so* before the adjective by *si*, and *as* after it by *que* ; as,

My horse is not *so* strong *as* yours.

Mon cheval n'est pas *si* fort *que* le vôtre.

## EXERCISE.

Spain is not so rich, nor so powerful as France. That field is less fruitful than this. 88 Your sister is not so handsome, nor so rich as your cousin, but she is not less amiable.

Espagne	100	29,	ni	29	n.b. champ
fruitful	than this.	88	Your sister	is not so handsome,	nor so rich as
fertile		n.b.		belle,	
your cousin,	but she is not less	amiable.			
cousine,		aimable.			

43. The comparative of equality, *as* before, and *as* after the adjective, is expressed, *as* before the adjective by *aussi*, and *as* after it by *que* ; as,

My horse is *as* strong *as* yours. Mon cheval est *aussi* fort *que* le vôtre.

## EXERCISE.

Spain is not by much as populous as France. That field is as fruitful as this. 88 Your sister is as amiable as your cousin. My watch is as good as yours, but it is not so fine.

Spain	is not by much	as populous	as France.	That field	is as
100	de beaucoup	peuplé	29	n.b. champ	
fruitful	as this.	88	Your sister	is as amiable	as your cousin.
fertile		n.b.		aimable	cousine.
watch	is as good	29	as yours,	but it is not so fine.	
montre	bon (g)	88,	62	belle.	

## OF SUPERLATIVES.

44. The superlative formed by *most* or *least* before the adjective, or by *st* or *est* added to it ; as, *most* strong or *strongest*, is formed in french by adding *-le*, *la*, *les* to the comparative words *plus*, *moins* ; as,

Comp. Stronger, *plus* fort, m. *plus* forte, f.

Sup. Strongest, le *plus* fort, la *plus* forte, les *plus* forts, les *plus* fortes ;

Comp. Less strong, *moins* fort, m. *moins* forte, f.

Sup. Least strong, le *moins* fort, la *moins* forte, les *moins* forts, les [moins fortes ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

My pony is the *strongest* of my horses.

Mon bidet est le *plus* fort de mes chevaux.

My mare is the *least* strong of the two.

Ma jument est la *moins* forte des deux. (l)

\* Except *moins*, less, which is a comparative of itself.

(l) Observe what is said, note † page 45, that *two* of the signs called *article*, can not be prefixed to the same noun ; so,

My strongest horse ; is, Mon *plus* fort cheval ; not, Mon le *plus* fort cheval.

Observe also, that if the adjective is placed first, the article needs not to be re-

N. B. The comparison of *adverbs* is formed like that of *adjectives*; as,

Strongly, Fortement.

More strongly, Plus fortement.

Most strongly, Le plus fortement. Less strongly, Moins fortement, &c

## EXERCISE.

France is the most populous country in Europe. China is the  
 peuple 632 230 49 \* Chine  
 largest empire in the world. (This is) my finest book. If it is not  
 grand 49 monde. 247 (l) beau S' il  
 the finest, it is the best. It is the dearest book that I have ever  
 , 62 meilleur. 65 cher 74 50 jamais  
 bought.  
 acheté.

## REMARKS ON THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

45. When the comparison runs between *two parts* of a sentence, an *article* is added to the comparative in english; as,

*The more you study, the more you learn.*

This article is *omitted* in french;

*Plus vous étudiez, plus vous apprenez.*

And the adjective or noun which, in these instances, comes *before* the verb in english, must be placed *after* it in french; as,

*The longer the day is, the shorter is the night.*

*Plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte;*

*Literal. More the day is long, more the night is short.*

*The more populous a country is, the richer it is.*

*Plus un pays est peuplé, plus il est riche;*

*Literal. More a country is populous, more it is rich.*

## EXERCISE.

The more you study, the more you learn. The more I see her,  
 étudier, apprendre. voir 54.  
 the less I like her. The more I know men, the less I esteem them.  
 aimer 54 connaître , estimer 54  
 The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable it is. I think that  
 difficile chose , honorable 62 penser (66) n. n.  
 the more pains I take, the less progress I make.  
 plus peine prendre, moins progrès faire.

46. The comparative words *plus*, *moins*, *si*, *aussi* must be *repeated before every adjective*, though they are in the same sentence; as,

peated before the noun; but if the noun is first, the article must be repeated before the adjective; as,

It is the *strongest* horse I have seen.

C'est le plus fort cheval que j'ai vu; or, C'est le cheval le plus fort que j'ai vu.

\* See note † page 47.

## 196 REMARKS ON THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

She is as rich and handsome as her cousin.  
Elle est aussi riche et aussi belle que sa cousine.

### EXERCISE.

She is more studious<sup>29</sup> and dutiful than her sister. She is already  
studieux (g) obéissant<sup>30</sup> déjà  
as wise and clever as her mother; but she is so proud and affected  
sage habile ; fier<sup>31</sup> affecté<sup>32</sup>  
that nobody likes<sup>125</sup> her.  
97 aimer 54.

47. The comparative words *plus, moins, moindre, meilleur, mieux, pire, pis* require *ne* before the verb which follows them; as,

This is better than I thought.

Ceci est meilleur que je ne pensais.

However *ne* is not required if the following verb is in the infinitive, or if it is preceded by a conjunction; as,

It is greater to forgive than to revenge.

Il est plus grand de pardonner que de se venger.

I am better now than when I was in town.

Je me porte mieux à présent que quand j'étais à la ville.

### EXERCISE.

He has lost more than he has gained. He is richer than he was.  
perdre gagner. riche 140  
He lives better than he did<sup>139</sup> before. He is less happy than people  
vivre (x) p. 56 faire 306 n.s. heureux 90 n.s.  
imagine. It is better to read than be idle. He is more studious now  
s'imaginer. Il vaut mieux lire (1) oisif studieux à présent  
than when he was at school.  
140 à école.

48. The particles *by* and *than* coming after the comparative, or after the adverbs *more, less*, followed by a word denoting *quantity*, not *quality*, are expressed by *de*, not by *que* or *par*; as,

It is stronger *by* much.

Il est plus fort *de* beaucoup.

It costs more *than* ten guineas. Il coûte plus *de* dix guinées.

### EXERCISE.

This does not cost less than fifty guineas. It is too dear by half.  
89 — 190 coûter guinée. C' trop moitié.  
I would not sell it<sup>54</sup> for less than sixty. I have not had it<sup>55</sup> more  
vendre le à  
than a year.  
an †

\* The same preposition which follows the comparative must be repeated after *que*;  
as, We are more inclined to revenge, than to forgive.

Nous sommes plus portés à nous venger qu'à pardonner.

† An is used to mark an epoch, without thinking of its duration, and *années* to de termine a duration of twelve months

49. The preposition *in*, after a superlative in english, is expressed in french in the same manner as *of*, agreeably to the rules on the article ; as,

He is the richest merchant *in* London.

C'est le plus riche négociant *de* Londres ; i. e. *of* London.

She is the most virtuous woman *in* the city.

C'est la femme la plus vertueuse *de* la ville ; i. e. *of* the city.

## EXERCISE.

(That is) the cleverest boy in the school. His father is the most  
 247 habile garçon école.  
 learned man in the kingdom. His mother is the most sensible  
 savant royaume. spirituel 32  
 woman in the whole town.  
 38

50. The superlative followed by the relative or definite pronoun, *qui*, *que*, *dont* requires the following verb in the subjunctive mood ; as,

She is the prettiest woman *that* was at the ball.

C'est la plus jolie femme *qui* fût au bal.

He is the handsomest man *that* I have ever seen.

C'est le plus bel homme *que* j'aie jamais vu.

## EXERCISE.

Mr. A. is the best friend I have. He is the most honest man I  
 Mons. meilleur (s) 65 honnête (s)  
 know. His sister is the handsomest woman I have ever seen.  
 connaître. belle (s) jamais vue.

## Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

What<sup>82</sup> charming weather ! How<sup>185</sup> beautiful the country<sup>230</sup> looks !  
 Quel charmant temps ! Que belle 185 campagne être ! 125  
 How attractive nature is, when it is arrayed in its verdant charms !  
 185 attrayant , quand 62 orné de ses verdoyant charme !  
 How sweet solitude is to innocent minds ! Let us go and take a  
 185 doux (g) cœur ! — — aller (an) faire  
 (short walk) in the neighbouring fields, (whilst we wait) till your  
 tour<sup>263</sup> n.s. 213 voisin champ, en attendant que  
 sister is<sup>218</sup> ready. How<sup>185</sup> is<sup>241</sup> your aunt ? She is still very ill.  
 soit prêt. Comment se porter tante ? encore malade.  
 I am sorry (for it.) She is a virtuous, prudent, and generous wo-  
 fâché en<sup>54</sup> 65 vertueux, (g) généreux (g)  
 man. Her daughter is very handsome, but she is too proud. She  
 fille belle, 51 trop orgueilleux. (g)  
 is as haughty as if she were the finest woman in England ; yet  
 fier 140 49 ; cependant  
 as she is richer and handsomer than her cousin, she will<sup>41</sup> sooner get  
 comme belle, cousine, f. — tôt<sup>183</sup> trouver

\* See note \* under the preceding recapitulatory exercise.

a husband; but virtue is more precious than riches. (Something  
 mari; vertu précieux (g) richesse. (il faut  
 must be allowed) for her age; she is so young. She is older than I 52  
 passer quelque chose) à \* âge; jeune. âgé moi  
 am: She is as old as my sister who is married. She is 239 not less  
 † âgé 74 marié. a n.s.  
 than twenty. I do not think that she is 239 more than eighteen. She  
 vingt ans. — penser en 70 alt 145  
 is taller by two inches, but she is not so handsome by much. She has  
 grand pouce, belle  
 been spoiled in her infancy. Your sister is the most lovely girl I  
 gâté enfance. aimable (s)  
 know. She is so diligent and 46 attentive. You do not learn so well  
 connaitre. attentif. (g) — apprendre  
 as she does, because you are not so studious. My sister learns better  
 †, parceque studieux. (g) (z. p. 56)  
 than I do, because she has a better memory than I have, but I take more  
 52 †, mémoire 52 †.  
 pains than she does. I found 136 my exercise easier than I thought.  
 peine faire. † al trouvé thème aisé penser. 140  
 It is better than I expected. It is less difficult than you imagined.  
 attendre. 140 63 moins difficile s'imaginer. 140  
 My son has made greater progress than I expected. There are)  
 41 progrès 47 espérais 140. 946  
 authors who write better than they speak; there are others who speak  
 auteur 125; 125  
 better than they write. The more I examine this affair, the more  
 125 45 (bb) affaire, f. 45  
 puzzling 29 I find it 62 Give that 89 to your eldest 32 sister, and this 89  
 embarrassant 54 (bb) aîné 29 † (bb)  
 to your younger brother. Your writing is bad, but this 28 is worse,  
 jeune 33 † écriture, f (bb) pire †  
 and that 88 is the worst of all. This ditch is nine feet deep, and  
 (bb) † tout. 29 (bb) fossé pîed profond,  
 six feet broad. That tree is a hundred yards high, and ten feet  
 large. (bb) arbre 21 verge haut,  
 thick. London 25 bridge, now the finest bridge in England, is seven  
 épais. pont, à présent beau  
 hundred and sixty-six feet long, and fifty-six feet broad; the center  
 † pîeds large; du milieu  
 25 arch is one hundred and fifty feet broad, and thirty-two feet high.  
 arche, f. 21 † haut.  
 Napoleon the first succeeded 203 Louis the 16th; Louis the 18th  
 a 136 succédé à  
 succeeded Napoleon the 2d, king of Rome, and second emperor of the  
 136 à, roi 33 empereur  
 French. I want a watch; but I should not like to give more than ten  
 260 montre; aimer à donner

\* See note † page 45.

† This auxiliary verb is generally *left out* in french; if you express it, you must follow rule 47. † See note (z) page 56.

‡ Eldest and younger can not be expressed by the comparative nor superlative in french, they must be expressed by the positive, for, as there is only one eldest and one younger, there can be no comparison.

§ See note † page 193.

¶ See note \* page 165.

guineas (for it.) You can not get a good one for less than twenty. I  
 guinée en54 (kk) avoir en54 à moins  
 will not give more than twelve. The best quality a man can125  
 — en70 qualité (s) 50 pouvoir  
 have, is to be civil and obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging  
 (kk), de civil obligeant \* incivil désobligeant  
 people. The more difficult a thing is, the more merit (there is) in  
 gens.229 difficile chose , mérite 246 à  
 doing169 it.54. The more we contemplate the beauties of nature, the  
 faire 62 contempler beauté  
 less reason we have to (be proud.) The richer and the more  
 moins sujet de nous enorgueillir. riche  
 elevated in dignity we are, the less pride we ought to have, and  
 élevé en dignité , moins n.b. orgueil devoir 172 avoir,  
 the more we are obliged to be just and reasonable; but most men  
 obligé d' juste raisonnable; la plupart des  
 (of these days) remember that they are rich and powerful,  
 d'aujourd'hui ne se souvenir130 (bb) n.b. puissant,  
 only to170 oppress the poor and the weak, and to be more unjust and  
 que pour opprimer pauvre faible, 170 être injuste  
 unreasonable. The great wall (on the) north of China is about  
 déraisonnable. muraille au nord la Chine environ  
 fifteen hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that empire is  
 quinze  
 about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of Babylon were two  
 dix-huit mur Babylone  
 hundred feet high, and fifty broad. An angry man, who suppresses  
 pied En colère étouffer  
 his passion, thinks worse than he speaks; an angry man who will  
 penser plus mal parler; vouloir  
 chide speaks worse than he thinks. One of the greatest defects of  
 gronder Un défaut  
 the Pharsalia, is that fury of imagination which Lucan did not  
 Pharsale, f. cette fougue f. que Lucain —  
 know how to repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast  
 savoir — réprimer en faire plutôt enthousiaste m.  
 than a poet. I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young  
 poète. n' pas pitié de misère ceux jeune  
 and strong, choose rather to beg than to work; but I pity the  
 fort, aimer mieux — mendier de travailler; mais j'ai pitié des  
 old who can not get their livelihood. Westminster Abbey,  
 vieillards pouvoir gagner vie. Abbaye,  
 within its walls, is three hundred and sixty feet long; at the nave  
 en dedans des murs, cent soixante pied à nef  
 it is seventy feet broad, and at the cross one hundred and ninety.  
 soixante-dix croix 21 quatre-vingt-dix.  
 The front of Somerset house towards the Strand is about one hundred  
 façade vers environ 21  
 feet long, and the front towards the principal court is two hundred  
 vers cour  
 feet and more. The most learned men make sometimes the grossest  
 savant faire quelquefois grossier  
 mistakes. Obedience is the surest means of pleasing our parents.  
 faute. Obéissance moyen plaire à parents.

\* The adjectives which signify behaviour towards others, takes the preposition *à* or *envers*, such are *affable*, *civil*, *cruel*, &c.

## CHAPTER V.

## PRONOUN.

A *pronoun* is a word used to represent a *noun*, as when I say *I* instead of naming my own name ; *thou, you, he, she, it, they* instead of naming that of another being.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of *personal relative, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite*.

## SECTION I.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

As there are *three* persons in grammar, so there are *three* sorts of words to represent them, but sometimes the same person is represented by *several words*, as appears from the following table.

Agents or nominatives of Verbs.			objects or Verbs, or of Prepositions.*		
1st per.	<i>I, Je, Moi.</i>		<i>Me, Me, Moi.</i>		
	<i>We ; Nous,</i>		<i>Us ; Nous.</i>		
2nd per.	<i>Thou, Tu, Toi.</i>		<i>Thee, Te, Toi.</i>		
	<i>You ; Vous,</i>		<i>You ; Vous.</i>		
3rd p. m.	<i>He, Il, Lui.</i>		<i>Him, Le, Lui.</i>		
	<i>They ; Ils, Eux.</i>		<i>Them ; Les, Leur, Eux.</i>		
3rd p. f.	<i>She ; Elle, Lui, Elle.</i>		<i>Her, La, Lui, Elle.</i>		
	<i>They ; Elles, Them ; Les, Leur, Elles.</i>				
3rd p. n.	<i>It, Il, m. Elle. f.</i>		<i>It, Le, m. La, f. En, Y.</i>		
	<i>They ; Ils, m. Elles. f.</i>		<i>Them ; Les, m. &amp; f. En, Y.</i>		
3rd pers. common	}		<i>Himself,</i>	}	Se, Soi.
			<i>Herself,</i>		
			<i>Itself,</i>		
			<i>Themselves ;</i>		

And as these words are not used indiscriminately, it is necessary to attend to the following observations.

---

\* In every action there is an Agent, doer, or performer ; as I write, I teach, Thou teachest, He teaches, The masters teaches ; and if the action is of a nature to be communicated, there is also generally a Patient or receiver : as, I write a Letter, I teach You, Him, Her, Them, French, English, &c. This Agent or doer, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb, and the Patient or receiver, is called the *object* ; so, I, Thou, He, The master are *nominatives* ; Letter, You, Him, Her, &c. are *objects* of the verb.

Until now I have avoided speaking of Cases, because if a case be what it seems to be, a modification or variation from the original word, it is evident that in french there are no cases in nouns ; and it is astonishing that grammarians should still persist in giving six cases to our nouns, as is done in Latin. Whether a noun be a giver or receiver of an action, i. e. whether it be the nominative or the object of the verb, it remains invariably the same ; for ex.



## AGENTS, OR NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

*I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY.*

These pronouns are sometimes singly the nominative of a verb; as *I am, thou art, he is*; sometimes jointly with another substantive\*; as, *you and I are*; *he and his brother are*; and sometimes they are used absolutely without a verb; as, *Who is there? I.*

51. When *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they* are attended by a verb that agrees with them in number and person, they are;

<i>I,</i>	<i>Je.</i>	<i>He, It, m.</i>	<i>Il.</i>
<i>Thou,</i>	<i>Tu.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Ils.</i>
<i>We,</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, It, f.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You,</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles.</i>

These words keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english; tex.

*I am, thou art, he is, she is, Je suis, tu es, il est, elle est.*  
*Am I? art thou? is he? is she? Suis-je? Es-tu? Est-il? Est-elle?*

## EXERCISE.

*I learn125 french. Doest thou speak it54 well? He has  
 apprendre français, m. — 133 parler 62 bien!  
 not learned long. It62 is not difficult. She is too idle. We have  
 190 long-temps. difficile. trop paresseux. (g)  
 not time. You will never learn. They are too fond of play.  
 temps. 190 125 — 183 aimer à jouer.*

52. If *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they* are joined to another substantive,\* for a nominative to the same verb, or if they are used without a verb to agree with them, they are;

<i>I,</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	<i>He,</i>	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>Thou,</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Eux.</i>
<i>We,</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She,</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You,</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles; ex.</i>

*Mon frère aime votre sœur.*

*My brother loves your sister.*

*Votre sœur aime mon frère.*

*Your sister loves my brother.*

In the first instance, *Frère, brother*, is the nominative of the verb; in the second, it is the object. *Sœur, sister*, in the first instance, is the object of the verb; in the second, it is the nominative; and in both instances, the words are the same.

But it is not so with the Personal, and Relative pronouns. The same substantive, when the object of the verb, is not always expressed by the same word as when it is the agent or nominative; so we do not say,

*Il aime elle, elle aime il;*  
*we say, il l'aime elle l'aime;*

*He loves she, she loves he;*  
*He loves her, she loves him.*

If it be asked why this variation in the pronouns and not in nouns; it may be answered, that the pronouns having been invented to prevent the tiresome repetition of the same noun, if there had been only one word to supply its place, the repetition of that word must have been too frequent, and only half the inconvenience would have been removed.

\* Observe that by *substantive* I do not mean *nouns* only, I mean also the *persons* pronouns; for the word which represents a substantive, is as much a substantive as the word which names it.

† See the *verbs*, page 92, and following.

In conjunction with another substantive :

<i>You and I</i> are ready.	<i>Vous et moi</i> nous sommes prêts.
<i>He and his sister</i> are ready.	<i>Lui et sa sœur</i> sont prêts.
<i>You and they</i> are ready.	<i>Vous et eux</i> vous êtes prêts,
<i>They and their friends</i> are here.	<i>Eux et leurs amis</i> sont ici. (m)

Without a verb to agree with :

Who is ready to go ? <i>I</i> .	Qui est prêt à partir ? <i>moi</i> .
It is <i>I</i> who will go first.	C'est <i>moi</i> qui irai le premier.
It is <i>he</i> who will go first.	C'est <i>lui</i> qui ira le premier.
It is <i>they</i> who will go first.	Ce sont <i>eux</i> qui iront les premiers.

#### EXERCISE.

You and I will learn French. He and I will learn together.  
 127 — apprendre — 127 ensemble.  
 You and they have learned before: My brother and I have begun  
 127 auparavant: 127 commencer  
 to learn it54. He and his sister learn very well. They and their  
 à le. 126 très  
 master always speak french together: Who learns best? He or I?  
 184 126 le mieux ?  
 It62 is I who learn best: It62 is he who learns best.  
 n.b. 128 n.b. 128

53. When a personal pronoun is the agent or *nominative* of several verbs, it is generally repeated with each verb ; as,  
*I* say and maintain that, &c. *Je* dis et *je* soutiens que, &c.  
*He* is poor, and will always be so. *Il* est pauvre, et *il* le sera toujours.\*

#### EXERCISE.

He always promises, but does not keep his word. We have  
 184 promettre, — 180 tenir parole.  
 seen it55, and will see125 it again.  
 vu le . revoir 54 †

#### OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

**ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM.**

Now let us see when *me* is *me* or *moi* ; *thee*, *te* or *toi* ; *him*, *le* or *lui* ; *her*, *la* or *lui* ; *them*, *les*, *leur*, *eux*, *elles*.

(m) The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous* are sometimes added to *Je*, *Tu*, *Nous*, *Vous*, to point out more clearly a contradistinction ; as,  
 You will write and *I* will read. *Vous* écrirez, et *moi* je lirai. (lions.)

You come from Paris, and we are going there. *Vous* venez de Paris, et *nous* nous y allons.  
 N. B. The words, *Myself*, *Thyself*, &c. which are often used by way of emphasis at the end of a sentence ; as, *I* will do it *myself* ; are expressed, *Myself*, *moi-même* ; *Thyself*, *toi-même* ; *Himself*, *lui-même* ; *Herself*, *elle-même* ; *Ourselves*, *nous-mêmes* ; *Yourselves*, *vous-mêmes* ; *Themselves*, *eux-mêmes*, m. *elles-mêmes*, f.

\* If the verbs are in the same tense, and used in the same sense, as in the example, *I* say and maintain, the pronoun may be omitted before the second verb, *Je* dis et soutiens ; but if the verbs are in different tenses, as in the other example, *He* is poor, and will always be so ; or if the verbs are used in different senses, i. e. one affirmatively, and the other negatively, the pronouns must be repeated.

† *Again* is expressed by *re* before *voir*.

The *objective pronouns* are always attended by some *verb* or *preposition* which governs them.

They are placed sometimes *before* the verb, and sometimes *after* it; and it is the place which they keep in the sentence that determines which word is to be used.

The order which the *objective pronouns* keep with the *verb*.

## GENERAL RULE.

54. When the *objective pronouns* *me, thee, us, you, him, &c.* are governed by a verb, place them immediately *before* that verb, and express

<i>Me,</i>	} by <i>Me.</i>	<i>to Him,</i>	} by <i>Lui.</i>
<i>to Me ;</i>		<i>to Her ;</i>	
<i>Thee,</i>	} <i>Te.</i>	<i>to Them ;</i>	<i>Leur.</i>
<i>to Thee ;</i>			
<i>Us,</i>	} <i>Nous.</i>	<i>to It,</i>	} <i>neut. Y.</i>
<i>to Us ;</i>		<i>to Them,</i>	
<i>You,</i>	} <i>Vous.</i>	<i>of It,</i>	} <i>neut. En.</i>
<i>to You ;</i>		<i>of Them,</i>	
<i>Him, It ;</i>	<i>Le.</i>	<i>Him-Herself,</i>	} <i>Se; thus.</i>
<i>Her, It ;</i>	<i>La.</i>	<i>Itself,</i>	
<i>Them ;</i>	<i>Les.</i>	<i>Themselves ;</i>	

He looks at {	<i>me.</i>	<i>Il me regarde</i>
	<i>thee.</i>	<i>Il te regarde.</i>
	<i>us.</i>	<i>Il nous regarde.</i>
	<i>you.</i>	<i>Il vous regarde.</i>
	<i>him, or it.</i>	<i>Il le regarde.</i>
	<i>her, or it.</i>	<i>Il la regarde.</i>
	<i>them.</i>	<i>Il les regarde.</i>

Does he look at <i>me</i> ?	<i>Me regarde-t-il?*</i>
He does not look at <i>me.</i>	<i>Il ne me regarde pas.</i>
Does he not look at <i>me</i> ?	<i>Ne me regarde-t-il pas?</i>

## EXERCISE.

Your brother does not love me. He never comes to see us.

Does he not speak to you, when he meets you? My mother will not  
 — 133 parler (o) , rencontrer ? vouloir (kk)  
 allow me to speak to him. I will write to her. I will scold her  
 permettre de (o) — écrire (o) — gronder  
 for using you so. Do not say (any thing to her (about it). She  
 de traiter ainsi. — dire 125 99 (o) en  
 would use me worse (for it.) She would beat me. If I knew it, I  
 — traiter plus mal en 59 — battre Si savais le,

\* This *t* is added for the sake of melody; see note \* page 76.

would not suffer it. I must<sup>181</sup> reconcile them. I will invite them  
 — souffrir. Il faut que je reconcille — inviter  
 to come to see me. I will speak to them to-day.  
 à venir 173 voir — (e) aujourd'hui.

55. Observe that if the *objective pronouns* are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*, and of a participle past, they must be placed *before* the auxiliary verb, and not between the auxiliary and the participle; thus,

He has spoken	{	to me.	Il m' a parlé.
		to thee.	Il t' a parlé.
		to us.	Il nous a parlé.
		to you.	Il vous a parlé.
		to him, to her.	Il lui a parlé.
		to them.	Il leur a parlé.
		of it, of them.	Il en a parlé.

Has he spoken to me? M' a-t-il parlé?  
 He has not spoken to me. Il ne m' a pas parlé.  
 Has he not spoken to me? Ne m' a-t-il pas parlé? &c.

## EXERCISE.

Have you seen my brother? I have seen him, but I have  
 voir  
 not spoken to him. My mother has forbidden me to speak to him.  
 190 parler (e) défendre de (e)  
 Has he returned you the book which you had lent him? No, he  
 rendre livre 73 aviez prêter \* † 191  
 has not returned it<sup>62</sup> yet.<sup>183</sup> Has he read it<sup>62</sup>? I do not think<sup>221</sup>  
 190 rendre le encore. lire † † — penser  
 he has opened it<sup>62</sup>. I am afraid<sup>221</sup> he 195 has lost it.<sup>62</sup> He has  
 145 ouvrir † — craindre 146 perdre †  
 told me that you have given it him. I have not given it him.  
 dire que donner 62 \* 63 \*  
 It<sup>62</sup> is not mine. I have borrowed it<sup>62</sup> from a friend. He has  
 il 86 emprunter † a  
 asked me for<sup>201</sup> it again.  
 redemander — † ‡

If the pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them* are governed by the imperative of a verb, consider whether the sentence commands, or whether it forbids.‡

The *order* which the *objective pronouns* keep with the *verb*

56. 1st Exception. When the *objective pronouns me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them* are governed by the *imperative* of a

\* See note (f) p. 63

† See note (k) p. 64.

‡ Again is expressed by *re* before *demander*.

§ The verb commands when the action spoken of is to be done; the verb forbids when the action spoken of is not to be done; so, *Wait*, is a command; *Do not wait*, is a forbiddance or prohibition.

verb used in a *commanding* sense; i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them are placed immediately *after* the verb;

In these instances *me* is expressed by *moi*, and *thee* by *toi*.

Wait for me. Get thyself ready.

Attendre 201 Apprêter

57. But if the *imperative* is used in a *forbidding* sense, i. e. if it is attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately *before* the verb, agreeably to the general rule;

Then *me* is expressed by *me*, and *thee* by *te*; ex.

Imperative Commanding, 56 rule.		Imperative Forbidding, 57 rule.	
Look at <i>me</i> .	Regarde-moi.	Ne <i>me</i>	} regarde pas.
thyself.	toi.	Ne <i>te</i>	
Look at <i>us</i> .	Regardez-nous.	Ne <i>nous</i>	} regardez pas.
yourself.	vous.	Ne <i>vous</i>	
Let us look at <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> .	Regardons-le.	Ne <i>le</i>	} regardons pas.
her or <i>it</i> .	la.	Ne <i>la</i>	
them.	les. (a)	Ne <i>les</i>	

do not look at *me*.

#### EXERCISE.

Help<sup>258</sup> me. Do not help me. Help<sup>258</sup> yourself; help him;  
 Aider\* — 190 Servir\* † ; servir ;  
 help her; help them. Do not help him; do not help her; do not  
 ; servir ; servir ; —  
 help them. Wait for me. Do not wait for me. Bring me a clean<sup>32</sup>  
 Attendre\* 201 — 201 Apporter\* blanche  
 plate. Do not give me such a dirty plate. Bring it<sup>62</sup> here. Do not  
 assiette. — si 38 sales<sup>32</sup> \* la ici. —  
 bring it here. Show it him. Do not show it him. Take it. Do  
 62 Montrer\* 62 lui.† 62 163 Prendre 62 —  
 not take it. Hear me. Hear him. Do not hear him. Stop her. Do  
 62. Ecouter\* — Arrêter —  
 not stop her. Let<sup>248</sup> her go. Do not let her go. Let them alone.  
 Laisser aller — 248 tranquilles.

58. 2nd Exception. The *objective pronouns* are not always the object of verbs, they are sometimes governed by a *preposition* which some verbs require to unite them to the substantive which follows them; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, not the object of the verb, it is placed *after* the preposition, and *me* is expressed by *moi*; *thee*, by *toi*; *him*,

(a) With two imperatives governing the same pronouns, to avoid monotony, we say

Donnez-le-moi, ou *me* le vendez. Give it *me* or sell it *me*.  
 Voyez-le, et le consolez. See him, and comfort him.

\* The second person singular of the imperative is seldom used in French, except through familiarity or contempt; the second person plural is used, though speaking to a single person; so instead of saying *Place*, we say *Places*; instead of *Attends*, we say *Attendez*.

† See reflexive verbs, pages 100, 101.

‡ See note (1) page 63.

by *lui*; *her*, by *elle*; *us*, by *nous*; *you*, by *vous*; *them*, masc. by *eux*; *them*, fem. by *elles*; *ex.*

He came *to me*.

*Il vint à moi.*

He complained *of thee*.

*Il se plaignait de toi.*

He applied *to him, to her, to them.* *Il s'adressa à lui, à elle, à eux, &c. (o.*

## EXERCISE.

Come near me. Have you thought of <sup>200</sup> me? I always think  
s'approcher \* de penser à 184 penser

of you. I was coming to you, when they obliged me to go to her.  
à — venir 156 à obliger d'aller à

You are laughing <sup>155</sup> at <sup>200</sup> me. Do you know what she says of him?  
— se moquer\* de — savoir 125 84 dire de ?

He does not care for <sup>200</sup> her nor for what she says of him. They  
— se soucier d' ni de 84

have enquired after you. Have you applied to them? I will not  
237 \* s'informer de 200 237 \* s'adresser à ? vouloir

trust <sup>200</sup> them. What reason have you to mistrust <sup>202</sup> them? I  
me fier à 83 raison de vous méfier d'

do not speak of them.

The order which *several objective pronouns keep together*.

59. When *several objective pronouns* are governed by the same verb, a precedency must be given to some of them.

If, agreeably to the general rule, the pronouns are placed *before* the verb,

(e) Some difficulty arises here with respect to the preposition *A*, which, like the preposition *To*, is generally implied in the pronoun; for we say

Il me donna un livre,	He gave me a book; <i>instead of</i>
Il donna un livre à moi;	He gave a book to me.
Je lui prêtai de l'argent,	I lent him money; <i>instead of</i>
Je prêtai de l'argent à lui;	I lent money to him.

But in some instances this preposition can not be left out; for though we say, He gave me a book; I lent him money; we could not say, He came me; I went him; we must say, He came to me; I went to him.

The verbs which require the preposition *A* to unite them to the pronoun, are the following; 1st, all the *Reflective Verbs*, which, as they always have a pronoun attached to them for their object, can not govern another substantive, without a preposition; as,

Il s'est adressé à moi, à toi, &c.	He has applied to me, to thee, &c.
Ne vous fiez pas à lui, à elle, &c.	Do not trust him, her, &c.

2dly, A few *Nearer Verbs* which also require a preposition to unite them to the pronoun which attends them. The most frequently met with are:

Aller, to go; as,	N'allez pas à lui.	Do not go to him.
Boire, to drink;	Je bois à vous.	I drink to you.
Courir, Accourir, to run;	Il accourt à nous.	He is running to us.
Descendre, to go or come down;	Elle descendit à moi.	She came down to me.
Etre, to be, viz. to belong;	Ceci est à eux.	This belongs to them.
Monter, to go or come up;	Je monterai à elle.	I shall go up to her.
Penser, to think;	Pensez à nous.	Think of us.
Recourir, to have recourse;	Recourez à eux.	Have recourse to them.
Venir, to come,	Ils vinrent à moi.	They came to me.

\* See note † page 205.

Me,	}	have the precedency over <i>le, la, les, y, en</i> .
Nous,		
Te,		
Vous,		
Se	}	have the precedency over <i>lui, leur, y, en</i> .
Le,		
La,		
Les		
Lui,	}	have the precedency over <i>y, en</i> .
Leur		
Y		has the precedency over <i>en</i> ; as,
Will he give him or it to me,	<i>Me le</i>	} <i>donnera-t-il?</i>
her or it to me,	<i>Me la</i>	
them to me?	<i>Me les*</i>	
He promised him or it to us,	<i>Il nous l'</i>	} 136
her or it to us,	<i>Il nous l'</i>	
them to us,	<i>Il nous les</i>	
Will he not lend it to you,	<i>Ne vous le</i>	} <i>prêtera-t-il pas?</i>
her or it to you,	<i>Ne vous la</i>	
them to you?	<i>Ne vous les</i>	
He will send it to me there,	<i>Il me l'y</i>	} <i>enverra.</i>
some to me there, (p)	<i>Il m'y en</i>	
some to you there.	<i>Il vous y en</i>	
He will not send it him or her,	<i>Il ne le lui</i>	} <i>enverra pas.*</i>
any to him, to her, (p)	<i>Il ne lui en</i>	
them to them.	<i>Il ne les leur</i>	

## EXERCISE.

I have something to tell you. What<sup>23</sup> is it? I can not tell it  
 you now. I will tell it you (by and by.) Why will<sup>173</sup> not you  
 tell it me now? I have a letter for you. Your brother has sent it<sup>62</sup>  
 me to bring it you. Where is it? Give it me. Why will<sup>173</sup> not  
 you give it me? If you do not give it me immediately, I will<sup>173</sup> not  
 ask you for<sup>201</sup> it again, and I will tell him<sup>162</sup> of it. Here it is<sup>247</sup>.  
 Shew it<sup>62</sup> me. I will return it to you presently. I have brought you  
 some fruit too. Give us some. What<sup>63</sup>! you had promised it to us,  
 aussi. (p) Quoi! aviez promettre <sup>62</sup> —

\* See, page 62, 63, a table which shows how to arrange several pronouns together.  
 (p) Some, any, implying of it, of them, are rendered by *en*.

† See note (K) p. 64.

‡ We do not say in French, *Demander quelqu'un pour une chose*, to ask somebody for a thing; the thing is always the object of the verb, and the person the object of a preposition; we say, *Demander une chose à quelqu'un*, to ask a thing to somebody, the same as we say, *Donner une chose à quelqu'un*, to give a thing to somebody. Nor do we say, *Dire une personne d'une chose*, to tell a person of a thing, we say, *Dire une chose à une personne*, to tell a thing to a person.

and you give it to them. I offered<sup>136</sup> it to you first and you would  
 62 — at offert 62 — 55 premièrement avez<sup>136</sup>  
 not have it. I will send you some to-morrow. Do not forget to send  
 voulu 55. — envoyer (p) demain. — oublier de  
 me some, for it is long<sup>246</sup> since I 196 have eat any. I will<sup>70</sup> not.  
 (p) , car il y a long-temps que mangé (p) n.e.

60. But if, agreeably to the 56th rule, the pronouns are placed *after* the verb, in which instances *moi, toi* are used instead of *me, te*, then

Le,	} have the precedency over <i>moi, toi</i> ; as,	
La,		
Les,		
Y		
Send him or it to me.		Envoyez <i>le-moi</i> .
her or it to me.		<i>la-moi</i> .
them to me.		<i>les-moi</i> .
them to me there.		<i>les-y-moi</i> .

## EXERCISE.

Give it me. Bring her to me. Send them to me there. Send  
 Donner<sup>125</sup> Amener — Envoyer — y (x) p. 58.  
 some to me there.

61. Observe also that if *me, thee* after an imperative, are followed by *some, of it, of them*, they are not expressed by *moi, toi*, as above; *me* some, *me* of it, &c. are expressed by *m'en*; *thee* some, &c. are expressed by *t'en*, whether they come before or after the verb; ex.

He has sent *me* some. Il *m'en* a envoyé. send *me* some. envoyez-*m'en*.  
 Dost thou remember *it*? *t'en* souviens-tu? remember *it*, souviens *t'en*.

## EXERCISE.

He gave me some. Give me some. He put<sup>137</sup> me (in mind) (of it.)  
 donner (p) (p) faire souvenir en  
 Put me (in mind) of it. He brought thee some. Recall to thyself  
 Faites souvenir 50 apporter (p) Rappeler  
 the difficulties of it. (See R. 5, p. 91)  
 difficulté 50

## REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

62. As there are only *two* genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the neuter pronouns *it, they, them* must be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles, le, la, les*, the same as *he, she, they, him, her, them*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say,

Of a man or a coach;

Il vient; je le vois,

He or it is coming; I see him or it.

Of a woman or a watch;

(See note x, page 64.)

Elle est belle; regardez la.

She or it is fine; look at her or it.



N. B. *It*, is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned before ; as,

*It* is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

In these instances, *It* is always expressed by *il*, or by *ce*.

*It*, is expressed by *il*, if the verb is followed by an adjective ; as,

*Il* is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c

*Il* est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, à propos, &c.

*It*, is expressed by *ce*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective ; as,

Is *it* you ? *Il* is he. *Il* is his son. *Il* is a shameful thing.

Est-*ce* vous ? C'est lui. C'est son fils. C'est une chose honteuse  
not, Est-*il* vous ? *Il* est lui. *Il* est son fils, means *he* is his son.

## EXERCISE.

Look at that tree; it is well blossomed, yet it produces no  
Regarder 201 arbre; fleuri, cependant produire 190  
fruit. I will cut it down, if it does not bear fruit this year. (These  
abattre, (x) p. 64\*, — porter année. 247  
are) very fine trees, but they are too young to bear fruit yet! 183.  
très 33, trop jeune 29 pour déjà. n.s.  
They do not bear fruit, when they are so young. (That is) a fine  
— si 29 247  
flower. It is a rose. Will you have 174 it? How sweet it smells!  
fleur. 65 Vouloir — (x) p. 64. 185 bon † sentir!  
I will take it to my mother. She is 183 fond of roses. Take  
173 256 (x) p. 64. — tant aimer — Prendre  
some of these cherries; they are very good. They are not  
96 (de) cerise; très 29  
quite ripe 29 yet 183 They will be better in another week.  
tout à fait mûr encore. n.s. (x) p. 56. 213 une semaine.  
It 62 is very pleasant to have a garden near one's house. It 62 is the  
n.s. agréable d' jardin près de sa n.s.  
greatest 33 pleasure I have. Was it 62 you who sent 128 us some fruit  
44 plaisir (s) 50 Etait n.s. envoyer 137  
the other day? No, it 62 was my brother. I thought 221 it 62 was  
autre jour! Non, n.s. 140 penser 140 n.s.  
you. Did you like 137 it 54? Yes, it was very nice.  
— trouver bon † 140 bon.

63. Though *lui* and *leur* may be said of beings that have life, such as *brutes* and *plants*; as,

That tree is withered, give *it* some water.

Cet arbre est flétri, donnez *lui* de l'eau;

They can not be said of lifeless beings, commonly called

\* To cut is Couper ; To cut down is Abattre, not Couper en bas.

† Sweet is here used adverbially, so is Bon, and it does not require any agreement

things; (*q*) in speaking of things, to *it*, to *them* must be expressed by *Y*; as,

She loves reading, she gives all her time *to it*.

Elle aime la lecture, elle y donne tout son temps.

38

## EXERCISE.

Take the horses into the stable, and bring them <sup>56</sup> some hay. <sup>This</sup>  
<sup>256</sup> tree is <sup>dying</sup>, <sup>155</sup> <sup>gives</sup> <sup>163</sup> it a little <sup>water</sup>. <sup>Most</sup> <sup>men</sup>  
 arbre — se mourir, donner <sup>56</sup> peu eau. La plupart des  
 worship love; they sacrifice every thing to it. Geography <sup>is</sup> a  
 adorer <sup>130</sup> amour; sacrifier <sup>107</sup> 54. Géographie  
 pleasant study; you should give some time to it. You do not pay  
 agréable <sup>33</sup> étude; <sup>176</sup> \* temps <sup>54</sup> faire  
 sufficient attention to it. I want to learn mathematics; but I can not  
 assez <sup>54</sup> 266 mathématique; (<sup>kk</sup>)  
 apply to them. I have not time to stick to them.  
 m'appliquer <sup>59</sup> de m'attacher <sup>59</sup>

64. *Lui, elle, eux, elles*, after a preposition, are said only of persons; in speaking of brutes or things, the preposition must be changed into some adverb which implies the meaning of both the preposition and pronoun; as,

Take this horse, and get *upon it*.

Prenez ce cheval, et montez *dessus*, not *sur lui*. (*q*)

If an *adverb* can not be found to supply the place of the *preposition*,† give another turn to the sentence, by which the *preposition* will disappear; as,

He is come *with it*; Il l' a apporté, i. e. he has brought *it*.  
 not, Il est venu avec *lui*, which would imply a *person*, not a *thing*.

## EXERCISE.

If men knew <sup>140</sup> virtue, they would burn with love for it, and <sup>†</sup>  
 connaître , bruler d' pour ,  
 own that (there is) no real happiness without it. That chair is  
 avouer que 246 vrai † bonheur sans (bb) chaise

\* See note † page 183.

(*q*) Except those that are generally personified, such as *Heaven, Fortune, Providence, the Elements, some Virtues and Vices*; as,

Love is the tyrant of reason, yet there are people who sacrifice every thing to it.  
*L'amour est le tyran de la raison, cependant il y a des gens qui lui sacrifient tout.*

Or when in a *metaphorical sense*, we attribute to *things*, what in a *proper sense* can only be attributed to *persons*; so, speaking of a *Sword*, we say;

*Je lui dois la vie, I owe my life to it.*

Of a *book*; *Ces livres me contentent cher, mais je leur dois mon instruction.*

These books cost me dear, but I owe my instruction to them.

But in speaking of the same *things* without giving rational attributes to them, we could not use *LUI, LEUR*, we must use *Y*; as,

It is an old sword, but I have got a new hilt put to it

*C'est une vieille épée, mais j'y ai fait mettre une garde neuve.*

† You find in the dictionaries the words which are both *prepositions* and *adverbs*.

‡ Would is here understood in english.

† Put this adjective before the noun

broken, do not sit<sup>57</sup> upon it. The rails are newly painted,  
 rempui<sup>58</sup> — s'asseoir<sup>\*</sup> dessus barreau fraîchement peint<sup>29</sup>,  
 do not lean<sup>57</sup> against them. Stand<sup>56</sup> (by the side) of them. I have  
 — s'appuyer<sup>\*</sup> contre Se tenir<sup>\*</sup> à côté  
 made a terrace in my garden, a grotto under it, and planted trees all  
 terrasse 213 , grotte dessous, planté arbre  
 round it. I am going to make a fountain (in the) middle of it, and a  
 autour 155 172 d'eau 25 jet au milieu  
 canal through it. Have you ever been in it?  
 à travers. jamais dedans !

65. *He, she, it, they* coming with the verb *be*, followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by *ce* ; as

*He* is an officer.

*C'est* un officier.

*She* is a seamstress.

*C'est* une couturière.

*They* are merchants.

*Ce* sont des négociants.

If the substantive which follows the verb, denotes *rank, state, trade, or profession*, *he, she, they* may be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles*, but the article must be left out ; as,

*Il* est officier. *elle* est couturière. *Ils* sont négociants.

not, *Il* est un officier. *elle* est une couturière. *Ils* sont des négociants. (see 23 rule.)

#### EXERCISE.

Do you know that gentleman who is coming (this way?) He is  
 — 133 connaître (bb) monsieur — venir<sup>155</sup> (par ici?)  
 a philosopher. He is a very learned man. That is his wife who  
 philosophe. très savant C'est là femme  
 is with him. She is a very haughty<sup>32</sup> woman. Is that their house?  
 58 hautain<sup>29</sup> femme. Est-ce là ?  
 Yes, it is. It is a very good<sup>29</sup> house. They are very respectable  
 Oui, 70 32 32  
 people.  
 gens.

66. *He, she, they, him, her, them* are sometimes used without reference to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man, woman, or people* understood ; in this sense they are expressed,

*He,* } by *celui* ; *She,* } by *celle* ; *They,* } by *ceux* ; as,  
*Him,* } *Her,* } *Them,* }

*He* who can live dishonored, does not deserve to live, i. e. *the man who*  
*Celui qui peut vivre déshonoré ne mérite pas de vivre.*

I have met *her* whom you wished so much to see, i. e. *the woman whom*  
*J'ai rencontré celle que vous souhaitiez si fort de voir.*

N. B. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux*, and the relative *qui, que, dont* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words are sometimes in english ; they must be placed together ;

\* See the imperative of a reflexive verb, p. 100.

*They are mistaken who think that riches make men happy.*

*Ceux qui pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux se trompent.*

*They who think that riches make men happy are mistaken.\**

## EXERCISE.

Happy he who lives, (i. e. the man who lives) contented with his lot.  
 Heureux vivre content 200 sort.  
 Providence never abandons him who does not abandon himself.  
 190 abandonner — s'abandonner lui-même.  
 She who refuses a husband, is not always sure to find another.  
 refuser mari, sûr en70 trouver un autre.  
 He is a flatterer who praises men for virtues which they have  
 flatteur louer des (o) p. 66.  
 not. He can not be happy whose happiness depends upon other  
 saurait 192 74 bonheur dépendre des autres  
 people. They are not always happy who seem to be so.†  
 —39 paraître — — le

67. *His, her, their* are also sometimes used in the same sense as the above pronouns, i. e. implying the words *man, women, or people* understood, and are then expressed,

*His*, by *de celui*; *her*, by *de celle*; *their*, by *de ceux*; as,

We always blame *their* conduct who do not succeed.

On blâme toujours la conduite de *ceux* qui ne réussissent pas.

i. e. We blame always the conduct of *those*, viz. of the people who do not succeed.

## EXERCISE.

Every body blames his manners, i. e. the manners of him, who acts  
 106 blâmer manière , agir  
 without modesty. I would not trust her virtue, who does not care  
 modestie. vouloir me fier à vertu — se soucier  
 for her reputation. Their labours do not always succeed, who take  
 de travail — 184 réussir prendre  
 their measures best.‡  
 mesure le mieux.

68. When an *objective* pronoun is governed by *several verbs*, that pronoun must be *repeated* with every verb by which it is governed; as,

She loves and esteems you.  
 peak or write to her.

Elle vous aime et vous estime.  
 Parlez lui ou lui écrivez.

## EXERCISE.

He saw and heard me. He loves and esteems you. I hate and  
 voir entendre 54 aimer estimer 54 haïr  
 despise him. I entreat and conjure you.  
 mépriser 54 prier conjurer 54

\* These sentences may also be expressed without changing the order of the words; thus,

Ceux-là se trompent qui pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux, or C'est se tromper que de penser que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux.

But these expressions are more adapted to poetry and oratory, than to conversation

† Turn this sentence in French; *They who seem happy, are not always so.*

‡ Turn; The labours of those who take best their measures, do not always succeed

69. It sometimes happens that the verb by which the *objective* pronouns are governed, is preceded by *another verb*; as,  
I *can* not do it; He *will* not give it me; You *may* lend it to him.

In these instances, it is better to place the pronouns *before* the *last* verb than before the *first*; so, instead of saying,

Je ne *le* puis pas faire; say, Je ne puis pas *le* faire.  
Il ne *me le* veut pas donner; Il ne veut pas *me le* donner.\*

EXERCISE.

Will you help me to do it? Can not you do it yourself? He  
173 aider 169 faire 54? 192 (m) n. b. ?  
wishes to marry her. She will not speak to him. She can not  
souhaiter 173 épouser 54 vouloir (kk) (o) 54 192  
bear him.  
souffrir 54.

70. *Le, la, les, en, y* are often used when the corresponding words are not requisite in english; for example, in answer to these questions;

Are you Mr. B? Etes-vous monsieur B?  
Is that your house? Est-ce là votre maison?  
Are these your gloves? Sont-ce ici vos gants?

It would not be sufficient in french, as it is in english, to answer with the auxiliary verb only, and say,

Oui, je suis; yes, I am.  
Non, ce n'est pas; no, it is not. Oui, ce sont; yes, they are.

We are obliged to *add* one of the *above pronouns*, and say;

Oui, je *le* suis. Non, ce ne *l'est* pas. Oui, ce *les* sont. (r)  
You have got fine apples. Vous avez de belles pommes.  
Will you have *some*? (of them). En voulez-vous quelques-unes?  
Yes, give me *a few*, i. e. (of them). Oui, donnez m'en quelques-unes.

N. B. And if the *auxiliary verb* with which the question is asked is attended by *another verb*, that *verb* must also be repeated; as,

Has he done it? L'a-t-il fait?  
No, he *has* not, i. e. (done it). Non, il ne l'a pas fait.  
Do you remember it? Vous en souvenez-vous?  
Yes, I *do*, i. e. (remember it). Oui, je m'en souviens.  
Are you going to the play? Allez-vous à la comédie?  
No, I *am* not, i. e. (going there). Non, je n'y vais pas.

EXERCISE.

Is this the master of the house? Yes, he is; i. e. *the master*. He  
Est-ce ici maître ? , (r) ;

\* This rule is not strictly adhered to by French writers, especially ancient authors; however it makes the sentence clearer, and it is the surest for a foreigner, as there are no exceptions to this rule, and there are several to the other, which he might be liable to mistake.

(r) If the answer is made with the pronouns *He, She, They*, relating to persons, *lui, elle, eux, elles* added to the verb, render the other words unnecessary;  
Is that your brother? Yes, *he* is. Is that your sister? No, *she* is not.  
Est-ce là votre frère? Oui, c'est lui. Est-ce là votre sœur? Non, ce n'est pas elle.

is rich and I am not; i. e. *rich*. He has friends and I have not; i. e.  
 riche (m) ; ami (m) ;  
 any friends. Are these the books of which you were speaking ?  
 (p) Sont-ce-ici 74 135  
 Yes, they are; i. e. *the books*. Is your brother at home? No, he is  
 65 134 au logis! 191,  
 not; i. e. *there*. Have you seen your brother lately? No, I  
 190, (n) p. 58. vu depuis peu? 191,  
 have not, i. e. *seen him*. When you see him, tell him that I want to  
 + verrez, dire lui 56 (bb) 209 172  
 speak to him. I will; i. e. *tell it him*. I do not know what he wants;  
 (e) + ; savoir 84 vouloir;  
 do you? i. e. *know it?* No, I do not; i. e. *know it*; If I did; 140 i. e.  
 + 70m.n. + 70m.n.  
 know it, I would not have asked you about it.  
 70m.n., demander — 50.

71. If the pronoun is added to represent a noun, it must be one of the words *le, la, les*, agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; as,

Are you <i>the son</i> of Mr. A?	Êtes-vous le <i>fil</i> de monsieur A?
Yes, I am, i. e. ( <i>the son</i> ).	Oui, je <i>le</i> suis.
Are you <i>the daughter</i> of Mrs. B?	Êtes-vous la <i>fil</i> le de madame B?
No, I am not, ( <i>the daughter</i> ).	Non, je ne <i>la</i> suis pas.
Are these <i>your gloves</i> ?	Sont-ce ici <i>vos gants</i> ?
Yes, they are, i. e. ( <i>my gloves</i> ).	Oui ce <i>les</i> sont.

## EXERCISE.

Are you the brother of that lady? Yes, I am. Are you the sister  
 (bb) ;  
 of that gentleman? No, I am not. Are these your horses? Yes,  
 (bb) monsieur! Sont-ce ici cheval!  
 they are.  
 63

72. But if the word to be represented is an adjective, an adverb, or a whole sentence, *le* is used without regard to gender or number; as,

Are you <i>married</i> , sir?	Êtes-vous <i>mar</i> ié, monsieur?
Yes, I am, i. e. ( <i>married</i> ).	Oui, je <i>le</i> suis.
Are you <i>married</i> , madam?	Êtes-vous <i>mar</i> iée madame?
No, I am not, i. e. (I am not so).	Non, je ne <i>le</i> suis pas.
Are you <i>contented</i> , ladies?	Êtes-vous <i>con</i> tentées, mesdames?
Yes, we are, i. e. (we are so).	Oui, nous <i>les</i> sommes.

## EXERCISE.

Sir, are you ready? Yes, I am; i. e. *ready*. Are you ready, Mad-  
 prêt! ; 29 ,

\* You do not repeat the noun or adjective, which is understood in English, but you must add one of the above pronouns to the verb, as long as the same subject is continued.

† These signs, or auxiliary verbs which represent the principal verb in English, have no meaning in French, you must repeat the verb itself.

‡ See note †, page 207.

am? No, Sir, I am not; i. e. *ready*. Are your brothers returned? 158?  
 No, they are not; i. e. *returned*. 134 205?

73. *En, y*, which are generally applied to things, may, in answer to a question or a command, be applied to persons, *en* instead of *de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*; *y* instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; as,

Remember *me*. Souvenez-vous de *moi*.  
 I will, i. e. (*remember you*). Je m'en souviendrai.  
 Have you thought of *us*? Avez-vous pensé à *nous*?  
 Yes, we have, i. e. (*thought of you*). Oui, nous y avons pensé.

## EXERCISE.

Were you speaking of *me*? Yes, I was; i. e. *speaking of you*.  
 — 138 155 58? \*;  
 Do you care for her? No, I do not; i. e. *care for her*. Will you  
 — se soucier de 56? 191, \*; 173  
 not trust 202 him? No, indeed, I will not; i. e. *trust him*. Have 237  
 vous fier à 58? 191, en vérité, \*;  
 you not applied to them? Yes, we have 237; i. e. *have applied to*  
 s'adresser 58? \*;  
 them.

## Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.†

Your sister has not used 257 me well. What has she done to you?  
 n'en a pas usé avec 183 n.s. 83 faire (o)?  
 We were at the ball last night; I asked 253 her to dance with me; she  
 140 bal 235; prier 137 168 danser;  
 refused me, and after she had refused me, she danced with another.  
 refuser 137, après que out refusé, 137  
 She mentioned it to me this morning. She is very sorry (for it).  
 a 136 parlé en (o) (66) 234 fâché 39 en  
 She desired me to tell you so. She did 140 not intend to offend you.  
 a 136 prié 168 dire le 54 avoir dessein 168 offenser  
 She had promised to dance with him before you had 218 asked her.  
 avait promettre 168 avant que eussiez demander lui.  
 She ought 177 then to have told me so. She forgot 137 it. She did  
 aurait donc — dû dire le 54 oublier —  
 not think (of it) I beg you will forgive 203 her. You had pro-  
 penser 137 y prier † de pardonner lui. aviez  
 mised me that, when you should come to see me, you would bring  
 que, quand venir 172 voir — 256  
 me your children. Why did 136 you not bring them with you?  
 Pourquoi avez amenés?  
 I could not bring them to-day. I will 173 bring them the next  
 ai 136 pu 256 aujourd'hui. — 256 prochaine

\* See † page 214.

† See compound tenses of a reflexive verb used interrogatively, page 101

‡ See note \* p. 188.

† Turn in French, *I beg you to forgive her*.

time I come<sup>149</sup>. Bring them to me as soon as you can.<sup>149</sup> I will.<sup>70</sup>  
 fois<sup>221</sup> viendrai. <sup>256</sup> (e) aussitôt que pouvoir. n.s.  
 They have desired me to buy<sup>163</sup> them fruit, and to send it to them,  
<sup>252</sup> <sup>168</sup> acheter (i) p. 63. , <sup>168</sup> envoyer (e)  
 but I will take it to them myself. I long to see them. It is so  
<sup>256</sup> 62 (o) (n) n.s. de voir Il y a si  
 long<sup>246</sup> since I have seen them. They will be very glad<sup>29</sup> to see  
 long temps que <sup>196</sup> vus<sup>150</sup> bien aise <sup>168</sup>  
 you. They are very fond of you. They are always talking<sup>155</sup> of  
 — fort <sup>183</sup> aimer — <sup>155</sup> <sup>183</sup> parler  
 you. You are so good<sup>†</sup> to them. They like you better than their  
 avez tant de bonté pour aimer (n) p. 56.  
 uncle. He is incessantly teasing<sup>155</sup> them. They will<sup>173</sup> not stay  
 oncle. — sans cesse <sup>183</sup> tourmenter vouloir rester  
 with him. They would rather come to me or go to you. They are  
 aiment mieux (o) (e) 65  
 very amiable<sup>32</sup> children. I often think of them. I am much obliged  
 aimable<sup>32</sup> <sup>184</sup> penser <sup>200</sup> bien obligé  
 to you. You have got a nice stick. Let<sup>248</sup> me look at it. Will  
 (e) <sup>270</sup> joli bâton. Laisser voir — Vouloir  
 you have it? I make you a present (of it). I thank you. I will<sup>173</sup>  
<sup>174</sup> faire <sup>24</sup> en remercier vouloir  
 not deprive you of it. I do not care (for it). I have bought it with  
 (à) priver — se soucier en acheter dans  
 the intention of giving<sup>154</sup> it away. Have you got another? Yes,  
 dessein donner — En<sup>70</sup> <sup>270</sup> un autre !  
 I have.<sup>70</sup> Is this your new<sup>32</sup> watch? Yes, it is. It is silver; I  
 n.s. Est-ce ici neuve montre ! , ce <sup>70</sup> 62 d'argent;  
 thought<sup>221</sup> it was gold. My uncle has promised me a gold one, if I  
 pensais <sup>140</sup> 62 <sup>140</sup> d'or. oncle d'or en<sup>70</sup>,  
 get a prize this year. I wish<sup>221</sup> you may.<sup>70</sup> n.s. Ah!  
 remporter prix (b) <sup>233</sup> souhaiter en remporter un. Ah !  
 is it<sup>62</sup> you? How glad I am to see you! If you had not called upon  
 n.s. ! <sup>185</sup> aise <sup>168</sup> voir ! aviez <sup>266</sup>  
 me now, I would have called upon you this afternoon. I wanted<sup>260</sup>  
 à présent, <sup>266</sup> (b) après midi. <sup>140</sup>  
 to see you. We go to the play to-night; will you come with us?  
 aller comédie<sup>†</sup> <sup>235</sup> ; † venir ?  
 Will your cousin<sup>134</sup> be there? I think<sup>221</sup> she will<sup>70</sup>. I will go; for  
 — † cousine f. (n) p. 66. penser n.s. † ; car  
 I long (very much) to see her. She is a most amiable<sup>32</sup> young lady.  
 † fort <sup>168</sup> voir <sup>65</sup> des plus aimables jeune demoiselle. †  
 You do not know (how much) I love and esteem her. I always think  
 — savoir combien aimer estimer <sup>184</sup> penser

\* See Long, p. 163.

† To be so good, to be so kind, are expressed by *Avoir tant de bonté*; *Be so good, be so kind*, in the imperative, *Ayez la bonté*; not *Soyez si bon*.

‡ *Comédie* in French, does not mean *Comedy* only, but is said of any kind of plays acted upon a stage, and also of the *house* itself where such plays are acted; you may also express the word *Play by Spectacle*. *Théâtre* in French is generally understood of that part of the house called the *stage*; yet it is said also of the *house* itself.

§ See note \* page 130.

¶ See the impersonal verb *long*, p. 168.

‡ *Demoiselle* is said of all ladies who have never been married, whatever their age may be; *Dame* is said of all ladies who are or have been married.



of her, but I (am afraid) <sup>221</sup> she never thinks of me. What reason  
 200 , craindre 190 200 82 raison  
 have you to think so? Because, when I meet her, she does not  
 168 le54! Parceque, rencontrer, — \*  
 take any notice of me. You should <sup>176</sup> speak to her. You should  
 faire aucune attention à devoir (o) 176  
 call upon her. I (am afraid) of offending <sup>154</sup> her. I know <sup>221</sup> she has  
 (kk) 206 craindre déplaît 202 lui. savoir  
 a great regard for you, but I can not say that she loves you.  
 — beaucoup de respect pour , (kk) dire (bb) n.b.  
 Yet, I recollect that one day, as I was speaking of you to her,  
 Cependant, se rappeler un jour, comme 155 (o)  
 she asked me if I knew <sup>140</sup> you well. I told her that I did, <sup>70</sup>  
 demander connaître bien. dire (1) p. 63. (bb) n.b. † n.b.  
 and she seemed <sup>137</sup> pleased (at it.) If she is at the theatre to night,  
 paraître bien aise en à comédie † 235  
 I will tell her what you have told me. I shall be much obliged  
 84 bien obligé  
 to you, if you do. I see a gentleman in that box yonder who  
 (o) , † monsieur (bb) loge là-bas 75  
 owes me (a great deal) of money, but I dare not ask him for it, for  
 devoir — beaucoup argent, oser † , de  
 fear of giving him pain; yet I am in great want (of it;) and  
 peur faire <sup>154</sup> <sup>162</sup> peine; cependant, avoir grand besoin en;  
 as (you are acquainted with him,) I will be obliged to you, if you  
 comme vous vous connaissez \*\* , (o)  
 will tell him so, the first time you have an opportunity to  
 144 dire (1) p. 63. le54 fois (s) 142 24 occasion 168  
 mention it to him. Who, Mr. A? I know him very well. He is  
 parler en (o) Qui, Mons. A? connaître très bien.  
 a very honest man; he will pay you, you may be sure of it. I  
 honnête (i); payer , pouvoir sûr  
 answer for him as for myself. I suppose <sup>221</sup> he has forgotten it.  
 répondre 200 comme 200 moi-même. s'imaginer oublier  
 My sisters were talking this morning of going <sup>154</sup> to drink tea at  
 155 parler (bb) matin aller 172 prendre thé  
 your <sup>208</sup> house this afternoon. Shall you be there? Certainly, I shall <sup>70</sup>.  
 n.b. après midi. (x) p. 58. Certainement, n.b.  
 I should not like to lose that opportunity of seeing them. I want to  
 aimer 169 (bb) occasion 154 260  
 return <sup>265</sup> them the book which <sup>74</sup> they have lent me, and to thank  
 n.b. (1) p. 63. (o) p. 66. prêter , remercier

\* Express *Not* by *ne* only, before the verb, as *aucune* which follows it, supplies the place of *pas* or *point*.

† You may express *I did* by *Oui* only, or you may repeat the verb *Connaitre*, and say, I did know you.

‡ See note † p. 216.

§ Here you may express *Do* by the verb *Faire*, or you may repeat the verb and the pronouns, if you tell it her.

¶ Turn; I see in that box yonder a gentleman who, &c.

¶ See note ‡, p. 207.

\*\* Leave out with him; as *Vous vous connaissez* means, you are acquainted with each other.

them (for it.) I have been told that one of them is going to be  
on 92 une \* — 155 173  
 married<sup>261</sup>. Is it true? They<sup>90</sup> talk of it, but I do not know whether  
se marier. vrai? n.s. parler, si  
 it is true or not. Ask <sup>162</sup>her. I dare not ask her such a thing;  
ou non. Demander le (i) p. 63. oser (i) p. 63. 38 chose;  
 she would be angry with me. I met<sup>137</sup> them walking together the  
fâché<sup>29</sup> 200 rencontrer à la promenade ensemble  
 other day, and I related<sup>137</sup> to them what had<sup>238</sup> happened to us,  
autre, raconter (o) 84 était arriver (o)  
 after we had left<sup>159</sup> them; they laughed (at it) (very much.) They  
après que 137 quittées; \* rire<sup>137</sup> .en beaucoup.  
 told<sup>137</sup> me they wished<sup>140</sup> that they had been with us. I also<sup>184</sup>  
dire<sup>221</sup> \* souhaiter (an) aussi  
 showed<sup>137</sup> them the letter which you have written to me, desiring me  
montrer (i) p. 63. (o) p. 66. écrire<sup>159</sup> (o), pour prier  
 not<sup>190</sup> to mention it to them, for fear<sup>218</sup> your father (should come) to  
n.s. 168 parler en (o), de pour que 195 vint à  
 know of it; but I requested them not<sup>190</sup> to mention it to him. Have  
savoir — le; prier 137 n.s. de parler en (o)  
 they mentioned it to you? No, they have not<sup>70</sup>. They only<sup>184</sup>  
en (o) 191, \* n.s. \* seulement  
 told<sup>136</sup> me that they had met you, and that you had<sup>237</sup> walked (a  
out dit. (bb) n.s. \* avaient, étiez se promener  
 little way) with them. They were (very well) pleased<sup>29</sup> with you. I  
un peu \* \* très — content n.s. 200  
 was not less so<sup>54</sup> with them. They have invited me to come and  
moins le d' \* \* inviter 169 venir (an)  
 spend an evening with them. I intend<sup>125</sup> to pay them<sup>162</sup> a visit  
371 234 avec \* avoir dessein 168 rendre (i) p. 63.  
 soon <sup>183</sup>. Pray give my love to them, and tell them <sup>162</sup> so. I will <sup>70</sup>.  
bientôt. n.s. faire amitiés (o) †, (i) p. 63. le n.s.  
 Is not your country <sup>25</sup>house finished yet<sup>183</sup>? No, it is not, and I do  
de campagne 134 finir<sup>158</sup> n.s. 191, \* 70, —  
 not know when it will be. My father does not like it now. He says  
savoir quand \* 70 — aimer \* (x) p. 64.  
 that it is too near the road. He wants<sup>260</sup> to sell it, and<sup>204</sup>  
(bb) n.s. \* trop près de route. avoir envie 168 \* (x) p. 64. d'en<sup>70</sup>  
 build another a little further in the country. I wonder he does  
bâtir 120 un peu loin<sup>41</sup> 213 230 s'étonner 221 —  
 not like it; it seems<sup>125</sup> a good house, and it is in a pleasant  
\* \* avoir apparence — †, \* 213 agréable<sup>23</sup>  
 situation. He is going<sup>155</sup> to add a terrace to it, and make a moat  
— aller 173 ajouter terrasse, fossé  
 round it. Have you been in the park? They<sup>90</sup> are making a pond  
autour 64 parc? n.s. — faire<sup>155</sup> étang  
 in the middle of it. (Here is) some fruit. Will you have<sup>174</sup> any?  
milieu 64 247 — (p)  
 I shall be obliged to you, if you will give me some. Take some  
obligé (o), 144 (p) Prendre (p)

\* Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.

† Express this sentence thus: *I pray you to give my love to them, and to tell them &c.*

‡ Turn this sentence thus: *It has a good appearance.*

Take some more. (There<sup>246</sup> is) plenty in the garden. We have  
 (p) davantage. en 70 abondance 213 jardin en 70  
 (so much) that we do not<sup>193</sup> know what to do (with it.) Have you  
 tant (bb) n.b. — n.b. que 172 faire 200 \* en.  
 been where I told<sup>136</sup> you? No, I have not<sup>70</sup>. Why do not you go?  
 être où ai dit 191. n.b. Pourquoi — y 70 133  
 Are you not ready yet<sup>183</sup>? Yes, I am. Is your sister ready? I  
 133 prêt encore n.b. 70 134 29  
 (am afraid) she is not. Go and tell her<sup>163</sup> to (get ready) as fast as  
 craindre 221 146 70 Aller (na) dire (i) p. 63 168 s'apprêter 43 vite 43  
 she can.<sup>142</sup> Is this the book of which you were speaking to me?  
 pourra. Est-ce ici 74 155 (o)  
 Yes, it is. Have you read it? Yes, I have<sup>70</sup>. Is it entertaining? Yes,  
 70 lire n.b. amusant?  
 very. Read it. You know Mr. B; do you not<sup>282</sup>? Yes, I  
 beaucoup. connaître Monsieur; n'est-ce pas? Oui,  
 do<sup>70</sup>. He is a very clever young man, but I (am afraid<sup>195</sup>) he is a  
 n.b. 65 très habile<sup>32</sup> jeune craindre 221 146 un  
 little (too much) addicted to gaming. Has he ever asked you for  
 peu trop adonné jeu. jamais †  
 money? Yes, he has.<sup>70</sup> Did<sup>136</sup> you lend him<sup>162</sup> any? Yes, I  
 argent? n.b. Avez prêté (i) p. 63. (p)  
 136 did<sup>70</sup>. I am very sorry (for<sup>200</sup> it,) for I do not think that he will  
 ai n.b. fâché en, car — (bb) n.b.  
 ever return it to you. Do you think he will<sup>70</sup>? Yes, I do<sup>70</sup>. He is  
 rendre<sup>145</sup> (o) — 221 145 n.b. n.b. 65  
 a very worthy<sup>32</sup> young man. I wish<sup>221</sup> you would recommend him  
 de beaucoup de mérite 180 vouloir recommander  
 to some of your friends who could serve him. I will<sup>70</sup>. I esteem him  
 96 pût servir n.b. estimer  
 (very much) myself, and I beg you by all that is dear to you, not<sup>190</sup>  
 fort (m) n.b. supplier partout ce qui cher (o), n.b.  
 to mention to him what<sup>84</sup> I have said to you, for I would never  
 de parler de (o) (o) p. 66. (o), car 190  
 pardon you for it. I will<sup>70</sup> not. Only<sup>184</sup> tell him<sup>162</sup>, when you  
 pardonner † n.b. Seulement (i) p. 63.  
 see<sup>142</sup> him, that I shall be much obliged to him, if he will do me the  
 voir (bb) n.b. bien obligé (o), 144 faire  
 favour that he has promised me. I will tell him<sup>162</sup> so<sup>54</sup>. I like them  
 grâce 74 promettre<sup>159</sup> (i) p. 63. le aimer 66  
 who show themselves such as they are. (So do I.) Tell him<sup>162</sup> to  
 montrer se tels que Et moi aussi. (i) p. 63. 168  
 call upon me as soon as he can<sup>142</sup>. I will<sup>70</sup>. Now, I must wish you  
 266 43 tôt 43 pouvoir. n.b. A présent, 181 souhaiter  
 good morning. Come and see us again soon. You may<sup>178</sup> be sure  
 234 n.b. Venir — (na) revoir † bientôt. pouvoir sûr  
 that I will<sup>70</sup>. I will come as often as I can, whilst I am so near  
 (bb) n.b. n.b. 43 43 142, pendant que 142 près de  
 you. I hope you will<sup>70</sup>.  
 221 n.b.

\* With is implied in the pronoun en.

† See note †, page 207.

‡ Re prefixed to a verb, expresses the word again.

## SECT. II.

## RELATIVE OR DISTINCTIVE PRONOUN

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.

QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

74. When *who, whom, whose, that, which* come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,

Noun.	Who, That, Which,	} Qui ;	The man <i>who</i>	} comes.	<i>L'homme qui</i>	} vient.
			The horse <i>that</i>		<i>Le cheval qui</i>	
			The chaise <i>which</i>		<i>La chaise qui</i>	
Object.	Whom, That, Which,	} Que ;	The man <i>whom</i>	} I see. (s)	<i>L'homme que</i>	} je vois.
			The horse <i>which</i>		<i>Le cheval que</i>	
			The coach <i>that</i>		<i>La carrosse que</i>	
see note c, page 66.						
Possess.	Whose, of Whom, of Which,	} Dont ;	The man <i>of whom</i>	} I speak.	<i>L'homme dont</i>	} je parle.
			The horse <i>of which</i>		<i>Le cheval dont</i>	
			The chaise <i>of which</i>		<i>La chaise dont</i>	

## EXERCISE.

I see a gentleman yonder who is waiting for me. It<sup>63</sup> is from him  
voir monsieur\* là bas 75 155 attendre 201 n.s. 221  
I have bought that horse which is lame. He has another which suits  
acheter (bb) boiteux. en 70 un autre convenir  
me. I have one which, I think, will die. You know the gentleman  
en 70 un croire, mourir. † " (s)  
we have just<sup>244</sup> met. It<sup>63</sup> is from him I have bought the horse that  
venons de rencontrer. n.s. 221  
you have seen. He has another which I want to buy, to replace that  
voir. en 70 120 260 acheter, 170 remplacer 88  
which I have lost. He is the gentleman whose horse has won the  
perdre. 65 \* gagné le  
race. He is not the person of whom you complain. No, he is 70  
prix de la course. 65 personne f. se plaindre. , 65 (r)  
not. He is a man of whom I have a good opinion. The horse of  
65 24 29  
which I was speaking to you is sold.  
— parler 155 (c) vendre.

75. *Qui, que, dont*, whatever be the order of the corresponding words in english, must be placed immediately after the noun to which they relate ;

Is the gentleman come, *who* is<sup>242</sup> to dine with us ?

Le monsieur qui doit<sup>242</sup> dîner avec nous, est-il venu ?

i. e. the gentleman *who* is to dine with us, is he<sup>134</sup> come ?

(s) The distinctive words *whom, that, which* are often left out ; as, The man I saw, for the man whom I saw ; The wine we drank, for the wine which we drank ; but the corresponding words *qui, que, dont* must never be omitted, and if they are the nominative, or the object of several verbs they must be repeated with each verb ; as,

The man I saw, i. e. *whom* I saw. L'homme *que* je vis.  
The wine we drank, i. e. *which* we drank. Le vin *que* nous bûmes.  
The woman I speak of, i. e. *of whom* I speak. La femme *dont* je parle.

\* *Monsieur*, not *Gentilhomme*, which in the French language means *Nobleman*.

† See page 127, and 139, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

*N.B.* *Dont*, besides being placed immediately after the noun to which it relates, must be followed by a substantive in the nominative ; as,

He is a man *whose* probity is known.

C'est un homme *dont* la probité est connue, or, *dont* on connaît la, &c.

If *whose* is followed by a noun governed by a preposition, it can not be expressed by *dont*, it must be expressed by *du-Quel, de laQuelle, desQuels, desQuelles*, agreeably to gender and number ; as,

He is a man *on* whose probity one may rely ; i. e. on the probity of *whom*.

C'est un homme *sur* la probité *duquel* on peut compter ; not, C'est un homme *dont* *sur* la probité, nor *sur* la probité *dont*. (†)

## EXERCISE.

A gentleman has been here who wanted<sup>260</sup> to speak to you. Is the  
 il est venu ici \* vouloir<sup>140</sup> 172 (s)  
 man (come back) whom I had sent (for him)? Yes, he is.<sup>70</sup> Is  
 134 revenir avais envoyer le querir? , n.b. Peut-on  
 the money to be had (turn, *can one*<sup>90</sup> have the money) which we are in  
 92 avoir (kk) avons<sup>24</sup>  
 need of? No, it is not.<sup>70</sup> (That is) the gentleman whose horse I  
 besoin 203 191, n.b. 247  
 wanted<sup>260</sup> to buy. He is a man whose probity I know, a man  
 vouloir<sup>140</sup> 172 acheter. 65 probité  
 whose talents I admire, and whose friendship I value much. He is a  
 , amitié priser fort. 65  
 man to whose family I owe every thing, and in whose hands all my  
 famille devoir 107 , main  
 property is. They are people upon whose word one may depend.  
 bien 65 gens <sup>229</sup> sur parole on peut compter.

(†) When a relative pronoun comes after two nouns, and relates only to one of them, if the noun to which it relates is not the last in french, *who, whom, that, which* must be expressed by *leQuel, laQuelle, lesQuels, lesQuelles* ; of *whom, of which*, by *duQuel, de laQuelle, desQuels, desQuelles* ; to *whom, to which*, by *auQuel, à laQuelle, auxQuels, auxQuelles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun, to avoid the ambiguity that might arise from *qui, que, dont*, which are generally understood to relate to the last noun ; as,

This is that young man's sister of *whom* we were speaking.

Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme *de laquelle* nous parlions.

But this being done for the sole purpose of removing the ambiguity which would arise from *qui, que, dont* ; if a relative pronoun, coming after two nouns, was followed by a verb, or by an adjective that would sufficiently denote to which noun it refers, it would be better to use *qui, que, dont*, than *lequel, laquelle, &c.* which are rather formal expressions ; the following sentence, for example, would not be ambiguous ;

That young man's sister *who* is so handsome.

La sœur de ce jeune homme *qui* est si belle ; *qui* being determined by *belle*.

But, if these words can not be used without obscurity, the principal object of a language being to express our thoughts with precision, elegance must yield to perspicuity.

\* Turn this sentence thus. There has been here a gentleman *who* wanted, &c.

76. After any preposition but *of*, or a preposition synonymous to it, *whom* is expressed by *qui*, for both genders and numbers ;

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
Which	leQuel,	laQuelle,	lesQuels,	lesQuelles;
From Which	duQuel,	de laQuelle,	desQuels,	desQuelles;
To, at Which	auQuel,	à laQuelle,	auxQuels,	auxQuelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} he is.	L'homme <i>avec qui</i>	} il est.
The horse <i>on which</i>		Le cheval <i>sur lequel</i>	
The chaise <i>in which</i>		La chaise <i>dans laquelle</i>	
The man <i>from whom</i>	} comes.	L'homme <i>de qui</i>	} il vient.
The horse <i>from which</i>		Le cheval <i>duquel</i>	
The chaise <i>from which</i>		La chaise <i>de laquelle</i>	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} goes.	L'homme <i>à qui</i>	} il va.
The horse <i>to which</i>		Le cheval <i>auquel</i>	
The chaise <i>to which</i>		La chaise <i>à laquelle</i>	

## EXERCISE.

You know the gentleman to whom I have spoken. It62 is he who  
 parler. n.s. 52  
 has brought the parcel in which your letter was. (This is) the car-  
 apporter paquet 140 247 voi-  
 riage in which he came.136 Are these the horses to which he is so  
 ture est venu. Sont-ce ici si  
 much attached? They are not fit29 for the use which they are  
 fort attaché! propre 200 usage les 92  
 intended for.203 Let us walk along the road in which we  
 destine a. Se promener \* le long de route (v)

- (u) After a preposition, *which*, relating to the word *Thing*, is expressed by *quoi* ; as,  
 It is a thing of *which* I did not think. C'est une chose à *quoi* je ne pensais pas.  
 I see nothing to *which* he can apply. Je ne vois rien à *quoi* il puisse s'appliquer.
- (v) With a verb denoting dwelling or movement, even in a figurative sense, *which*, after a preposition, is generally expressed by *où* ; as,  
 The city in *which* I live. La ville *dans laquelle*, or *où* je demeure.  
 The happiness to *which* I aspire. Le bonheur *auquel*, or *où* j'aspire.  
 But we could not say, Le bonheur *où* je pense, The happiness *on which* I think ; because *penser* does not denote movement ; we must say, Le bonheur *auquel* je pense.
- In the same sense, *from which* is expressed by *d'où*, and *through which*, by *par où* ; as,  
 The country from *which* I come. Le pays *duquel*, or *d'où* je viens.  
 The town *through which* I have passed. La ville *par laquelle*, or *par où* j'ai passé.
- (z) The distinctive word *which* coming after an *Indefinite expression*, or after a *Noun without an article* in French, can not be rendered by any of the relative words which correspond with it in English ; so these sentences,  
 I have obtained leave, *which* was the only thing that I asked ;  
 The earth is ravaged *through ambition which* is the scourge of mankind,  
 can not be translated,  
 J'ai obtenu permission *qui* or *laquelle* était la seule chose que je demandais ;  
 On ravage la terre *par ambition qui* or *laquelle* est le fléau du genre humain ;  
 say, J'ai obtenu permission, c'était la seule chose que je demandais.  
 On ravage la terre *par ambition*, et l'*ambition* est le fléau du genre humain.

\* See *de Blamex*, page 100.

walked<sup>137</sup> yesterday. What is the name of the place in which we  
 se promener \* hier 82 endroit (v)  
 are? I like to know the name of the places through which I go.  
 aimer 169 † (v) passer.  
 Have<sup>237</sup> you inquired for the town from which he comes? I could  
 Vous êtes-vous informé de (v) venir? all<sup>136</sup> pu  
 not hear anything on which I can rely.  
 99 apprendre 99 (v) 145 compter

77. *Who, whom* used *absolutely*, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood, and are expressed by *qui*; as,

*Who* has done that? Qui a fait cela?  
 i. e. *what person* has done that?  
 I know *whom* you mean; Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.  
 i. e. *what person* you mean.

## EXERCISE.

Whom did<sup>186</sup> you meet? Whom were you with? Whom did<sup>136</sup>  
 avez trouvé? 140 138 203 avez  
 you give it<sup>55</sup> to? I do not know whom you mean.<sup>125</sup> I do not  
 donné 203 — savoir vouloir dire.  
 know whom you are speaking of.  
 — 155 203

78. *Whose* used *absolutely*, implies also the word *person* understood. If it can be changed into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui*; as,

*Whose* daughter is she?  
 i. e. *of whom* is she the daughter? De *qui* est-elle fille?  
 I know *whose* relation she is.  
 i. e. *of whom*, or *of what person*. Je sais *de qui* elle est parents.

If *whose* can be changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *a qui*; as,

*Whose* house is that?  
 i. e. *to whom* does that house belong? A *qui* est cette maison?  
 I do not know *whose* it is. Je ne sais pas à *qui* elle est.

## EXERCISE.

Whose son are you? Whose daughter is she? Whose relations  
 138 parent  
 are they? Whose house is that, or whom does that house belong to?  
 cette, † — (bb) est 203  
 Whose property is it, or whom does it belong to? Whose children  
 — 62, † — est 203  
 are these, or whom do these children belong to? Do you not know  
 ces, † (bb) — 138  
 whose they are? They are my sister's.  
 †

See *se* Blâmer, page 100.

† See p. 127 and 139, the distinction between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

‡ These two modes of expression are generally rendered in the same manner in French.

§ See note (c) p. 72.

## WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an *interrogative* sentence, *which* requires *three distinctions*.

*Which* interrogative is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition; as,

*Which* man? *Which* carriage? *Which* horses?

Or like a substantive, it is joined to it by the preposition *of*; as,

*Which of* the men? *Which of* the carriages? *Which of* my horses?

Or like a pronoun, it is used absolutely after the noun; as,

It is one of these men;

*Which* is it?

I came in one of these carriages. In *which* did you come?

79. *Which* interrogative joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>Which</i> ;	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles;
<i>Of, from Which</i> ;	de Quel,	de Quelle,	de Quels,	de Quelles;
<i>To, at Which</i> ;	à Quel,	à Quelle,	à Quels,	à Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>Which</i> man	} do you prefer?	<i>Quel</i> homme	} préférez-vous?
<i>Which</i> carriage		<i>Quelle</i> voiture	
<i>Which</i> horses		<i>Quels</i> chevaux	

## EXERCISE.

Which horse will you ride? Which road shall we go by?

173\* 133 monter route 133 aller par ?  
 Which inn shall we (put up) at? Which is the best inn in this  
 auberge 133 descendre 203 meilleur (bb)  
 town? Which room will you sit in? Which paper would you  
 ville? chambre 173 rester 203 papier  
 like to read.  
 169 lire?

80. *Which* interrogative joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun, is,

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>Which</i> ;	le Quel,	la Quelle,	les Quels,	les Quelles;
<i>Of, from Which</i> ;	du Quel,	de la Quelle,	des Quels,	des Quelles;
<i>To, at Which</i> ;	au Quel,	à la Quelle,	aux Quels,	aux Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>Which</i> of these men	} do you prefer?	<i>Lequel</i> de ces hommes	} préférez-vous?
<i>Which</i> of the coaches		<i>Laquelle</i> des voitures †	
<i>Which</i> of my horses		<i>Lesquels</i> de mes chevaux	

\* See note \* page 130.

† The pronoun may be either singular or plural, agreeably to the number that is meant; for ex. *Which* of these horses will you ride? may be translated

*Lequel* or *lesquels* de ces chevaux voulez-vous monter?

*Lequel* meaning one horse; *lesquels* meaning that the person is to ride more than one.



*Which* is the tallest ?  
*Which* is the finest ?  
*Which* are the best ?

*Lequel* est le plus haut ?  
*Laquelle* est la plus belle ?  
*Lesquels* sont les meilleurs ?

## EXERCISE.

Which of these horses will you ride ? Which is the easiest ?  
 \* 173 monter ? ais644 !  
 Which of these two roads shall we go by ? Which is the  
 138 par ?  
 shortest ? Which of these rooms will you sit in ? Which has  
 court29 ? 173 rester 203  
 the finest view ?  
 belle44 vue ?

81. *Which* sometimes implies the demonstrative pronoun *that* or *those* understood ; as,

*Which* of these horses shall I ride ?

You may ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which* you will.

This demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and *which* as including the two words, is expressed by

*Celui* que, m. } *that which*; *Ceux* que, m. } *those which*,  
*Celle* que, f. } *Celles* que, f. }

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride ?  
 Ride *which*, i. e. *that which* you will.  
 In which carriage will you go ?  
 I will go in *which* you please.

*Lequel* de ces chevaux monterai-je ?  
 Montez *celui* que vous voudrez.  
 Dans quelle voiture voulez-vous aller ?  
 J'irai dans *celle* qu'il vous plaira.

## EXERCISE.

Which horse shall I ride ? You may ride *which* (i. e. *that which*)  
 133 monter ! pouvez  
 you please.142 Which of these roads shall we go by ? Go by  
 il vous plaira. 133 aller 203  
 which you like.142 In which room shall I put your luggage ? Put  
 vouloir. 133 mettre bagage ? Mettre  
 it56 in that which I told136 you. Put it in which you will.142  
 62 88 ai dit 55 62 vouloir.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

*What* requires the same distinction as *which*.

82. *What*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is expressed,

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>What</i> ;	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles;
<i>Of, from</i> <i>What</i> ;	de Quel,	de Quelle,	de Quels,	de Quelles;
<i>To, at</i> <i>What</i> ;	à Quel,	à Quelle,	à Quels,	à Quelles;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

<i>What</i> man	} will you have ?	<i>Quel</i> homme	} voulez-vous ?
<i>What</i> carriage		<i>Quelle</i> voiture	
<i>What</i> horses		<i>Quels</i> chevaux	
<i>What</i> are your reasons ?		<i>Quelles</i> sont vos raisons ?	

## EXERCISE.

What place do you come from? Which road did136 you come  
 endroit — 133 venir 203 êtes236 venu  
 by? What inn will you go to203? Have you heard the report?  
 203 aller entendu bruit qui court?  
 No, what is it?  
 62

83. *What* used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word *thing* understood, and is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*.

*What* is expressed by *que*, when it is the *object* of a verb;  
 as,

*What* are you doing there? *Que* faites-vous là?  
 I do not know *what* to say to her. Je ne sais *que* lui dire? (y)

*What* is expressed by *quoi*, when it is governed by a *preposition*, or used as an *interjection*; ex.

*What* do you meddle with? *De quoi* vous mêlez-vous?  
*What!* you have not done yet! *Quoi!* vous n'avez pas encore fini.

## EXERCISE.

What do you think of this country? What do you intend125  
 — 133 penser 230 — 133 avoir dessein  
 to (do with yourself)? What do you mean125? What do you  
 de devenir — 133 vouloir dire? — 133  
 want260 to do with that? What is that to you? What! he is not  
 vouloir 172 faire 200 89 (y) fait 89 (e) 84 !  
 come yet.163 What! you do not answer me. Listen to me  
 venu encore.n.s. — répondre 54 Ecouter (e) 56  
 Well! What? What are these people talking about? What do you  
 Eh bien! — (bb) gens134 parler155 de203  
 meddle with?  
 se mêler de203

84. *What* sometimes implies the demonstrative pronoun *that*, and the distinctive *which*; it is then expressed,

Nom. *What, ce qui*;  
 Always do *what* is right; i. e. *that which* is right.  
 Faites toujours *ce qui* est juste.

Object. *What, ce que*;  
*What* I say is true; i. e. *that which* I say is true.  
*Ce que* je dis est vrai. (z)

(y) *What*, in this sense, used interrogatively, is generally expressed in conversation by *qu'est-ce que*, an idiomatical expression: as,

*What* do you say? *Que* dites-vous, or *qu'est-ce que* vous dites?  
*What* are you doing? *Que* faites-vous, or *qu'est-ce que* vous faites?  
 And with the verb *be*, it is always expressed by *qu'est-ce que*; as,  
*What* is it? *Qu'est-ce que* c'est?  
*What* is that to you? *Qu'est-ce que* cela vous fait?

(z) Though the words *ce qui*, *ce que*, being compounded of the pronoun substantive *ce*, and of the distinctive *qui*, *que*, should have two verbs either to govern or to be



believe a word of what that paper says. (There is) not a word of  
croire mot (bb) 246  
truth in what I have read. What shall we do now? Let us go  
vrai \* 133 — — aller  
to the place in which we are to meet your cousin. What have you  
endroit (v) 243 173 rencontrer 133  
done with your stick? I do not know what I have done (with it). I  
faire 200 bâton! — savoir en55  
(am afraid) I have left it at the inn at which we have237 stopped  
craindre (aa) laisser 55 à auberge (v) nous nous sommes arrêtés  
to dinner. If your father asks you what you have done (with it),  
diner. 54 en55  
what will you answer203 him? Indeed, I shall not192 know what to  
138 répondre lui54 Ma foi, n.b. 173  
say. What would you advise me to say? I will tell you sincerely  
dire. 133 conseiller 54 168 \* dire 54 sincèrement  
what I would say. Well! what? What would you say? I would  
Eh bien! 133  
tell him162 the truth. It62 is what I was thinking of. What is your  
(t) p. 62. vérité. n.b. 153 a.206  
reason for leaving this country? Because I see nothing here to which  
raison de quitter (bb) 230† Parceque 99 ici (a)  
I can145 apply. I want to go abroad. What country would you  
puisse s'appliquer. 260 dans les pays étrangers. 260  
like to go to? To France or Italy? Which country would you  
aimer 169 203 Italie! 260 123  
advise me54 to go to? Which of those countries is the most pleasant?  
conseiller 168 203 plus agréable!  
You have seen them both; which do you like best? If you will  
voir 122; — 133 aimer le mieux? 144  
come with me, I will go to which you like.142 I will consider (of it.)  
58, vouloir. penser y54  
(That is) the gentleman whose75 house we have just244 passed by.203  
247 monsieur n.b. venons de passer près de  
It is the house in which we lived140 formerly. Is it55 the house which  
65 (v) demeurer autrefois. 133  
your father wanted260 to buy, and for which he offered136 (so much)  
voudrait140 172 acheter a offert tant  
money? Yes, it is. Do you know that young lady? Yes, I do.70  
argent! Oui, 70 — 133 † (bb) n.b.  
Who is she? Whose daughter is she? She is married.29 Whose  
marié. n.b.  
wife is she? Whom is she married to? She is the wife of that  
femme 158 203 65 (bb)  
gentleman whom we were speaking of. I know whose daughter she  
155 203 †  
is. I know whose relations they are. Whose handkerchief is this  
† parent mouchoir

\* When the French speak of an action which they are on the point of doing, they do not use the future as the English do; they express *Shall, Will* by the *present* tense of the verb *Aller*, to go; *je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons*, &c. with the following verb in the infinitive; so turn this sentence thus, *What are we going155 to do now?*

† Turn; *What reason have you to leave this country?*

‡ See page 127, 130, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

which I have found on the staircase? I do not know whose it is.  
trouver sur escalier? — \* 62

I do not know whom it belongs to. What shall I do (with it)?  
— \* appartenir 203 faire en 54

Take it<sup>56</sup> back to the place in which you found<sup>136</sup> it. Which  
Remettre 62 — endroit (v) avez trouvé 55

door must I go through? Which of these doors must I go through?  
porte 181 133 passer par 203 181 133 203

Go through which you like.<sup>142</sup> Have you heard what I said<sup>136</sup>?  
Passer voudrez. entendre ai dit

to you? No, what is it? The man you trust to deceives you. The  
(o) 55 191, (y) se fier † 203 tromper 54

company he keeps, is not honest. You do not know all the harm he  
compagnie fréquenter, honnête. — \* mal

does you? I do not<sup>192</sup> know what to do. I wish<sup>221</sup> you would tell  
faire 54 — N.B. \* 172 faire. 180 vouloir

me what I must do. You do not know what a disagreeable situation<sup>54</sup>  
181 — \* 20 désagréable

I am in. What must I do? Do what I told you. I do not see what  
203 181 133 Faire 136 55 —

you can do better. If you had believed me, what you complain of  
(kk) de mieux. aviez 55, se plaindre † 203

would not have happened. I am sorry for what has happened to you.  
être<sup>238</sup> arriver. fâché 200 238 (o)

When was Rome built? What were the achievements of king Romu-  
quand bâtir exploit

lus? how long did he reign? what is the history of Tarquinius  
combien de temps régner histoire Tarquin le

Superbus? when, and (for what) was he expelled from Rome?  
Superbe quand pourquoi chasser

what efforts did he make (in order to) be restored? what was the  
efforts faire pour rétablir

number of the Roman kings, and how long did the regal authority  
nombre de Rome combien de temps royal autorité

subsist? what kind of government succeeded at Rome? who were  
subsister sorte gouvernement succéder

the first consuls? how did Brutus show his zeal for liberty? when  
premier consuls comment montrer zèle liberté

were the decemvirs created? why were they deposed? what kind  
decemvir créer pourquoi déposer

of government followed? when were the military tribunes created  
suivre militaire tribun créer

with consular authority at Rome? who were the first plebeian  
consulaire consulaire plébéien

consuls? how was the first triumvirate formed? what provinces  
triumvirat formé

were assigned to the triumvirs? what were the conquests of Julius  
assigner conquête Jules

Cæsar in Great Britain? what (account have we) of Cæsar after the  
César dans la Bretagne rapporte-t-on après

civil wars? when and by whom was he slain? How long,  
tuer Jusqu'à quand

Catiline, wilt thou abuse our patience? How long shall thy frantic  
Catiline abuser de frénétique

\* See pp. 137, 139, difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.† See *reflective verbs*, p. 100.

rage baffle the efforts of justice? (To what height) meanest thou  
 se jouer des Jusqu'où avoir dessein  
 to carry thy insolence? Seest thou not that the senators are apprised  
 de porter Voir que sénateur informer  
 of thy conspiracy? Wast thou not last night in the house of Lucca,  
 conspiration hier au soir  
 with many other associates in guilt and madness? Darest thou  
 plusieurs complices de ton crime folie Oser  
 deny this? Why art thou silent? Oh, immortal gods! what coun-  
 nier le garder le silence immortel pays  
 try do we inhabit? what city do we belong to? what government  
 habiter ville appartenir  
 do we live under? Hast thou not rendered thyself infamous by  
 vivre être rendre te infâme  
 every vice that can brand a private life? What guilt has not  
 tout pouvoir déshonorer privé crime —  
 stained thy hands? What pollution has not defiled thy whole  
 souiller infamie souiller  
 body? &c.—*Cicero against Catiline.* (How many) years from  
 corps combien années  
 the creation to the deluge? in how many days did God  
 création combien  
 create the world? who were the first man and woman? who  
 créer monde premier  
 were their sons? what was their occupation? when did Enoch  
 occupation  
 flourish? what became of him? who was his son? (how long)  
 fleurir que devint-il qui combien de temps  
 did he live? What was the usual length of life at that time? by  
 vivre ordinaire longueur époque  
 whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what design, and  
 tour bâtir à dessein  
 when? why was the building (laid aside)? when was Abraham  
 quand bâtiesse abandonné  
 called by God? what is the history of his life? (How many) years  
 appeler de combien  
 from the vocation of Abraham to the departure of the Israelites from  
 départ Israélites  
 Egypt? whose son was Isaac? when was he born? who was his  
 Egypte de qui naître  
 wife? who were his sons? when did Jacob live? (how many) sons  
 femme vivre combien  
 had he? what is the history of Joseph? when and upon whose  
 histoire quand à  
 invitation did Jacob and his family (go down) to Egypt? when was  
 l'invitation de qui famille aller en  
 Moses born? how was he educated? by whose assistance, and  
 Moïse élevé par le secours de qui  
 when did he bring the Israelites out of Egypt? what miracles  
 quand emmener hors l'  
 attended the Israelites at their departure from Egypt and through the  
 accompagner sortie l' dans  
 deserts? who was their high priest? when was the law given to  
 déserts grand-prêtre loi donnée  
 Moses? who was Moses' successor? What is the history of  
 le successeur

Joshua, and what are his wars? when did he and the Israelites come  
 Josué, guerre! entrer  
 to the possession of Canaan? when came Saul to the throne? by  
 en monter sur trône!  
 what means, and when, did David obtain the kingdom? how long  
 moyen, David obtenir royaume? combien de temps  
 did he reign? who were his sons? How long reigned Solomon?  
 régner? Salomon!  
 When did he dedicate the temple? what was his character? What  
 dédier caractère! Que  
 (is recorded) of Judith? What was the fate of Josiah? How long  
 rapporte-t-on sort Josias!  
 did he reign? When and by whom was Jerusalem burned? What  
 brûler!  
 is said of Daniel? What is the history of his life? How long did  
 dire  
 he live? When was Jesus born? What was his mission? By  
 vivre? naître!  
 whom and when was he crucified?  
 qui crucifier!

## SECT. III.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>Mine</i> ;	<i>le Mien</i> ,	<i>la Mienne</i> ,	<i>les Miens</i> ,	<i>les Miennes</i> .
<i>Of, from Mine</i> ;	<i>du Mien</i> ,	<i>de la Mienne</i> ,	<i>des Miens</i> ,	<i>des Miennes</i> .
<i>To, at Mine</i> ;	<i>au Mien</i> ,	<i>à la Mienne</i> ,	<i>aux Miens</i> ,	<i>aux Miennes</i> .
<i>Thine</i> ;	<i>le Tien</i> ,	<i>la Tienne</i> ,	<i>les Tiens</i> ,	<i>les Tiennes</i> .
<i>His</i> ;	<i>le Sien</i> ,	<i>la Siennne</i> ,	<i>les Siens</i> ,	<i>les Siennes</i> .
<i>Hers</i> ;				
<i>Ours</i> ;	<i>le Nôtre</i> ,	<i>la Nôtre</i> ,	<i>les Nôtres</i> ,	<i>les Nôtres</i> .
<i>Yours</i> ;	<i>le Vôtre</i> ,	<i>la Vôtre</i> ,	<i>les Vôtres</i> ,	<i>les Vôtres</i> .
<i>Theirs</i> ;	<i>le Leur</i> ,	<i>la Leur</i> ,	<i>les Leurs</i> ,	<i>les Leurs</i> .

85. The *possessive* pronouns *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, &c. must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; ex.

Your hat is better than *hers*, i. e. *her hat*.

Votre chapeau est meilleur que *le sien*.

My watch is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his watch*.

Ma montre n'est pas si belle que *la siennne*.

## EXERCISE.

Are our horses ready? Yours and mine are, 70 but hers is 70 not.  
 134 prêt 29! 73 73

Get hers ready as soon as you can. 142 Have they 90 cleaned our  
 Apprêter \* 43 tôt 43 pouvez. 133 n.b. décroûté  
 boots? Yours are cleaned, 29 but his and mine are 70 not. He does  
 botte! décroûté, n.b. 73

not want 260 his now. Clean mine. I want mine directly.

avoir besoin de

tout à l'heure.

\* Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter*.

86. The *possessive* words *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they are often used instead of the *personal* pronouns *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, with the verb *be*, meaning to *belong*; as for example, *This book is mine*, i. e. *belongs to me*; in this sense *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours theirs* are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, m. à elles, f.*; as,

This book is mine.	Ce livre est à moi ;	i. e. belongs to me.
is thine.	est à toi ;	to thee.
is his.	est à lui ;	to him.
is hers.	est à elle ;	to her.
is ours.	est à nous ;	to us.
is yours.	est à vous ;	to you.
is theirs.	est à eux, m. à elles, f.	to them. (as)

## EXERCISE.

Is not this fan<sup>134</sup> yours ? No, sir ; it is not 'mine. I think<sup>231</sup> it is  
 éventail 191, ; 62 penser 62  
 my sister's. Yes, it is hers. Are these horses yours or his ? They  
 \* 62 13 134 ou 62  
 are not ours ; they are my cousin's.  
 ; 62 cousin.\*

87. The *possessive* pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *of*; as, *A friend of mine*; *A book of yours*; this *possessive* pronoun can not be expressed by the *possessive* pronoun in french; it must be expressed by the *possessive* article *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs* placed *before* the noun, which must always be *plural* in french; as,

A friend of mine.	Un de mes amis ;	i. e. one of my	friends.
of thine.	Un de tes amis ;	one of thy	
of his.	Un de ses amis ;	one of his	
of hers.	Un de ses amis ;	one of her	
of ours.	Un de nos amis ;	one of our	
of yours.	Un de vos amis ;	one of your	
of theirs.	Un de leurs amis ;	one of their	

Never say ;

Un ami de *mes*, nor Un ami des *miens* ; Un ami de *tes* ; Un ami de *ses*, &c.

## EXERCISE.

I (have just<sup>244</sup>) met an acquaintance of mine who told<sup>136</sup> me  
 venir de rencontrer connaissance a dit 55  
 that a friend of ours is dead. Is not Mrs. A. a relation of  
 (bb) n. b. mourir. Madame 134 parente  
 yours ? A son of hers is dead. A cousin of mine has married<sup>261</sup> a  
 épouser n. b.

(as) Yet when a question is asked with *est-ce*; as, *Est-ce là votre livre*? Is that your book? we may answer, *Oui, c'est le mien*, or *Il est à moi*; Yes, it is mine. *Est-ce là sa maison*? Is that his house? No, it is not *his*, it is his sister's; Non, ce n'est pas la sienne, c'est celle de sa sœur, or *Elle n'est pas à lui, elle est à sa sœur*.

\* See note (Q) page 72.



daughter of hers, but she is no relation of mine. They are neighbours  
 190  
 of ours. I am going to dine with an aunt of theirs.  
 155 aller 173 tante

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

Your mother and mine are gone 158 to (take 263 a walk) in our fields;  
 aller 173 n.p. 213 champ;  
 Let us go and (take 263 walk) in yours. Is not that house yours?  
 — — (na) n.p. (bb) 124  
 No, it is not ours; it is my uncle's. I should have taken it 55 for  
 191, 62 ; 63 oncle. † prise 63 pour  
 yours. Ours is not so fine as his, and his is better situated than  
 43 43 (x) p. 54. situé 156  
 ours. Let us go (this way); I want to call at a friend's of mine.  
 — — par ici; 260 266 266 une amie  
 I think she is a friend of yours too. Who? Mrs. A. She is an  
 231 65 aussi. Madame 65  
 old acquaintance of ours, but she is no friend of mine. I do not  
 ancienne; connaissance 190 —  
 like her. She is incessantly 184 talking of herself, or of some relation  
 sœur 64 — sans cesse 153 elle-même, 96 parent  
 of hers. Let us walk into this room. What a pretty work 96 bag  
 — — entrer 213 (bb) 82 20 joli ouvrage sacré  
 you have got there. Is it yours? No, it is not mine; it is my  
 270 là. 62 191 62 ; 62  
 sister's. This 66 is mine. Hers is (very much) like 202 yours. Hers  
 † n.p. — fort 184 ressembler au  
 is not so pretty as mine. How long 186 have you had yours?  
 43 43 Combien y a-t-il que vous avez †  
 I got 136 mine about the same time that my sister got hers. Yours  
 ai eu vers temps 136  
 looks 253. better than hers. Yes, because I take more care of my  
 avoir apparence 23 que prendre soin  
 clothes than she does of hers. (What is the matter with) your  
 habit 47 faire Qu'est-ce qu'a 261 —  
 neighbour? A sister of his is dead. She went 137 (a few days ago) to  
 voisin † mort. 158 aller il y a quelques jours 173  
 see a child of hers who is at a relation of ours in the country,  
 306 230  
 and she died 136 there. You have got a handkerchief of mine. A  
 est mort 158 y 66 270 mouchoir  
 handkerchief of yours! I have no handkerchief of yours. I have  
 190 n'en 70  
 none but what are 145 mine. What! is this 134 yours? Yes, it is mine.  
 pas 190 solent 83 ! 83 n.p. 62  
 You are greatly mistaken: It is not yours; it is my mother's.  
 — fort 184 se tromper: 62 63 †

\* See note \* page 182.

† See note (q) page 72.

‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

§ *Has been ill.* The English often use this past tense to express an action or a state of being which is still lasting; as, *I have been ill these six months*; the French cannot use it in this sense; so, *Has been ill* must be expressed by *Est malade*, if the person is *ill* still; by *A été malade*, if she *has ceased* to be so.

## SECT. IV.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Masc. Sing. Fem.		Masc. Plur. Fem.	
<i>This,</i>	} <i>Celui,</i>	<i>These,</i>	} <i>Ceux,</i>
<i>That;</i>		<i>Those;</i>	
	<i>Celle.</i>		<i>Celles.</i>

88. The *demonstrative* pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles* must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; *ex.*

Bring my hat and *that* of my sister; i. e. the *hat* of &c.

Apportez mon chapeau et *celui* de ma sœur.

He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother; i. e. the *watch* of &c.

Il a perdu sa montre et *celle* de son frère.

Have you seen *these* (bb) gloves and *those* which I had on yesterday?

Avez-vous vu ces gants et *ceux* que j'avais hier?

N. B. The *demonstrative* words *this, these, that, those* imply a local distinction which *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express; therefore, when a distinction is to be made between two objects, the adverbial particle *ci, here*, to denote the nearest object, and *là, there*, to denote the remotest, must be added to these pronouns; *as,*

This hat is better than *that*.

Ce chapeau-ci est meilleur que *celui-là*; i. e. this hat *here*—that *there*.

That watch is not so fine as *this*.

Cette montre-là n'est pas si belle que *celle-ci*; i. e. as this *here*.

But the particles *ci, là*, being added merely to discriminate the objects, if the *demonstrative* pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun, or by a noun in the possessive state, which

(bb) It is not unnecessary perhaps to recall here to the attention of the learner, that the words *This, that, these, those* have already been seen in the chapter of articles, and he must take care not to confound them.

If *this, that, these, those* are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *ce, cette, ces*, as has been seen, rule 1.

Ce vin, *cette* gloire, *ces* plaisirs. This wine, that glory, those pleasures.

If *this, that, these, those* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent; *as,* [brother.

Il a perdu sa montre et *celle* de son frère. He has lost his watch and *that* of his

If *this, that* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as substantives implying the word *thing*, and are expressed, *this, by ceci; that, by cela*; *as,*

Ceci est bon, mais *cela* est meilleur. i. e. This thing is good, but that thing is better. N. B. *That*, joining two sentences, is a conjunction, and is always expressed by *que*; *as,*

I know that he is come.

Je sais qu'il est venu.

This conjunction is often understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French: Do you think he is come? Pensez-vous qu'il soit venu? [See conjunctions.]

makes the distinction sufficiently clear, these particles would be useless, and they must be left out ; *as*,

This hat is better than *that* of your brother.

Ce chapeau-ci est meilleur que *celui* de votre frère.

This watch is not so fine as *that* which you have lost.

Cette montre-ci n'est pas si belle que *celle* que vous avez perdue.

## EXERCISE

This steeple is not so high as that of St. Paul. This church is  
 (bb) clocher 42 haut 42 (bb) église  
 larger than that which we have just<sup>244</sup> passed by<sup>203</sup> These trees  
 grande<sup>41</sup> 76 venons de passer près de (bb) arbre  
 are finer<sup>41</sup> than those which are in your park. This<sup>13</sup> steeple is not  
 beau 74 parc. N.B.  
 so high as that. That<sup>13</sup> church is much larger than this. These<sup>13</sup>  
 42 N.B. beaucoup 41 N.B.  
 trees are finer than those. This gown is prettier<sup>41</sup> than that of your  
 41 (bb) robe joli<sup>29</sup>  
 sister. This is not so fine as that which I showed you.  
 42 belle 42 ai montre<sup>455</sup>

89. If *this*, *that* are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned before, they imply the word *thing* understood, and are expressed,

*This*, by Ceci ; *That*, by Cela ; *as*,  
*This* is good ; i. e. *this thing* is good. *ceci* est bon.  
*That* is better ; i. e. *that thing* is better. *cela* est meilleur.

## EXERCISE.

Give me this. What will you do with that ? Take this. Let that  
 173 faire de Prendre Laisser  
 alone. I will take this.

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.†*

Do you hear that man ? He is scolding<sup>155</sup> that woman who has  
 — 133 entendre † — gronder  
 been beating those children. Look at that house. Is not that a  
 155 battu Regarder 201 N'est-ce pas là  
 good house ? Yes, it is a good house, but this is a better<sup>29</sup> one. Nay !  
 29 65 (z) p. 56 † Oh non !  
 I think that is better. Those rooms seem to me to be larger<sup>41</sup>  
 penser 231 (z) p. 56 paraître (o) 54 — — grand<sup>29</sup>  
 than these ; besides, that is much better situated than this. I do not  
 ; outre cela, (z) p. 56 situé 158 —  
 see that. I think this is as pleasantly situated as that. Do you  
 voir 221 43 agréablement 158 43 — 133

\* See note \* page 226.

† See note \* page 192.

‡ Read note (bb), page 234, before you write this exercise.

§ If you express *This* by the pronoun, you must leave out *a* and *one* ; but you may express *This* *is* by *Voici*, rule 247 ; then you express *a* by *une*, and *one* by *en*, before *Voici* ; thus, *En voici une*, &c.

admire these flowers? What flowers? Those that<sup>74</sup> we see in that  
 admirer fleur! 82 (o) p. 66.  
 garden before that house.<sup>81</sup> How do you call this? This is a poppy,  
 devant Comment — 133 appeler pavot  
 and that is a marigold. I do not like that kind of flowers; I like  
 souci. — aimer sorte ;  
 those that<sup>74</sup> have a pleasant smell. What do you think of these ?  
 (o) p. 66. agréable 22 odeur. 83 — penser  
 Oh, I like these better than those. These smell sweet. The action  
 Oh, (n) p. 56. ont une douce odeur. action  
 of Virginius sacrificing his daughter, is as strong and more pure than  
 Virginius sacrifier , 48 fort 29 pur 29  
 that of Brutus condemning his son; nevertheless this is glorious<sup>89</sup>  
 Brutus condamner ; néanmoins glorieux (gr)  
 and that is not. Virginius secured only the honour of his family;  
 79 sauvait seulement honneur famille ;  
 Brutus saved that of the laws and of the country. (There was) much  
 sauvait loi patrie. Il y avait  
 pride in the action of Brutus, perhaps there was nothing but pride;  
 orgueil , peut-être n'y avait-il — que ;  
 there was in that of Virginius only honesty and courage; but this  
 honnêteté ;  
 did<sup>137</sup> (every thing) for his family, that did<sup>137</sup> every thing, or  
 faire 107 pour faire 107 , en  
 seemed<sup>137</sup> to do every thing for Rome, and Rome, which considered<sup>136</sup>  
 sembler 173 faire , a considéré  
 the action of Virginius as that of an honest man and of a good father,  
 comme honnête ,  
 consecrated the action of Brutus as that of an hero; is not that just?  
 a 136 consacré comme héros ; 134 juste ?

## SECT. V.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.\*

90. *One, we they, people.* } used in an *indefinite* sense, i. e. not re-  
 lating to any particular person, are ex-  
 pressed by *on*.

N. B. *On* is always the nominative of a verb, and though it represents *we, they, people*, which are plural, it requires the verb in the 3rd person sing. ; as,

*One says,* } *On* dit; i. e. *one* says, (see note \* p. 246.)  
*They say, people say.* }

## EXERCISE.

People are spreading<sup>155</sup> strange reports. They say that we have  
 — faisaient<sup>155</sup> courir étrange bruit. disaient (44) n. n. nous

\* Though in point of order, this is the proper place for these pronouns, yet as they are easy, and of less consequence than the other exercises which follow them; not to break the chain of the most useful rules, I would advise the learner, after having read the rules on the *indefinite pronouns*, on this page and following, and written rules 90, 91 and 92, to pass over the rest of the rules and go to the exercise on the *verbs*, the knowledge of which is necessary to have a complete idea of the language. The rest of this exercise may be written after all the other exercises.

been beaten. Who says so? They say so. People say so. (You) 181  
 battre 158 le 54 54 Il n.  
 must (not) believe every thing that people say.  
 ne faut pas croire tout ce que

91. The following and other like *indefinite* expressions are also expressed in french by *on*, with the verb in its active sense; as,

*It was said.*

*On disait; i. e. one said.*

*It has been reported.*

*On a rapporté; one has reported.*

## EXERCISE.

It is thought that (there will be) a peace. It is said that the prelimi-  
 penser (bb) n. b. il y aura — paix. (bb) n. b. prélimi-  
 naries are signed. It will soon 184 be known if it be true. It was asserted  
 naire signer 158. bientôt si cela 217 vrai. \* assurait  
 yesterday on the exchange.  
 hier à bourse.

92. The english *passive* verbs used indefinitely, require the active signification in french, with *on* for nominative; but by adding *on* to the sentence, the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its object in french;

*I have been told that news has been received.* } i. e. *one has told me that*  
*On m'a dit qu'on a reçu des nouvelles;* } *one has received news.*

## EXERCISE.

How can that be believed, when such great preparations for  
 pouvoir 89 \* croire, si 33 préparatif  
 war (are going on)? I was told yesterday that it has been resolved  
 guerre 155 faire — \* 137 (bb) n. b. \* resolu  
 to (carry on) the war. Do you know if the letters have been received  
 168 continuer \* reçu  
 which (were expected) by the last 29 mail? They have not been  
 74 attendait 140 dernier poste? \*  
 received yet. 183 They are expected to-day. Somebody has been  
 reçues 159 n. b. \* attendre aujourd'hui. 95 \*  
 sent to know why they have not been brought sooner. We have  
 envoyé pour pourquoi \* apportées tôt. 41  
 been much deceived.  
 \* fort trompés.

93. *Oneself*,  
*Himself* used indefinitely, } are expressed by *Soi*; as,  
*Itself* after a preposition }

Every one thinks well of *himself*. Chacun a bonne opinion de *soi*.  
 Virtue is amiable of *itself*. La vertu est aimable de *soi*.

## EXERCISE.

Let 248 every one think of himself. Every one for himself, and God  
 Que 105 penser 200

\* A *Passive* verb is made *Active*, by leaving out the verb *be*, and making the past participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; as *It is thought*; turn, *One thinks*. *It has been said*; turn, *One has said*.

for all. That is harmless in itself. Vice is odious of itself. The  
 tous 89 innocent de odieux  
 earth contains all seeds in itself.  
 terre contenir 29 semence en

94. *Some*, repeated in a sentence of two parts, is in the first part *Les uns*, in the second part *les autres*; as,

*Some* laugh, *some* cry. *Les uns* rient, *les autres* pleurent

## EXERCISE.

Some like one thing, some like<sup>70</sup> another. Some will have it one  
 aimer , en aimer 174 54 d'une  
 way, some will have it another.  
 manière, 174 54 d'une autre.

95. *Somebody*, *some one* is *quelqu'un* for both genders; as,  
*Somebody* has taken my book. *Quelqu'un* a pris mon livre.

## EXERCISE.

Somebody has told me so.<sup>55</sup> I heard<sup>136</sup> it from somebody. I  
 dit le entendre 55  
 expect somebody. Somebody will call upon me soon.<sup>183</sup>  
 attendre 266 bientôt. n. s.

96. *Some*, *any*, *few* followed by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive state, are expressed by *quelqu'un*, *quelques uns*, m. *quelqu'une*, *quelques unes*, f. agreeably to gender and number; as,

Take *some* of these oranges. Prenez *quelques unes* de ces oranges.  
 Give me *a few* of them. Donnez-m'en *quelques unes*.

## EXERCISE.

Have you seen any of my flowers? Will you have some (of them)?  
 vu fleur? 174 en 54  
 I will take a few (of them.)  
 \* prendre

97. *Nobody*, *not any body*, *personne*; } require as before the  
*Nobody whatever*, *qui que ce soit* } verb;

*Nobody* loves that man. *Personne* n'aime cet homme.  
 He trusts *nobody whatever*. Il ne se fie à *qui que ce soit*.

## EXERCISE.

Nobody likes that woman. That woman likes nobody. Do not tell  
 aimer (bb) (bb) — dire  
 ft to any body. Have you met nobody? Has nobody met you? I  
 57 134 rencontré  
 have not met any body whatever.

98. *Something* is *Quelque chose*; as,

He gave me *something* good. Il me donna *quelque chose* de bon. (cc)

\* See note \* p. 236.

(cc) *Quelqu'un*, *personne*, *quelque chose*, *rien* followed by an adjective or a past participle, require *de* after them; as *Somebody* wounded. *Quelqu'un de blessé*. *Something* good. *Quelque chose de bon*. *Nobody* come. *Personne de venu*. *Nothing* new. *Rien de nouveau*.

## EXERCISE.

I feel something that hurts me. I have something curious to tell  
 74 blessé 54 (cc) curieux à  
 you. Is not that something wonderful? Why do you not apply  
 54 N'est-ce pas là (cc) étonnant ? — 133 s'appliquer (ii)  
 to something ?

99. *Nothing, not any thing, Rien ;* } require *ne* before  
*Nothing whatever, Quoi que ce soit* } the verb ; as,  
*Nothing* is more agreeable. *Rien* n'est plus agréable.  
 He applies to *nothing whatever*. Il ne s'applique à *quoi que ce soit*.

## EXERCISE.

I will give you nothing. You have not done any thing to-day. He  
 donner 54 fait aujourd'hui.  
 applies to nothing whatever. He does not mind any thing what-  
 s'appliquer \* faire attention à  
 ever. I would not part (with it) for any thing. Somebody come.  
 se défaire \* en 50 (cc) venu.  
 Something lost. Nobody hurt. Nothing done.  
 perdu. blessé. fait.

100. *None, not any*, followed by a substantive in the pos-  
 sessive state, are expressed by *Aucun*, m. *Aucune*, f. with *ne*  
 before the verb ; as,

*None* of your sisters is come. *Aucune* de vos sœurs n'est venue.

## EXERCISE.

None of the ladies whom we expected will come. We shall not  
 † 74 attendons 173 venir  
 see any (of them) to-day. Do you know any of them? No, I do not.  
 voir en 34 aujourd'hui. — 96 101, n.a.

101. *None, Nul ;* } used absolutely, are synonymous to  
*Not one, Pas un* } *personne*, and require *ne* before the  
 verb ; as,

*None* are free from faults. *Nul* n'est exempt de défauts.  
*Not one* believes it. *Pas un*, or *personne* ne le croit. (dd)

## EXERCISE.

None is sheltered from censure. None can boast (of it). Many  
 à l'abri pouvoir se vanter en 59  
 people called themselves his friends, not one assisted him.  
 229 disaient se 34 aider 137 lui 54

102. *Each*, joined to a noun, is expressed by *Chaque* for  
 both genders ; as,

*Each* boy had a shilling. *Chaque* garçon eut un shelin.  
*Each* girl earned six pence. *Chaque* fille gagna six sous.

\* See reflexive verbs, page 100.

† Speaking of young ladies, we should say *demoiselles* ; speaking of married, or grown up ladies, we should say *dames*.

(dd) *Rien, aucun, pas un, personne* followed by *qui, que, dont* require the following verb in the subjunctive ; as,

Have you found nothing that suits you? N'avez-vous trouvé rien qui vous convi-  
 I do not know any body who can do it. Je ne connais personne qui puisse le faire.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans

hand,  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,

*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (bb) shilling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (bb) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m.  
*Toute*, f.

*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each* science) has its principles. Every season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.

233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.

*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;

*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.

i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m.  
*Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). Every  
 24 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.



books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,  
*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 ble to please every body.  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 168 plaire 203

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,  
*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 prepared against every thing.  
 mieux. se plaindre\*  
 prêt à

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,

Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 what I do ?  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may show the way. Any body will (or *there*  
 is nobody but will) show you the way.  
 178 do that. 89 pouvoir faire  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,

Did ever *any body* see that ? *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela ?  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans  
 hand.  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,  
*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (bb) shilling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (bb) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.  
 If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m. *Toute*, f.  
*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each science*) has its principles. Every season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.  
 233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.  
*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;  
*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.  
 i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m. *Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; { Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. { Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). Every  
 24 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.

books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,  
*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 ble to please every body.  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 168 plaire 202

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,  
*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 prepared against every thing.  
 prêt à mieux se plaindre\*

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,  
 Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 what I do ?  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may 178 do that. Any body will (or *there*  
*is nobody but* will) show you the way.  
 pouvoir faire 80  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,  
 Did ever *any body* see that ! *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela !  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans  
 hand.  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,  
*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (44) shelling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (44) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m. *Toute*, f.

*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each science*) has its principles. Every season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.

233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.

*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;

*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.  
 i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m. *Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). Every  
 24 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.

books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,

*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 ble to please every body.  
 168 plaire 203

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,

*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 mieux. se plaindre\*  
 prepared against every thing.  
 prêt à

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,

Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 what I do ?  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may 178 do that. Any body will (or *there*  
 pouvoir faire 89  
*is nobody but* will) show you the way.  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,

Did ever *any body* see that ! *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela !  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans

hand,  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,  
*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (bb) shelling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (bb) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.  
 If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m.  
*Toute*, f.  
*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each* science) has its principles. Every season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.

233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.  
*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;  
*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.  
 i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m.  
*Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). Every  
 34 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.

books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,

*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 ble to please every body.  
 168 plaire 202

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,

*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 mieux. se plaindre\*  
 prepared against every thing.  
 prêt a

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,

Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 what I do ?  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may 178 do that. Any body will (or *there*  
 pouvoir faire 89  
*is nobody but* will) show you the way.  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,

Did ever *any body* see that ! *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela !  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans  
 hand.  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,  
*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (44) shelling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (44) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m. *Toute*, f.

*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each* science) has its principles. Every season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.

233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.

*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;

*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.  
 i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m. *Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). Every  
 24 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.



books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,  
*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 ble to please every body.  
 168 plaire 202

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,  
*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 mieux. se plaindre\*  
 prepared against every thing.  
 prêt à

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,  
 Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 what I do ?  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may do that. Any body will (or *there*  
 pouvoir faire 80  
 is nobody but will) show you the way.  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,  
 Did ever *any body* see that ? *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela ?  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each  
 porter 140 paquet dans

hand,  
 main

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,

*Each* of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.  
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

## EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a  
 (bb) shilling par jour;  
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these  
 (bb) porter ;  
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*; as,  
*Every* language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;  
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m.  
*Toute*, f.

*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all* men; *Tout* homme est faillible.

## EXERCISE.

*Every* science (i. e. *each* science) has its principles. *Every* season  
 ses principe saison  
 has its attractions. *Every* plant has its properties. *Every* man lies,  
 charme. plante propriété.  
 (i. e. *all* men lie) but every man is not a liar. *Every* woman is  
 — menteur.  
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of  
 fragile, — succomber, 92  
 the day.

233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.

*Every one*, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;

*Every one* lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.

i. e. *each* person lives &c.

*Every one*, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m.  
*Toutes*, f.

*Every one* of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.  
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

## EXERCISE.

*Every one* has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each* person). *Every*  
 24 soi,  
 one thinks himself to be 239 in the right. I have lost every one of my  
 penser — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

\* This sentence can not be expressed literally.

books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost  
 every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 — 54 — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde* ; as,  
*Every body* speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.  
 She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

## EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-  
 dire le 54 dire du mal N.B.  
 ble to please every body.  
 106 plaire 203

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,  
*Every thing* is right. *Tout* est bien.  
 She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

## EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am  
 mieux. se plaindre\*  
 prepared against every thing.  
 prêt à

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of some body,  
 some one, are expressed by *Quelqu'un* ; as,

Has *any body* asked for me ? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé ?

## EXERCISE.

Is any body come ? Have you met any body ? Can any body do  
 134 venu ? Pouvoir 134 faire  
 what I do ?  
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body,  
 are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne* ;  
 as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.  
*Tout le monde* vous dira la même chose ;  
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

## EXERCISE.

Any body (or *every body*) may 178 do that. Any body will (or *there*  
 pouvoir faire 80  
 is nobody but will) show you the way.  
 montrer chemin

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a  
 comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without  
*ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody* ; as,  
 Did ever *any body* see that ! *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela !  
 He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

---

\* See a reflexive verb, pag 100.

## EXERCISE.

Did ever any body do such a thing! Yes; and you can do it as  
 136 jamais 134 28 (tk) 84 48  
 well as any body.  
 48

111. *Any thing*, in the sense of something, is *Quelque chose*; as,

Has any thing happened? Est-il arrivé quelque chose?

## EXERCISE.

(Is there) any thing in the bottle? Have you heard any thing?  
 246 bouteille? apprendre  
 (Is there) any thing new to-day?  
 246 (cc) nouveau

112. *Any thing*, used in the sense of every thing, is expressed by *Tout*;

Do any thing you please. Faites tout ce qu'il vous plaira.

## EXERCISE.

He is fit for any thing (or every thing.) I will do any thing to  
 propre 200 faire 179  
 serve him. I prefer this to any thing.  
 servir préférer 89

113. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, *any thing* is expressed by *rien*, but without *ne*; for *rien* attended by *ne*, expresses *nothing*; as,

Is there any thing finer! Y a-t-il rien de plus beau!

## EXERCISE.

(Is there) any thing finer than civility! I doubt that you will  
 246 (cc) beau civilité! douter que  
 make 145 any thing good (of it.)  
 faire (cc) bon en 54

114. *Whoever, whosoever* joined to a substantive, or relating to a substantive before mentioned, is expressed by *Quelque, Quelsque, m. Quelleque, Quellesque, f.* with the verb in the subjunctive; and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb; as,

Whoever that man is, I shall have him punished.  
*Quelque soit cet homme, je le ferai punir.*

## EXERCISE.

Whoever that man be, he is acting wrong; or that man is acting  
 (bb) agir 155 mal; 153  
 wrong, whoever he be. Whoever those children be, they are ill  
 (bb) — mal se  
 behaved.  
 comporter. 125

115. *Whoever, whosoever, whomsoever*, meaning any person soever, is expressed by *Qui que ce soit*, with a relative pronoun after it, and the verb in the subjunctive; as,

*Whoever* has done it, he shall repent of it; i. e. *whoever that person be* ;

*Qui que ce soit qui l'ait fait, il s'en repentira.*

*Whomsoever* you meet, do not stop; i. e. *whosoever that person be* ;

*Qui que ce soit que vous rencontriez, ne vous arrêtez pas.*

## EXERCISE.

Whoever speaks to you, you ought to answer civilly. Whomso-  
 (o) 54, devoir 173 répondre civilement.  
 ever you apply to, they<sup>90</sup> will tell you the same thing.  
 s'adresser 203, n.s. dire même chose.

116. *Whoever, whomsoever*, meaning every body, is *Tous ceux* ;

He stops *whomsoever* he meets. Il arrête *tous ceux* qu'il rencontre.

N. B. In proverbial sentences, *whoever* is *quiconque* ; as,

*Whoever* is rich is every thing *Quiconque* est riche est tout.

## EXERCISE.

Whoever (or every body *who*) is found out at night is stopped.  
 92 trouver dehors la nuit 92 arrêter\*  
 Bring with you *whomsoever* (or *every person*) you meet<sup>142</sup>.  
 Amener rencontrer.

117. *Whatever, whatsoever*, with a substantive, requires a distinction.

If the substantive to which *whatever, whatsoever* is joined, is the nominative of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque, quelque*, m. *quelleque, quellesque*, f. with the verb in the subjunctive, and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb ; as,

*Whatever* his reasons are, they will not be heard.

*Quellesque* soient ses raisons, elles ne seront pas écoutées.

If the substantive to which *whatever, whatsoever* is joined, is the object of a verb, *whatever, whatsoever* is expressed by *quelque*, sing. *quelques*, plur. for both genders, with *que* after the substantive, and the verb in the subjunctive ; as,

*Whatever* reasons he gives, he will not be excused.

*Quelques* raisons qu'il donne, il ne sera pas excusé.

## EXERCISE.

Whatever this work be, it is too dear. Whatever his terms be,  
 (bb) ouvrage, 62 trop conditions,  
 I shall agree to them. Do not trust to their promises, *whatever*  
 accepter — 54 — se fier à promesse,  
 they be. *Whatever* business you have, you should not neglect your  
 62 affaire, 176 négliger  
 friends. *Whatever* terms they propose, I shall agree to them.  
 conditions proposer, accepter — 54

\* Turn : one stops *whomsoever* one finds out at night.

† See imperative of a reflexive verb, page 100.

118. *Whatever, whatsoever*, implying whatever a thing may be, is expressed by *quoi que ce soit*, with a relative pronoun after it, and the verb in the subjunctive ; as,

*Whatever* happens let me know it; i. e. *whatever the thing be &c.*  
*Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le-moi savoir.*

## EXERCISE.

*Whatever* I do, I am always scolded. *Whatever* he undertakes,  
 faire, gronder. entreprendre,  
 he never succeeds.  
 100 réussir.

119. *Whatever, whatsoever*, implying any thing, or every thing, is expressed by *Tout ce qui*, nomin. *tout ce que*, object. ; as,

*Whatever* is right, is not always approved; i. e. *every thing that &c.*  
*Tout ce qui est bien n'est pas toujours approuvé.*  
*Do whatever* you will; i. e. *any thing, or every thing* you will.  
*Faites tout ce que vous voudrez.*

## EXERCISE.

Take *whatever* you think proper. He grants her *whatever*  
 Prendre croirez à propos. accorder (t) 63  
 she desires. He approves of *whatever* she does.  
 désirer. approuver 201 faire.

120. *Other* is *Autre*, substantive and adjective, of both genders ; as,

Give me an *other* pen. Donnez-moi une *autre* plume.  
*Others* think differently. *D'autres* pensent différemment.\*

## EXERCISE.

I see another man coming. I have found another flower.  
 voir qui vient. n. s. trouver fleur.  
 (Here is 247) another. (There are) a great many others.  
 En 70 voici En 70 247 — beaucoup d'

121. *Each other, one another*;

	masc. SING.	fem.	masc. PLURAL.	fem.
of, from	<i>l'un l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une l'autre,</i>	<i>les Uns les Autres,</i>	<i>les Unes les Autres ;</i>
to, at	<i>l'un de l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une de l'autre,</i>	<i>les Uns des Autres,</i>	<i>les Unes des Autres ;</i>
	<i>l'un à l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une à l'autre,</i>	<i>les Uns aux Autres,</i>	<i>les Unes aux Autres ;</i>

agreeably to gender and number ; but observe that the preposition which comes before *one another* in english, must be placed between the two words *l'un, l'autre* in french ; as,

They can not live *without* one another; i. e. the one *without* the other.

Ils ne sauraient vivre *l'un sans l'autre*, m. *l'une sans l'autre*, f.

\* In proverbial sentences, *others* after *of, to* is generally rendered by *autrui* ; as,  
 Do not do to *others* what you would not like to be done to.  
 Ne faites pas à *autrui* ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.

## EXERCISE.

Fire and water destroy each other. These women hate one another. See those two women; they are jealous of each other; yet they can not do without one another. These people have fallen upon one another.

Feu eau se détruire (bb) se haïr  
 jaloux (g)  
 se passer de (bb) gens 238 tombés

## 122. Both;

masc. SING. fem. masc. PLUR. fem.  
*PUn et l'Autre, l'Une et l'Autre, Tous deux, Toutes deux;* } Speaking  
 of, from Both; } of two indi-  
*de l'Un et de l'Autre, de l'Une et de l'Autre, de Tous deux, de Toutes deux;* } vidual ob-  
 to, at Both; } jects only;  
*à l'Un et à l'Autre. à l'Une et à l'Autre, à Tous deux à Toutes deux;* } as,

Your sisters are both right.

Vos sœurs ont raison l'une et l'autre, or ont toutes deux raison.

Both; *les Uns et les Autres, les Unes et les Autres;* } Speaking of a greater  
 of, from Both; *des Uns et des Autres, des Unes et des Autres;* } number of individuals,  
 to, at Both; *aux Uns et aux Autres, aux Unes et aux Autres;* } but considered as two  
 parties; as,

The French and the Dutch are united, let us beat both.

Les Français et les Hollandais sont unis, battons les uns et les autres.

## EXERCISE.

Your brothers are both very well. I saw them both last night.  
 se porter voir 235  
 You know my sisters; they will both be here to-night. The Russians  
 être 235 Russe  
 and the Prussians have declared war against us; but we will beat  
 Prussien déclarer guerre — 55; battre  
 both. Both will have reason to repent (of it)  
 lieu de se repentir en 59.

## 123. Either;

masc. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.  
*PUn ou l'Autre, l'Une ou l'Autre, les Uns ou les Autres, les Unes ou les Autres;* }  
 of, from Either; } [tres;  
*de l'Un ou de l'Autre, de l'Une ou de l'Autre, des Uns ou des Autres, des Unes ou des Au-* }  
 to, at Either; } [tres;  
*à l'Un ou à l'Autre, à l'Une ou à l'Autre, aux Uns ou aux Autres, aux Unes ou aux Au-*

Either of them will come.

L'un ou l'autre viendra, m. l'une ou l'autre viendra, f.

You may use either of them.

Vous pouvez vous servir de l'un ou de l'autre, m. de l'une ou de l'autre, f.

## EXERCISE.

Either of these men will do it. You may speak to either.  
 (bb) faire 54 pouvoir parler  
 Take either of these flowers. You may have either of them.  
 Prendre — (bb) fleur. pouvoir (kk)

124. *Neither, not either ;*

masc.	sing.	fem.	masc.	PLURAL.	fem.
Ni l'un ni l'autre,		Ni l'une ni l'autre ;	Ni les uns ni les autres,		Ni les unes
or, from Neither ;					Ni des unes
Ni de l'un ni de l'autre,		Ni de l'une ni de l'autre ;	Ni des uns ni des autres,		Ni des unes
or, ad. Neither ;					Ni aux unes
Ni à l'un ni à l'autre,		Ni à l'une ni à l'autre ;	Ni aux uns ni aux autres,		Ni aux unes

These words require *ne* before the verb which attends them ;

as,

I care for *neither* of them.

Je *ne* me soucie ni de l'un ni de l'autre, m. ni de l'une ni de l'autre, f.

*N. B.* When these words are the nominative of a verb, they are generally placed after the verb, and *ils* or *elles* is added to the verb ; as,

*Neither* of them will come.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra ; or *ils* ne viendront ni l'un ni l'autre, m.  
Ni l'une ni l'autre ne viendra ; or *elles* ne viendront ni l'une ni l'autre, f.

## EXERCISE.

Neither of them will study. Neither of these men can do it. I will  
— — 173 étudier. (bb) faire 54 173  
not trust either of them.\*  
se fier à —

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.†*

Do you know any of the ladies we have just passed? No; I  
— connaître ‡ (s) venir de passer ‡ ;  
know none (of them.) I have not seen any (of them) before.  
en 54 en 55 206 n.b.  
I should like to get acquainted with some of them. I know the two  
164 faire connaissance 584  
last 29. Which of the two is the handsomest? They are both very  
dernier. 804 belle 44 ‡ très  
handsome, and they have each a handsome fortune. You may 178  
29 ‡ beau bien. pouvoir  
get acquainted with either of them, or with both, if you like. They  
(kk) — — vouloir. ‡  
come here every summer. Every body is fond of them. Every one  
ici été. — aimer || 54

\* When *on* comes after the conjunctions *et*, *si*, *ou*, or any word ending in *ou* or *on*, or between *que* and a verb beginning with *con* or *com*, the letter *l'* is generally placed before *on*, to soften the sounds of these words which otherwise would be disagreeable ; so we say : C'est un pays où l'on vit à bon marché ; it is a country where people live cheap ; On apprend plus facilement les choses que l'on comprend, que celles que l'on ne comprend pas ; people learn more easily the things which they understand, than those which they do not understand : où on vit, &c. qu'on comprend, &c. would be harsh to the ear. But if these words were followed by *le*, *la*, *les*, *l'* must not be added to *on*, as it would then cause the same discordance which it is intended to remove ; so we say : Si on le savait, not, Si l'on le savait ; if people knew it. On estimerait davantage la science, si on la connaissait, not, si l'on la connaissait ; people would esteem learning more, if they were acquainted with it.

† See note \* page 182.

‡ See note † page 239.

§ Mind the *gender* of the noun which this pronoun represents.

|| We have no other word to express the words *be fond of*, in French, but the verb *aimer*, to like.



who knows them is fond of their company. They are very fond of  
 each other. They are always with one another. Are they married?  
 No, neither of them is married, but I think they are both promised.  
 I would give any thing I possess to be acquainted with them. You  
 may speak to either of them. Bring here every one of your books.  
 Let every one of you show me his exercise. Every one of you  
 will be punished. Can I do any thing for you? Yes, You can.  
 You can help me as well as any body. Nobody is more capable  
 than you. I should like to buy something, but every thing is so  
 dear now, that one can not get any thing. I should like to  
 have some of these flowers. Which do you think are the finest?  
 Some say that these are the finest; some give the preference to  
 those. These men relate both the same story, but neither of them  
 believes that it is true. I do not believe either of them. They are  
 both wrong, whoever they be. Whosoever asks for me, tell him  
 that I am not at home. Whatever he writes, let me know it.  
 Whatever is right, is not always approved. Whatever good is said of  
 us, we are not told any thing new. Whatever your rank and riches  
 may be, or whatever rank and riches you have, do not be proud, if  
 you will not (be disliked) by every body. No one ought to be a judge  
 in his own cause. People often flatter themselves more than they should.  
 Every one complains of his memory, but no one complains of his  
 understanding. There would not be (so much) disorder seen in the  
 world, if youth had a good impression given it at first, and if care  
 was taken to form the mind of children as it ought to be. I have  
 just been told that Mr. A. is dead. Indeed? Yes, they say so.

\* Turn this sentence thus : One would not see so much disorder in the world, if one gave at first a good impression to youth, and if one took care to form the mind of children as one should

He was invited to supper yesterday at Mrs. B.'s. They waited<sup>137</sup>  
 140 inviter 160 souper hier 206 Madame attendre  
 for him a long time, but seeing that he did not come, somebody was  
 201 54 — temps, voir — 138 , —  
 sent<sup>137</sup> to look for him; he could<sup>137</sup> not be found any where; they  
 envoyer 172 chercher 201 54; pouvoir \* — trouver nulle part;  
 have been seeking<sup>155</sup> for him all night, and this morning he was  
 — chercher 201 55 nult (66) 234 —  
 found drowned in a pond, not far from Mrs. B.'s house. Every body  
 136 noyer 212 étang, non loin de 25  
 is sorry (for it.) Is it known how this accident happened<sup>136</sup>? No,  
 fâché en35 — savoir comment (66) arriver<sup>238</sup> 191,  
 nobody knows. It is supposed that he (lost his way) in the dark. He  
 70 — s'imaginer s'égarer 137 213 obscurité.  
 is to be buried to-morrow. You will be expected at his funeral.  
 242 enterrer demain. — attendre funérailles. (pl.)  
 You will go; will you not? I will not go, unless<sup>218</sup> I am invited  
 70 ; 222 70 , à moins que<sup>195</sup> — inviter  
 (to it.) You may be sure that they will invite you.  
 63 178 (kk) sûr (66) n.n. 54.

## CHAPTER VI.

## VERB.

*Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative.*

A *verb* expressing either being or acting, necessarily implies a subject or agent, generally known in grammar by the name of *nominative*.

125. The *verb* must be of the same *number* and *person* as the agent, or nominative; this is called agreement of the verb with its *nominative*; as,

	Singular.	Plural.	
I speak.	Je parle.	Nous parlons.	we speak, &c.
Thou speakest.	Tu parles.	Vous parlez.	
He	Il	Ils	
She	Elle	Elles	
My brother	Mon frère	Mes frères	
My sister	Ma sœur	Mes sœurs	

## EXERCISE.

I study; Thou studiest; He studies; My brother studies; We  
 étudier; ; ;  
 study; You study; They study; My brothers study.  
 ; ; ;

\* Express *Not* by *Né* only, before the verb, as *Nulle* which comes after, supplies the place of *Pas* or *Point*.

126. When *two* or more substantives in the singular are the *nominative* of the same *verb*, that verb must be in the *plural* number; as,

My sister and he *speak* french.      Ma sœur et lui *parlent* français.

## EXERCISE.

My brother and sister study.

127. If the substantives which are the nominative of the verb, are of *different* persons,\* the verb does not agree with either of them; we add *nous* or *vous* to the sentence with which we make the verb agree.

We add *nous*, if there is in the sentence a substantive\* of the first person; as,

He and I *speak* french.      Lui et moi *nous* parlons français;

i. e. he and I *we speak* french.

We add *vous*, if there is in the sentence a substantive\* of the second person, and none of the first; as,

You and they *speak* french.      Vous et eux *vous* parlez français;

i. e. you and they *you speak* french.

## EXERCISE.

You and I agree.      My sister and I are fond of study. She and  
 52 être d'accord.      52 — aimer † étude.  
 I will learn together. We 90 add *vous*, if there is in the sentence a  
 52 ensemble.      N.B. ,  
 substantive of the second person, and 219 there is none of the first ;  
 \* 29 33 ,      220 il n'y en ait pas      29 ;  
 You and your brother do not agree. You and he are continually 183  
 — s'accorder.      52 — continuellement  
 quarrelling. You and your sister will learn together. You and they  
 se quereller 155      52  
 are of the same opinion.

128. If the nominative of the verb is the relative pronoun *Qui*, the verb must be of the same *number* and *person* as the substantive\* to which that pronoun relates; as,

It is <i>I</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>moi</i> qui parle le mieux.
It is <i>thou</i> who <i>speakest</i> best.	C' est <i>toi</i> qui parles le mieux.
It is <i>he</i> who <i>speaks</i> best.	C' est <i>lui</i> qui parle le mieux.
It is <i>we</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>nous</i> qui parlons le mieux.
It is <i>you</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>vous</i> qui parlez le mieux.
It is <i>they</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	Ce sont <i>eux</i> qui parlent le mieux.

## EXERCISE.

It 62 is I who will say my lesson first.      It 62 is we who will say our  
 N.B. 52      dire      leçon le premier.      N.B.  
 lessons first.      It 62 is you who will say your lesson first.      It 62 is  
 les premiers.      N.B.      N.B.  
 they who will say their lessons first.  
 52

\* See note \* page 201

† See note † page 246.

129. If *Qui* refers to several substantives of *different* persons,\* it agrees with the *first* person in preference to the second, and with the *second* in preference to the third; as,  
It is *you* and *I* who *speak* best. C'est *vous* et *moi* qui parlons le mieux.  
It is *you* and *he* who *speak* best. C'est *vous* et *lui* qui parlez le mieux.

## EXERCISE.

It62 is you and I who will begin. It62 is you and your brother  
n.s. 62 commencer. n.s.  
who will (go out) first.  
sortir les premiers.

130. The collective substantives *La plupart, infinité, nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude* followed by another substantive, require the verb of the same number as that second substantive; ex.

*Most people* are of that opinion.

*La plupart du monde* pense ainsi, or *La plupart des gens* pense ainsi.

## EXERCISE.

A great number of men perished. Most of the cavalry  
périr.137 La plupart cavalerie  
deserted. A crowd of people229 came to see them.  
désertir.137 foule gens venir 172

131. *Le quart, le tiers, la moitié* require the verb in the singular; as,

One *fourth* of my books are lost. *Le quart* de mes livres est perdu.

## EXERCISE.

One fourth of the ships were taken or destroyed. One third of the  
Le quart navire 137 prendre détruire. Le tiers  
crews deserted. One half of men do not think, and the other half  
équipage 137 La moitié penser,  
know not192 what to think.  
ne savoir n.s. 83 172.

### Placing of the Nominative with the Verb.

132. In a *declarative* sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the *nominative* of the verb is placed in french as in english, *before the verb*; ex.

*I speak* french well.

*Je parle* bien français.

*He speaks* french well.

*Il parle* bien français.

*My brother speaks* french well.

*Mon frère* parle bien français.

*My sister speaks* french well.

*Ma sœur* parle bien français. (ce)

\* See note \* page 201.

(ce) The nominative is generally placed after the verb in a declarative sentence.  
1. When the verb is used as a *parenthesis*; ex.

You are wrong, said her mother to her. Vous avez tort, lui dit sa mère.

2. When the sentence begins with *tel*, or *ainsi*; as,

Such was his advice.

Tel était son avis.

Thus ended the business.

Ainsi se termina l'affaire.

## EXERCISE.

I study well. He studies well. This boy studies well. You study well. They study well.  
 étudier garçon

But when the sentence is *interrogative*, it is necessary to consider whether the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun* or a *pronoun*.

133. If, when you ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb is one of the *pronouns* *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, on, or ce*, this pronoun is placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english, *immediately after the verb*; ex.

Do I speak french well ?	Parle-je bien français ?
Does he speak french well ?	Parle-t-il bien français ?
Does she speak french well ?	Parle-t-elle bien français ?
Do people speak french well ?	Parle-t-on bien français ?

## EXERCISE.

Do I study well ? Does he study well ? Do we study well ? Do you study well ? Do they study well ?  
 étudier

134. If, when you ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun*, that noun is placed *before the verb*, the same as in declarative sentences ; but to show that a *question* is asked, one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun, must be placed *immediately after the verb* ; as,

Does my brother speak french well ?	Mon frère parle-t-il bien français ? (f)
Does my sister speak french well ?	Ma sœur parle-t-elle bien français ?
Do my brothers speak french well ?	Mes frères parlent-ils bien français ?
Do my sisters speak french well ?	Mes sœurs parlent-elles bien français ?

3. When the *nominative* is attended by several words which can not be separated from it, or can not be placed before the verb, without suspending the sense of the sentence ;

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où se formaient des îles bordées de tilleuls fleuris.

On one side was seen a river from which sprung islands lined with lime trees in bloom.

Là coulent mille ruisseaux qui distribuent par tout une eau claire.

There a thousand rivulets run which carry every where a clear water. Fenelon.

These sentences would not be so clear, if they were expressed thus :

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où des îles bordées de tilleuls fleuris se formaient.

Là, mille ruisseaux, qui distribuent par tout une eau claire coulent.

4. When the verb is preceded by *que, se, or où* ; as,

The money which my father sent me. L'argent que m'envoya mon père.

The field where the battle was fought. Le champ où se donna la bataille.

5. *Je, nous, tu, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, on, ce* are generally placed *after the verb*, when the sentence begins with one of these words, *ainsi, so, therefore ; au moins, at least ; en vain, in vain ; à peine, hardly ; peut-être, perhaps ; as,*

You were hardly gone, when she came in. À peine étiez vous sorti qu'elle entra.

\* Except the pronoun *Je*, when the verb to which it is joined ends with several consonants, so instead of saying ; *cours-je ? do I run ? ments-je ? do I lie ? dors-je ? do I sleep ?* which are hard to pronounce, we say, *est-ce que je cours ? est-ce que je ments ?*

(f) When an *interrogative* sentence begins with *que, (what ;)* *où, (where ;)* we generally place the noun after the verb, without adding a pronoun to it ; as,

Où est votre frère ?

Where is your brother ?

Où est votre sœur ?

Where is your sister ?

Que fait votre frère ?

What is your brother doing ?

Que fait votre sœur ?

What is your, &c. ?

## EXERCISE.

Does this boy study well? Does this girl study well? Do these  
 (bb) garçon fille (bb)  
 boys study well? Do these girls study well? Do any of them learn  
 96 58  
 french? Is not the french language very difficult? Are your  
 français? 20 22 langue difficile?  
 masters pleased<sup>29</sup> with you? Does your father often come to see  
 content n.s. 300 184 173  
 you? Has your mother been here lately?  
 ici depuis peu?

## MOODS AND TENSES.

## INDICATIVE MOOD OR MANNER.

When we declare that a thing *is*, or *is not*, or that it *is*, *was*, *will be*, or *would be* in our power to have it so, this manner of expressing ourselves is called *indicative* or declarative.

*Present Tense or Time.*

J' Ai, I have, } now, to-day, this week, this month,  
 Je Suis, I am, } this year, this age, in any period  
 Je Parle,\* I speak, or am speaking; } of time not entirely elapsed.†

135. The *present* tense in french does not differ from the same tense in english; it expresses the being or acting at the time in which we are; as,

I now have. I now am. I now speak, or am speaking.  
 A présent j'ai. A présent je suis. A présent je parle.

## EXERCISE.

I like study. Study is the food of the mind.  
 étude. aliment esprit.

## PAST TENSES.

*Compound of the Present.*

J' Ai eu, I had, or have had, } lately, to-day, this week, &c. in any  
 J' Ai été, I was, have been, } period of time, not entirely elapsed;  
 J' Ai parlé, I spoke, did speak, have spoken. } this is the nearest time to the present.

\* In order to render the elucidation of this interesting part of the language more obvious, I have laid down the two auxiliary verbs *avoir*, to Have, and *être*, to Be, which are generally found the most embarrassing, and the familiar verb *parler*, to Speak, which may serve as a model for all the rest.

† A period of time is a certain quantity of time, the duration of which is fixed and agreed upon, and which being elapsed, that period ceases; such as a Day, a Week, a Fortnight, a Month, a Year, an Age, the four seasons of the year, Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter; or any other portion of time, the beginning and end of which can be ascertained.

136. If we speak of an *action* recently *past*, without mentioning the *time* in which it passed, or if we mention a *period*\* which is still lasting, such as, to-day, this *week*, this *month*, this *year*, &c. the *action* being past, and the period of time mentioned being still present, we make the verb partake of both the present and past tenses, by adding the *past participle* to the *present* tense of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*; ex.

## NO TIME MENTIONED.

Were you ever at Paris?

turn, Have you ever been at Paris? Avez-vous jamais été à Paris?

No, I never was there;

turn, No, I have never been there. Non, je n'y ai jamais été

I have no opportunity to go;

turn, I have had no opportunity &c. Je n'ai pas eu occasion d'y aller.

Did you ever see Buonaparte?

turn, Have you ever seen B.? Avez-vous jamais vu Buonaparte?

## PERIOD MENTIONED, BUT NOT ELAPSED.

I was at your house this morning;

turn, I have been at your house &c. J'ai été chez vous ce matin.

Did you find any body there? †

turn, Have you found any body &c. Y avez-vous trouvé quelqu'un?

I saw your sister, and spoke to her;

turn, I have seen your sister, and &c. J'ai vu votre sœur, et je lui ai par-

Did you not see my mother?

turn, Have you not seen &c.? N'avez-vous pas vu ma mère?

## EXERCISE.

When did you see Mr. A.? I saw him this morning. I met him  
 Quand † † 234 †  
 as he was coming to town. He told me he was going to 206 your  
 comme 138 155 dire † 221 138 155 N.B.  
 house. Did you not see him? No, I did 70 not. He was at 208 our  
 † † N.B. † N.B.  
 house, but I was not in. He only 184 found my sister there, and he  
 140 y 54 † † y 55,  
 would not stop. Did you hear that he was going to be married?  
 vouloit † rester. † 155 172 — se marier?  
 No, I did not; (i. e. hear 70 it.) Who told you so? His cousin  
 † † N.B. † 55 le 59 14 cousine f.  
 told me so. I heard that he was going abroad. I shall  
 † 55 le 59 † — 155 dans les pays étrangers.

\* See note † page 252.

† The french generally use the participle *été*, instead of the participle *allé*, to express that a person has gone to a place whence he is returned.

‡ Turn; when have you seen &c.

§ Turn; I have seen him.

¶ Turn; he has been &c.

†† Turn: he has not been willing.

‡ See note \* page 254.

\*\* See note † page 173.

soon<sup>134</sup> knew if it be true; for, when he called this morning, he  
 blentôt 217 ; car, passer  
 promised my sister that he would call again (as he goes back.)  
 \* 166 (46) N.B. repasser — en s'en retournant

## PERFECT TENSE.

J' *Eus*, I *had*, } yesterday, last week, last month, last year, a fort-  
 Je, *Fus*, I *was*, } night ago, in any period of time entirely past;  
 } *this is the remotest time from the present.*  
 Je, *Parlai*, I *spoke*, *did speak*;

137. If we speak of an action *past*, in a *period* of time which is also entirely *past*; such as Yesterday, last week, a fortnight ago, last month, last year, any year previous to that in which we live, then both the time and action being past or accomplished, we use the *perfect* tense of the verb; viz. *eus*, *fus*, *parlai*; as,

I called at your house yesterday. Je passai hier chez vous.  
 Did you find any body there? Y trouvâtes-vous quelqu'un ?  
 I saw your sister and spoke to her. Je vis votre sœur et je lui parlai.  
 Did you go to the ball with her ? Allâtes-vous au bal avec elle ?  
 No, I did not; i. e. go there. 70 r. N.B. Non, je n'y allai pas. 70 r. N.B.  
 Did you not speak to my mother ? Ne parlâtes-vous pas à ma mère ?  
 Yes, I did; i. e. speak to her. 70 r. N.B. Oui, je lui parlai. 70 r. N.B.

## EXERCISE.

Where did you dine yesterday ? I dined at my mother's, and  
 Où dîner \* 208  
 supped at my sister's. Did you not go to the play ? Yes, I did 70.  
 souper 208 comédie ? N.B.  
 What play did they 90 act ? They 90 acted a new comedy. How  
 82 pièce \* N.B. jouer N.B. \* nouvelle comédie. 185  
 were you entertained ? I did not pay much attention to the play.  
 \* amuser 158 ? faire N.B. pièce.  
 I conversed all the while with a gentleman who sat 140 by me. Did  
 parler \* temps monsieur être près de 58  
 you not see me ? No; I did 70 not. Where were you ? I was  
 \* 191 ; \* N.B. Où 140 140  
 (in the) pit. I did not stop long. I went home, where I read the  
 au parterre. \* rester \* au logis, \*  
 play.  
 pièce.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' *Avais*, I *had*, } then, at that time, when that happened, in a time  
 J' *Étais*, I *was*, } imperfect or uncertain.  
 Je *Parlais*, I *spoke*, *did speak*;

\* It is not necessary in order to use the past tenses, that every verb should be attended by an expression denoting a time past : it is sufficient that the time be mentioned or alluded to at the beginning of the discourse, because the mind naturally goes back to the period which has either been mentioned or alluded to.



The *imperfect* is used in *three* different instances.

138. 1st. When we speak of an action that was passing, and consequently imperfect or incomplete at a time we allude to, though at the time in which we relate it, it is perfect or accomplished, we use the *imperfect* tense of the verb; viz. *avais, étais, parlais, &c.*

These instances are generally expressed in english by the *gerund* or present *participle* in *ing* added to *was* or *were*; as,

What <i>were</i> you <i>doing</i> there?	Que <i>faisiez</i> -vous là.
I <i>was writing</i> to a friend.	J' <i>écrivais</i> à un ami.
I <i>was getting</i> ready to go out.	Je m' <i>apprêtais</i> à sortir.
I <i>was going</i> to call upon you.	J' <i>allais</i> passer chez vous.
I <i>was talking</i> of you just now.	Je <i>parlais</i> de vous tout à l'heure.
I <i>was going out</i> , as you <i>came in</i> .	Je <i>sortais</i> , comme vous <i>entriez</i> .

## EXERCISE.

What were you doing when I came in?	I was preparing my-
83	155 suis 136 entré ?
155	155 me 54
self to study a music lesson.	I was going to play a tune. I was
169	musique 25 155 172 air. 155
trying to tune my instrument.	Stop. You were doing it (the wrong
essayier 168 accorder	Arrêter. 155 54 à rebours.
way.) You were spoiling it.	They 90 were making (a great deal)
gâter 155 62	n.b. 155 beaucoup
of noise at 208 your house last night.	Yes, we had some company.
bruit n.b.	235 compagnie
We were enjoying ourselves.	
155 réjouir nous 54	

139. 2nd. When we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*, we must use the *imperfect*.

In these instances, the English verb may be changed into the *infinitive*, with *did use*, or *used*, before it; as,

Where <i>did you walk</i> in London	[Londres?
viz. Where <i>did you use</i> to walk &c.	Où vous <i>promeniez</i> -vous à
I <i>generally walked</i> in the park.	[dans le parc.
or, I <i>used</i> to walk &c.	Je me <i>promenais</i> ordinairement
I <i>often met</i> frenchmen there.	
or, I <i>used</i> to meet &c.	J'y <i>rencontrais</i> souvent des fran-
I <i>always spoke</i> french with them.	[çais.
or, I <i>used</i> to speak &c.	Je <i>parlais</i> toujours français avec
	[eux.

## EXERCISE.

How did you spend your time, when you were in the country?	
185	271 le temps, 140 à 230
As soon as we were up, we walked in the garden till breakfast time;	
Aussitôt que 140 levés, se promener	jusqu'au déjeuner 25;
after breakfast we (sat at our work) till (twelve o'clock), and then	
travailler	jusqu'à 236, alors
we studied till dinner time. How did you spend your evenings?	
dîné 25 185	271 les 234

You had neither plays nor concerts to go to. Some ladies and gentlemen in our neighbourhood often called upon us, or we called upon them, and we sometimes made a little concert, or we played at different games, but we generally spent the evenings in reading or in conversing. We spent our time very agreeably.

234 \* comédie — où aller † times.  
 sieurs voisinsage 184 266 266  
 58 184 faire petit jouer à  
 20 22 jeux. ordinairement 271 234 169 lire  
 169 converser. 271 le agréablement.

140. 3rd. Another very extensive use of the *imperfect* is in descriptions for whenever we describe the qualities of persons, or things, the *state, place, situation, order, disposition* in which they were in a time past, we use the *imperfect*; as.

Where <i>were</i> you yesterday?	Où étiez-vous hier?
I <i>was</i> in the country.	J'étais à la campagne.
I <i>wasn't</i> not well.‡	Je ne me portais pas bien.
I <i>had</i> a bad head-ache.	J'avais grand mal à la tête.§
<i>Was</i> the country pleasant?	La campagne était-elle agréable?
Yes; but it <i>wasn't</i> rather hot.	Oui; mais il faisait un peu [chaud

\* Do not put any article before the noun which follows *ni*.

† See note † page 183.

‡ By using the *Perfect* instead of the *Imperfect* in these instances, the sentence would be equally grammatical, but the idea would be very different. This difference will appear obvious in the following examples composed of the same words;

Quand j'étais à Londres, j'allais à la comédie;  
 Quand je fus à Londres, j'allai à la comédie.

By the first of these expressions, people will understand that when I *was* in London, I *went* to go to the play; by the second they will understand that when I *arrived* at London, at a certain period either named or alluded to, I *went* to the play. Learners are very apt to confound these two tenses.

§ The greatest difficulty attending the past tenses is how to discriminate this last instance of the *imperfect* from the *perfect*, i. e. how to distinguish an action from a *state of being*, and indeed the distinction is sometimes so nice, that it is not surprising foreigners should err in the use of them; for example,

<i>First instance.</i>	<i>Second instance.</i>
I <i>was</i> very wet in going into the country.	I <i>was</i> so wet that I could not stay.
He <i>was</i> killed in falling from his horse.	He <i>was</i> dead when we found him.
He <i>had</i> his leg carried off by a cannon ball.	He <i>had</i> also a wound in his breast.

*Was* and *had* in these various instances can not be expressed by the same tense in French.

When, in the first instance, I say; I *was* very wet in going into the country; He *was* killed in falling; He *had* his leg carried off, &c. I am relating facts, events which happened, of the end of which a perfect idea may be formed, and these must be expressed by the *perfect*.

But when, in the second instance, I say; I *was* so wet that I could not stay: He *was* dead when we found him; He *had* also a wound in his breast; I no longer express the facts themselves, of being wet, of being killed &c. but describe a state of being, i. e. I *was* in a wet state; He *was* in a dead state; He *was* in a wounded state, the duration of which is not limited to any time, and can not be ascertained, and these are expressed by the *imperfect*; thus,

<i>First instance.</i>	<i>Second instance.</i>
Je fus très mouillé en allant à la campagne.	J'étais si mouillé que je ne pus pas rester.
Il fut tué en tombant de cheval.	Il était mort quand nous le trouvâmes.
Il eut la jambe emportée d'un coup de canon.	Il avait aussi une blessure à la poitrine.

In order to elucidate this still more, and try the rules that have just been laid down, let us peruse a piece of history where the difference between a *narration* and a *description*, a *fact* and an *incident*, will appear obvious.

N. B. Observe however, that if the *duration* of the state, &c. which we wish to describe was *limited* to a *period* of which the *end* was *known*, we should not use the imperfect ; we should use either the *compound* of the *present* or the *perfect*, according

Calypso could not console herself for the departure of Ulysses. In her grief, she considered her immortality as a misfortune. Her grotto no longer resounded with the sweet harmony of her voice. The nymphs who attended her, dared not to speak to her. She often walked alone upon the flowery turf which an eternal spring diffused round her island ; but these charming abodes, far from assuaging her grief, served only to recall the sad remembrance of Ulysses, whom she had so many times seen by her side. Frequently she stood motionless on the beach of the sea, which she watered with her tears, and she was incessantly turned towards that quarter where the ship of Ulysses, plowing the waves, had disappeared from her eyes. All on a sudden, she perceived pieces of a ship which had just been wrecked ; then she descried two men at a distance, one of whom was seemingly in years ; the other, though a youth, resembled Ulysses. He had his sweet and lofty look, with his size and majestic deportment. The goddess understood that it was Telemachus the son of that hero, but she could not find out who that venerable man was by whom Telemachus was accompanied.

Calypso ne pouvait se consoler du départ d'Ulysse. Dans sa douleur, elle se trouvait malheureuse d'être immortelle. Sa grotte ne resonait plus du doux chant de sa voix. Les nymphes qui la servaient n'osaient lui parler. Elle se promenait souvent seule sur les gazons fleuris dont un printemps éternel bordait son île ; mais ces beaux lieux, loin de modérer sa douleur ne faisaient que lui rappeler le triste souvenir d'Ulysse qu'elle y avait vu tant de fois auprès d'elle. Souvent elle demeurait immobile sur le rivage de la mer qu'elle arrosait de ses larmes, et elle était sans cesse tournée vers le côté où le vaisseau d'Ulysse, fendait les ondes, avait disparu à ses yeux. Tout à coup, elle aperçut les débris d'un navire qui venait de faire naufrage ; puis elle découvrit de loin deux hommes dont l'un paraissait âgé ; l'autre, quoique jeune, ressemblait à Ulysse. Il avait sa douceur et sa fierté, avec sa taille et sa démarche majestueuse. La déesse comprit que c'était Télémaque fils de ce héros, mais elle ne put découvrir qui était cet homme vénérable dont Télémaque était accompagné.

Now, if we select from the above passage the *facts* that constitute the ground of the *narration*, we shall find them to be these :

Calypso, standing on her island, perceived the wreck of a ship ; then she descried two men, the one young and the other old. She understood the young one to be Telemachus, but she could not recognise the other. And the verbs expressing these facts are in the *perfect*. The verbs which form only *incidents*, such as the *description* of Calypso and her island, of Telemachus and his shipwreck, and which might be left out of the *narration*, without impairing it, but not without stripping it of its beauties, are in the *imperfect*.

Let us examine another piece of the same author, in which there will be more *narration*, and less *description*, or more *facts* and fewer *incidents*.

Telemachus, relating the manner in which he escaped the danger of being taken by the Trojan fleet, says :

The affability and the courage of the sage Mentor charmed me ; but I was still more surprised, when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. At the moment when the skies began to clear, and the Trojans, having a nearer view of us, would infallibly have known us ; he observed one of their ships that was almost similar to ours, which the storm had separated from the rest. Her poop was adorned with particular flowers. He hastened to put upon our poop garlands of flowers similar to theirs. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop as much as they could along their benches, that they might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and whilst they were driven by the impet-

La douceur et le courage du sage Mentor me charmèrent ; mais je fus encore bien plus surpris, quand je vis avec quelle adresse il nous délivra des Troyens. Dans le moment où le ciel commençait à s'éclaircir et que les Troyens, nous voyant de plus près, n'auraient pas manqué de nous reconnaître : il remarqua un de leurs vaisseaux qui était presque semblable au nôtre, et que la tempête avait écarté. La poupe en était couronnée de certaines fleurs. Il se hâta de mettre sur notre poupe des couronnes de fleurs semblables. Il les attacha lui-même avec des bandelettes de la même couleur que celles des Troyens. Il ordonna à tous nos rameurs de se baisser le plus qu'ils pourraient le long de leurs bancs, pour n'être point reconnus des ennemis.

to the period mentioned, or alluded to ; for though I should say,

*J'étais malade ce matin.* I was ill this morning.  
*J'avais hier grand mal à la tête.* I had a bad head-ache yesterday.

I would not say :

*J'étais malade,* but *j'ai été malade tout la matinée.*  
*J'avais mal à la tête,* but *j'eus mal à la tête toute la journée ;*

Because the state which I describe is known to have ended with the period mentioned, viz. *la matinée, la journée.*

#### EXERCISE.

Where were you yesterday? I called<sup>137</sup> at<sup>208</sup> your house, but  
 Oà hier? <sup>266</sup> N.B.  
 you were not in. I was not well. I had a head-ache; and as I  
<sup>734</sup> <sup>241</sup> <sup>24</sup> mal à la tête; comme  
 could not study, I went<sup>137</sup> to walk in the fields. There had been a  
<sup>aller</sup> <sup>173</sup> <sup>263</sup> <sup>213</sup> <sup>il</sup> <sup>240</sup> un  
 little rain. The plants were so fresh, the trees were so green, and  
 peu pluie. si fraîche<sup>29</sup>, vert<sup>29</sup>,  
 formed such an agreeable shade, and the flowers spread so sweet<sup>33</sup> a  
 former si \* <sup>22</sup> ombrage, repandre douce <sup>28</sup>  
 smell, that I could not be tired with admiring the beautiful landscape  
 odeur, — se laisser <sup>168</sup> admirer <sup>154</sup> beau<sup>33</sup> paysage  
 which surrounded me. I wished to stay longer<sup>41</sup>; but it was late, I  
 entourer <sup>173</sup> rester long-temps; tard,  
 was tired, and I had a long way to go.  
 laisser, chemin à faire.

#### Future Positive.

*J'Aurai,* I shall, will have, } soon, by and by, to-morrow, next  
*Je Serai,* I shall, will be, } week, next month, next year,  
*Je Parlerai,* I shall, will speak; } &c. in any time to come.

141. The *future tense* is used in french as in english, to express what is to happen in a *time to come* ; as,

*I will call upon you by and by. Je passerai tantôt chez vous.*

velocity of the winds towards Africa, we made all our endeavours to reach the neighbouring coast of Sicily. There indeed we arrived ; but, &c.

En cet état nous passâmes<sup>137</sup> au milieu de leur flotte, et pendant que les vents impétueux les poussaient<sup>138</sup> vers l'Afrique, nous fîmes<sup>137</sup> les derniers efforts pour arriver sur la côte voisine de Sicile. Nous y arrivâmes<sup>137</sup> en effet ; mais, &c.

FENELON.

The *narrative* part of this history is ; the affability, &c. of the sage Mentor charmed me, but I was still more surprised when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. He observed one of their ships with flowers on her poop. He hastened to put similar flowers upon ours. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop along their benches, that we might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and made all our efforts to reach the coast of Sicily, where we arrived, &c. by which you see that all the verbs which are necessary to the train of the narration, because they declare facts, are in the *perfect tense*, those which denote only incidents, are in the *imperfect*.

\* Turn ; a shade so agreeable.

## EXERCISE.

When will you call upon me? I will call to-night. I shall not be  
 Quand 266 58 235  
 in. I shall be in the country. I will (set out) after dinner.  
 y 54 230 partir dîné.

142. The *present tense* is sometimes used in both languages, instead of the *future*; so we say,

Où allez-vous ce soir? Where *do* you *go* this evening?  
 for, Où irez-vous ce soir? Where *shall* you *go* this evening?

N. B. But if *two* verbs denoting *futurity* come in the *same* sentence, the *second* verb can *not* be put in the *present* tense in french, as it is sometimes in english, it must be put in the *future*; as,

Call upon me, when you *are* ready;  
 the time for calling and for being ready, having yet to come,  
 I would not say in french,

Passer chez moi, quand vous êtes prêt,  
 which would denote that the person *is* ready at the time I am speaking; I must say,

Passer chez moi, quand vous *serez* prêt, i. e. when you *will be* ready.  
 I *will call* as soon as I *have* dined.

Je passerai aussi tôt que j'aurai dîné; not, aussi tôt que j'ai dîné.  
 which would denote that the person *had dined* at the time he is speaking.

This generally happens after the words *when, as soon as, as long, as after*.

## EXERCISE.

Where do you dine to-day? Do you go to the play to-night?  
 Où dîner comédie 235  
 No, we go to a ball. Call upon me as soon as you can. We shall  
 101, bal. 266 43 tôt 43 pouvoir.  
 begin as43 soon as you are come. When you are ready, we will  
 commencer 43 arrivé. prêt,  
 go and take a walk.263 You shall not (go out) till after we have  
 — (ne) n.e. ne sortir que après que  
 done. We will go as soon as you will. I hope we shall see you  
 finir partir 43 tôt 43 221  
 oftener,41 when we are in the country. Come as often as you can.  
 souvent à 230 43 43  
 I will call upon you every time that I go (that way).  
 266 104 fois 74 par là.

## Future Conditional.

J'Aurais, I *should, would* have, } if I could, if I would, if I  
 Serais, I *should, would* be, } had time, if such a thing  
 Parlerais, I *should, would* speak, } happened.

143. The *conditional* has also the same properties in french

as in english ; it denotes that a thing would be done, if some condition was granted ; as,

*I would call there, if I could. J'y passerais, si je pouvais*

## EXERCISE.

I should like much to go to France. What would you do, if you  
 were there ? <sup>fort, 149</sup> You would not have any pleasure. <sup>83</sup> You could not un- <sup>faire,</sup>  
<sup>7 54</sup> derstand the language. <sup>plaisir.</sup> I think I should soon <sup>183</sup> learn it. <sup>an-</sup>  
 tandre. <sup>langue.</sup> <sup>221</sup> <sup>bientôt</sup>

144. After the conjunction *if, si; shall, will* must not be considered as signs of the *future*, nor *should, would* as signs of the *conditional* of the verb which follows them ; *will* is then the *present* tense, and *would* the imperfect of the verb *to will, to be willing*, and they must be expressed, *will* by the present, and *would* by the imperfect of the verb *vouloir*, with the following verb in the *infinitive* in french ; as,

- I will go with you, if you will come with me;*  
 I. e. if you *are willing* to come. (gg)  
*J'irai avec vous, si vous voulez venir avec moi.\**  
*I would go with you, if you would come with me;*  
 I. e. if you *were willing* to come.  
*J'irais avec vous, si vous vouliez venir avec moi.\**

N. B. If *should* is the sign that follows *if*, it must be left out, and the following verb put in the *imperfect* ; as,

If he *should come*, what should I say to him?  
*S'il venait, que lui dirais-je ?*

## EXERCISE.

*I will go with you, if you will come with me. I would go with you,*  
 † 58 † 58 †  
*if you would come with me. I will teach you french, if you will*  
 † † enseigner français, †

In these examples, you see *will* used first as a sign of the *future* of the following verb, then as the *present* of the verb *to will*; *would* first used as a sign of the *conditional*, then as the *imperfect* of the verb *to will*. If the learner finds himself embarrassed how to distinguish the verb from the sign, let him try to substitute in the place of *will, would* some verb of the same meaning, I. e. denoting *will, wish, inclination, desire*, such as, *please, like, choose, be willing*; and he will know by the sense it will make, which is the verb, and which is the sign. See also note \* page 130.

(gg) If *si* is used for *whether*; *shall, will* must be expressed by the *future*, and *should, would* by the *conditional*; as,

Do you know *whether* he will come ? *Savez-vous s'il viendra ?*  
 I want to know *whether* he would come. *Je veux savoir s'il viendrait.*

† Observe, that in the sentences where *if* occurs, there are generally two *will*, or two *would*: that *will* which follows *if* is the present, and *would* is the imperfect of the verb *to will, to be willing*, (see page 130,) and they must be expressed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *vouloir*, which then governs the following verb in the infinitive; the other *will* is the sign of the future, and the other *would* is the sign of the conditional of the following verb, which must also be expressed by the corresponding tenses, I. e. the *Future* or the *Conditional* of that verb in french.

learn it. I would teach you french, if you would learn it. How  
 apprendre  
 long do you think that I should be in learning it, if I should begin  
 186 penser à apprendre, 144 n.b. commencer  
 now? You may learn it in six months, if you will take pains. You  
 178 215 \* prendre de la peine.  
 might learn it in six months, if you would take pains. I will be obliged  
 178 215 \* oblige  
 to you, if you will call upon me to-morrow. 183 I would be (very  
 (o) 54, \* 266 demain. n.b. très  
 much) obliged to you, if you would call upon me.  
 (o) \* 266

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It has been said, (p. 252.) that when we *declare* that a thing is or is not, or that it is in our power to have it so, that mode of expression is called *indicative*, or declarative; but if the thing spoken of is not asserted to be or not to be; if it is mentioned only as a thing which *may* or *may not be*, and is not to be depended upon, this mode of expression is called potential, conjunctive, or *subjunctive*.†

\* See note † page 260.

† A few examples will make the difference between the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods more obvious:

They say that peace is made.

I believe that peace is made.

By these expressions I declare, in a *positive manner*, that, in the opinion of some person, the thing of which I am speaking (peace) *does* or *does not exist*, and this positive assertion must be made with the *indicative*; thus,

On dit que la paix est faite.

Je crois que la paix est faite.

But by these expressions,

Do they say that peace is made?

I do not believe that peace is made;

I do not assert that peace *does* or *does not exist*; I either declare that I am ignorant of it, or that I *doubt* its existence; but a thing may exist, though I am ignorant of it; it may exist, though I am not convinced of its existence, and this *uncertainty*, whether the thing is or is not, is imparted to the hearer by means of the *subjunctive* mood;

Dit-on que la paix soit faite?

Je ne crois pas que la paix soit faite.

Again,

I know somebody who *will lend* me money. He promised that he *would lend* me some.

These are *positive* assertions, and they must be made with the *indicative*;

Je connais quelqu'un qui me prêtera de l'argent.

Il a promis qu'il m'en prêterait.

But in these other instances;

I seek for somebody who *will lend* me money;

Do you know any body who *would lend* me money?

It is not asserted whether the thing I am speaking of, *will*, or *will not be*, i. e. whether the money *will be lent* or *not*; the event remains uncertain, and this uncertainty must be expressed by the *subjunctive*;

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me prête, or qui veuille me prêter de l'argent.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui voudrait me prêter de l'argent.

The *indicative* mood (says Harris) which, in all grammars, is the first in order, is also the first; both in dignity and use; it is this which publishes our sublimest perceptions, which exhibits the soul in her purest energies, superior to the imperfections of desires and wants, which includes the whole of time and its minutest distinctions.

As to the potential (*subjunctive*) mood, it is only of a subordinate nature, and it implies; but a *dubious* and *conjectural* assertion; whereas that of the *indicative* is *absolute*, and without reserve. (HARRIS, page 158, 159.)

145. If we speak of an action the event of which is uncertain, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of *two parts* connected by the conjunction *que*, the first part is either *interrogative* or *negative*, or is attended by some expression denoting *doubt*; as for example when I say;

*Do you think your sister will come?*

*I do not think she will come to-day.*

*If I hear that she comes, I will let you know;*

In which instances it remains uncertain whether the person will come or not; this uncertainty is imparted in french, by putting the verb in the second part of the sentence in the *subjunctive*; thus,

*Pensez-vous que votre sœur vienne? not, viendra.*

*Je ne pense pas qu'elle vienne aujourd'hui; not, viendra*

*Si j'apprends qu'elle vienne, je vous le ferai savoir.*

*Viendra* and *vient* would assert as a fact, what the first part of the sentence shows to be doubtful.

N. B. With respect to *interrogative* sentences, it must be observed, that it is only when we wish to impart ignorance or doubt of the thing inquired after, that the subjunctive is required after them; for if we knew that a thing is or will be, and only enquired whether the person to whom we speak knows it likewise, we should use the *indicative*; as,

*Do you not believe that she will come?*

*Do not you know that she is married?*

*Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elle viendra?*

*Ne savez-vous pas qu'elle est mariée?*

which sentences express the same idea as these;

*She will come, do you not believe it?*

*She is married, do not you know it?*

#### EXERCISE.

I think it will rain soon. Do not you think it will? It will  
 231 pleuvra bientôt. 231 n.s.  
 perhaps rain a little, but I do not think that it will rain much. If  
 183 un peu, (bb) n.s.  
 I thought that it would not rain, I would stop, but there is no appear-  
 140 — 149, rester, 246 190  
 ance that it will be fine to-day. I will (come again), if I find that it  
 240 revenir, trouver  
 does not rain. Do you not think that I did well to go before the  
 (bb) n.s. 136 de s'en aller 218  
 rain came? Do not you think that I should have been wet, if  
 pluie venir? (bb) n.s. mouillé,  
 I had stayed longer?  
 140 rester 41

146. The *subjunctive* mood is required after all verbs and adjectives, denoting *will*, *wish*, *desire*, *command*, *fear*, *wonder*, *surprise*, *astonishment*, *joy*, *gladness*, *grief*, *sorrow*, in short, after all expressions which denote any passion or emotion of the mind;\* as,

\* The ingenious Mr. Harris, (*Hermes*, pages 15, 16,) gives the following defini-



I will have you do that.	Je veux que vous fassiez cela.
I wish you may succeed.	Je souhaite que vous réussissiez.
I desired it to be got ready.	J'ai ordonné qu'on le prépare.
I am afraid he will spoil it.	Je crains qu'il ne le gâte.
I am surprised he is not here.	Je suis surpris qu'il ne soit pas ici.
I am glad you are come.	Je suis bien aise que vous soyez venu.
I am sorry he has not seen it.	Je suis fâché qu'il ne l'ait pas vu.

## EXERCISE.

I am glad <sup>231</sup> you are here.	bien aise	ici.	180	I wish <sup>221</sup> my brother would come.	I
wonder that he is not yet arrived.	s'étonner (bb) N.B.	encore	—	craindre	quelque
tune has <sup>195</sup> befallen him.	238	arrivé	lui.55	N.B.	24
It <sup>62</sup> is a pity that somebody did <sup>136</sup>	238	arrivé	lui.55	N.B.	24
not go with him.	allé	58	surpris	(o) 55	
I am surprised that he has not written to me.	I am				
sorry that he went <sup>136</sup> there without my knowing it.	fâché	238	y 55	218	je susse 156 54
I would have	taken care that he should be treated as	he deserves.			
soin	—	92	traiter	149	comme mériter.

147. The *subjunctive* mood is also required in french after the following verbs and adjectives, though they neither denote doubt nor passion ;

Il faut que je le voie.	I must see him.
Il est temps que je le voie.	It is time that I should see him.
C'est le seul ami que j'aie.	He is the only friend I have.
Il convient	It is becoming
Il importe	It is material
Il vaut mieux	It is better
Il suffit	It is sufficient
Il est à propos	It is fit
Il est nécessaire	It is necessary
Il est indifférent	It is indifferent
Il est cruel	It is cruel
Il est honteux	It is shameful

tion of the powers of the soul, which may throw some light upon this intricate subject.

The powers of the soul may be included in those of perception, and those of volition. By the powers of perception, I mean the *sense* and the *intellect*. By the powers of volition, I mean not only the *will*, but the several *passions* and *appetites*; in short, all that moves to action, whether rational or irrational.

If the leading powers of the soul be these two, it is plain that every speech or sentence, as far as it exhibits the soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we assert, then it is a sentence which respects the powers of perception; for what, indeed, is it to assert, but to publish some perception, either of the senses, or of the intellect.

If we interrogate, if we command, if we pray, if we wish, what do we but publish so many different volitions? for, Who is it that questions? He who has a desire to be informed. Who is it that commands? He who has a will, which he would have obeyed. What are those beings who either wish or pray? Those who feel certain wants, either for themselves or for others.

If then the soul's leading powers be the two above mentioned, and if it be true that all speech is a publication of these powers, it will follow, that every sentence will be either a sentence of assertion, or a sentence of volition.

To this may be added that sentences of assertion require the indicative, and sentences of volition require the subjunctive mood after them.

Il est <i>juste</i>	} qu'il le fasse.	It is <i>just</i>	} that he <i>should</i> do [it]
Il est <i>injuste</i>		It is <i>unjust</i>	
Il est <i>possible</i>		It is <i>possible</i>	
Il est <i>impossible</i>		It is <i>impossible</i>	

After an *adjective* in the superlative degree, (see 50 rule.)

After *rien, aucun, pas un, personne*, (note *dd*, p. 239.)

After *quelque, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit*, (114, 115, 117, 118 rules.)

After the conjunctions *afinque, quoique, &c.* (see 218 rule.)

#### EXERCISE.

It is time that we should go. 148 I must be ready to-night. I must  
 s'en aller.\* 181 prêt 235  
 (set out) to-morrow. It62 is fit that I should see in what state  
 partir N.S. à propos 148 62 état  
 my affairs are. It62 is impossible that they should be so bad as I am  
 affaires N.S. 62 148 mal que 92  
 told. It62 is shameful that my partner does not write to me. Is it62  
 dire. N.S. honteux associé (e) N.S.  
 necessary that you should go yourself? Is it62 not enough that you  
 148 (m) N.S. — N.S. suffire  
 write to him? I think it would be better that you should send 149  
 (e) 231 valoir mieux y 70 envoyer  
 somebody. I do not know any body whom I can send. I must either  
 93 97 145 y 70 181 ou  
 go myself, or I must send my brother. He is the only man whom I  
 y 70 (m) N.S., y 70 65 seul  
 can trust. 202 It62 is indifferent whether I go or not.  
 me ser à 203 N.S. que y 70 non.

#### Tenses of the Subjunctive.

The *subjunctive* mood being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it,† its tenses are regulated by this foregoing verb.

#### Present Tense.

J' Aie, I have, *may* have, }  
 Je Sois, I be, *may* be, } used after the *present* and *future* of  
 Js Parle, I speak, *may* speak; } the indicative.

148. The *present* of the *subjunctive* is used, when the verb which requires the *subjunctive* after it, is in the *present* or *future* of the *indicative*; as,

Do you { I shall have time? }  
 think { I shall be ready? } Pensez-vous { que j'aie le temps ?  
 { I shall speak to her? } { que je sois prêt ?  
 { } { que je lui parle ?

\* See the reflexive verb *s'en Aller*, page 103.

† Except in some sentences of *wish*, where the verb *wish* is understood; as,

God be blessed!

Dieu soit béni!

May you be happy!

Puissez-vous être heureux!

Would to God I had never seen him! Plût à dieu que je ne l'eusse jamais vu!

Futur.	He <i>will</i> wait	till I <i>have</i> time;	Il <i>attendra</i>	que j' <i>ai</i> le temps;
		till I <i>am</i> ready;		que je <i>sois</i> prêt;
		till I <i>speak</i> to her.		que je lui <i>parle</i> .

## EXERCISE.

Do you think your sister will come? I (am afraid) she will not be  
 221 145 craindre 231 146  
 here to-day. Somebody must go and fetch her. He will be back  
 ici 95 181 (na) chercher de retour  
 before we begin. It62 is fit that somebody should go for her before  
 218 N.B. à propos 95 147 \* 54 218  
 it is too late.  
 trop

## Perfect Tense.

J' Eusse, I had, *might* have, { used after the *perfect, im-*  
 Je Fussee, I were, *might* be, { *perfect, and conditional*  
 Je Parlasse, I spoke, *might* speak; { *tenses.*

149. The *perfect* of the *subjunctive* is used, when the verb which requires the *subjunctive* after it, is in the *perfect, imperfect, or conditional*; as,

Perf. Imper. Cond.	He waited	till I <i>had</i> time;	Il attendit	que j' <i>eusse</i> le temps;
		till I <i>was</i> ready;		que je <i>fusse</i> prêt;
		till I <i>spoke</i> to her.		que je lui <i>parlasse</i> .
	He was waiting	till I <i>had</i> time;	Il attendait	que j' <i>eusse</i> le temps;
		till I <i>should</i> be ready;		que je <i>fusse</i> prêt;
		till I <i>sh'd sp'k</i> to her.		que je lui <i>parlasse</i> .
	Would he wait	till I <i>had</i> time?	Attendrait il	que j' <i>eusse</i> le temps?
		till I <i>sh'd</i> be ready?		que je <i>fusse</i> prêt?
		till I <i>sh'd sp'k</i> to her?		que je lui <i>parlasse</i> ?

## EXERCISE.

I did not think221 my sister would have145 come. I (was afraid)  
 140 238 158 craindre 231  
 she would not be here in time. It62 was that which made me wish  
 146 à temps. N.B. 140 89 74 faisait  
 that somebody would go for her. He might have returned before the  
 (bb) N.B. 95 146 \* 54 179 265 218  
 play began. It62 would be a pity221 she should not see it62 after  
 pièce commencer. N.B. — dommage 146  
 waiting154 so long.  
 avoir attendu

150. N. B. The *perfect* of the *subjunctive* is also used, though the foregoing verb is in the present of the indicative, if after the *subjunctive* there is another verb in the *imperfect*, or some conditional expression; as,

Do you think I *might* speak to her, if I *went* now?  
 Pensez-vous que je *pusse* lui parler, si j'*y allais* à présent?

\* Go for is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour*.

I do not think I *should have* succeeded *without* your assistance.  
 Je ne pense pas que j'*eusse* réussi sans votre secours;  
 I. e. if you *had not* assisted me.

And also when the action expressed by the verb is past; as,  
 It is no wonder that he *was* wicked.  
 Il n'est pas étonnant qu'il *fût* méchant.

## EXERCISE.

Do you think your sister would come, if I went for her now? It62  
 231 145, aller\* † 54 N.B.  
 is not probable that she would have145 gone there, if she had not been  
 180 158 y 55, \* 92  
 invited.159 I do not think we should have seen her, if it had not  
 inviter. 231 145 159 55, ce \*  
 been for you. I do not think we should.  
 à cause de 58 †

151. If, after a verb in the *subjunctive*, there is another verb, preceded by the conjunction *que*, that verb must also be in the *subjunctive*; as,

Do you think she *expects* that I *shall come*?  
 Pensez-vous qu'elle *s'attende* que je *vienne*?

## EXERCISE.

Do you think she expects145 that I shall see her again? I wonder  
 231 s'attendre revoir † s'étonner231  
 she could179 have thought that I was capable (of it.)  
 ait 146 pu penser en 54

## GERUND OR PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Ayant, *having*, } N. B. *Ayant, étant*, never change their ter-  
 Etant, *being*, } mination  
 Parlant, *speaking*;

152. The *gerund* or *present participle*, joined to a noun, generally denotes quality, and, like an adjective, agrees with it in gender and number;

She is a *charming* woman. C'est une femme *charmante*.  
 She has *engaging* manners. Elle a des manières *engageantes*.

## EXERCISE.

A charming girl, with a moving voice, singing her growing  
 charmant 32, de touchant 32, 153 naissant 32  
 love, in seeking153 her wandering sheep, heard some threatening  
 amours, f. en chercher errant 32 brébis entendre menaçant 33  
 words followed by piercing cries. I heard her trembling steps.  
 parole suivi 157 200 perçant 32 cri. tremblant 32 pas.

153. But the *gerund* expressing the action, and not the

\* Was, Were, Had, Did, or any other past tense that comes after *if*, *si*, must be in the *imperfect*.

† See note \* page 265.

‡ Instead of repeating the verb, the french would say; *Je ne le pense pas non plus*.

§ Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*.

quality of the substantive to which it refers, does not require any agreement with it ; as,

I saw her *in coming* home. Je la vis *en venant* au logis. (λλ)  
I found them *in walking* here. Je les trouvai *en me promenant* ici.

N. B. If the substantive to which the *gerund* refers is the object of the verb, it is better to express it with the indicative ; thus,

I found her *coming* here. Je la trouvai *qui venait* ici.  
I saw them *walking*. Je les vis *qui se promenaient*.

## EXERCISE.

A woman wandering through the country, 230 (lost her way.) Some  
errant à travers campagne, s'égarer.  
men piercing through the crowd and threatening to kill her, she  
perçant — foule menaçant 168 tuer ,  
fled trembling. We met a woman wandering through the country.  
s'enfuit en errer à travers 230  
We heard a man threatening to kill her We saw some huntsmen  
menacer 168 chasseur  
seeking for a hare.  
chercher — lièvre.

154. The english *gerund* governed by a verb, or the prepositions *of, from, at, for, after, with, without*, is expressed by the infinitive in french ;

I see him *coming*. Je le vois *venir* or *qui vient*.  
*Without bringing* his book. *Sans apporter* son livre.  
I was prevented *from doing* it. On m'a empêché *de le faire*.  
I was tired *with waiting*. J'étais las *d'attendre*.  
*After having stayed* so long. *Après avoir resté* si long temps.  
I was afraid *of being* too late. Je craignais *d'y être* trop tard.

## EXERCISE.

I saw you doing it, without taking any pains. I was afraid  
136 , de la peine. craindre 140  
of spoiling it. I blame him for going away, after having promised to  
gâter 200 s'en être allé, 168  
wait for me. Be contented with telling him 162 so. There is no  
201 54 — se contenter 200 (1) p. 63. le 59 246 190  
occasion for (using him ill.)  
lieu de maltraiter 54 —

155. The *gerund*, so often used in english with the auxiliary verb *be*, to render an action more definite, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french ; the auxiliary verb must be left out and the *gerund* be made into a *verb*, in the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is ; as,

(λλ) *En* is the only preposition which the *gerund* admits before it in french, therefore the preposition *by*, which is often prefixed to it in english, must be expressed by *en* ; as,

They saved the city *by surrendering*. Ils sauvèrent la ville *en se rendant*.  
You gained his esteem *by forgiving* him. Vous avez gagné son estime *en lui par-*  
[donnant.

I am <i>speaking</i> .	Je <i>parle</i> ; never, Je suis	} <i>Parlent</i> . See the conjugations, p. 98.
Thou art <i>speaking</i> .	Tu <i>parles</i> ; Tu es	
He is <i>speaking</i> .	Il <i>parle</i> ; Il est	
I was <i>speaking</i> ,	Je <i>parlais</i> ; J'étais	
I shall be <i>speaking</i> .	Je <i>parlerai</i> ; Je serai	

## EXERCISE.

What are you doing there? I am reading a novel. You are losing  
 83 là ? roman. perdre  
 (a deal) of time. What have you been doing, whilst I was dressing  
 beaucoup — , pendant que habiller  
 myself? I was waiting for my sister. I am going to dress myself  
 me 54 201 172 54  
 too. I (am afraid) 221 they will be going 146 before I am ready.  
 aussi, craindre 195 — partir 218 prêt  
 Make haste, for they are going to (set off) just now.  
 se dépêcher, \* car aller 173 partir tout à l'heure.

156. The *gerund*, when used as a substantive in english, i. e. preceded by an article, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; it must be expressed by a *noun*, if a noun synonymous to the verb can be found; as,

Let us go *a walking*. Allons à la promenade.  
 Her singing was much admired. Son chant fut fort admiré.  
 He gives all his time to *gaming*. Il donne tout son temps au jeu.  
 That is the cause of *his being* poor. C'est là la cause de sa pauvreté.

If a *noun* synonymous to the verb can not readily be found, give another turn to the sentence; as,

What is the reason of *your coming* so late?  
 Quelle est la raison que vous venez si tard? i. e. that you come, &c.  
 The impoverishing of some is the enriching of others.  
 Ce qui appauvrit les uns enrichit les autres; i. e. what impoverishes.

## EXERCISE.

The reading of good books forms the mind. His having been in-  
 lecture 33 former esprit.  
 structed (turn; his instruction) was of great service to him. The  
 ; 136 d'un grand (e) 55 Ce qui  
 rejoicing of some is the mourning of others. I should  
 les uns chagrine  
 have caught that bird, if it had not been for your making a noise;  
 attraper oiseau, du bruit;  
 (turn; if you had not made, &c.) You are the cause of his having  
 ; fait, &c.  
 been punished; (turn; that he has been punished.) What is the reason  
 ; ; 82 raison  
 for your being so angry with him? turn; that you are so angry.  
 fâché 200 ; ;

\* See the Imperative of a reflexive verb, page 100.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Eu, *had*,  
 Été, *been*,  
 Parlé, *spoken* ; } N. B. *Élé* never varies its termination.

157. The past *participle* joined to a noun, has the property of an *adjective*, and agrees in gender and number with that noun ;

A well *made* man. Un homme bien *fait*.  
 A well *made* woman. Une femme bien *faite*.

After the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être* a distinction must be made. —

## EXERCISE.

A married<sup>29</sup> man. A married woman. Well brought up children.  
 marier N.B. 32 bien élever 32 —  
 Well written letters. New built<sup>32</sup> houses. Roasted potatoes.  
 écrire 32 nouvellement bâtir rôti 32 pommes de terre.

158. After *être*, *to be*, the past *participle* must be of the same gender and number as the *nominative* of the verb ; ex.

*Il* est bien *fait*. *Ils* sont bien *faits*.  
*Elle* est bien *faite*. *Elles* sont bien *faites*.

## EXERCISE.

That man is married. That woman is married. Those children  
 marier. (bb)  
 are well brought up. These letters are well written. The potatoes  
 élever —  
 are not done enough. Those houses are very well built.  
 cuire 163 très bâtir.

159 After *avoir*, *to have*, the past *participle* does not agree with the *nominative* of the verb ; so we say,

*Il* a bien *fait*. *Ils* ont bien *fait*.  
*Elle* a bien *fait*. *Elles* ont bien *fait*.

In these instances you must consider whether the *participle* has an *object*, and whether this *object* comes before or after the *participle*.

If the *participle* comes *before* its *object*, it does not require any agreement with it ; but if it comes *after* the *object*, it must agree like an *adjective* in gender and number with that *object*, ex.

*Participle before its object.*

My brother has *made* a mistake. Mon frère a *fait* une *faute*.  
 My sister has *made* a mistake. Ma sœur a *fait* une *faute*.  
 My brothers have *made* a mistake. Mes frères ont *fait* une *faute*.

*Participle after its object.*

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'il a *faite*.  
 Here is the *mistake* she has *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'elle a *faite*.  
 Here is the *mistake* they have *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'ils ont *faite*.

N. B. Observe that the participle agrees only with its direct object (see 162 rule). for if the object is governed by a preposition expressed or understood, the participle does not agree with that object; so, though we say, *Il nous a vus*, *He has seen us*; we could not say, *Il nous a dits des nouvelles*, *He has told us news*; we must say, *Il nous a dit*; because *nous* is here used for *a nous*, to us.

## EXERCISE.

My mother has *invité* your sisters. Your sisters and brothers  
*invité* \*  
 have *invité* my mother and nieces. My sister has been invited. My  
*été* *invité*.  
 brothers have been invited. My sisters have been invited. I have  
 lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch. It is  
*perdre* *montrer*. *trouver* 55 65  
 not that which I have lost. I have sent you a letter. I have not  
 88 *envoyer* 55 *lettre*  
 received it. Have you not received the letter which I have sent you?  
*recevoir* 55 55  
 We have sold our house, but we have bought another. (That is) the  
*vendre* *maison*, *en* 70 *acheter* une autre. 247  
 house which we have sold, and (this is) the other which we have  
 247  
 bought. We have gained a complete 33 victory. Have you heard  
*remporter* *complet* 29 *victoire*. *entendu* *parler*  
 of the victory which we have gained? We have destroyed or taken  
*détruire* *prendre*  
 all the enemy's 25 ships. (Here are) the frigates which we have taken.  
*ennemi* *vaisseau* 247 *frégate*  
 (Here is) the person to whom I have written the letter of which I have  
 247 *personne* 76 74  
 spoken to you. It mentions a victory to which we have not  
 (a) 65 63 *faire mention d'* 76  
 contributed a little. Over 200 (how many) powerful 32 enemies have  
*contribuer* — *peu* 183 *De* *combien* *puissant* 29  
 we not triumphed!  
*triumpher*!

160. Sometimes after the *participle* preceded by an *object*, there is a verb in the *infinitive*, then it is necessary to consider whether the *object* is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows it.

If the *object* is governed by the participle, the participle must be of the same gender and number as that object; ex.

The letter I have given him to copy.  
 La lettre que je lui ai donnée à copier.

If the *object* is governed by the *infinitive* which follows the participle, the participle has no agreement with the object; as,

\* The participle *écrit* must not change its masculine termination; except when the past participle comes after the participle *été*, been, serving with *avoir*, to form a compound tense; for then it agrees with the nominative of *avoir*.



The letter I have told him to copy.  
La lettre que je lui ai dit de copier.\*

## EXERCISE.

Have you finished the letter which I had given you to write? Have  
140 55 169  
you finished the letter which you had begun to write? Have you  
140 168  
read the books which I had lent you to read? Have you read the  
140 prêter \* 55 169  
books which I had advised you to read? Is that the actress  
conseiller \* 55 168 Est-ce là actrice  
whom we heard 136 sing? Sing the song which we heard her 55 sing.  
entendre \* chanter? chanson 136 \* lui  
(These are) the figures which I have lately learned to draw. I  
247 dernièrement \* 169 dessiner.  
still 184 see the same faults which you had resolved to avoid.  
encore faute 140 résoudre \* 168 éviter.

161. The participles *plu, pleased; dû, owed, ought; pu, been able*; and *voulu, been willing*; do not agree with the object that precedes them, because the infinitive of the foregoing verb is understood after them; ex.

Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu, lui rendre understood.  
I have done him all the services that I have been able, to do understood.

## EXERCISE.

You have not written this letter so well as you ought. You have  
42 42 177  
had all the time and all the assistance that you wished. 136 I have  
temps secours 74 vouloir.  
taken all the pains that I could. 136.  
29 peine 74 pouvoir.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

A word is said to govern another, when the word governing obliges the governed to conform to certain rules.

162. When a verb governs *two substantives* (see note \*, page 201) one of them is the direct *object* of the verb, and does not require any preposition; the other is an indirect *object*, and requires a preposition, expressed before a noun, and generally implied in the pronoun†; as,

I gave her a nosegay. Je lui ai donné un bouquet.

Q. I gave what? A. a nosegay To whom? to her.

Nosegay is the direct object of the verb; to her is the indirect.

\* If you are uncertain whether the object is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows it, transpose the words, and see after which the object may more properly be placed.

If the object can be placed after the participle, as in the first instance, *The letter I have given him to copy*, which may be turned, *I have given him the letter to copy*; the participle *given* governs the object *letter*, and it must agree with it.

If the object comes more properly after the infinitive, as in the second instance, *The letter I have told him to copy*, which might be turned, *I have told him to copy the letter*, (not, *the letter to copy*;) the object *letter* is governed by the infinitive *to copy*, and the participle has no agreement with it.

† See a table of the pronouns, page 58.

Do not tell your *mother* of it. Ne le dites pas à votre mère.  
 Do not tell *what* ? do not tell it. To *whom* ? to your mother ;  
 For it is the *thing* you tell, not the *person* you tell it to, which is the *object* of the verb.

## EXERCISE.

Has your sister given my brother any money ? (turn ; given money  
 134 ;  
 to my brother.) Yes, she has lent him<sup>55</sup> some ; (i. e. *some* to him.)  
 prêter (1) p. 63. (p) ; (o)  
 Did he ask her for it ? (turn ; *did he ask it to her* ?) No, it<sup>62</sup> was  
 136 55 \* 59 ; (o) \* 191, n.b. 140  
 she who offered it<sup>55</sup> him ; (i. e. *it* to him.) They have requested me  
 offrir 136 (1) p. 63. ; (o) prior  
 to buy them books, (*to buy books to them*.) and to send them to  
 168 (1) p. 63. ; (o) 168 (o)  
 them ; but I will not send them any ; (*any to them*.) Have they  
 ; (1) p. 63. (p) ;  
 returned your sister (*to your sister*) those which she had lent them<sup>55</sup> ?  
 265 n.b. (bb) 140 159 (1) p. 63.  
 No, they have<sup>70</sup> not ; i. e. *returned them to her*.  
 ; n.b. ; (o)

163. When a verb governs *two objects*, the direct *object* is generally placed before the *indirect* ; as,

I gave your sister a nosegay. J'ai donné un bouquet à votre sœur.

Yet the indirect *object* must be placed first, if by placing it last, it made the meaning equivocal ; for example, we say,

Elle a jeté son bouquet dans la rue.

She has thrown her nosegay into the street ; but we do not say :

Elle a jeté le bouquet que vous lui aviez donné dans la rue.

She has thrown the nosegay which you had given her into the street ; because, dans la rue, after donné, might be understood that the nosegay was given in the street, not that it was thrown into the street ; we say :

Elle a jeté dans la rue, le bouquet que vous lui aviez donné.

She has thrown into the street, the nosegay which you had given her

## EXERCISE.

I have brought your brother a very entertaining book. He must  
 162 amusant 132 161  
 dedicate all the time that he can spare to study. How can he expect  
 donner 74 pouvoir — étude 185 s'attendre  
 to learn unless<sup>195</sup> he pays all the attention he can to his books ?  
 168 218 n.b. faire 29 (s)  
 Have you lent my sister any money ? She intends to present  
 162 avoir 125 dessein de faire présent  
 your brother with a book. He gives his friends (a great deal) of  
 162 de 162 — beaucoup  
 trouble. Tell her<sup>162</sup> that I will send her children some fruit.  
 peine. (1) p. 63. (bb) n.b. 162

\* See note † page 207.

† The English should pay particular attention to this rule ; they are very apt to act contrary to it, both in speaking and writing.

Take the parcel which I have brought into the parlour. Have you  
 256 paquet 136 55 184\* 155  
 sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office?)  
 salon poste

164. The same *noun* may be governed by *two verbs* which are both used without a *preposition*, or which require both the same *preposition*; as,

They *attacked* and *took* the place. Ils *attaquèrent* et *prirent* la place.

But if one of the verbs requires a *preposition* after it, and the other does not, or if the two verbs require different *prepositions*, the noun must be made the object of the *first* verb, and an objective pronoun must be added for an object to the *second* verb; so we could not say:

Ils *attaquèrent* et *se rendirent* maîtres de la place.

They *attacked* and *made* themselves *masters* of the place; because *Rendre maître* requires a preposition after it, and *Attaquer* does not; we say:

Ils *attaquèrent* la place, et *s'en rendirent* maîtres.

They attacked the place, and made themselves masters of it.

## EXERCISE.

I hate and despise that young man. He is always talking and  
 haïr mépriser (bb) 184\* parler 155  
 boasting 155 of what he does. He is always opposing and (finding  
 se vanter 84 faire. 184\* s'opposer 155 trouver 125  
 fault) with what other people do. I hate that young man, and I  
 à redire à les autres — 39 faire. (bb) , se  
 mistrust him. He is always talking about what other people do,  
 méfier de 58 184 155 200 les autres — 39 ,  
 and finding fault (with it.)  
 155 à redire y 54

165. The same *verb* may likewise govern several *parts* of a sentence, provided they are used in the same *sense*; as,

I *expect* much from him, but *still more* from you.

J'*attends* beaucoup de lui, mais *encore plus* de vous.

But if one of the parts is *affirmative*, and the other *negative*, the verb must be *repeated* in the *second* part; as,

I *expect every thing* from you, and *nothing* from him.

J'*attends tout* de vous, et je *n'attends rien* de lui.

## EXERCISE.

Our reputation depends much (upon 200 the) caprice of men, but  
 dépendre du  
 still more upon our actions. Our reputation does not depend (upon 200  
 encore de du  
 the) caprice of men, but *it depends* upon our good or our bad actions  
 , 62 200

\* Put this adverb after the second verb.

All men are equal; it<sup>63</sup> is not birth, (it<sup>62</sup> is *virtus alone*) which makes  
 égaux; n.b. naissance, n.b. 74  
 the difference.

166. Some verbs govern indifferently the infinitive or the subjunctive mood; but if they govern *two verbs*, they must be both in the same *mood*; as,

I will prevent him from *going out*, and from *doing* you any harm.  
 Je l'empêcherai de *sortir*, et de vous *faire* du mal; or  
 J'empêcherai qu'il ne *sorte*, et qu'il ne vous *fasse* du mal.

## EXERCISE.

I am glad to see you, and to have an opportunity to tell you so;  
 bien aise de , 34 occasion 108 50 le 54;  
 I have ordered the coach to be got ready, and to be brought here; I  
 108 — apprêter,\* 108 — 256 ;  
 have ordered that the coach be got ready, and that they<sup>90</sup> bring it  
 92 , n.b. 256 54  
 here.

167. *Passive verbs* require *de* or *par* before the noun which they govern. They require *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of the mind; as,

Your brother is *loved* and *esteemed* by all who know him.  
 Votre frère est *aimé* et *estimé* de tous ceux qui le connaissent.

They require *par*, when the bodily faculties participate in the action; as,

He was *beaten* by a sailor, and *robbed* by a soldier.  
 Il a été *battu* par un matelot, et *volté* par un soldat.

But instead of these *passive* expressions, it is better in French to use the *active sense* of the verb, and say:

Tous ceux qui connaissent votre frère *l'aiment* et *l'estiment*.  
 All those who know your brother *love* and *esteem* him. (ii)

\* Turn; to get ready the coach, and to bring &c.

(ii) Grammarians distinguish three sorts of verbs, which they call *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

*Active*, when the action of the verb passes from the agent to some object; as,  
 I teach your sister.

*Passive*, when the receiver of the action is made the leading power of the verb, this is done by adding the past participle to the auxiliary verb *de*; as,

Your sister is *taught* by me.

*Neuter*, i. e. neither active nor passive, when the whole energy of the verb remains in the agent, and is not communicated to any object; as,

I think, I walk, I stand, I sit, I sleep, &c.

These distinctions are common to all languages.

But the English have a facility of changing *active* verbs into *neuter* verbs, which the French have not; for example, when I say,

We met your brothers quarrelling; we *parted* them.

Here met and parted are active, because the energy of the verbs met, parted passes from the agent we, to an object brothers; if I take away the object, and say; we met, we parted; then met and parted are neuter, because the whole energy of the verb remains in the agent we.

Again; I opened the door; here opened is *active*, because it has an object, door. The door opened; here opened is *neuter*, because the action remains in the door itself.

To leave out this object would not render the verb neuter in French, it would only make the sentence incomplete.

To answer the same end, and give to the verb a neuter signification, the French

When *two verbs* come together, without being *conjunction*, the latter is governed by the former in *tive*, sometimes with, and sometimes without a *prep*

## EXERCISE.

He is blamed by all his friends, and despised by all his neighbours.  
 She is commended and esteemed by every body. The town was  
 besieged by the Austrians, and afterwards taken by the French.  
 The houses were plundered by the mob. This news was sent  
 to us by my correspondent. The letter is written by a man who was  
 upon the spot. All his friends blame him, and all his neighbours  
 despise him. Every body commends and esteems her. The Austrians,  
 &c. A wise man desires nothing, but what he can get justly,  
 use with sobriety, and distribute cheerfully. To mourn without  
 measure, is folly, not to mourn at all is insensibility.  
 mesure c'est folie du tout c'est —té

The preposition *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood in english, is expressed by *de*, *d*, *pour*, in french, but not indiscriminately. (kk)

168. *To*, before an *infinitive*, is expressed by *de*, when it can be changed into *of* or *from*, and the infinitive into the *gerund* or present participle ;

add to it an objective *pronoun* of the same *person* as the agent or nominative, by which means the whole energy of the verb remains in the same being ; hence the number of reflexive verbs with which the french language abounds : so in the first instance,

We met your brothers, we parted them ; the French say :

Nous rencontrâmes vos frères, nous les séparâmes.

In the second,

We met ; we parted. Nous nous rencontrâmes ; Nous nous séparâmes ; i. e. we ourselves met ; we ourselves parted.

They stopped me ; Ils m'arrêtèrent. They stopped ; Ils s'arrêtèrent ; i. e. they stopped themselves.

He opened the door ; Il ouvrit la porte. The door opened ; La porte s'ouvrit ; i. e. the door opened itself.

N. B. The genius of the french language requires also that some verbs which have a kind of passive or neuter signification in english, should be made reflexive, when we wish to show that the action expressed by the verb is not limited to the instance of which we speak, but is applicable to all instances of the same kind ; for example :

Ce mot n'est pas bien placé ; This word is not rightly placed ; i. e. in this instance.

It is placed ordinairement avant le verbe ; It is generally placed before the verb ; i. e. its usual place is before the verb. These instances may also be expressed by *on* ; on le place ordinairement avant le verbe. See 92 rule.

\* See note § p. 256.

(kk) When two verbs come together, without a conjunction between them, the latter is governed by the former in the *infinitive*, whether the sign *to* be expressed or not.

**N. B.** This commonly happens after nouns used in a definite sense ; as,

He has the pleasure *of seeing her.* Il a le plaisir *de la voir.*

She has the vanity *to think so.* Elle a la vanité *de le penser.\**

\* As this rule does not apply to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *de*, here is a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *de* before the infinitive which follows them :

s' Abstenir <i>de</i> ,	Abstain from.	se Garder <i>de</i> ,	Take care to.
Accuser <i>de</i> ,	Accuse of.	Gronder <i>de</i> ,	Scold for.
Achever <i>de</i> ,	Finish to.	se Hâter <i>de</i> ,	Haste to.
Affecter <i>de</i> ,	Affect to.	Heureux <i>de</i> ,	Happy to.
Affligé <i>de</i> ,	Afflicted to.	Impossible <i>de</i> ,	Impossible to.
Aïse <i>de</i> ,	Glad to.	Incapable <i>de</i> ,	Incapable of.
Appréhender <i>de</i> ,	Fear to.	Inspirer <i>de</i> ,	Inspire to.
s' Attendre, <i>de</i> , à, †	Expect to.	Juger à propos <i>de</i> ,	Think proper to.
Avertir <i>de</i> ,	Warn to.	Jurer <i>de</i> ,	Swear to.
s' Aviser <i>de</i> ,	Brink to.	Juste <i>de</i> ,	Just to.
Blâmer <i>de</i> ,	Blame to.	Lassé <i>de</i> ,	Tired of, with.
Capable <i>de</i> ,	Cepable of, to.	Libre <i>de</i> ,	At liberty to.
Cesser <i>de</i> ,	Cease to.	Mander <i>de</i> ,	Send word to.
Charger <i>de</i> ,	Charge to.	Manquer <i>de</i> ,	Fail to.
Charmé <i>de</i> , Ravi <i>de</i> ,	Delighted with.	Menacer <i>de</i> ,	Threaten to.
Commander <i>de</i> ,	Command to.	Mériter <i>de</i> ,	Deserve to.
Commencer <i>de</i> , à, †	Begin to.	Nécessaire <i>de</i> ,	Necessary to.
Conjurer <i>de</i> ,	Entreat to.	Négliger <i>de</i> ,	Neglect to.
Conseiller <i>de</i> ,	Advise to.	Offrir <i>de</i> ,	Offer to.
Consoler <i>de</i> ,	Console for.	Omettre <i>de</i> ,	Omit to.
Content <i>de</i> ,	Content to.	Ordonner <i>de</i> ,	Order to.
Continuer <i>de</i> , à, †	Continue to.	Oublier <i>de</i> ,	Forget to.
Convaincre <i>de</i> ,	Convince to.	Pardonner <i>de</i> ,	Forgive for.
Convenir <i>de</i> ,	Agree to.	Permettre <i>de</i> ,	Permit to.
Craindre <i>de</i> ,	Fear to.	Persuader <i>de</i> ,	Persuade to.
Curieux <i>de</i> ,	Curious to.	se Piquer <i>de</i> ,	Pretend to.
Décourager <i>de</i> ,	Discourage with.	Plaindre <i>de</i> ,	Pity to, for.
Défendre <i>de</i> ,	Forbid to.	Possible <i>de</i> ,	Possible to.
se Dépêcher <i>de</i> ,	Make haste to.	Prescrire <i>de</i> ,	Prescribe to.
Désespérer <i>de</i> ,	Despair to.	Pressor <i>de</i> ,	Press to.
Désirer <i>de</i> ,	Wish to.	Prier <i>de</i> ,	Request to.
Déterminer <i>de</i> ,	Determine to.	Promettre <i>de</i> ,	Promise to.
Détourner <i>de</i> ,	Divert from.	Proposer <i>de</i> ,	Propose to.
Différer <i>de</i> ,	Defer to, Delay to.	Recommander <i>de</i> ,	Recommend to.
Dire <i>de</i> ,	Tell to.	Refuser <i>de</i> ,	Refuse to.
Discontinuer <i>de</i> ,	Discontinue to.	Regretter <i>de</i> ,	Regret to.
Disconvenir <i>de</i> ,	Disown to.	se Réjouir <i>de</i> ,	Rejoice to.
Dispenser <i>de</i> ,	Dispense with.	Remercier <i>de</i> ,	Thank for.
Dissuader <i>de</i> ,	Dissuade from.	se Repentir <i>de</i> ,	Repent of, to.
Doux <i>de</i> ,	Pleasant to.	Reprocher <i>de</i> ,	Reproach for.
Ecrire <i>de</i> ,	Write to.	Résoudre <i>de</i> ,	Resolve to.
s' Efforcer <i>de</i> ,	Endeavour to.	Risquer <i>de</i> ,	Risk to.
Enjoindre <i>de</i> ,	Enjoin to.	Rougir <i>de</i> ,	Blush to.
Empêcher <i>de</i> ,	Prevent to.	Satisfait <i>de</i> ,	Satisfied to, with.
s' Empresser <i>de</i> ,	Eager to.	Solliciter <i>de</i> ,	Solicit to.
Ennuyé <i>de</i> ,	Tired of.	Sommer <i>de</i> ,	Summon to.
Enragé <i>de</i> ,	Enraged at.	se Soucier <i>de</i> ,	Care to.
Entreprendre <i>de</i> ,	Undertake to.	Souhaiter <i>de</i> ,	Wish to.
Essayer <i>de</i> , à, †	Try to.	Soupçonner <i>de</i> ,	Suspect to.
Étonné <i>de</i> ,	Astonished at.	se Souvenir <i>de</i> ,	Remember to.
Eviter <i>de</i> ,	Avoid to.	Suffire <i>de</i> ,	Sufficient to.
Excuser <i>de</i> ,	Excuse to.	Suggerer <i>de</i> ,	Suggest to.
Exempter <i>de</i> ,	Exempt from.	Supplier <i>de</i> ,	Entreat to.
Exorter, <i>de</i> , à, †	Exhort to.	Sûr <i>de</i> ,	Sure to.
Fâché <i>de</i> ,	Sorry to.	Surpris <i>de</i> ,	Surprised to.
Feindre <i>de</i> ,	Feign to.	Tâcher <i>de</i> ,	Endeavour to.
Finir <i>de</i> ,	Finish to.	Tarder <i>de</i> ,	Long to.
se Flatter <i>de</i> ,	Flatter to.	se Vanter <i>de</i> ,	Boast of.

† As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid the sound of several *e*, and *s* to avoid the sound of several *de*.

### EXERCISE.

You shall have the trouble to do it, or (*of doing it*) over again.  
peine      affaire  
Will you have the goodness to help, or (*of helping*) me? If you  
bonité      aider,  
have any desire to serve me, you have now a fine opportunity to  
envie      servir      à présent      occasion  
do it. Have the complaisance to wait for me. I have not time to  
stay. It is time to go. I do not hinder you from going.  
rester. Il      partir      empêcher      vous en aller.

169. *To*, before an *infinitive*, is expressed by *a*, when it can be changed into *in*, and the english infinitive into the *gerund* or present participle ;

*N. B.* This is generally the case after nouns used in a *partitive* sense ; as,

He has pleasure in seeing her. Il a du plaisir à la voir.  
Is there vanity to think so? Y a-t-il de la vanité à le penser ?

\* Over again is expressed by *re* before *faire*.

† As this rule is not applicable to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *à*, here is a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *à* before the infinitive which follows them :

s' Abaisser à,	Stoop to.	Contraindre à, de, &	Compel to.
Accoutumer à,	Accustom to.	Contribuer à,	Contribute to.
Admettre à,	Admit to.	Demander à,	Ask to.
Admirable à, de, &	Wonderful to.	Dépenser à,	Spend to, in.
Affreux à, de, &	Dreadful to.	Dernier à,	Last to.
Agreable à, de, &	Agreeable to.	Désagreable à, de, &	Disagreeable to.
Alder à,	Help to.	Destiner à,	Destine to.
Aimer à,	Like to. 9	Déterminer à,	Resolve upon.
Aisé à,	Easy to.	Difficile à, de, &	Difficult to.
Amuser à,	Amuse to, with.	Diligent à,	Diligent to.
Animer à,	Animate to.	Disposer à,	Dispose to.
s' Appliquer à,	Apply to.	Donner à,	Give to.
Apprendre à,	Learn to.	s' Echauffer à,	Heat to.
s' Apprêter à,	Get ready to.	s' Efforcer à,	Spend oneself to, in.
Aspirer à,	Aspire to.	Effroyable à, de, &	Frightful to.
Assidu à,	Assiduous to.	Employer à,	Employ to, Use to.
s' Attacher à,	Stick to.	Encourager à,	Encourage to.
Autoriser à,	Authorities to.	Enclin à,	Inclined to.
Avoir à,	Have to.	Engager à,	Induce to.
Beau à, de, &	Fine to.	Enhardir à,	Embolden to.
Bon à, de, &	Good to.	Enseigner à,	Teach to.
Charmant à,	Charming to.	s' Etudier à,	Study to.
Chercher à,	Seek to.	Etre à,	Be to.
Condamner à,	Condemn to.	Exact à,	Exact to.
Condescendre à,	Condescend to.	Exercer à,	Exercise to.
Consister à,	Consist to, in.	W Exciter à,	Excite to.

‡ These adjectives require *à*, when the verb which precedes them has a *personal* nominative ; they require *de*, when the nominative is *impersonal* ; ex.

Cela est agréable, bon, beau, à voir, à dire, à faire, That is agreeable, fine to see, &c  
Il est agréable, bon, beau de voir, de dire, de faire, It is agreeable, fine to see, &c

De or à, as it sounds best in the active sense : always de in the passive ; as

On m'a obligé de or à le faire ;

**They have obliged me to do it.**

*J'ai été obligé de le faire ;*

I have been obliged to do it.

## EXERCISE.

He will have some trouble to do it (*or is doing it*) over again.  
 peine refaire

He perhaps<sup>184</sup> will have somebody to help him. Is there no risk to  
 peut-être 95 aider lui 34 246 risque

go (this way?) A virtuous man takes pleasure to do good. Amuse  
 par ici vertueux bien Amuser

yourself with reading some instructive book, instead of spending<sup>154</sup>  
 vous 56 154 quelque instructif 32 , au lieu 271

your time in playing.  
 jouer.

170. *To*, before an infinitive, is expressed by *pour*, when the words in order, or with an intention, may be prefixed to it; as,

I did it *to* (*in order to*) oblige you. Je l'ai fait *pour* vous obliger.

We went there *to* see you. Nous y allâmes *pour* vous voir.

N. B. The english *gerund* preceded by the preposition *for*, explaining why a thing is done, is also expressed by the infinitive with *pour*;

He was hanged *for* having robbed. Il a été pendu *pour* avoir volé.

He was flogged for telling lies. Il a été fouetté *pour* avoir menti

## EXERCISE.

I was going to write to you to beg, a favour of you. You are too  
 155 aller 172 (e) demander grâce — 54 trop

civil to refuse me. (I will do any thing) to oblige you. I want money  
 refuser Il n'est rien que je ne fasse 260

to buy a horse. I have not money enough to buy one. It is not enough  
 acheter assez en 70 un. — suffire

to have money to get a horse, one must<sup>181</sup> have money to keep it.  
 168 se procurer N.B. — maintenir

He wants to have a horse, in order to make (people believe) that he is  
 230 croire aux gens

Exposer à,	Expose to.	Perdre à,	Loss in.
Facile à, de, †	Easy to.	Persister à,	Persist in.
se Fatiguer à,	Get tired with.	se Plaire à,	Delight to
Forcer à de, †	Force to.	Porter à,	Induce to.
Gagner à,	Gain to.	Premier à,	First to.
Habile à,	Clever to.	Préparer à,	Prepare to.
Habituer à,	Accustom to.	Prêt à,	Ready to.
Hésiter à,	Hesitate to.	Prompt à,	Quick to.
Horrible à, de, †	Horrid to.	Propre à,	Fit to.
Inciter à,	Incite to.	Recommencer à,	Begin again to.
Ingenieux à,	Ingenuous to.	Renoncer à,	Renounce to.
Inviter à,	Invite to.	Résoudre à,	Resolve to.
Laid à,	Ugly to.	Rester à,	Stay to.
Lent à,	Slow to.	Réussir à,	Succeed to, in.
Manquer à,	Omit to.	Servir à,	Serve to.
se Mettre à,	Set about to.	Soigneux à,	Careful to.
Montrer à,	Show to.	Songer à,	Think of.
Obliger à, de, †	Oblige to.	Sujet à,	Subject to, apt to.
se Obstiner à,	Obstinate to.	Tâcher à,	Attempt to.
Occupé à,	Busy to.	Tarder à,	Delay to.
se Opiniâtrer à,	Obstinate to.	Tendre à,	Tend to.
Parvenir à,	Arrive to.	Terrible à, de, †	Terrible to.
Passer à,	Spend in.	Travailler à,	Work to.
Penser à,	Think of.	Venir à,	Come to.

† † See notes, page 277.



rich. He has been taken up for having fought a duel. Is that sufficient  
 arrêter — s'être 227 battre en duel. — 89 suffire 125  
 for arresting a man? He was not arrested for fighting, but for rob-  
 136 s'être battu, avoir  
 bing and ill using the man whom he had 237 fought with.  
 volé maltraité 78 s'était 203

171. The *infinitive* is used without a *preposition* in french, when it is the nominative of another verb ; as,

To be rich is nothing; *Etre riche n'est rien;*  
 To be happy is every thing. *Le tout est d'être heureux.*

## EXERCISE.

To love and to be loved are the greatest pleasures in life. To love  
 aimer 44 49 vie.  
 without measure is a folly, not 190 to love at all, is insensibility. To  
 mesure folie, n.s. du tout, insensibilité.  
 do to others as we would wish (to be 92 done to), is to follow the law  
 à autrui ce que vouloir qu'on nous fit, c'est — loi  
 of reason.  
 raison.

172. The *infinitive* is also used without a *preposition* in french, after the following verbs; viz.

Aimer mieux ;	J'aime mieux le faire. (U)	I would rather do it.
Aller ;	Allons nous promener.	Let us go to take a walk.
Appercavoir ;	Je l'apperçois mouvoir.	I perceive it move.
Assurer ;	Il assure l'avoir fait.	He asserts to have done it.
Croire ;	Il croit me tromper.	He thinks to deceive me.
Compter ;	Il compte partir en peu.	He purposes to go soon.
Daigner ;	Daignez me dire quand.	Deign to tell me when.
Déclarer ;	Il déclare le savoir.	He declares to know it.
Devoir ;	Il doit me l'envoyer.	He is to send it me.
Entendre ;	Je l'entends parler.	I hear him speak.
Envoyer ;	Envoyez le chercher.	Send for it, or to fetch it.
Espérer ;	J'espère le rencontrer.	I expect to meet him.
Falloir ;	Il faut lui aider.	It is necessary to help him.
s' Imaginer ;	Je m'imagine y être.	I fancy myself to be there
Laisser ;	Laissez-le dire et faire.	Let him say and do.
Oser ;	Il n'ose l'avouer.	He dares not confess it.
Paraître ;	Il paraît l'entendre.	He seems to understand it.
Penser ;	Il a pensé tomber.	He had like to have fallen.
Prétendre ;	Prétend-il le faire ?	Does he pretend to do it ?
Pouvoir ;	Il n'a pas pu me le dire.	He could not tell it me.
Reconnaître ;	Je reconnais l'avoir dit.	I acknowledge to have said it.
Regarder ;	Je vous regarde faire.	I am looking at you doing it.
Retourner ;	Elle retourna le voir.	She returned to see him.
Savoir ;	Il sait où la trouver.	He knows where to find her.
Sembler ;	Elle semble avoir peur.	She seems to be afraid.
Souhaiter ;	Je souhaite la voir.*	I wish to see her.
Soutenir ;	Il soutient l'avoir vu.	He maintains to have seen it.
Valoir mieux ;	Il vaut mieux lui écrire. (U)	It is better to write to her.
Venir ;	Viendrez-vous me voir ? (mm)	Will you come to see me ?
Voir ;	Je vois venir votre sœur.	I see your sister coming.
Vouloir ;	Elle ne veut pas rester.	She will not stay.

(U) *Aimer mieux, valoir mieux*, followed by another verb in the infinitive, require *de* before the second infinitive ; as,

I would rather stay than go ; *J'aimerais mieux rester que d'y aller.*  
 It is better to go than stay alone ; *Il vaut mieux y aller que de rester seul.*

\* *Souhaiter* may also be used with *de* ; as *Je souhaite de voir, or de le voir* ; I wish to see him.

(mm) *Venir* used for *to be just, to have just*, requires *de* before the following infinitive ; and in the sense of *to happen*, it requires *à* ; as,

I have just seen her ; *Je viens de la voir.*  
 If she should happen to know it ; *Si elle venait à le savoir.*

## EXERCISE.

I am going to embark for America. When do you intend to go?  
 m'embarquer Amérique compter partir  
 I want<sup>260</sup> to (set out) as soon as I can. I hope you will come to see us be-  
 souhaiter partir 142 221  
 fore you go. I do not think I shall (be able) to call<sup>266</sup> before I go;  
 218 partir 221 pouvoir 145 passer 218 partir;  
 but I expect to see you often when I have<sup>148</sup> returned. You seem to  
 espérer 238 265  
 have a great desire to<sup>168</sup> go. No; I would rather stay than go; but  
 envie y 70 aller. ; aimer mieux rester (H) y aller ;  
 I do not<sup>192</sup> know what to do here. It is better to gain a little  
 n.s. savoir 83 il vaut mieux gagner — peu  
 than to gain nothing. I would rather gain nothing than to toil  
 (H) 99 aimer mieux (H) tourmenter  
 myself for so little.  
 me 54 si peu de chose.

## WILL, WOULD.

173. If, by *will, would*, you wish to denote *will, wish, desire*, you must express them by the corresponding tenses of the verb *vouloir*, with the following verb in the infinitive ; if you wish to express a determination, to make a positive assertion, *will* must be considered as the sign of the future, and *would* as the sign of the conditional of the following verb ; ex.

My brother <i>will</i> not stay;	} Mon frère ne <i>veut</i> pas rester.
viz. <i>Is not willing</i> to stay;	
He <i>positively will</i> not stay.	} Mon frère ne <i>restera</i> pas. s.n.*p-130.
My brother <i>would</i> not stay;	
viz. <i>Had no desire</i> to stay.	} Mon frère ne <i>voulait</i> pas rester.
<i>Would</i> he not stay, if I asked him?	
Ne <i>resterait</i> -il pas, si je l'en priais?	

## EXERCISE.

Will you do me the favour to call<sup>266</sup> upon me? I will call, if I  
 \* faire grâce 168 58  
 can. Would you do me the favour to call upon me? I would call,  
 pouvoir. \* 266  
 if I could. Will you bring your sister with you? I will bring her,  
 pouvoir \* amener avec  
 if she will come. Would you bring your sister with you? I would  
 144 256  
 bring her, if she would come. My sister will not come; she will  
 amener , 144 ;  
 stay at home. My sister would not come; she would stay at home.  
 rester au logis.

\* These sentences may be expressed two ways, but each way denotes a different idea, and this idea can be determined only by the speaker or writer. See the examples under rules 173, 174. See also the different notes on *Will, Would*, page 130 and 260.

## WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.

174. If *will have*, *would have* are used to denote the *wish*, the *desire* to possess an object, they are expressed by the corresponding tenses of *vouloir* as above, and *have* is left out; if they are used to denote not the *wish* to possess, but an assurance of the possession itself, they are expressed by the future or by the conditional of *avoir*; ex.

My brother *will have* this book; } Mon frère *veut* ce livre.  
 viz. My brother *wishes* to have &c. }  
 He *will have* it, if he behaves well. Il l'*aura*, s'il se comporte bien.  
 My brother *would have* this book; } Mon frère *voulait* ce livre.  
 viz. My brother *wished* to have &c. }  
 He *would have* it, if he behaved well. Il l'*aurait*, s'il se comportait bien.

N. B. If *will have*, *would have*, in the sense of *wish*, *choose*, are followed by another *verb*, the object of *have* becomes the nominative of the following *verb*, which must be in the subjunctive in french; as,

He *will have* his sister *go* with him; } Il *veut* que sa sœur aille avec lui.  
 i. e. He *wishes* that his sister *should go*. }  
 He *will not have* her *stay* alone. } Il ne *veut* pas qu'elle reste seule.\*

## EXERCISE.

My brother will have a horse. He will have one (cost what it will.)  
 † en 70 † un coûte qui coûte.  
 My brother would have a horse. He would have one (at any rate.)  
 † † à quelque prix que ce fût.  
 He will have a watch too. He would have a watch too. He will  
 † montre aussi. † en 70  
 have one, if he learns well. He would have one, if he learned well.  
 † apprendre en 79  
 He will have none, if he will not have this 88. He would have none,  
 n'en 70 pas, 144 n.e. n'en 70 pas,  
 if he would not have this. He will have one like yours.  
 144 en 70 † une 85  
 What will you have me do? What will you have my brother do?  
 83 † faire? † faire?  
 I will have you learn Italian, and I will have him learn French.  
 † Italien, † Français.  
 Would you have us do 149 nothing but study? Must we never play?  
 † faire 90 qu' étudier? 181 133 190 jouer

\* When you say I will have you, or I would have you *do such a thing*, it is not the person that you wish to have, but you wish that the person *would do the thing* you mention; so we could not say, *je vous veux*, nor *je veux vous avoir*, nor *je vous aurai*, which would mean that you want the person, not that you want the thing to be done; we must say, *je veux que vous fassiez telle chose*.

† See note \* page 280.

‡ Turn, What will you that I do? What will you that my brother do? for it is not the person whom you wish, but you wish that the person should perform some action.

§ Turn, I will that you learn Italian, and I will that he learn French. Would you that we should do nothing but study? and go on with other sentences of this kind.

Yes, I would have you learn your lessons first, and I would  
 have you play afterwards. I will not have any of you be idle. I  
 will have every one of you do his duty before he does any thing else.

175. *Would have* in the sense of *chosen, wished, been willing*, followed by a past *participle*, is expressed by the imperfect or by the conditional of *avoir* with the participle *voulu*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french; as,

If you *would have told* him of it. Si vous *aviez voulu* le lui dire.  
 He *would not have believed* me. Il n'*aurait pas voulu* me croire.

## EXERCISE.

If you would have let me go, I should have been back long  
 since. This would have been done in time, if he would have helped  
 me. I asked him to help me, and he would not. I would not have  
 helped you for ever so much. Why did you not tell me so before  
 I began? If I had told you so, you would not have come. If any  
 body but you had told me so, I certainly would not have believed him.

## SHOULD.

176. *Should*, which is generally a sign of the conditional tense, is sometimes used in the sense of *ought*, i. e. denoting duty or necessity, and is then expressed by the conditional tense of the verb *devoir*; as,

You *should* go and see him (*ought*). Vous *devriez* aller le voir.  
 He *should* let me know it. Il *devrait* me le faire savoir.

## EXERCISE.

You should take more pains than you do. Children should learn,  
 every day, something by heart. They should (get up) (sooner in the  
 morning) than they do.

## SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE.

177. *Should have*, and *ought to have*, followed by a past participle, are expressed by the conditional of *avoir*, with the

participle *dû*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french; as,

You *ought to have seen* him. Vous *auriez dû le voir*.  
He *should have let me know* of it. Il *aurait dû me le faire savoir*.

## EXERCISE.

You should have gone with your brothers. You should not have  
aller  
let them go alone. They ought not to have gone without leave.  
laisser seul 29. y 70 permission.  
They should not have stayed so long. You ought to have told  
rester si long temps. dire  
them 54 so. You have not acted as you should.  
(1) p. 63 le 59. agir

## MAY, MIGHT.

178. If *may*, *might* are used to denote power, *may* is expressed by the present of the verb *pouvoir*, viz. *puis*; and *might* by the conditional *pourrais*, with the following verb in the infinitive; as,

I *may* or *can* see it, if I choose; } Je *puis* le voir, si je veux.  
i. e. It is in my power to see it, if &c. } [See note\* page 125.]  
I *might* or *could* see it, if I chose; }  
i. e. It would be in my power to &c. } Je *pourrais* le voir, si je voulais.

If *may*, *might* denote a mere possibility, they may be expressed by the subjunctive of *pouvoir*, or the subjunctive of the following verb; as,

Bring it, that I *may* see it; } Apportez-le, afin que je le *voie* ;  
i. e. That it *may* be in my power to see } or, afin que je *puisse* le voir.  
He brought it, that I *might* see it; } Il l'apporta, afin que je le *visse* ;  
i. e. That it *might* be in my power &c. } or, afin que je *pusse* le voir.

## EXERCISE.

Any body *may* do that; (i. e. *can* or *is able*) to do that. You *may*  
109 \* (bb); 172 faire  
do it, (i. e. You *can* or *are able*) to do it, if you like. I will show  
vouloir. † montrer  
you how it *may* be done; (i. e. how one *can*, or *is able* to do it.) Leave  
92 Laisser  
it here, that I *may* try; (i. e. that it *may* be possible for me to  
56 , afin que essayer; 172  
try.) I will lend it 54 you, that you *may* learn; (i. e. that it *may*  
prêter 59, afin que  
be possible for you to learn.) Any body *might* do that; (i. e.  
109  
*would be able*) to do that. You *might* do it, (i. e. you *could* or  
faire †  
*would be able*) to do it, if you had 140 a mind. I will show you how  
, en 70 24 envie. †

\* See note \* page 125, N. B. p. 126.

† See note \* page 238

‡ See the different use of *Could*, page 125.

It might be done; (i. e. how one *could* do it.) I left<sup>136</sup> it here that  
 you might try; (i. e. that it might be possible for you to try.)

### COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE.

179. *Could have, might have* followed by a past participle are expressed by the imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, and the english participle is made by the infinitive in french; as,

If he *could have come* sooner. S'il *avait pu venir* plutôt.  
 He *might have seen* it too. Il *aurait pu le voir* aussi.

#### EXERCISE.

If I *could have* done it, (i. e. if I *had (been able)* to do it,) I would  
 not have asked<sup>252</sup> you to help me. You *might have* done it (i. e. you  
 would have been able to do it) as well as I.<sup>52</sup> I *could not have* done it  
 so soon; (i. e. I *should not have been able* to do it so soon.) You  
 perhaps<sup>184</sup> *could not*, (or *would not have been able* to do it) but you  
 might have tried; (i. e. you *would have been able* to try.) I *might have*  
 tried, (i. e. I *should have been able* to try) as you say; but I am  
 sure that I *could not have succeeded*; (i. e. that I *should not have been*  
 able to succeed.)

### WISH.

180. The present tense of the verb *wish*, followed by another verb in the imperfect, or in the conditional, is expressed by the conditional of *souhaiter*, and the verb which is in the imperfect, or in the conditional in english, must be in the perfect of the *subjunctive* in french; as,

I *wish* she *had* sent it. Je *souhaiterais* qu'elle l'eût vu.  
 I *wish* he *would* come. Je *souhaiterais* qu'il voulût venir.  
 I *wish* I *had* done it. Je *souhaiterais* l'avoir fait. (nn)

#### EXERCISE.

I *wish* that was done. I *wish* your sister would come. I *wish*  
 somebody would help me. I *wish* I had never attempted it. I am  
 glad that I have done (with it.)

\* See the different use of *Could*, page 125.

(nn) When two verbs in the same sentence have the same person for their nominative, the French generally put the second verb in the infinitive; as,  
 I am afraid I shall spoil it; Je crains de le gâter.  
 I wish I could do it; Je souhaiterais pouvoir le faire.

**MUST, NECESSARY.**

181. *Must* is conjugated through its different persons, but its representative *falloir* has only the third *person* singular of each tense, with *il* for nominative; then the nominative of *must* becomes the nominative of the following *verb*, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french; as,

<i>I must do it.</i>	<i>Il faut que je le fasse.</i>
<i>You must do it.</i>	<i>Il faut que vous le fassiez.</i>
<i>My brother must do it.</i>	<i>Il faut que mon frère le fasse.</i>
<i>It was necessary for me to do it.</i>	<i>Il fallait que je le fisse, &amp;c.*</i>

*N. B.* When the nominative of *must* is indefinite, the French leave it out, and put the following verb in the *infinitive*; as,  
One *must* be mad to think so.      Il faut être fou pour le penser.

**EXERCISE.**

I must see (turn; *it must that I see*) that man. Thou must not go  
alone. He must come himself. Your brother must go with you. You  
seul. (m) n. s. 58  
must not stay long. Must we not speak to him? Must not his friends  
↑ long temps. ↑ (o) 54 ↑  
know it? How many times must one tell you the same thing? We  
savour ↑ 232 dire  
must employ our time usefully. People must never be idle. They  
le utillement. oisif.  
must help one another.  
s'aider 131.

**MUST HAVE.**

182. *Must have*, meaning need to have, is also expressed by *falloir*, and the nominative of *must have* is made the object of *falloir*; as,

I <i>must have</i> money.	Il <i>me faut</i> de l'argent.
He <i>must have</i> books.	Il <i>lui faut</i> des livres.
My brother <i>must have</i> a horse.	Il <i>faut</i> un cheval à mon frère.

**EXERCISE.**

I must have a horse. He must have a saddle. My brother must  
 have a wife. My sister must have a husband. These children must  
 have clothes.

***Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.!***

I have done. Have you done? Has your brother done? Has  
finr.  
 your sister done? My brother has sung a song. My sister has sung  
chanter chanson.

\* See the different modifications of *falloir*, page 162. † See *falloir*, page 163.

† See *must* used negatively, page 162.

6 See *must have*, page 163

! See note \* page 182, and add to it that the whole of this exercise on the verbs must be well understood before the exercise is left off.

a song. My brothers have sung a song. My sisters have sung  
 a song. Have you heard the song which my brother has sung? Have  
 you heard the song which my sister has sung? Have you heard the  
 song which my brothers have sung? Have you heard the song which  
 my sisters have sung? They are gone. Are they gone? Are your  
 brothers gone? Are your sisters gone? How do they do? How  
 does your mother do? Is all your family well? Is your sister  
 returned from Bath? Have the baths been of service to her? I  
 think they have. She looks much better than she did before  
 she went. I am glad you are come; I wanted to see you. If  
 you had not come, I would have called upon you. I have some  
 news to tell you. Do you know that Mrs. B. is here? No,  
 I did not know it. When did she come? She came this morning.  
 I have just received this note from her. I am glad she is come  
 (at last), for I longed much to see her. I will wait upon her  
 to-morrow morning. Will you come with me? I do not think I  
 shall (be able) to go. I (am afraid) my mother will not be able to  
 spare me. Since she has been ill, she wishes me to be always  
 with her. She will not let me (go out) for fear I should stay too  
 long. Do you wish me to go? Yes, I do. Well; I will call,  
 long-temps. I can. You may call, if you will; it is not so far. I do not think  
 your mother will refuse you to (go out) for such a short time. I will  
 ask her. Do; i. e. ask her. I wish you would lend me the book which  
 I want.

\* You may express, I think they have, *ou je pense qu'ils l'ont fait*; or if you express have, you must add the rest of the sentence and say; *je pense qu'ils l'ont fait*.

† Turn this sentence, she has much better look than she had &c.

‡ See note † page 233.

§ Turn, she wishes that I be &c. see note \* p. 281, which is also applicable to wish.

|| Turn; do you wish that I go? see \* p. 281, which is also applicable to wish.

¶ The verb *aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; if the place has been mentioned before we always add to *aller* the adverbial pronoun *Y*, there; see note (n) page 58.

\*\* Add here, in french, the pronoun *Le*, it.



you promised me the last time I was at 208 your house. I promised  
 to send it to my cousin after (s) I have read it. She has nothing to  
 f. après que 62 99  
 do now, and it is better she should do that than do nothing.  
 à présent, valoir mieux 221 89 (U)  
 I will lend it you now. I wish you (very much) to read it. I did  
 62 59 † fort  
 not lend it you then, for fear 218 you would not return 265 it to me  
 62 59 alors, de peur que — N.B.  
 in time. I (was afraid) that you would keep it too long. I have long  
 à temps. craindre 125 — 195 garder 62 long-temps.  
 wished to read it. I could not lend it you, before you asked me for  
 † 62 pouvoir 62 59, 218 59 201  
 it. Here 247 it is. I wish 221 it may amuse you (as much) as it has  
 62 N.B. 62 amuser autant que 62  
 amused me. Do you think your cousin would come, if I sent for  
 55 221 cousine, envoyer chercher  
 her? I do not think she can. She told me that she expects a friend  
 221 70 attendre  
 who promised to call upon her this afternoon. Did she tell you that  
 266 après midi.  
 I drank tea with her yesterday 183? Yes, she did. 70 I wish 221 you  
 prendre thé hier N.B. N.B. 180  
 had been there. I wish I had. She is coming to spend the evening  
 y55 (H) p. 58. † 271 234  
 with me (to-morrow, 183) will you come with her? I wish I could;  
 demain, N.B. (H) 180 (m) 70  
 but I can not. I am engaged at Mrs. A's. We will meet some  
 70 208 se rencontrer quelque  
 other day. I have just heard that Miss B. is very ill. Who told  
 120 venir de 244 apprendre malade. dire  
 you so? Miss C. told me so. How 246 long has she been ill? She was  
 59 le 54 le 54 Combien y a-t-il que †  
 taken ill this morning. They 90 say she is very ill. I must send to in-  
 prendre de mal 234 N.B. 221 m'in-  
 quire how she is now. I think it is better that I go myself. It (is  
 former 241 221 valoir mieux (m) N.B.  
 necessary) that I should see her. It (is becoming) that I pay her a visit.  
 falloir 125 convenir 125 rendre 162 24 visite.  
 Did you hear that Mrs. C. is dead? Indeed! When did she die?  
 entendre (bb) N.B. mourir ! 238  
 I was with her last night. She seemed (well enough) when I left  
 235 paraître en assez bonne santé quitter  
 her. She was taken ill suddenly in the night, and she died this  
 prendre de mal subitement 238  
 morning. I am very sorry she is dead. She was the most estimable  
 fâché 221 65 33

\* See note \* page 238.

† Turn; I wish much that you read it; see note \* page 281, which is also applicable to wish.

‡ Turn; it is long since I wish &c. see note † page 233.

§ Instead of repeating this verb in french, we should say, *je le souhaite aussi*.

! See note † page 233.

woman that I knew<sup>50</sup>. I had invited her daughter to come and spend  
connaître (sa) 271  
 (a few) days with me, but I do not think she will come now that  
quelques 58, 231  
 her mother is dead. Were you at the play lately? Yes, my sister  
comédie depuis peu 1  
 and I went there (the night before last), to see a new actress. We  
137 y 54 avant hier au soir, nouvelle actrice.  
 had expected some amusement, but we were greatly disappointed. The  
attendre bien tromper.  
 players were very bad. I never saw a worse<sup>41</sup> set. Was it a good  
comédiens mauvais. mauvais troupe. Y avait-il beaucoup  
 house? Yes, the house was pretty full.<sup>29</sup> The lower<sup>29</sup> boxes  
de monde 1\* , salle passablement plein. premier loge  
 were not full, but the upper boxes and the pit were very full.  
29, 1 parterre 31  
 Was my cousin there? I do not know. I did not see her. I met  
f. y 54  
 her yesterday, as I was going to take<sup>263</sup> a walk, and I went to drink  
hier n.s. 1  
 tea with her. After we had drunk tea, we went into the fields, and  
58 1 213  
 we picked several curious<sup>39</sup> flowers which I intend to draw, and  
cueillir curieux(g) avoir dessein dessiner,  
 send to you. I must make you some little present that<sup>218</sup> you may  
(e) quelque afinque  
 remember me. Do you think I need anything to make me  
se souvenir 302 58 231 avoir besoin de 111 170  
 remember you? I will not forget you (as long) as I live. I was  
302 58 oublier tant que  
 in<sup>311</sup> London since I saw you. Did you see the curiosities? I saw  
n.s. Londres depuis que 196 curiosité 1  
 the Tower, St. Paul's, and the Museum, but I did not find (so many)  
Tour, Muséum, tant n.s.  
 curiosities as I had expected. Did you ever see the Museum? Yes;  
que 237 s'y attendre.  
 I have seen it several times. Did you hear that my brother is gone  
55 233 entendre  
 to France? No, I did not<sup>70</sup>. When did he go? He (set out) this  
191, n.s. 238 partir 238 partir  
 morning. Were you ever in France? No, I never was there. I  
190 y 55 (n) p. 58.  
 never had an opportunity to go I should like to see that country of  
24 occasion y 70 1 (bb) 230  
 which I have heard (so much). I will go the first opportunity  
74 entendre parler tant 183 y 70 1 a (i)  
 I can find. And you, were you ever there? I lived in France  
y 55 demeurer

\* This sentence can not be expressed in french according to its literal sense; it must be expressed as if the words were, *Were there many people?*

† The different sets of boxes are distinguished in french by the names of *premières, secondes, troisièmes, &c. loges.*

‡ Speaking of drinking tea, coffee, &c. as a meal, we use *Prendre* instead of *Boire*

§ See note ¶ page 286.

several years. I have been nearly all over the country. Was  
 plusieurs \* presque \* 36 230 Y avait-il  
 any body with you? Yes, Mr. B. was with me. How did you travel?  
 108 , 56 185 voyageur?  
 We travelled sometimes in a coach, sometimes in a gig, and some-  
 quelquefois en — carrosse, — cabriolet,  
 times on (horseback), as it suited us. When did you return? I  
 à cheval, comme cela convenir 54 238 265  
 returned about three weeks or a month ago. Which way did you  
 265 il y a 246 environ 246— Par 70 route  
 (come back)? I came through Havre de Grace and Southampton.  
 revenir? par (b)  
 Did you speak french when you went to France? I spoke it a little.  
 † français m. † 63 un peu  
 I spoke it enough to make myself understood. But I knew grammar  
 † 62 assez 170 entendre. savoir grammaire  
 pretty well 183, and I soon learned to speak it well. I now speak it  
 assez bien n.b., 184 62 184  
 as fluently as my native 32 language. Did you never meet with  
 43 couamment 43 natal 29 langue 190 rencontrer 201  
 people who spoke english? Yes, sometimes, but not so often as I  
 229 , 191 que  
 wished. Were you in France when the revolution began? No, I  
 , commencer! ,  
 was in Holland. Were the Dutch glad 29 (of it)? Some were glad  
 Hollande. Hollandais bien aise en 54 94 29  
 (of it), and some 70 were not. Some (were of opinion) that it would do  
 en 54, 94 72 94 penser 62  
 a (great deal) of good, others thought that it would do a great deal of  
 — beaucoup bien, 120 penser 62 —  
 harm. I did not stay long in Holland; I went to Germany and Italy.  
 mal. rester ; Allemagne 204  
 I have been to Ireland too, since 196 I saw you. Well; how do you like  
 Irlande aussi, depuis que Eh bien ; 268  
 that country? I like it (very much); it is a very fine country; but I  
 230 268 62 beaucoup ; 65 ;  
 will not (go again,) unless, as the Irishman in London says, I can 195  
 y retourner, 213 , comme Irlandais à Londres † n.b.  
 go by land. I was 140 very sick. I never was so sick in my life.  
 (à) y 70 par terre. n.b. malade. 136 de vie.  
 Indeed, every body on board was sick. It 63 is true that it blew  
 à la vérité, 106 à bord n.b. vrai faire  
 a tempest. One of our masts fell over board, and we lost almost  
 tempête. mât tomber par-dessus , perdre  
 all our sails. We expected every moment that we should go and  
 voile. attendre à tout —(an)

\* Express been over by the verb *parcourir*.

† Did speak and spoke require here an explanation. For instance, if I were to say, *je met a gentleman in the street yesterday and I spoke french to him*; I should say, *je rencontrai hier un monsieur dans la rue, et je lui parlai français*, because I then wish to express what I did, viz. that I spoke french. But in the example here given, I do not want to know whether the person spoke french or not, but whether he knew the language, which being mere knowledge or a description of the mind, must, agreeably to 140th rule, be expressed by the imperfect *parlais*, &c.

‡ In a parenthesis, the French generally put the nominative after the verb; so, turn this sentence thus, as *says the Irishman in London*.

sup with the god of the waves. However after a deal of toil  
 souper dieu sot. Cependant — beaucoup peine  
 and fatigue, we arrived at Cork 25harbour. We landed as soon as  
 304 havre. débarquer13 43  
 we could, and we were very well received by our friends who were  
 pouvoir, recevoir  
 waiting for us. We soon forgot the perils of the sea, and we began  
 301 184 oublier  
 to divert ourselves (in the best manner) we could. (Next day) I went  
 divertir du mieux que Lendemain  
 to my friend Mr. D's. (country seat.) The weather was240 bad for  
 25 château 140 n.b. 305  
 some days, but one morning it grew fine. I (got up) early, and  
 234 63 devenir se lever de bonne heure,  
 I went by myself to take263 a walk in the fields, while the family  
 307 n.b. n.b. , pendant que  
 (were asleep.) I never saw nature more sublime than it62 was at that  
 dormir.125 le70 dans  
 moment. The sun had just risen, and the dew which was on the grass  
 344 se lever, rosée herbe  
 appeared like pearls. I advanced a little into the country, but the  
 rassembler à perle. s'avancer un peu 230 , 45  
 more I advanced, the more I felt inclined to advance. I saw on all  
 , 45 se sentir porté de  
 sides trees loaded with fruit which was beginning to ripen; an in-  
 côté 300 commencer mûrir; in-  
 finite number of birds singing103 and warbling on the branches;  
 fini 33 oiseau n.b. gazouiller138 ;  
 cattle grazing153, or wandering through the meadows; hills and dales  
 cobéail paitre, n.b. errer à travers prairie; colline vallée  
 vered with corn which began to (turn yellow); in short every thing in-  
 200 blé jaunir ; en un mot 107 an-  
 dicated abundance and prosperity. I was140 so delighted with my walk,  
 noncer abondance é é n.b. charmé 300 ,  
 that I (went again) every morning that the weather was fine. I stayed  
 y70 retourner tous les matins 340 rester  
 there six weeks, and I do not think it62 is possible to spend six weeks  
 y 54 , 221 n.b. 271  
 more agreeably than I did. Did you see Mr. A. lately? I saw him  
 47 le 70 faire. depuis peu ?  
 this morning. I met him as I was going along the street. He  
 rencontrer comme passer le long de  
 told me that he had called upon you, but that you were not in. He  
 266 , y 54.  
 desired me to tell you that he wanted to see you. If you see him  
 252 260 revoir  
 again, tell him that I will call upon him as soon as I have dined.  
 — , 56 266 58 43 43  
 I will70. Did you not go a shooting together yesterday? Yes, we  
 n.b. à la chasse au fusil ensemble 183 n.b. ,  
 'did70. Was your excursion successful29? Not very. The ground  
 n.b. chasse heureux(g) ? Pas beaucoup. terre  
 was wet, and the game was very wild. We killed only six brace of  
 humide, gibier sauvage. tuer couple

\* Family being singular, the verb can not be plural in french.

partridges, two hares and four woodcocks. Were there no pheasants?  
 perdrix, lièvre bécasse. 246 faisan?  
 There were plenty; but they were in some gentleman's 25 plantations,  
 246 abondance; 62 \* messieurs  
 and we dared not touch them. Did you walk or ride? We  
 oser (kk) toucher y 54 aller à pied ou à cheval?  
 rode as far as R. where we left our horses at a small inn there,  
 aller à cheval jusqu'à où laisser à auberge qui y est,  
 and after we had refreshed ourselves a little, we began our excursion.  
 après que rafraîchir un peu, chasse.  
 We (went over) I do not know 192 (how many) heaths, fields and cop-  
 parcourir n.b. combien bruière, 204  
 pices. I dare say we walked 20 miles. When we arrived at the inn, we  
 taillis. pouvoir 221 263 mille.  
 were so tired that we could not return home that night. We slept there,  
 lasser (kk) 265 au logis 13 soir-là. coucher y 54,  
 and we (came home) this morning. We intend to try again to-mor-  
 revenir essayer encore demain.  
 row. Will you come with us, if we go? I will go, if you will promise  
 y 70 †  
 me to return in time for dinner. If we find that it is too late, we  
 265 à temps diner. trop  
 may dine in the country, I can not stay. We shall have company  
 pouvoir; 230 (kk) rester.  
 to dinner, and I must be there. Then I think it is better for  
 y 54 Donc 184 221 il vaut mieux que  
 us to go after dinner. We may set out as soon as the dinner is  
 † y 70 † pouvoir 43 43  
 over. We generally 184 dine late; I am afraid it 62 will be too late to  
 fini. ordinairement tard; 221 n.b. 195 170  
 go then. I think the best thing we can do, is to (put it 54 off)  
 y 70 alors. 221 (s) 50, c'est de remettre  
 till after to-morrow. We may then take our own time. We shall  
 jusqu'à après † alors —  
 (set out) as early as you please. I wish your cousin would come  
 partir d'aussi bonne heure qu'il plairait. 221  
 with us. I wish you would send somebody to let 248 him know. I do  
 221 95 n.b. †  
 not know a man whose company is more pleasant. Bring him with  
 74 agréable. 256 56  
 you, if he will come. I see him coming, I will ask him 54. Your  
 cousin and I go a shooting the day after to-morrow, will you be one  
 53 187 à la chasse au fusil — (kk) —  
 of the party? I should be very happy to accompany you, but I do  
 partie? bien aise accompagner  
 not think that I can. We shall not go further than you like. You  
 70 loin 41 47 vouloir.

\* See note † page 183.

† See note † p. 296.

‡ The french would here use the future. † Turn; *It is better that we go.*! Make the verb *Please* impersonal, and express, *You please*, as if the english was, *it will please you.*¶ Add here the pronoun *Le*, and say *Le lui*. 70 rule.

\*\* See note \* page 238.

may come, if you will. You might come, if you would. I will  
 pouvoir  
 consider (of it). I should like to go (very much) 183. I will let 248 you  
 penser y 54 fortw. s.† n.s.  
 know to-night, if I can go. Why did you not call yesterday? I could  
 225, 200  
 not. I went a hunting. Who was with you? (Was there) any body  
 à la chasse. 246 108  
 (that I know?) Yes, (there were) several of our friends. What time  
 de ma connaissance? 246 plusieurs à 88 heures  
 did you go? We (set out) at six o'clock. Did you catch any thing?  
 partir? partir à prendre 111  
 We caught a fox. Had you a (great deal) of sport? Yes, we had 70.  
 renard. — beaucoup plaisir! n.s.  
 I wish I had been with you. If I had known it, I would have gone.  
 (na) † savoir 238 \* 70  
 Why did you not let 246 me know? I did not know that you could go.  
 n.s. le 70 pouvoir 70  
 I was 140 at home the whole day, and I had nothing to do. The next  
 n.s. au logis 38 140 99 prochains  
 time you go, do not fail to let 248 me know. I will not; i. e. *fait* 70.  
 223 (s) " manquer n.s. le 70 y 70; n.s.  
 I have got a new horse. When did you buy it? I bought it this  
 270 nouveau! acheter  
 morning. (How much) did you give (for it)? I gave a hundred  
 combien en 54 en 70 21  
 guineas. It 62 is a (great deal) of money. How old is 239 it? It is 239  
 guinée, n.s. — beaucoup n.s. n.s.  
 four years old. Will you come to look at it? Now; what do you  
 voir 201 83  
 think (of it)? Do you not think that I got it cheap? I do not  
 en 54 avoir à bon marché!  
 think it is dear. It is a very good horse. I wish it may answer 206  
 221 65 221 répondre à  
 your expectation. I will buy one too, as soon as I have a little  
 attente. en 70 un aussi, 43 tôt 43 un peu  
 more money. Do you think I can get a good one for fifty guineas?  
 221 (kk) avoir 54 en 70 guinée?  
 I think you may. When I have one, I will lend it you when you  
 221 70 en 70 un, prêter 54 59  
 want 260 it. Will you take 263 a walk when your letter is finished?  
 avoir besoin en 54 n.s.  
 I can not; I must take it to the (post office) as fast as I can. It  
 70; 256 62 poste 43 vite 43  
 must go to-night. I am afraid it will be too late when I am  
 partir 235 221 195 tard  
 there. I will go with you, if you will wait for me. I can not wait;  
 y 54 aller 201 (kk);  
 I must go directly. Will you call upon me when you (come back)?  
 y 79 tout à l'heure. 266 revenir!  
 I do not think I can. My sisters go to the play; they will have 174 me  
 221 70 comédie; n.s.

\* See note ¶ p. 266.

† See note \* p. 300.

‡ Add, a good deal of it.

§ See note \* p. 266.

|| Put this adjective before the noun.

go with them, and I must go. Will you call when you come back  
 56 , 70 passer  
 from the play? I will see. I will call, if it is not too late when the  
 de 266,  
 play is over. Why did you not call in (coming back) from hunting?  
 finie. \* 266 en revenir de chasse?  
 I could not. It<sup>62</sup> was late, the weather was bad, and I was tired.  
 70 n.b. tard, temps 240 lassé.†  
 I am tired of those violent<sup>32</sup> exercises. I must get a wife. Marry, 261  
 ennuyé† 29 exercice. prendre se marrier, ‡  
 says a proverb, you will do well; do not marry, you will do better.  
 proverbe, ; ‡ ; (E) p. 56  
 I do not care for your proverbs. I must have a wife. I will have  
 se soucier 200 182  
 one who is tolerably handsome, who has some common sense and a  
 passablement commun 32 un  
 little fortune. Do you think you can find a woman who is so  
 peu bien. 221 trouver  
 accomplished? If I thought that I could not find one, I would never  
 accomplir? † pouvoir en 70 une,  
 be married. I like your sister. Do you think she will go to the  
 — se marier. 261 221  
 assembly to-night? If I hear that she goes, I will send you word.  
 assemblée 235 apprendre \*\* 70, le faire 54 savoir.  
 I do not think she will 70. She has not been well for some time,  
 221 \*\* n.b. 237 241 depuis quelque,  
 and she (is afraid) of (going out), for fear of (catching cold). I am  
 craindre sortir, de peur de s'enrhumer.  
 sorry 221 she does not come, for I intended to dance with her. She is  
 fâché , avoir dessein 58 65  
 the most agreeable woman that I ever 50 knew. When did you see her?  
 44 32 jamais 136  
 I saw her this morning. She called at 206 our house, but she did not  
 234 266 †† n.b. ††  
 stop. Did she give you the book which I sent you? Yes, she did 70;  
 rester. 74 , n.b.  
 i.e. give it me 70. Did you read it? Yes, I read a good part (of it).  
 n.b. , partie en 55  
 How do you like it? Did it entertain you? I like it very well;  
 185 268 62 amuser 62 ;  
 it entertained me (very much). I never read a book which entertained  
 62 fort. 183 74

\* Did refers here to the period of hunting, which was yesterday.

† Tired—*Lassé, Ennuyé*. *Lassé* is said of the body; *Ennuyé* is said of the mind.

‡ See the imperative of a reflexive verb, page 100.

§ *Will have* may here be expressed two ways, agreeably to the idea which you wish to express.

If you wish to denote that you know the person you describe, and are certain to have her, you express *Will have one* by *J'en aurai une* &c. with the following verbs in the indicative.

If you want to denote that you wish to find such a person as you describe, you must express *Will have one* by *J'en veux une*, with the following verbs in the subjunctive. See 174 rule.

† See note \* page 266.

\*\* See note † page 266.

†† See note \* page 254.

me more. Do you think the foreign<sup>32</sup> mail will arrive to-day? It  
 183 231 étranger<sup>29</sup> malle aujourd'hui? 62  
 is arrived. It arrived early this morning. I wonder that (there  
 62 236 de bonne heure 234 s'étonner 246  
 is) no letter for me. I am afraid my friends have forgotten me. I wrote  
 56 231 195 oublier 55  
 to them (long ago). It is time that I should hear from them. I  
 (e) (il y a long-temps). II temps 275  
 wish they would write to me. I will not write to them again,  
 231 (e) récrire (e) —  
 until<sup>218</sup> I have heard from them. I think they do not wish me to  
 jusqu' à ce que 275 231 +  
 know what is passing at home. I am afraid they will think that I  
 savoir 84 — se passer au logis 231 195  
 stay here too long. I suppose they wish me to come<sup>264</sup> home, but  
 rester ici long-temps. 254 231 † s'en retourner, 265  
 I do not intend to go back yet. I will stay here as long as I can.  
 avoir dessein s'en retourner encore. 43 43  
 We are going to drink tea, will you take a cup with us? I do not  
 prendre thé, 76 tasse Je le veux  
 care. I was going to Mrs. D's, but I (may as well) stay here. I  
 bien. I 206 (ferai aussi bien) de  
 can not be in better company. What were you looking for when  
 (kk) en 83 201  
 I met you? I was looking for my little boy who has been wander-  
 201 garçon error  
 ing about all the afternoon. I saw him playing with the other  
 ça et là après midi. 120  
 children, as I was passing by your house. Your house is well built,  
 , comme 207 bâtir,  
 but it is not well situated. It is (too much) exposed to the wind.  
 63 situer. 63 trop exposer vent  
 We had planted a great number of trees round it, but the drought  
 planter autour 64, sécheresse  
 has nearly killed them all. Is it<sup>62</sup> the house which your father  
 presque faire mourir 55 n.e. 74  
 got built? No, it<sup>62</sup> is not; he has sold it<sup>62</sup>, and has bought this<sup>68</sup>.  
 faire bâtir? , n.e. 70 ; vendre 55, acheter n.e.  
 Have you seen (the one) which he has begun to build? No, I have  
 celle 74 commencer  
 not<sup>70</sup>. You have a nice<sup>33</sup> library; may I look at it<sup>54</sup>? Surely,  
 n.e. j'ai<sup>29</sup> bibliothèque; pouvoir voir — 62 Assurément,  
 you may. These books are well bound, but they are very badly  
 70 relia, mal  
 printed. I have lately read some very entertaining ones. I will  
 imprimer. depuis peu \*\* amusant en<sup>55</sup> ††  
 show you the books which I have read. I have also bought several  
 74 plusieurs  
 curious<sup>32</sup> things. See the fine things which I have bought. I want  
 curieux<sup>30(g)</sup> belle 260

\* Express from them by *de leurs nouvelles*, or by *des nouvelles d'eux*.

† Turn; they do not wish that I know, &c. ‡ See note \* page 281, which is also applicable to wish.

! We could not say in this sense, *je ne m'en soucie pas*, for I do not care.

¶ We could not say *j'en suis for the one*. \*\* See note \* p. 300. †† See note \* p. 228.



to show them to your sister. How long is it since you saw her?  
246 que 196  
 I saw her as she was coming to town. I am glad 221 you are come,  
comme bien aise  
 and that your sister is coming too. I am surprised she has written  
aussi. 221  
 to you, and has not mentioned it. Have you sent the books which  
(o) 221 parler en 55 74  
 you were speaking of into the country 230? No, I have not sent them  
203 213 163  
 yet 163. I will send them this evening. Did you lend your cousin  
escore. 224 163  
 those which he asked you for? Yes, I did; i. e. *lend them to him* 70.  
88 201 ; N.B.  
 Did you hear that my uncle B. has given my brother a horse? He  
oncle 162 163  
 has lent him money to buy one, and I am sure he never will ask  
162 en 70 un, 221 190 redemander  
 him for it again. He has also made my eldest 32 sister a present of a  
162 \* 59 † aîné 29 162 24 163  
 watch. Did he ever give your other sister any 111 thing? No, he  
montre. 120 162 163  
 never did 70. He often promised her something, but he never gave her  
N.B. 184 162 98 162  
 any thing. She should try to please him. She should pay more  
90 essayer 202 faire  
 attention than she does to what 84 she is told. She says she pays all  
47 faire 163 93 221 29  
 the attention she can to every thing 163 she does. Sometimes, not  
(s) tout ce que pas  
 always. Take the books which I gave you into the (school room)  
256 213 école 163 —  
 with you. Now, I must go. Will you come with me? I can not.  
, s'en aller. 58 70  
 You might come, if you would. I might go (to be sure;) but then  
, y 70 il est vrai ‡ alors  
 I must neglect business which ought not to be neglected. Come,  
négliger affaires  
 that we may divert ourselves a little. You must have a little diver-  
amuse- sion. 218 I may tell him to get our horses ready. If you  
domestique, aînque apprêter — ‡  
 would have (set out) a little sooner, we might have diverted ourselves  
partir tôt 41 nous 54  
 (very much.) If I could have got my horse when I ordered it, I  
beaucoup. avoir demander  
 might have been ready as soon as you. I should have had it sooner,  
pût 43 43 41  
 if my brother could have spared it. I wish my father had bought  
se passer en 60 221

\* See note ‡ page 207.

† Again is expressed by *re* prefixed to *demande*.

‡ Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter*.

(the one) which you recommended to him. I wish you would sell  
celui \* (e) 221  
him yours. I would have sold mine (long 246 ago,) if I could have found  
163 85 85 il y a long-temps,  
any body who would have bought it. I will have one like yours.  
108 semblable au 85  
If I had known that you wished to sell yours, I might have found  
† † vouloir  
somebody who would have bought it. You should have told me 59 so  
93 1e 54  
then; I might have bought it myself. I may perhaps find somebody  
alors (m) n.b. peut-être (kk) 95  
yet! 83. I wish you could. I could have sold it myself long ago.  
encore. n.b. 221 70 55 (m) n.b. il y a long-temps,  
if I could have done without it then. Can you do without it now?  
280 en alors. 280 en  
I think I can. My sisters wish you to come and spend an evening  
221 70 † (m) 271 234  
with us. When will you come? I can not tell. I will come as soon  
Quand 70 264 43  
as I can. You must bring your sister with you. Oh! we can not  
43 256  
come both at the (same time). Somebody must stay at home. The  
122 à la fois. 95 rester au logis.  
house can not be left (to itself). Come; you are rather too hard  
92 92 laisser seule. Allons; un peu sévère  
upon her. She must have a little amusement too. You should have  
envers 88 un peu aussi.  
brought her with you to-day. Why did you not bring her? I did  
236 256  
not know that you wanted 260 so much to see her, or else I would  
avoir si grande envie , autrement  
have brought her. I will bring her the next time I come. Do.  
256 256 232 (s) 70 n.b.  
I will 70. Did my sister tell you that I have been in the country?  
n.b. " à 230  
No, she did not 70. When did you go? I think I saw you (at the)  
, n.b. y 70 221 au  
beginning of the week. You could 136 not see me this week, for  
commencement semaine. pouvoir , car  
I went last 32 week. When did you return? I returned this  
70 238 265 238  
afternoon. Did you call upon our friends? I just 184 saw them,  
266 seulement  
as I was passing by the house. How were they? They seemed  
207 185 241 paraître  
very well. Did you come (that way) (on purpose)? Yes I  
en très bonne santé: 238 par là exprès!  
did 70. I wonder at your going there again so soon. Will you  
n.b. s'étonner † retourner y 55. — si

\* We could not say *l'un* for *the one*.

† See p. 127 and 139, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

‡ Turn, *wish* that you come &c. see note \* p. 281, which is also applicable to *wish*

‡ Turn; that you have 238 gone there again so soon, see 165 rule.

never cease doing what you are desired not<sup>190</sup> to do? I should not  
 cesser 84 92 dire<sup>252</sup> n.s.  
 find fault with your calling sometimes, when you happen to be  
 trouver mauvals \* passer il vous arrive de —  
 going (that way), but I wonder at your going there purposely, after  
 par là, s'étonner † y 54 exprès  
 having promised me that you would not go again without asking me  
 55 ne plus  
 leave. You are too<sup>183</sup> fond of rambling; are you<sup>282</sup> not? How  
 permission. — trop aimer à roder; n'est-ce pas? 183  
 could I help it<sup>54</sup>? I was accused of neglecting people who have  
 s'empêcher en 59 92 négliger 229  
 been kind to me; can I be blamed for endeavouring to justify  
 eu des bontés pour 58; 92 de chercher  
 myself? I do not blame you for justifying yourself; I only wish you  
 me 54 de vous 54; 184 †  
 not to do things which may be disagreeable to your friends. Come,  
 désagréable 29 Allons,  
 ladies, amuse yourselves with reading this pretty tale, instead of losing  
 mesdemoiselles 56 169 conte, au lieu  
 your time in playing. You should abstain from looking about you,  
 s'abstenir autour de ,  
 whilst you are learning your lessons. That is not the way to  
 pendant que Ce n'est pas là moyen  
 improve yourselves. You are very<sup>183</sup> fond of scolding. What plea-  
 perfectionner vous 54 — beaucoup aimer à gronder.  
 sure can you have in vexing people so<sup>183</sup>? You are always  
 chagriner 239 ainsi n.s.? — 184  
 finding fault with every thing one does. I am quite tired with  
 trouver à redire à tout ce (s) 90 189 ennuyé 300  
 always hearing the same thing. If you paid attention to what you  
 184 chose. faire 84  
 are told, there would not be occasion for repeating it so often. You  
 92 , il besoin de  
 never do things (at a proper time). How can I help it? I never  
 190 à propos Que faire? y 54  
 know the (time of the day). You should have a watch. Yes; I  
 'heure qu'il est. montre.  
 ought to have a watch. I want<sup>260</sup> a watch (very much). When  
 avoir besoin grand.  
 shall I have one? You shall have one as soon as you behave well.  
 en 70 70 se comporter  
 Will you have mine? No, I do not like yours. It is an old one  
 85 , 62 — vieille —  
 I will have a new one, or I will have none. Then<sup>184</sup> you must  
 en 70 une neuve, — en 70 ¶ Donc  
 wait till 218 you can buy one yourself. What will you have us do  
 attendre que en 70 (m) n.s. 83 faire

\* Turn; that you should call<sup>149</sup> sometimes &c. see 156 rule.

† Turn; that you have<sup>238</sup> gone there purposely &c. see 156 rule.

‡ Turn; I only wish that you do not things &c. see note \* p. 281.

† Help, in the sense of to avoid, is expressed by *Faire, Eviter, Empêcher*, never by *Aider*.

¶ Turn; I have great need of a watch.

¶ Express None by *Pas*, with *Ne* before the verb.

now? I would have you go and take a walk<sup>263</sup> till dinner<sup>25</sup> time,  
(na) N.B. jusqu'au  
 and when you have (eaten your dinner), I would have you go to your  
dîné, prendre —  
 books. What! so soon. Must we have no play? No, you shall  
83 ! si tôt. \* jouer!  
 not play before<sup>218</sup> you have said your lessons. May we play then?  
avant que alors ?  
 Yes, you may play, if you say them well. You should (get up)  
se lever  
 sooner; then you would have plenty of time to play. If you would  
41 ; alors tout le temps  
 have got up when I called you, you might have played as long as  
se lever appeler 43 long-temps 43  
 you would. I wonder that the people whom we expected are not come  
178 s'étonner 259 attendre  
 yet<sup>183</sup>. Is it<sup>62</sup> not astonishing that they should keep us waiting so  
encore. N.B. étonnant faire attendre si  
 long? They should not have promised, if they found that they  
long-temps ! promettre, prévoir†  
 could not come. I might have asked somebody else. We might  
prier quelqu' autre personne.  
 have taken<sup>263</sup> a walk before we sat at table. For the future I will<sup>174</sup>  
N.B. avant de nous mettre à avenir N.B.  
 have my orders punctually attended<sup>92</sup> to. You should not have relied  
† exactement qu'on suive — compter  
 upon people you did not know. If you would have followed my advice,  
229 (s) suivre avis,  
 this would not have happened. You see; we can not console our-  
89 238 arriver. ; nous 54  
 selves for being deceived by our enemies, and betrayed by our friends;  
de tromper par ennemis, trahir ;  
 and we are often satisfied with being so by ourselves. I have received  
satisfaire 200 le 54 (m) N.B. recevoir  
 the letters which you have written to me respecting the affair which  
(o) 55 au sujet de  
 I have proposed to you, and after having read them attentively, I have  
proposer (o) 55, 55 avec attention,  
 found that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with  
reconnaître, † entreprendre 55 trouver 201  
 obstacles which I had not foreseen. I am very glad you have  
prevoir, bien 221  
 not<sup>70</sup>.  
N.B.

\* Express this sentence as if it were, *Must we not play?*

† See note \* p. 266.

‡ See \* page 261.

## CHAPTER VII.

## ADVERB.

An *adverb* is to a verb what an adjective is to a noun ; it is a word added to the verb, to denote some *circumstance* belonging to it, or the *manner* in which an action is done ; as,

I walk *fast*. You walk *slowly*. He *often* reads. She *seldom* writes.

There are adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *order*, of *quality*, *affirmative*, and *negative*, but their properties being the same in both languages, it is needless to enumerate them here.\*

183. *Adverbs* in general keep the same place with the verb in french as in english ; they are placed *after* the verb, when the tense is simple, and *between* the auxiliary and the participle when the tense is compound ; as,

I *always* esteem him *much*. Je l'estime *toujours fort*.  
I have *always* esteemed him *much*. Je l'ai *toujours fort* estimé.

N. B. The *adverb* expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed as near to the verb which it modifies, as can be done without infringing upon other rules ; ex.

\* Most of the adverbs are formed from the *adjectives* ; in english by adding *ly* ; in french by adding *ment* ; as,

ADJECTIVE.		ADVERB.	
Wise,	Sage.	Wisely,	Sagement.
Assured,	Assuré.	Assuredly,	Assurément.
Polite,	Poli.	Politely,	Pollément.
Assiduous,	Assidu.	Assiduously,	Assidument.

But observe that *ment* requires a vowel before it ; so that, if the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb must be formed by adding *ment* to the feminine ; as,

Masc.		Fem.	
Frank,	Franc.	Frankly.	Franchement.
Public,	Public.	Publicly.	Publiquement.
Real,	Réel.	Really.	Réellement.
Good,	Bon.	Goodly.	Bonement.
Soft,	Doux.	Softly.	Doucement.
Generous,	Généreux.	Generously.	Généreusement.
Ex. Gentil,	Pretty, which makes	Prettily.	Gentiment.

Except also the adjectives ending in *et*, which require *et* to be changed into *ement*, as,

Constant,	Constant.	Constantly,	Constamment.
Decent,	Décent.	Decently,	Décemment.
Diligent,	Diligent.	Diligently,	Diligemment.

Ex. *Présentement*, Presently ; *Lentement*, Slowly, which follow the general rule.

† Observe only that the adverbs compounded of several words generally come *after* the participle, so we say, *Je l'ai vu très souvent*. *Je lui ai parlé depuis peu*. *Vous êtes venus à propos*. Not, *Je l'ai très souvent vu*. *Je lui ai depuis peu parlé*. *Vous êtes à propos venus*. Yet, in some instances, the ear alone is consulted ; for we say, *je l'avais tout à fait oublié* ; I had quite forgotten it. *Je ne me suis jamais si bien divertí* ; I never diverted myself so well. These variations must be noticed in reading.

I saw your sister *yesterday*. Je vis hier votre sœur.  
 She speaks french *very well*. Elle parle *très bien* français.  
 She likes reading *very much*. Elle aime *fort* la lecture.\*

## EXERCISE.

I understand french pretty well, 183 but I have not yet learned it  
 entendre assez bien, N.B. encore  
 long enough to speak it fluently. You pronounce french very  
 long-temps assez 170 60 coulamment. prononcer très  
 well. I wish to learn it (very much.) You must take more pains in  
 fort. 181 peine à  
 future than you do. I will do every thing that you have recommended  
 l'avenir 47 tout ce que recommandé  
 to me carefully. Do you not go into the country to-morrow ?  
 (c) 56 soigneusement. à demain !

184. Some *adverbs* may be placed in english, either before or after the verb which they modify ; as *I often see him*, or *I see him often* ; but the corresponding adverbs must always be placed *after* the verb in french ; as,

*I often* walk alone. Je me promène *souvent* seul.  
*I seldom* go to town. Je vais *rarement* à la ville.  
*I always* go into the country. Je vais *toujours* à la campagne.

## EXERCISE.

What is the reason that you so seldom come to see me ? (say, *that*  
 83 raison si rarement  
*you come so seldom, &c.*) I sometimes think that you never will come  
 quelquesfois 190 revenir  
 again. You certainly have no reason to think so. I very seldom  
 — certainement sujet le 54 rarement  
 (go out,) and when I go, my sisters generally come with me, and I  
 sortir, sortir, ordinairement 58,  
 never can bring them so far as your 208 house ; but I very often think  
 190 amener jusque chez N.B.  
 of you.  
 200 58

\* The perspicuity of a sentence depends often upon the right placing of the adverbs ; for example, *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*. *J'aime à marcher beaucoup*.

These two sentences, though they are formed with the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*, means, I am fond of walking ; *J'aime à marcher beaucoup*, means, I like to walk a great deal.

Again ; *Je ne l'ai pas fait pour vous déplaire* ; and, *Je l'ai fait pour ne pas vous déplaire*, express also different ideas ; the first implies no design, the second implies one, that of not displeasing. The English, in general, do not pay sufficient attention to the placing of the adverbs.

† The adverb *Assez*, like the other adverbs, is always placed before the adjective or adverb which it modifies ; so say, *enough long*.

## REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.\*

## HOW; QUE, COMBIEN, COMMENT.

185. *How*, denoting admiration, is expressed by *que*, and the adjective or adverb which follows *how*, must be placed after the verb in french; as,

*How pretty* this is!

*How well* it is done!

*Que* ceci est *joli*!

*Qu'il* est *bien* fait!

\* A list of adverbial expressions, which can not be expressed literally, as learners are apt to do, some of which are not to be found in the dictionaries;

<i>About,</i>	Environ.	On the ground,	Par terre.
<i>There abouts,</i>	A peu près.	<i>Hand over head,</i>	A corps perdu.
<i>Here abouts,</i>	Ici autour.	<i>Hard by,</i>	Ici près.
<i>Round about,</i>	A l'entour.	<i>Hardly ever,</i>	Presque jamais.
<i>Aloud,</i>	A haute voix.	<i>In haste,</i>	A la hâte.
<i>Amicably,</i>	A l'amiable.	<i>Heartily,</i>	De bon cœur.
<i>Aside,</i>	A côté, à part.	<i>Here and there,</i>	Par ci par là.
<i>On an average,</i>	L'un dans l'autre.	<i>Heiter, skelter,</i>	Pêle mêle.
<i>Backwards,</i>	En arrière. (falling)	<i>Hitherto,</i>	Jusqu'ici.
<i>Backwards,</i>	A reculons. (walking)	<i>Hourly,</i>	D'heure en heure.
<i>Into the bargain,</i>	Par dessus le marché	<i>Every hour,</i>	A toute heure.
<i>Betimes,</i>	De bonne heure.	<i>Inadvertently,</i>	Par mégarde.
<i>Better and better,</i>	De mieux en mieux.	<i>Inconsiderately,</i>	Sans y faire attention.
<i>So much the better,</i>	Tant mieux.	<i>To all intents and purposes,</i>	De fond encomble.
<i>Abreast,</i>	De front.	<i>Largely,</i>	A pleines mains.
<i>By and by,</i>	Tantôt.	<i>Lately,</i>	Depuis peu.
<i>By chance,</i>	Par cas fortuit.	<i>At last,</i>	Enfin.
<i>Cheap,</i>	A bon marché.	<i>At least,</i>	Au moins.
<i>Most commonly,</i>	Presque toujours.	<i>For less,</i>	A moins.
<i>In day time,</i>	De jour.	<i>So much the less,</i>	D'autant moins
<i>In open day,</i>	En plein jour.	<i>By little and little,</i>	Peu à peu.
<i>Every day,</i>	Tous les jours.	<i>Ever so little,</i>	Tant soit peu.
<i>From day to day,</i>	De jour en jour.	<i>How long,</i>	Jusqu'à quand!
<i>Every other day,</i>	De deux jours l'un.	<i>As long as,</i>	Tant que.
<i>This day week,</i>	{ Il y a aujourd'hui 8 jours.	<i>In the same manner,</i>	De même.
<i>This day se'night,</i>	{ huit. D'aujourd'hui en Through mistake,	<i>More than is necessary,</i>	Plus qu'il n'en faut.
<i>This day fortnight,</i>	{ D'aujourd'hui en quinze.	<i>Neither more nor less,</i>	Ni plus ni moins.
<i>This day month,</i>	{ D'aujourd'hui en un mois.	<i>More and more,</i>	De plus en plus.
<i>Deservedly,</i>	A bon droit.	<i>Much more so,</i>	A plus forte raison.
<i>Directly,</i>	Tout à l'heure.	<i>So much the more,</i>	D'autant plus.
<i>In disorder,</i>	A l'abandon.	<i>At most,</i>	Tout au plus.
<i>By drops,</i>	Goute à goutte.	<i>How much?</i>	Combien!
<i>Early,</i>	De bon matin.	<i>As much,</i>	Autant.
<i>In good earnest,</i>	Tout de bon.	<i>So much,</i>	Tant.
<i>Empty,</i>	A vide.	<i>Through ill nature,</i>	Par malice.
<i>In emulation,</i>	A l'envi.	<i>Nothing near,</i>	A beaucoup près.
<i>That excepted,</i>	A cela près.	<i>Just now,</i>	Tout de suite.
<i>Fairly,</i>	De bonne fol.	<i>Now and then,</i>	De temps en temps
<i>How far,</i>	Jusqu'ou.	<i>All at once,</i>	Tout d'un coup.
<i>As far as here,</i>	Jusqu'ici.	<i>Opposite,</i>	Vis-à-vis.
<i>As far as there,</i>	Jusqu'à.	<i>Purposely,</i>	{ A dessein, Exprès.
<i>Afar off,</i>	De loin.	<i>On purpose,</i>	{ De propos délibéré
<i>After the fashion,</i>	A la mode.	<i>To what purpose?</i>	{ A quoi bon!
<i>After the french,</i>	A la française.	<i>At random,</i>	A tort et à travers
<i>The english fashion,</i>	A l'Anglaise.	<i>In every respect,</i>	A tous égards.
<i>At first,</i>	D'abord.	<i>Seasonably,</i>	A propos.
<i>On the same floor,</i>	De plein pied.	<i>On both sides,</i>	De part et d'autre
<i>Within a fortnight,</i>	Dans quinze jours.	<i>The wrong side out,</i>	A l'envers.
<i>For fun,</i>	En badinant.	<i>The wrong side up,</i>	A rebours.
<i>For the future,</i>	A l'avenir.	<i>Sooner or later,</i>	Tôt ou tard.
<i>Groping,</i>	A tâtons.	<i>Soundly,</i>	Comme il faut.
		<i>With all speed,</i>	Au plus vite.

In asking a question, *how* is expressed by *comment*, to denote the manner, and by *combien*, to denote number or quantity; as,

*How* will you do that?

*Comment* ferez-vous cela?

*How* often have you done it?

*Combien* de fois l'avez-vous fait?

## EXERCISE.

How long you have been! How late you come! How glad I  
 long-temps tard aise  
 am to see you! How heartily I thank you! How sweet those  
 de bon cœur bon (bb)  
 flowers smell! How beautiful those roses are! How shall we go?  
 sentir! (bb)  
 How shall we carry our luggage? How shall we know where you  
 porter bagage? savoir où  
 are? How many people shall we be? How much money have  
 229 argent  
 you got?  
 270

## HOW LONG.

## COMBIEN, COMBIEN DE TEMPS, JUSQU'A QUAND.

186. *How long*, referring to the beginning of time, is expressed by *combien*; referring to the duration, it is expressed by *combien de temps*; and referring to the end, it is expressed by *jusqu'à quand*; as,

*How long* have you been in France? *Combien* y a-t-il que vous êtes en France?  
 O. *Combien de temps* avez-vous été en France?

N. B. Few learners make a distinction between these two ways of expression; yet the ideas which they express are quite different. By the first, *vous êtes en France*, it is understood that the person is in France still; by the second, *vous avez été en France*, it is understood that the person is no longer there.

*How long* will you stay? *Combien de temps* resterez-vous? i. e. what length of time?  
*Jusqu'à quand* resterez-vous? i. e. until what time?

## EXERCISE.

How long have you been learning french? or, how long is  
 185

At full speed,	{ A bride abattue.	Upwards.	En haut.
On a sudden.	{ Ventre à terre.	Unseasonably,	A contre temps.
Step by step.	Tout à coup.	Visibly,	A vue d'œil.
Straight on,	Pas à pas.	With a low voice,	Tout bas.
Thoroughly,	Tout droit.	The wrong way,	A contre sens.
This long time,	A fond.	In a week, [day,	Dans huit jours.
For a long time,	{ De long temps.	It was a week yesterday,	Il y eut hier 8 jours.
From time to time,	{ Depuis long temps.	It will be a week to-morrow,	Il y aura demain 8 jours.
One time or other,	De temps en temps.	Wherever,	Par tout où.
To and fro,	Tôt ou tard.	In no wise.	En nulle manière.
From top to bottom,	Cà et là.	Worse and worse,	De pis en pis.
Topsey turvy,	De fond en comble.	So much the worse,	Tant pis.
In a trice,	Sens dessus dessous.	A year hence,	Il y a un an. [an.
By turns,	En moins de rien.	This day 12 months,	Il y a aujourd'hui 12 m.
At every turn, (eye,	Tour à tour.	Against one's will,	A contre cœur.
In the twinkling of an eye,	A tout bout de champ.	Whether one will or not,	Bon gré mal gré,
Unawares,	En un clin d'œil.	Yonder,	[not, Là bas.
Up and down,	Sans y penser.		
	De côté et d'autre.		



It<sup>246</sup> since you learn french? How long do you intend to learn?  
 y a-t-il que

How long will you abuse<sup>202</sup> my patience?  
 abuser de

avoir 125 dessein

### HOW FAR; COMBIEN, JUSQU'OU.

187. *How far*, meaning *what distance*, is expressed by *combien*; and when used for *to what distance*, it is expressed by *jusqu'où*; as,

*How far* is it from here?

*Combien y a-t-il d'ici?*

*How far* shall we go?

*Jusqu'où irons-nous?*

#### EXERCISE.

How far is your house from here? or how far is<sup>246</sup> it from here to  
 your house? How far is Windsor from London? How far do you  
 intend to go? How far shall we go to meet<sup>263</sup> you?  
 avoir dessein au devant de

### HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, LET; QUELQUE.

188. *However*, *howsoever*, before an adjective, a participle, or an adverb, is expressed by *quelque* with *que*, after the adjective, participle, or adverb, and the following verb in the subjunctive;

*However* rich she is;  
 or *Let* her be ever so rich.

} *Quelque* riche qu'elle soit.

N. B. If the nominative is a noun, it is generally placed after the verb; as,

*However* rich her sister is;  
 or *Let* her sister be ever so rich.

} *Quelque* riche que soit sa sœur.

#### EXERCISE.

*However* learned you are. *However* diligent she is. *However*  
 savant  
 learned your master is, &c.  
 savant maître

### QUITE, ENTIRELY; TOUT.

189. *Quite*, *entirely*, before an adjective, or a participle, are generally expressed by *tout*; as,

\* These two ways of expression are rendered by the latter way in french. By this expression, *Have been learning*, is meant that the person continues to learn; so to express the same idea in french, you must use the present of the verb, and say; *Vous apprenez*, not *Vous avez appris*, which would mean that the person has ceased to learn. Again, *How long have you been in England?* may be expressed by *Combien de temps avez-vous été en Angleterre?* or by *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre?* The former of these expressions meaning that the person has left England; the latter meaning that the person is still in England. Learners are very apt to confound these two ideas. See note † p. 233.

† These two ways of expression must be rendered by the latter way in french.

Those men are *quite* astonished. Ces hommes sont *tout* étonnés.  
 Those women are *quite* astonished. Ces femmes sont *tout* étonnées.\*

## EXERCISE.

My shoes are *quite* (worn out.) My boots are *quite* worn out. My  
                   soulier                   usé 158                   botte  
 mother is *quite* astonished (at it.) My boots are *quite* new. My sis-  
                   étonné 158                   en 55                   neuve.  
 ters are *quite* tired. 158 They are *quite* ill.  
                   fatigué.                   malade.

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS

NO, NOT;	NE—PAS, NE—POINT.†
NO MORE,	} NE—PLUS.
NOT ANY MORE;	
NEVER;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE,	} NE—GUERE.
VERY LITTLE;	
BY NO MEANS;	NE—NULLEMENT.‡

190. The *negative* expressions *ne—pas*, *ne—point*, &c. form only one negation; *ne* is always placed *before* the verb, and *pas*, *point*, &c. like the other adverbs, are placed *after* the verb, when the tense is simple, and *between* the auxiliary and the participle, when it is compound; as,

I do *not* like her. Je *ne* l'aime *pas*, or *point*.  
 I will *not* see her *any more*. Je *ne* veux *plus* la voir.  
 I will *never* speak to her again. Je *ne* lui reparlerai *jamais*.  
 You have thought of it *but little*. Vous n'y avez *guère* pensé.

N. B. If the verb which follows *not* is in the infinitive, the

\* When the adjective which follows *tout* is feminine, and begins with a consonant, we make it agree in gender and number with the noun; as,

This house is *quite* new, Cette maison est *toute* neuve.  
 These women are *quite* ugly, Ces femmes sont *toutes* laides.

But, as this is done solely for the sake of melody, it would be better, especially when the noun is plural, to make use of *Tout à fait*, since the hearer is sometimes at a loss, whether *toutes* means *quite* or *all*.

† *Pas*, *point*, are used indiscriminately, except in sentences of interrogation, when, according to the french academy, *point* intimates a *doubt*, and *pas* a kind of *affirmation*; as,

N'avez-vous *point* pris mon livre? means, Have *not* you taken my book? And  
 N'avez-vous *pas* pris mon livre? means, You have taken my book, have *not* you?

Perhaps it would be better to give another turn to the sentence than to give these different properties to two monosyllables which may be so easily mistaken one for the other.

Some grammarians, and even the french academy, make several other distinctions between *pas*, *point*; viz. that *point* means *not at all*, *never*, and denies more strongly than *pas*; that *pas* is said of something momentary, and *point* of things that are permanent; so *Il ne lit pas*, means, He does *not* read *now*; and *Il ne lit point*, means, He *never* reads; these distinctions seem to me merely ideal: I have endeavoured to ascertain them, and I have not found any author who has observed them; the ear alone is consulted. There are in our language, as well as in our manners, trifles which reason does not scruple to overlook.

‡ *Mot* and *gout* are also *negative* expressions, but used only with the verb *dire* and *voir*; as,

Il *ne* dit *mot*; He did *not* say a word. Il *ne* voit *gout*; He does *not* see at all

two negative words *ne—pas*, or *point*, *ne—plus*, *ne—jamais*, may be, and are generally placed *together* before the verb ; as,

I am determined *not* to see her. J'ai résolu de *ne pas* la voir.

*Not* to speak to her *any more*. De *ne plus* lui parler.

*Never* to write to her again. De *ne jamais* lui récrire.

## EXERCISE.

I do not like that man. I never found so much deceit. He never  
 aime 136 tant tromperie.  
 keeps his word. I know him but little. I will not deal any  
 tenir parole. faire d'affaires  
 more with him. I would advise you not to deal with that  
 58 conseiller faire d'affaires  
 man. He is accused of never keeping his word. I think you will do  
 98 accuser tenir 221 faire  
 well not to trust 202 him any more.  
 vous fier à 58

191. Without a verb, *no* is expressed by *non*, and *not* by *non pas* ; as,

Will you go to town to-morrow? Irez-vous demain à la ville ?

*No* ; I will go, but *not* to-morrow. *Non* ; j'y irai, mais *non pas* demain.

## EXERCISE.

Do you not believe what he says ? No, I do not 70 ; not that the  
 croire 84 n.e. ;  
 thing is 145 impossible, but because it is not likely. Will you not  
 chose soit 62 vraisemblable.  
 speak to him any more ? No ; not before I know whether that is true  
 (e) 54 ; 218 savoir 225 89 vrai.  
 or not.

## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

192. With the verb *can*, rendered by the conditional tense of *savoir*, instead of the present of *pouvoir*,† and with *why*, rendered by *que*, instead of *pour quoi*, *not* is expressed by *ne* only before the verb ; as,

I can *not* do it. Je *ne puis pas*, or je *ne saurais le faire*.

*Why* does he *not* do it himself ? Que *ne* le fait-il lui même ?

N. B. We also generally suppress *pas*, *point*, with the verbs *oser*, to dare ; *cesser*, to cease ; and with *savoir*, to know ; when it is followed by *si*, *où*, *que*, *quand*, *quel*, *combien*, *comment* ; as,

\* At the end of a sentence, *not* must be expressed by *non*, without *pas*.

† The present tense of the verb *can* used negatively, may be expressed two ways ;

I can *not*. Je *ne puis pas*, more frequently, Je *ne saurais*.  
 He can *not*, Il *ne peut pas*, Il *ne saurait*, &c.

*Why* may also be expressed by *que* or *pourquoi*, in the following way :

Que *ne* venez-vous à temps ?  
 or Pourquoi *ne* venez-vous pas à temps ? Why do not you come in time ?

I *dare not* do it. Je n'*ose* le faire.  
 I do *not know* what to say to her. Je *ne* sais *que* lui dire.  
 She is *incessantly* plaguing me. Elle *ne cesse* de me tourmenter.

## EXERCISE.

Why does he not do like other people? Why does he not pay  
 Que faire les autres — 39 Que payer  
 what he owes when he has money? He spends his money, and then  
 84 devoir 371 , puis  
 he says that he can not pay other people. I can not pay other people, if  
 saurait 120 — 39 saurais 120 — 39.  
 other people do not pay me. I dare not speak to her. She does not  
 120 — 39 oser (e) 54  
 cease scolding 154 me. I dare not (go out) for fear of displeasing  
 gronder sortir  
 her 54. I do not know what to do. (There are) I do not know how  
 lui. 83 faire. 246 combien  
 many people at the door.  
 220 A

193. *Not*, after the verb take care, *prendre garde*, is not expressed in french, when the verb which follows it is in the infinitive, and it is expressed by *ne*, if the following verb is in any other mood; as,

Take care of falling, or *not* to fall. Prenez garde de tomber.  
 Take care that he does *not* fall. Prenez garde qu'il *ne* tombe.

## EXERCISE.

Take care not to spoil it. Take care that he does not spoil it.  
 Prenez garde de \* gâter  
 I will take care not to let him (go out). I will take care that he  
 \* laisser sortir.  
 does not go out. Take care not to let yourself (be cheated) by  
 \* laisser vous 54 tromper  
 those people. Take care that those people do not cheat you.  
 (bb) 220 220 tromper

194. The verb *empêcher*, to hinder, prevent, keep from, requires *ne* before the following verb, if that verb is not in the infinitive; so we say;

Je l'*empêcherai* de jouer; } I will hinder him from playing.  
 or J'*empêcherai* qu'il *ne* joue. }

## EXERCISE.

I will hinder him from (going out.) That will not prevent me from  
 sortir 134 (bb)  
 seeing him. I can hinder you both 222 from going out, and from  
 154 N.B.  
 seeing each other, if I choose.  
 vous voir 121 , vouloir.

\* *Prendre garde*, in this sense, meaning to *Guard from* or *against*, if the negative *not* were expressed in french, it would be the same as if you said in english: *Guard from not spoiling it*. As for the *ne* which is used after *Prendre garde*, *Empêcher*, *Craindre*, *Avoir peur*, &c. when we put the following verb in the subjunctive, it seems to be the *ne* or *quia* which the Latins used in similar instances, and which, without any apparent reason for it, has been introduced into the french language.

195. The verbs *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *appréhender*; *to fear*, *to be afraid*; the conjunctions *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, *lest*, *for fear that*, require *ne* before the following verb, if we fear that the action will happen\* then the verb has no negation in english; as,

I am afraid that he will come. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne.  
Come in, lest he should see you. Entrez, de peur qu'il *ne* vous vît.

But *ne* is left out, if the following verb is in the infinitive; as,

I am afraid of spoiling it. Je crains, or j'ai peur de le gâter.

If we fear that the action *will not happen*, there is a *negation* in english, and it must be expressed by the *corresponding negation* in french; as,

I fear he will come *no more*. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *plus*.  
I am afraid he *has not* seen me. J'ai peur qu'il *ne* m'ait *pas* vu.

N. B. The verbs *nier*, to deny, and *douter*, to doubt, used negatively, the conjunction *à moins que*, unless, and *Si* in the sense of *à moins que*, require also *ne* before the following verb; as,

He does not deny having seen her. Il ne nie pas qu'il *ne* l'ait vue.  
I do not doubt but she will come. Je ne doute pas qu'elle *ne* vienne.

## EXERCISE.

I (am afraid) somebody has seen us<sup>55</sup>. Let us not stay here for  
craindre 221 95 146 vu 159 — — rester  
fear some misfortune should happen to us. Go with that lady lest<sup>218</sup>  
218 quelque 148 54 Aller de peur que  
she should (lose her way). She is afraid that her mother should find  
s'égarer 148 146 148  
her here. I was afraid of hurting<sup>154</sup> you. I did not do it, for fear  
140 blesser 136 faire, de peur  
of displeasing<sup>154</sup> your mother. We were afraid of doing wrong. I  
de déplaire 203 mal.  
am afraid nobody will come. I am afraid they have not seen us. Let  
221 97 146 231 146 55 —  
us not go further<sup>41</sup>, for fear we should not have time to (come back)  
— loin 218 — 148 revenir  
for dinner. I do not deny that I have been there sometimes. He  
145 y 55 quelquefois.  
does not deny that he has asked your cousin. He does not doubt but  
145 cousine. que  
he will obtain her. I have no doubt but they will be married<sup>261</sup>  
obtenir 145 doute que 145 n.a.  
soon. I will not (go out) unless<sup>218</sup> it be fine. I will not go, unless  
135 sortir à moins que 240 70, 218  
you come with me.  
56.

\* We fear that an action *will happen*, when we do not wish for that action; and we fear that it *will not happen*, when we wish for it; so when I say;

I am afraid it will rain, I mean that I do not wish for rain.

I am afraid it will not rain, I mean that I wish that there should be rain

196. *Il y a—que, It is—since; de puis que, since*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, when we wish to denote that no action has taken place since the period we mention\* then the verb may also have a negation in english ;

*It is long since I have seen him,* } *Il y a long temps que je ne l'ai*  
or *I have not seen him this long while.* } *vu.*

But *ne* is not required, if there has been an action, and no negation could be used in english ; as,

*It is not long since I have seen him;* } *Il n'y a pas long temps que je*  
or *I have seen him not long since.* } *l'ai vu.*

## EXERCISE.

*It is long since I have met you. It is more than three months*  
↑ *rencontrer* 55 *plus* 48 *mois*  
*since I saw you. How have you been* 241 *since I had the pleasure to*  
↑ 126 55. 186 237 *se porter* 126 *plaisir*  
*see you ? It is a month since he is gone. Have you seen him since*  
346 *mois* ↑ *partir.*  
*he is returned ? He has been at home this fortnight.†*  
365 *au logis* 346 *quinze jours.*

197. The *negative* particle *ne* is required before the verb which follows *autre*, other ; *autrement*, otherwise ; as,

*He is quite another than I thought.* *Il est tout autre que je ne pensais.*  
*He speaks otherwise than he thinks.* *Il parle autrement qu'il ne pense.*

After the comparative words *plus, mieux, meilleur, moins*, see 47 rule ; as also with *personne, qui que ce soit*, see 97 rule ; *rien, quoi que ce soit*, 99 ; *aucun*, 100 ; *nul, pas un*, 101 ; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, 124.

N. B. *Ne* is also used after the comparative adjective *meilleur*, and the adverbs *plus, moins, mieux*, see rule 47 ; and with several other words mentioned under their respective heads, viz. *personne, qui que ce soit*, rule 97 ; *rien, quoi que ce soit*, rule 99 ; *aucun*, rule 100 ; *nul, pas un*, rule 101 ; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, rule 124.

## EXERCISE.

These things are quite different from what you say. Do you  
18 189 autres — que

\* The reason of this difference is that the English speak with reference to the last action that passed ; the French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the time in which there has not been any action, and the idea is the same as the English would express by these words ; *I have not met you for this long time. I have not seen you for more than three months.*

† Observe that *Since* after *Il y a*, is expressed by *Que* only, not by *Depuis que*.

‡ Turn ; *It is a fortnight since he is at home* ; see note \* page 303.

never speak otherwise than you think? I know people who often  
act otherwise than they say. 229

agir

198. *But*, used in the sense of the adverb *only*, in expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it; as,

She is *but* fifteen (i. e. *only* 15). Elle n'a *que* quinze ans.  
I have seen her *but* once. Je ne l'ai vue *qu'*une fois.

#### EXERCISE.

We were *but* six people; or *only* six people 229 at table. We  
140 personnes  
drank *but* four bottles, or *only* four bottles of wine. We were *but* a  
bouteille 140  
few miles, or *only* a few miles from (the place.) We met *nobody*  
à quelques milles là rencontrer  
*but* a woman, or *only* a woman.

199. *But* is sometimes used in the sense of a relative pronoun, and is then expressed by *qui ne*, with the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

There are few people *but* can do it, i. e. *who* can *not* do it.  
Il y a peu de gens *qui ne* puissent le faire.

#### EXERCISE.

(There is) no body *but* derives, or who does not derive some  
246 97 retirer, quelques  
advantage from study. I have *not* found a man *but* thinks so, or  
avantage étude. trouver  
who does not think so. There is no man *but* regrets the loss of  
de même. 246 personne  
time, or who does not regret the loss of time.  
regretter perte temps.

#### Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

Now, I am ready. Let us (set out) immediately. Let us walk  
à présent, prêt. — — partir tout à l'heure 233  
gently. (What is the use) of walking 154 so fast? I came 136 here to  
doucement. Pourquoi † — marcher vite! 233 170  
enjoy a pleasant walk, not to tire myself. I have no more desire  
jour 202 agréable 32, 191 fatiguer me 54 ‡ envie  
to tire myself than you have; only I (am afraid) that we shall  
me 54 47; craindre (bb) n.s.  
be 146 there too late. We are never there in time. We generally come  
arriver trop y 54 à temps. arriver  
either too soon or too late. It 62 is very unpleasant to keep people  
— tôt ou n.s. désagréable de faire 229  
waitings (in that way.) Do they live still in that house where  
attendre ainsi 183 n.s. demeurer encore 213

\* See note \* p. 182.

† Turn; Why to walk so fast?

‡ No more, meaning, *No longer*, is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Plus* after; but when *More* is used as an adverb of quantity, meaning *Greater*, the negative *Pas* must be added to the sentence, and we say *Pas plus*.

§ Turn; To keep waiting in that way people, because *Keep* and *Waiting* expressing together only one idea, they can not be separated.

we saw them last ? No, they have removed to another house  
 la dernière fois ? , 238 aller demeurer  
 a little further in the country. How far shall we go ? How far  
 un peu plus loin 230  
 is it from our house 209 ? How long shall we stay ? How you like to  
 N.B. rester  
 ask useless 32 questions ? Do you not know it, as well as I do ? Take  
 faire inutile savoir 43 43 52 —  
 care not to fall into this ditch. Take care lest this post falls upon  
 . tomber fossé. que poteau  
 you. Do not go (so near) lest 218 somebody should see you.  
 approcher tant de peur que 95 148  
 I only (am afraid) that something 98 bad should happen to you. Will  
 craindre (ce) mal 146 arriver 148 54  
 your cousin be there ? I do not think he will 145. He dares not  
 134 y 54 221 y 70 oser  
 come near the house. He fears that they 90 would turn him out.  
 (approcher de) 146 N.B. mettre à la porte.  
 It is near two years since they 90 have (heard 275 from him.) Is he not  
 246 près de 233 que N.B. reçu de ses nouvelles.  
 returned yet from his journey ? No, he is not 70. It is feared that  
 265 encore voyage ? 91  
 some misfortune has 146 happened to him. I (am afraid) he will never  
 quelque 238 arriver 66 craindre 221  
 return 265. I fear the report of his death will (prove true.) Never  
 146 221 bruit se vérifier 146  
 believe such reports. I (dare say) 231 he is 241 well enough. I do not  
 croire de tels bruit je ne doute pas 145  
 doubt but he will be here (very soon.) If you will come with me,  
 douter qu' 145 bientôt. 144  
 we shall go and meet him. Go that way, and I will go this,  
 (en) 273 par là, par ici,  
 for fear 218 we should miss 148 him on the road. I long to see him.  
 de peur que perdre en — chemin. see p. 163.  
 It is long since I have seen him. I told you right. There he is 247.  
 246 que 136 bien. N.B.  
 So 184 you are returned (at last.) How happy I am to see you again !  
 Donc 265 enfin ravi revoir —  
 How have you been since I saw you ? We (were afraid) you  
 227 241 depuis que 136 craindre 221  
 were lost, I began to fear that we should never see 146 you again.  
 146 perdre. 128 149 —  
 Why did you not write to us ? Why did you not let us know 248 where  
 136 136 N.B. où  
 you were, and how you were ? I (was afraid 221) you would be offended  
 241 140 146 fâché.  
 at me. What ! offended at you ? How could you think so ? How  
 200 63 ! pouvoir le 54  
 often have I told you how glad we were to see you, or to hear 275  
 de fois † 35 entendre  
 from you ? We were every day talking of you. We never met  
 de vos nouvelles ? — tous les jours 135 58 139  
 with a traveller, without enquiring 154 after you. You certainly have  
 201 voyageur, s'informer 200

\* See note † page 300.

† Tam ; *How many times, &c.*



always been (very kind) to me, and I sincerely thank you (for it).  
 eu bien des bontés pour 58, en 54.  
 How long is it since you left this country? How long have you  
 246 \* 136 230  
 been absent? How far have you been? How long do you intend  
 absent? avoir dessein  
 to stop? I have only been absent about two years, and I have not  
 rester? environ  
 been so far as you imagine. How fast the time goes! Methinks 221  
 loin 42 s'imaginer. vite passer Il me semble  
 it is only the other day that we were at R. together. Are you going  
 ce 140  
 to leave us already? Can not you stay a little longer? It is so  
 quitter déjà rester plus long temps? 246  
 long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I should like  
 que  
 to stay (very much,) but I am afraid my horse will not stand still.  
 beaucoup, 221 146 rester tranquille.  
 (Take hold of) the bridle, lest 218 it should go 148. Take care not  
 Tenir — bride, de peur que s'en aller.† garde  
 to go (too near.) Take care that it does not kick you. Do not  
 en approcher trop. (66) n.s. frapper.  
 go (so near,) lest it should bite you. Would it not be better  
 approcher tant, 218 mordre valoir mieux  
 to put it into the stable? It is not worth while. I can not stop.  
 213 écurie! Cela — en valoir la peine. rester.  
 Our friends want to go to the play to-night, and they will not go,  
 200 comédie; 225  
 unless I go with them. You perhaps can come with us. I would  
 218 58 peut-être 58  
 go, if I was not afraid that it will be too late, when the play is over.  
 146 142 finie.  
 You need not stay till the end of the play. You may go as  
 avoir besoin de rester jusqu'à fin 178 s'en aller† 43  
 soon as you like 142. Come; (make up your mind) for, unless we  
 43 vouloir. Allons; se déterminer; 140 car, 218  
 go immediately, I am almost sure we shall be too late to see the  
 partir tout à l'heure, presque 221 arriver 170  
 beginning of the play. Go: I will follow you. Take care not to  
 commencement; suivre  
 stop. Take care that he does not stop. We are just in time. Now,  
 s'arrêter.  
 what do you think of the players? They are better than I thought.  
 comédien? (x) p. 56  
 They have acted better than I expected. I hope you will come  
 jouer (x) p. 56 221 y revenir  
 again soon. I do not think I shall 70. I have but a short time to stay,  
 — bientôt. 145 n.s. — peu de 169 rester,  
 and have a (great many) things to do. How impatient you seem  
 53 — beaucoup 169  
 to go! Can not you stay (a few days longer?) No, I can not. Now,  
 s'en aller† encore quelques jours? 70  
 I want to find my sister, and I do not know where to look for her.  
 200 où 201

\* See note † p. 302.

† See N. B. p. 102.

‡ See note † p. 216.

-§ See note \* page 223.

§ See note ¶ p. 236.

I am afraid she is gone<sup>158</sup>. I am afraid she has not seen me. If you  
<sup>231</sup> <sup>146</sup> partir. <sup>231</sup> <sup>146</sup> <sup>55</sup>  
 go (that way,) I do not doubt but you will find her. There are few  
<sup>par là,</sup> <sup>que,</sup> <sup>246</sup> <sup>peu</sup>  
 people here but know her. I think I see her. Yes; here<sup>247</sup> she is.  
<sup>229</sup> <sup>199</sup> <sup>231</sup> ; <sup>n.2</sup>

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PREPOSITION.

*Prepositions* are certain monosyllables added to *nouns, verbs,* and *adjectives* in order to extend their meaning to the word which follows them; as,

I came *from* Paris, *through* Canterbury, *to* London.

The words *from, through, to*, which express a relation between the verb *came* and the *substantives* which follow it, are called *prepositions*.

The *prepositions*\* are in French;

<i>A</i>	At, To.	<i>Excepté,</i>	} Save, But, Except
<i>Après,</i>	After.	<i>Hormis,</i>	
<i>Avec,</i>	With.	<i>Moyennant,</i>	} For, By the Means of.
<i>Avant,</i>	Before.	<i>Malgré,</i>	
<i>Chez,</i>	At the House of.	<i>Nonobstant,</i>	} Against, In Spite of.
<i>Contre,</i>	Against.	<i>Outre,</i>	
<i>Dans,</i>	In, Into.	<i>Par,</i>	} By, Through.
<i>De,</i>	Of, From, By.	<i>Parmi,</i>	
<i>Des,</i>	From.	<i>Pendant,</i>	} Among, Amongst.
<i>Depuis,</i>	Since, From, For.	<i>Pour,</i>	
<i>Devant,</i>	Before.	<i>Sans,</i>	} During, For.
<i>Derrière,</i>	Behind.	<i>Selon,</i>	
<i>Durant,</i>	During, For.	<i>Suivant,</i>	} According to.
<i>En,</i>	In, Into.	<i>Sous,</i>	
<i>Entre,</i>	Between, Betwixt.	<i>Sur,</i>	} Under, Beneath.
<i>Envers,</i>	To, Towards.	<i>Touchant,</i>	
<i>Environ,</i>	About.	<i>Vers,</i>	} On, Upon, Over.
			} Concerning, About.
			} Towards, About.

\* The following expressions are found in several french grammars, and even in the dictionary of the french academy, in the class of prepositions:

<i>Auprès de,</i>	Near, By, Close to.	<i>à Force de,</i>	By dint of.
<i>Autour de,</i>	Round.	<i>Jusqu'à,</i>	To, Till, Until.
<i>à Cause de,</i>	On account of.	<i>Hors de,</i>	Out of.
<i>à Côté de,</i>	By, By the side of.	<i>au Lieu de,</i>	Instead of, In the place
<i>en Deça de,</i>	On this side of.	<i>Loin de,</i>	Far from. [of
<i>au Delà de,</i>	On that side of.	<i>le Long de,</i>	Along.
<i>au Dessous de,</i>	Under, Below.	<i>à Moins de,</i>	Under, For less.
<i>par Dessous,</i>		<i>au Moyen de,</i>	By the means of.
<i>au Dessus de,</i>	Above, Over, Upon.	<i>Près de,</i>	Near to, Nigh, By.
<i>par Dessus,</i>		<i>Proche de,</i>	
<i>au Devant de,</i>	Before, In the fore part of.	<i>par Rapport à,</i>	With respect to.
<i>par Devant,</i>		<i>à Travers,</i>	} Across, Through
<i>au Derrière de,</i>	Behind, In the back of.	<i>au Travers de,</i>	
<i>à l'égard de,</i>	As to, With respect to.	<i>Vis à vis de,</i>	Over against, Facing.

And a few others which I have not thought proper to notice, because they are

*Difference between the French and English prepositions.*

200. The greatest difficulty attending the prepositions, is, that they are not always expressed by the words which correspond to each other in both languages; *i. e.* *of, from*, the corresponding preposition of which is *de*, are sometimes expressed by *à*; *at, to*, the corresponding preposition of which is *à*, are sometimes expressed by *de*; *by, for*, sometimes expressed by *de*, and sometimes by *à, &c.*, which no rule can sufficiently explain; therefore having found it impossible to make rules sufficiently explicit for the use of the prepositions, I have subjoined a list of all the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require a preposition different from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in english, by means of which the learner may always remove any doubt he may have respecting the prepositions.\*

Agree	about,	Convenir	de ;	as	Nous sommes convenus de ceci.
Carry	about,	Porter	sur ;		Je ne porte pas d'argent sur moi.
Concerned	about,				
Uneasy	about,	Inquiet	de ;		Je suis inquiet de sa santé.
Discourse	about,	Discourir	de ;		Nous discourons de nos affaires.
Easy	about,	Tranquille	sur ;		Je suis tranquille sur cela.
Inquire	about,	s' Informer	de ;		Informez-vous de son retour.
Talk	about,	Parler	de ;		Parlons d'autres choses.
Greedy	after,	Avide	de ;		Il est trop avide de richesses.
Inquire	after,	s' Informer	de ;		Il s'informe souvent de vous.
Thirst	after,	Altéré	de ;		Il est altéré de sang.
Angry	at				
Offended	at	Fâché	contre ;		Etre fâché contre quelqu'un.
Vexed	at				
Angry	at				
Offended	at	Fâché	de ;		Etre fâché de quelque chose.
Vexed	at				

tainly do not belong to this class. But these words are so far from being prepositions, that it is only by the means of the preposition *de* or *à* that they can be connected with the word which follows them. It is evident that they are Nouns, preceded and followed as you see, by an Article, or by a Preposition, and coming under the rules that have been given on nouns. According to the french academy, some of these words are both Prepositions and Adverbs. They are Prepositions when they govern a substantive after them, and they are Adverbs when they are used absolutely without a substantive. This distinction is right, but its application is not always so; for example, *J'étais à côté de la porte*, I was by the side of the door; here *à côté* is a Preposition. *Il était sur la porte*, et *j'étais à côté*; He was on the door, and I was by the side of it; here *à côté*, is an Adverb. With due respect to the french academy, I must say that *à côté*, in these instances, seems to me of the same nature as the substantive *side*, which represents it in english. Certain it is, that these words called Prepositions are all derived from Nouns or Verbs. If then our poverty of expression obliged us to have recourse to this benevolent family, I think their generosity should not be abused, and their nature changed without a necessity which, in these instances, does not seem to exist.

\* Some grammarians have endeavoured to analyze the different relations which the prepositions have with the words which they connect: so, according to them, all verbs and adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetfulness, care, fear, guilt, innocence, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, measure, dimension*, require *DÉ*; the verbs and adjectives which express *submission, relation, pleasure, displeasure, duty, resistance, opposition, facility, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit*, require *A*; but these terms are so indefinite and notwithstanding their latitude, they leave so great a chasm in the field of prepositions, that I have not met with any person who has derived the least advantage from them.

Astonished	at,	Étonné	de ;	Je ne suis pas étonné de cela.
Blush	at,	Rougir	de ;	Elle rougit de sa folie.
Exasperated	at,	Outré	de ;	Il fut outré de ce discours.
Grieve	at,	s' Affliger	de ;	Il s'afflige de sa perte.
Laugh	at,	Rire	de ;	Il rit or se moque de tout.
Laugh	at,	se Moquer	de ;	Il se moque de tout le monde.
Rejoice	at,	se Rêjouir	de ;	Je me réjouis de votre succès.
Scandalised	at,	Scandaliser	de ;	Je fus scandalisé de son action.
Smile	at,	Sourire	de ;	Elle sourit de ma confusion.
Surprised	at,	Surpris	de ;	Je ne suis pas surpris de cela.
Wonder	at,	Étonné	de ;	Je n'en suis pas étonné.
Fellowed	by,	Suivi	de ;	Il était suivi de ses gens.
Gain	by,	Gagner	à ;	Il n'a rien gagné à cela.
Get	by,			
Preceded	by,	Précédé	de ;	Le souper fut précédé d'un bal.
Profit	by,	Profiter	de ;	Il n'a pas profité de vos leçons.
Answer	for,	Répondre	de ;	Répondez-vous de lui ? de cela !
Blame	for,	Blâmer	de ;	Je le blâme de ses défauts.
Bless	for,	Bénir	de ;	Béniissons-le de sa bonté.
Care	for,	se Soucier	de ;	Je ne me soucie pas de lui.
Chastise	for,	Châtier	de ;	Il sera châtié de sa malice.
Console	for,	Consoler	de ;	Consolez-le de sa perte.
Design	for,	Destiner	à ;	A quoi le destinez-vous ?
Fit	for,	Propre	à ;	A quoi cela est-il propre ?
Good	for,	Bon	à ;	Cela n'est bon à rien.
Grieve	for,	s' Affliger	de ;	Il est affligé de ses fautes.
Obliged	for,	Obligé	de ;	Je lui suis obligé de sa lettre.
Pity	for,	Plaindre	de ;	Je le plains de sa faiblesse.
Praise	for,	Louer	de ;	On le loue de sa candeur.
Provide	for,	Pourvoir	à ;	Qui pourvoie à ses besoins ?
Punish	for,	Punir	de ;	Il sera puni de sa témérité.
Sorry	for,	Fâché	de ;	Je suis fâché de son malheur.
Sufficient	for,	Suffire	à ;	Cela ne lui* suffit pas.
Thank	for,	Remercier	de ;	Remerciez-le de ses bontés.
Borrow	from,	Emprunter	à ;	Il l'a emprunté à votre père.
Conceal	from,	Cacher	à ;	Ne le cachez pas à votre ami.
Escape	from,	Echapper	de ;	Echapper d'un endroit.
Escape	from,	Echapper	à ;	Echapper à une personne.
Hear	from,	Ouir dire	à ;	Je l'ai oui dire à mon père.
Take	from,	Oter	à ;	Ne l'ôtez pas à cet enfant.
Take	from,	Prendre	à ;	Il le lui* a pris or ôté.
Acquiesce	in,	Acquiescer	à ;	J'acquiesce à votre demande.
Interested	in,	s' Intéresser	à ;	Je m'intéresse à son bien-être.
Delight	in,	se Plaire	à ;	Il se plaît au jardinage.
Dexterous	in,	Adroit	à ;	Il est adroit aux exercices.
Glory	in,	se Glorifier	de ;	Il se glorifie de ses richesses.
Pride	in,	s' Enorgueillir	de ;	Il s'enorgueillit de sa naissance.
Ask	of,	Demander	à ;	Demandez-le à cet homme.
Sensible	of,	Sensible	à ;	Il est très sensible au froid.
Think	of,†	Penser	à ;	Avez-vous pensé à moi ?
Think	of,	Songer	à ;	Vous ne songez à rien.
Think	on,	Penser	à ;	Avez-vous pensé à mon affaire ?
Have pity	on,	Avoir pitié	de ;	Vous n'avez pitié de personne.
Play	on,	Jouer	de ;	Joue-t-il de quel instrument ?
Triumph	over,	Triompher	de ;	Il a triomphé de ses ennemis.
Pretend	to,	se Piquer	de ;	Il se pique de générosité.
Agree	upon,	Convenir	de ;	Convenons de quelque chose.
Call	upon,	Passer	chez ;	Quand passerez-vous chez moi ?
Congratulate	upon,	Féliciter	de ;	Je vous félicite de votre retour.
Depend	upon,	Dépendre	de ;	Vous ne dépendez pas de lui.
Feed	upon,	se Nourrir	de ;	Il se nourrit de pain et de lait.
Impose	upon,	en Imposer	à ;	Il en impose aux gens.
Live	upon,	Vivre	de ;	Il vit de fruit et de légumes.

\* Observe that the preposition *à* is implied in *LUI*, which means to him. See table of the pronouns, page 60.

† When *think* is used in the sense of *to have an opinion*, *of* is expressed by *de*, not by *à* ; as,

What do you think of that ? *Que pensez-vous de cela ?* not, *à cela ?*

Prevail	upon,	Persuader	à ;	as Je lui* persuadai de s'en aller.
Seize	upon,	se Saisir	de ;	On se saisit aussitôt de lui.
Smile	upon,	Sourire	à ;	Il souriait à ses amis.
Take	upon,	se Charger	de ;	Il s'est chargé de cette affaire.
Abound	with,	Abonder	en ;	La France abonde en fruit.
Acquainted	with,	Connu	de ;	Je ne suis pas connu de lui.
Adorn	with,	Orner	de ;	Une chambre ornée de tableaux.
Angry	with,	Fâché	contre ;	Il est très fâché contre vous.
Amuse	with,	Amuser	de ;	Il l'amusait de promesses.
Animated	with,	Animé	de ;	Il est animé de zèle.
Armed	with,	Armé	de ;	Il était armé d'un pistolet.
Bathe	with,	Baigner	de ;	Elle le baigna de ses larmes.
Charge	with,	Accuser	de ;	On l'accuse de trahison.
Charmed	with,	Charmé	de ;	Il est charmé de ses manières.
Compare	with,	Comparer	à ;	Comparez-vous ceci à cela ?
Comply	with,	Condescendre	à ;	Il condescend à ses caprices.
Contented	with,	Content	de ;	Je ne suis pas content de cela.
Cover	with,	Couvrir	de ;	Il est couvert de poussière.
Delighted	with,	Charmé	de ;	Il fut charmé de son esprit.
Die	with,	Mourir	de ;	Je meurs de faim, de soif.
Disgusted	with,	Dégoûté	de ;	Je suis dégoûté de monde.
Dispense	with,	Dispenser	de ;	Dispensez-moi de cela.
Displeased	with,	Mécontent	de ;	Je suis mécontent de lui.
Do	with,	Faire	de ;	Que fera-t-on de cet homme ?
Embellish	with,	Embellir	de ;	Un jardin embelli de fleurs.
Endue	with,	Douer	de ;	Il n'est doué d'aucun esprit.
Enflame	with,	Enflamer	de ;	Il était enflammé de colère.
Feed	with,	Nourir	de ;	On le nourrit de pain et d'eau.
Fill	with,	Emplir	de ;	Emplissez votre verre de vin.
Glut	with,	Assouvir	de ;	Il est assouvi de carnage.
In love	with,	Amoureux	de ;	Il est amoureux de cette fille.
Load	with,	Charger	de ;	Il est chargé de butin.
Meddle	with,	se Mêler	de ;	Mélez-vous de vos affaires.
Moved	with,	Touché	de ;	Il fut touché de compassion.
Overjoyed	with,	Ravi	de ;	Il fut ravi de cette nouvelle.
Overwhelm	with,	Accabler	de ;	Il est accablé de chagrin.
Part	with,	se Défaire	de ;	Il s'est défait de son cheval.
Perish	with,	Périr	de ;	Il périt de faim et de misère.
Pleased	with,	Content	de ;	Elle n'est pas contente de lui.
Prevail	with,	Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-lui de le faire.
Provide	with,	Fournir	de ;	Ils fournissent l'armée de blé.
Provided	with,	Pourvu	de ;	Il est bien pourvu d'habits.
Puffed up	with,	Enfié	de ;	Il est tout enfié d'orgueil.
Refresh	with,	se Rafraichir	de ;	Se rafraichir d'un verre de vin.
Satiated	with,	Rassasié	de ;	Il est rassasié de plaisirs.
Satisfied	with,	Satisfait	de ;	Il n'est pas satisfait de cela.
Set	with,	Garnir	de ;	Une boîte garnie de diamants.
Sport	with,	se Jouer	de ;	Elle se joue de sa crédulité.
Store	with,	Munir	de ;	La place est munie de provisions.
Struck	with,	Frappé	de ;	Il fut frappé d'étonnement.
Surrounded	with,	Entouré	de ;	Il était entouré de flatteurs.
Swarm	with,	Fourmiller	de ;	Le pays fourmille de voleurs.
Taken up	with,	Occupé	de ;	Il est trop occupé de lui-même.
Tax	with,	Taxer	de ;	On le taxe de sédition.
Threaten	with,	Menacer	de ;	On le menaça de la mort.
Tire	with,	Ennuyer	de ;	Il est ennuyé de ces choses.
Tormented	with,	Tourmenté	de ;	Il est tourmenté de remords.
Transported	with,	Transporté	de ;	Elle est transportée de joie.
Do	without,	se Passer	de ;	Il ne peut pas se passer d'elle.

201. Sometimes a verb requires a *preposition* after it in english, and will not admit of it in french; such are,

Look	at ;	Look at that man ;	Regardez cet homme.
Ask	for ;	He asks for you ;	Il vous demande.
Buy	for ;	I bought this for a penny ;	J'ai acheté ceci un sou.
Go	for ;	Go for your book ;	Allez chercher votre livre.
Look	for ;	Look for it ;	Cherchez-le, <i>sic</i> , pour lui.
Sell	for ;	I have sold it for two pence ;	Je l'ai vendu deux sous.
Stay	for ;	Stay for me ;	Attendez-moi, <i>sic</i> , pour moi.
Wait	for ;	Do not wait for me ;	Ne m'attendez pas.
Wish	for ;	I wish for your company ;	Je souhaite votre compagnie.
Accept	of ;	Please to accept of this ;	Daignez accepter ceci.
Admit	of ;	He will not admit of this ;	Il n'admettra pas cela.
Approve	of ;	Do you approve of it ?	L'approuvez-vous ?
Beg	of ;	I beg of you to see her ;	Je vous prie de la voir.
Ignorant	of ;	She was quite ignorant of it ;	Elle l'ignorait tout à fait.
Tyrannise	over ;	She tyrannises over me ;	Elle me tyrannise.
Listen	to ;	Listen to me ;	Ecoutez-moi, <i>sic</i> à moi.
Look	upon ;	Look upon me as a friend ;	Regardez-moi comme ami.
Prevail	upon ;	Prevail upon her to stay ;	Engagez-la à rester.
Prevail	with ;	Prevail with him to come ;	Engagez-le à venir.
Resolve	upon ;	Has he resolved upon any thing ?	A-t-il résolu quelque chose ?
Bear	with ;	I bear with his importunities ;	J'endure ses importunités.
Meet	with ;	I met with a robber ;	Je rencontrai un voleur.
Put up	with ;	I put up with his impertinence ;	Je souffris son impertinence.

202. In other instances it is the reverse, and the verb which has no *preposition* in english, must have a *preposition* after it in french ; such are,

Abuser	de ;	Il abuse de ma patience ;	He abuses my patience.
s' Appercevoir	de ;	Je m'apperois de cela ;	I perceive that.
Avoir besoin	de ;	J'ai besoin d'argent ;	I want money.
Avoir pitié	de ;	Il n'a pas pitié de moi ;	He does not pity me.
Changer	de ;	Il a change de dessein ;	He has changed his design.
se Défier	de ;	Vous défiez-vous de lui ?	Do you mistrust him ?
se Démettre	de ;	Il s'est démis de sa place ;	He has given up his place
Disconvenir	de ;	Il n'en disconvient pas ;	He does not disown it.
Douter	de ;	Il doute de tout ;	He doubts every thing
s' Embarrasser	de ;	Il ne s'embarrasse de rien ;	He minds nothing.
Gémir	de ;	Il gémit de ses fautes ;	He laments his errors.
Hériter	de ;	Il a hérité d'un gros bien ;	He inherited a large estate.
Jouir	de ;	Il jouit d'une bonne santé ;	He enjoys good health
Manquer	de ;	Il ne manque de rien ;	He wants nothing.
Médire	de ;	Il médit des gens ;	He slanders people.
se Méfier	de ;	Il se méfie de ses amis ;	He mistrusts his friends.
se Méprendre	de ;	Il s'est mépris de chemin ;	He has mistaken his way.
se Moquer	de ;	Il se moque des sages ;	He mocks wise people.
se Passer	de ;	Il ne peut pas s'en passer ;	He can not spare it.
se Servir	de ;	Il se sert de mon nom ;	He uses my name.
se Souvenir	de ;	Je me souviens de cela ;	I remember that.
User	de ;	Il a usé de violence ;	He has used violence.
se Venger	de ;	Je m'en vengerai ;	I will revenge it.
Attenter	à ;	Il a attenté à ma vie ;	He has attempted my life.
Commander	à ;	Commandez-lui d'y aller ;	Bid him to go there.
Compattir	à ;	Je compatis à sa peine ;	I compassionate his pain.
Convenir	à ;	Cela lui convient, or	That suits or becomes him
Solr	à ;	Cela lui sied à merveille ;	wonderfully.
Défendre	à ;	Défendez-lui de le dire ;	Forbid him to tell it.
Déplaie	à ;	Il déplaît à son père ;	He displeases his father.
Désobéir	à ;	Il désobéit à sa mère ;	He disobeys his mother.
se Fier	à ;	Il ne se fie à personne ;	He trusts nobody.
Manquer	à ;	Il manque à sa parole ;	He breaks his word.
Importer	à ;	Il lui importe de le voir ;	It concerns her to see it
Nuire	à ;	Ne nuisez à personne ;	Do not injure any body.
Obéir	à ;	Obéissez à vos parents ;	Obey your parents.

\* The preposition *de* is implied in the pronoun *en*, which means *of it* ; see a table of the pronouns, page 60.

† See note \* page 317.

Obvier	à ;	Il n'a pu obvier à cela ;	He could not prevent that.
Opposer	à ;	Opposez-vous à l'injustice ;	Oppose injustice.
Ordonner	à ;	Ordonnez-lui* de la faire ;	Order him to do it.
Pardonner	à ;	Pardonnez à vos ennemis ;	Forgive your enemies.
Permettre	à ;	Permettez-lui* de s'en aller ;	Permit her to go.
Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-lui* de la voir ;	Persuade him to see her.
Plaire	à ;	Elle plaît à tout le monde ;	She pleases every body.
Prendre garde	à ;	Il prend garde à tout ;	He minds every thing.
Promettre	à ;	Il lui* a promis de venir ;	He promised her to come.
Renoncer	à ;	Il a renoncé au jeu ;	He has given up gaming.
Répondre	à ;	Répondez à ma question ;	Answer my question.
Résister	à ;	Résistez à la tentation ;	Resist temptation.
Ressembler	à ;	Elle ressemble à sa mère ;	She resembles her mother.
Subvenir	à ;	Il subvient à ses besoins ;	He supplies her wants.
Succéder	à ;	Il succédera à son oncle ;	He will succeed his uncle.
Survivre	à ;	Elle ne lui* survivra pas ;	She will not outlive him.
Toucher	à ;	Ne touchez pas à ce livre ;	Do not touch that book.

203. In some instances the *preposition* may be placed in english, either before or after the substantive which it governs ; but in french, the *preposition* must always be placed immediately *before* its object ; as,

With whom were you ?	}	Avec qui étiez-vous ?
or Whom were you with ?		
To whom shall I give this ?	}	À qui donnerai-je ceci ?
or Whom shall I give this to ?		

## EXERCISE.

Whom does this house belong to? What house are you speaking of?  
 77 134 appartenir 62 — 155  
 That house which we just<sup>244</sup> passed by. It belongs to that gentle-  
 76 venir de passer 207 62 monsieur  
 man's father whom we are going to dine with. I know whom it  
 25 76 — 155 173 diner. 76 63  
 belongs to.

204. The *prepositions* must be repeated in french before every word which they govern, though these words are in the same sentence, and the preposition is not repeated in english ; as,

I come *from* France and Italy; Je viens *de* France et d'Italie.  
 I have been *to* Paris and Rome; J'ai été *à* Paris et *à* Rome.†

## EXERCISE.

Mr. A. has invited me to take a walk and dine with him. We  
 inviter 55 269 n.s. 58  
 shall walk into his park and gardens. We are going to France and  
 213 156  
 Germany. Do not go without calling<sup>154</sup> on me, or writing to me.  
 Allomagne. partir 266 , (c)

\* The preposition à is implied in the pronoun lui, which expresses to him, to her. See a table of the pronouns, page 60.

† This repetition is not always necessary, but the surest way for a foreigner is to make it a general rule, until he has learned by reading when the preposition may be left out.

*Remarks on the Prepositions.***FOR; DEPUIS, PENDANT, DURANT, POUR.**

205. *For*, before a period of time, is expressed by *depuis*, to denote the two extremes of the period; by *pendant*, or *durant*, to denote its duration; and by *pour*, to denote the end;\* as,

- I have not seen him *for* a month;  
 i. e. a month *since*. Je ne l'ai pas vu *depuis* un mois.  
 They fought *for* two days; Ils se bătirent *pendant* deux jours.  
 i. e. *during* two days.  
 They have provisions *for* a year; Ils ont des provisions *pour* un an  
 i. e. *to last* a year.

## EXERCISE.

What dreadful<sup>33</sup> weather it has been<sup>240</sup> for some time past.  
 33 affreux temps il fait quelque temps —  
 We have not had a (fine day) for these three weeks. It has  
 (jour de beau temps) — semaine.  
 rained for two whole<sup>32</sup> days. If this weather lasts, we<sup>90</sup> shall not  
 plu entier 32 durer, n.b.  
 (be able) to get provisions for the winter.  
 pouvoir 173 se procurer 'hiver.

**BEFORE; AVANT, DEVANT.**

206. Speaking of time, or order, *before* is expressed by *avant*, the opposite of which is *après*, after; speaking of place or in presence, it is expressed by *devant*, the opposite of which is *derrière*, behind; as,

- Do not walk *before* me. Ne marchez pas *devant* moi.  
 I want to arrive *before* you. Je veux arriver *avant* vous.  
 N. B. Without an object after it, *before* is *auparavant*; as,  
 I had seen it *before*. Je l'avais vu *auparavant*.

## EXERCISE.

You shall not (go out) before dinner, because you have spoken be-  
 sortir  
 fore your turn. Do not walk<sup>263</sup> before me, stay behind. I want to  
 tour. marcher , rester 260  
 arrive before you. (Walk in) or (go away), and do not stay so before  
 Entrer s'en aller, ainsi  
 the door.

**BY; PRES DE, A COTE DE.**

207. *By*, used in the sense of *near*, is *près de*, or *à côté de*; as,  
 He was sitting *by* or *near* me. Il était assis *à côté de* moi.  
 He passed *by* or *near* us. Il passa *près de* nous, *à côté de* nous.  
 N. B. With the words *myself*, *thysself*, *himself*, &c., *by* is

\* Observe that when *for* comes between two sentences, it cannot be expressed by any of the above words, as it is not a preposition; it is then a conjunction, and is expressed by *car*; as, I can not go with you, *for* I am very busy; *Je ne puis pas aller avec vous, car je suis très affairé.* See 217 rule.



often used in the sense of *alone*, and is expressed by the adjective *seul*; as,

I like to be *by myself*, i. e. *alone*. J'aime à être *seul*; not, *par moi-même*. She was *by herself* all the day. Elle a été *seule* toute la journée.

## EXERCISE.

Come and sit by me. I would rather stand by the door. How  
 (na) vous asseoir 56 aimer mieux me tenir  
 can you sit by the fire (in such 'weather' as this?) I was by my-  
 rester feu du temps qu'il fait 136  
 self all the morning. Are you fond of being by yourself? What a  
 234 — aimer à 154 62 20  
 pleasure (it is) to be by oneself. My sister can not 192 be a moment  
 plaisir il y a à saurait  
 by herself.

## AT, TO; CHEZ.

208. *At, to*, denoting being *at*, or going *to* a person's house, are expressed by *chez*, and the word house is left out in french; as,

I must go to my sister's; } Il faut que j'aille chez ma sœur.  
 or to my sister's house.  
 She is at your mother's. Elle est chez votre mère.

N. B. If the word house, instead of being preceded by a noun, is preceded by one of the possessive *pronominal* articles *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, the word house is also omitted, and the possessive *article* is changed into a personal *pronoun*, thus;

At my house;	Chez moi.	At our house;	Chez nous.
At thy house;	Chez toi.	At your house;	Chez vous.
At his house;	Chez lui.	At their house;	Chez eux. m.
At her house;	Chez elle.	At their house;	Chez elles. f.

## EXERCISE.

Will you come with me to my mother's? She is not at home; She is  
 58 elle ;  
 at your sister's house. (Then I must) go to my sister's, for I must see  
 Il faut donc que 181 , † 181  
 her. Perhaps she is not there now, for she had to call at a  
 Peut-être que y 34 à présent, † à 266  
 friend's house. Come to my house. I will not go to your house. I  
 Venir  
 will go to his. Let us go to her house. She is not at home. She is at  
 elle  
 our house or at theirs.

## FROM; De CHEZ.

209. *From*, with verbs denoting coming or going *from* a person's house, is expressed by *de chez*, and the word house is left out; as,

\* See note \* page 130.

† See note \* page 318.

I come *from* my sister's; } viens de *chez* ma sœur.  
 or *from* my sister's house. }  
 Is she returned *from* my mother's? Est-elle revenue de *chez* ma mère?

N. B. If the word *house* is preceded by the possessive pronominal article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, that article is changed into a personal pronoun, as follows;

From *my* house; De *chez moi*. From *our* house; De *chez nous*.  
 From *thy* house; De *chez toi*. From *your* house; De *chez vous*.  
 From *his* house; De *chez lui*. From *their* house; De *chez eux*. m.  
 From *her* house; De *chez elle*. From *their* house; De *chez elles*. f.

## EXERCISE.

I come from my sister's. You did not find your mother there,  
 136 trouver y 55  
 for I saw her (going 154 out) of your brother's house. I met 136 her com-  
 \* 136 55 sortir rencontrer  
 ing from my grandmother's. What do you want here? (Get out) of my  
 153 n.s. grand-mère. chercher Sortir  
 house. You come from our house, and I come from yours. I met  
 (m) 136  
 your father (coming 153 out) of his house, and going 153 to ours.  
 sortir n.s. n.s.

## FROM; De la PART.

210. *From*, with the verbs *to go, to come*, not from the *house* of a person, but from the *person* himself, is expressed by *de la part*; as,

Go *from me* to my daughter's. Allez de *ma part* chez ma fille.  
 Whom do you come *from*? De *la part* de qui venez-vous?

## EXERCISE.

Whom do you come from? I come from your mother. Go from  
 77 venir  
 me to my sister's, and tell her that I will come and drink tea at her  
 (1) p. 63. 264 (an) † thé  
 house.

## IN, INTO; DANS, EN.

211. Before the names of persons and places, *in, into* are expressed by *dans*; as,

I have read that *in* Voltaire. J'ai lu cela *dans* Voltaire.  
 Are there fine streets *in* Paris? Y a-t-il de belles rues *dans* Paris?

N. B. Observe only with respect to *places*, that after verbs denoting residence, *in* is expressed by *à*; as,

My brother lives *in* Paris. Mon frère demeure *à* Paris.

## EXERCISE.

There are great beauties *in* Thompson. Are there (as many)  
 246 beauté 246 autant

\* See note \* page 318

† See note † page 262.

inhabitants in Paris as in London? My brother is in Paris, and my  
 'habitants que London  
 sister in London.

212. Before the names of *countries*, with verbs denoting going or residing, *in*, *into* are expressed by *en* ; as,

My brother lives *in* France. Mon frère demeure *en* France.

Has he ever been *into* Italy? A-t-il jamais été *en* Italie?

N. B. In other instances, *in*, *into* before the names of *countries*, may be expressed by *en* or by *dans* ; observing only that after *dans*, the noun must have an article, and after *en*, it must be without ; as,

There is some *in* France.

Il y en a *en* France, *dans* la France.

Is there any *in* Italy?

Y en a-t-il *en* Italie, or *dans* l'Italie?

## EXERCISE.

My father is in Russia, my brother in Switzerland, and my sister  
 Russie, Suisse,  
 in France. Are there as many people <sup>229</sup> in France as in Germany?  
 246 autant monde que Allemagne?

213. Before *common* names used in a *limited* sense ; i. e. preceded by any of the signs which have been called article, *in*, *into* are expressed by *dans* ;

*In* the last peace.

*Dans* la dernière paix.

*In* this unfortunate war.

*Dans* cette guerre malheureuse.

There are charms *in* society. Il y a des charmes *dans* la société.

## EXERCISE.

Put this wine in a bottle. If you will be diligent, we will take  
 Mettre bouteille. 144 prendre  
 you in our partnership. Put these papers into that parcel. Put them  
 société. papier (bb) paquet.  
 in the same order in which you found them. I never saw my papers  
 même ordre 76 136 136  
 in such a confusion before. Let every thing be in the state it ought  
 telle 38 — 248 107 état (s) devoir  
 to be. (There must be) some order and economy in a house.  
 172 Il faut économie

214. But when the same *common* names are used in an *unlimited* sense, in which sense they generally have no article, *in*, *into* are expressed by *en* ;

I like to live *in* peace.

J'aime à vivre *en* paix.\*

\* If in some instances *in*, *into* are expressed by *en*, without an article in french, before nouns which in english have the article *a*, *an* ; as,

I came *in* a coach ; Je vins *en* carrosse. She fell *into* a passion ; Elle se mit *en* colère.

It is because in these instances the noun serves less to name the thing itself, than the manner of being or acting of the agent of the verb, and these words *En carrosse*, *En colère*, may be considered as adverbial expressions ; but if we add to the same nouns some word which will render their meaning definite, *in*, *into* must be expressed by *dans* ; as,

I came *in* a fine coach ;

Je vins *dans* un beau carrosse.

She fell *into* a great passion :

Elle se mit *dans* une grande colère.

We are always *in* broils. Nous sommes toujours *en* querelle.  
 It is better to live *in* society. Il vaut mieux vivre *en* société.\*

## EXERCISE.

I must put this wine into bottles; (i. e. *bottle it*.) I am going to  
 181 mettre ; 153 173  
 enter into partnership with my uncle. I will put these papers in par-  
 entrer société oncle. pa-  
 cels. Every thing here is in confusion. I will put every thing in  
 quer 107 184 107  
 order, if you will not put yourself in a passion.  
 144 vous 54 — colère.

215. Speaking of *time*, *in* is expressed by *dans*, to denote the time after which an action will be performed, and by *en* to denote the time that will be employed in performing it; as,

I shall go to Paris *in* three days.

J'irai à Paris *dans* trois jours; viz. *after* three days.

J'irai à Paris *en* trois jours; i. e. I shall be three days *in* going.

## EXERCISE.

Do you think that I can learn french in six months? You may 178  
 145 français mois ? pouvoir  
 learn it in less time. I intend to begin in a month. I shall be  
 moins avoir dessein 168  
 with you in an hour. I can walk there in less than half an hour.  
 heure. aller y 54 48 demi 38

216. Before nouns denoting any part of the day, *in* is not expressed in french;

*In* the morning—*In* the evening.

Le matin—Le soir.

*In* the afternoon.

Après midi, or Après dîné.

N. B. Observe the same rule with *on*, before the days of the week; as,

*On* Sunday—*On* Monday. Dimanche—Lundi; not, *sur* Lundi.

*On* the day he came. Le jour qu'il est-venu.

## EXERCISE.

I will come and see you on Sunday or Monday. Will you come  
 (on) Dimanche Lundi.  
 in the morning or in the afternoon? I will come on monday in the  
 matin après midi ?  
 afternoon.

---

\* *Société*, in these two instances, is used in a different sense; in the first instance, it means that particular state of being called *society*; in the second, it is rather an adverbial expression, and means *sociably*.

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

I am very uneasy *about* this business. Have you enquired *about*  
 inquiet 200 affaire. 237 s'informer  
 what people<sup>90</sup> say (of it)? Your friends are very angry *at* you. They  
 84 n.a. en 54 fâché 58  
 laughed<sup>136</sup> *at* what you desired<sup>136</sup> me to tell them. I do not wonder  
 se moquer<sup>237</sup> 84 232 (1) p. 63. s'étonner  
*at* that. They laugh *at* every thing. They blame you *for* your  
 (bb) se moquer 107 blâmer  
 rashness. They will not believe that you are sorry *for* what you  
 témérité. 173 145 fâché 84  
 have done. They will get nothing *by* that. I neither care  
 gagner 99 (bb) 234 se soucier  
*for* them, nor *for* what they say. I will punish them *for* their  
 58, 84 punir  
 ingratitude. I will take my property (*from* them.) I do not depend  
 ôter bien † leur 54 dépendre  
*upon* them. I need<sup>202</sup> nothing. I am abundantly provided *with*  
 58 avoir besoin 99 abondamment pourvu  
 every thing. I congratulate you *upon* your (good fortune.) I  
 107 féliciter bonheur.  
 think you have reason to be contented *with* your lot. Look<sup>201</sup> *at*  
 221 lieu content sort. Regarder  
 that woman. See how she laughs *at* us. She is waiting<sup>155</sup> *for* us.  
 (bb) comme se rire 58 — attendre 201  
 Do not look *at* her. I am angry *with* her. I do not approve  
 201 fâché approuver  
*of* her behaviour. She imposes *upon* her friends, and she slanders  
 conduite. en imposer médire<sup>202</sup>  
 every body she knows. She has met *with* several misfortunes,  
 tous ceux que éprouver plusieurs disgrâce,  
 but she has not profited (*by* them.) I think she delights *in* mischief.  
 profiter † en 55 231 se plaisir faire le mal.  
 She tyrannizes *over* all her house, and does not mind<sup>202</sup> what the  
 tyranniser s'embarrasser  
 world says. She is very much like<sup>202</sup> her mother; a haughty, im-  
 — ressembler ; hautain, im-  
 perious woman whom nobody could please. I wonder how you  
 périeux (g) 76 97 pouvoir plaire. 202 s'étonner que  
 trust<sup>202</sup> her brother. He is not fit *for* (any thing.) He has inher-  
 se fier propre 99 hériter  
 ed a large estate, but that will not (be sufficient) *for* his expenses.  
 202 gros bien, suffire dépense.  
 Do you remember what I told you one day? No, what is it?  
 se souvenir<sup>202</sup> (y)  
 That he would abuse<sup>202</sup> his fortune, and perish some day *with* misery,  
 (bb) n.a. abuser périr quelque misère,  
 unless<sup>195</sup> somebody would provide<sup>149</sup> *for* his wants. He will never  
 218 n.a. 95 pourvoir besoin.  
 give up<sup>202</sup> gaming and drinking. He is surrounded *with* flatterers  
 renoncer jeu boisson entouré flatteur

\* See note \*, page 158.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

who do nothing but sport *with* his credulity. He had promised  
faire \* se jouer crédulité 140 promettre  
 his father that he would (give up) the company which displeases him,  
renoncer déplaire lui, †  
 but there is no trusting his promises. He never keeps them. He  
se fier ; 202 tenir  
 knows he is despised by every body, but he does not care *for* that.  
221 mépriser 167 106 se soucier (bb)  
 He does not care *for* any body. Tell him <sup>162</sup> that if he does not  
97 (i) p. 63.  
 alter <sup>202</sup> his conduct soon, <sup>183</sup> he will be punished *for* his obstinacy.  
changer — conduite bientôt, n.s. opiniâtreté.  
 What a difference between him and your brother. This <sup>88</sup> is a young  
20 entre 58 n.s.  
 man who pleases every body. Every body wishes him <sup>162</sup> well, and  
202 106 (i) p. 63. du bien,  
 rejoices *at* his prosperity. All who know him, wish *for* his com-  
se soucier Tous ceux  
 pany. I met *with* him the other day at a friend's of mine, and I was  
87 137  
 delighted *with* his conversation. I was struck *with* astonishment *at*  
charmer frapper  
 seeing so young a man enjoying <sup>154</sup> his reputation with (so much)  
134 38 jouir 202 tant  
 modesty; sensible *of* praises, without seeming <sup>154</sup> to wish *for* them,  
louange, paraître 172 désirer  
 and satisfied *with* the pleasure of having done his duty. His  
satisfaire 154 devoir.  
 friends were transported *with* joy *at* seeing him covered *with* glory,  
transporté 158 154 couvrir  
 and animated *with* the desire of pleasing <sup>154</sup> them. He is a young  
animer 202 leur, † 63  
 man for whom I feel a particular esteem. (Young as) he is, I would  
particulier 32 Tout jeune que  
 trust <sup>202</sup> him sooner than any body that I know. I would answer *for*  
se fier (o) tout autre répondre  
 him as *for* myself. I am much obliged to you *for* the good opinion  
comme (m) n.s. bien (o) (s)  
 you have of him, and I thank you (*for* it.) Look *at* those flowers.  
remercier † 54 en fleur.  
 How beautiful they are! Do not touch <sup>202</sup> them. <sup>63</sup> They are not  
185 belle 62 toucher y. † 62  
 mine. If you wish *for* one, ask that gentleman *for* it. No, indeed;  
86 monsieur † , vraiment ;  
 I will not ask him *for* any. I would rather look *for* one myself.  
(i) p. 63. (p) aimer mieux en 70 chercher (m) n.s.  
 I do not like to ask *for* flowers from a stranger. If he offered you  
169 à étranger. †  
 one, would you not accept *of* it? Perhaps I might. <sup>70</sup> I do not  
en 70 n.s.  
 care *for* flowers. I do not know what I was thinking *of*, when I  
se soucier 83 155

\* Express *Nothing but* by *Ne* before the verb, and *Que* after.

† The *preposition* is implied in this pronoun.

‡ Turn, *One can not trust, &c.*

† See note † page 287

‡ See note \* page 286.

mentioned flowers. I beg *of* you, Madam, that you will accept *of*  
 parler de 126 <sup>prier</sup> , , ,  
 this. 98 Sir, you are very kind. I am much obliged to you (*for* it.)  
 n.s. , avoir bien de la bonté. bien 158 (o) † 55 en  
 This gentleman has asked your sister a question, and she has not  
 † faire 102 163  
 answered him. Sister, why do not you answer that gentleman? I  
 répondre 202 lui † 18 , , 202 †  
 beg the gentleman's pardon. I did not know that you were talking  
 demander 25 † 155  
*about* me. I was thinking of something that (just occurred to my mind.)  
 155 98 vient de me venir à — l'esprit.  
 What does he want of me? I do not know; ask him. He seems  
 83 vouloir— 54 ; I (i) p. 63.  
 (very much) taken up *with* you. I think he is (in love) *with* you.  
 très occupé — 231 amoureux  
 What! in love *with* me? You surely! 184 do not mind what you  
 83 certainement penser à 84  
 say. I only said so in joke. He wants to know if you can spare 223  
 184 126 cela pour rire. 200 se passer  
 the book which you have promised him. 162 I can not spare it now.  
 (i) p. 63. 202 en †  
 I am using 155 it myself. When I have done (*with* it,) (he shall  
 se servir 202 en 50 † (m) n.s. 142 † 55 en, 11  
 be very welcome to it.) What does he want to do *with* that book?  
 l'aura, s'il le veut. † 83 260  
 It is not good *for* any thing. It is not fit *for* the use to which it is  
 02 99 propre usage 76 98  
 intended. I did not think *of* that, (or else) I would not have asked  
 , autrement  
 you *for* it. Since you have (such a desire) (*for* it,) you may have it,  
 Puisque si grande envie † 54 en, 178  
 if you will accept *of* it. No, I thank you. I do not want 250 it  
 144 , avoir besoin en 54  
 now. It 92 was not for me; it 62 was for my sister who wanted 140 to  
 n.s. 140 ; n.s. avoir envie 108  
 see it, and I (was afraid) of displeasing her, if I did not ask you *for* it.  
 , craint , 154 202 lui, †  
 I was afraid she would think 149 that I had not thought *of* her, or that  
 221 146 140  
 I was angry *with* her. I do not think she cares much (*for* it.)  
 140 fâché 221 se soucier † en  
 When do you (set out) upon your journey? I do not know yet. I  
 partir pour voyage † encore.  
 intend to set out in about a month or six weeks. What country  
 avoir dessein environ mois semaine. 82 220  
 do you go to? I (am ignorant) *of* it yet. They 90 want to persuade  
 ignorer n.s. 260 persuadeur 202

\* That you will accept; turn, to accept.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

‡ See note \* page 230.

§ Turn; I beg pardon to monsieur.

|| Add here the pronoun *Le* in french.

¶ We say in french *Être bien venu*, to be welcome, i. e. well received, but we do not say, *Être bien venu à une chose*, to be welcome to a thing.

\*\* See note \* page 264.

my father to send me to Russia, but I will not go, if I can help it.  
 envoyer Russie, éviter  
 I would rather remain here, than live in a country, and amongst a  
 aimer mieux rester (2) demeurer 239 parmi  
 people whose manners do not suit mine. I should like to go  
 235 manière convenir 85 169  
 first to France, to see my brother who is in Paris; then to go to  
 premièrement 173 ; puis  
 Switzerland, from Switzerland to Italy and Greece, from Greece to  
 Suisse, Italie Grèce,  
 pass into Spain and Portugal, and then to return to England. You  
 passer Espagne, alors 245  
 could not do that in less than two years. I think I could do it in  
 pouvoir (22) moins 48 231  
 (twelve months.) I do not think you could. 145 Do not you think  
 un an 231 70 136  
 that I can 145 go to Paris in four days? I think you may. 178 I  
 n.p. 231 le 70 pouvoir.  
 shall be there before you, for I shall set out either on Monday or  
 y 54 ; † Lundi  
 Tuesday. Will you set out in the morning or in the evening? I  
 Mardi. 234 234  
 intend to (set out) about twelve o'clock. I wish I could go with  
 avoir dessein 168 partir vers 235 180 (na)  
 you. I wish you 70 could. I shall drink tea at your sister's this  
 231 148 ;  
 afternoon. Shall you be there? No, I am engaged at Mrs. B.'s.  
 après midi. y 54  
 (There is) a ball at your aunt's on Friday. 183 Will not you go? I  
 246 tante Vendredi, n.p. † 70  
 do not think 231 I shall 70; I have been ill for several days. I did not  
 145 n.p. ; malade 126  
 rest for three days and three nights. Come and sit by the fire.  
 reposer (na) vous asseoir feu.  
 Do not stand by the door. As it is cold, and you are not well, you  
 se tenir 240 219 241  
 would be in danger of (catching cold.) I called at your house on  
 vous enrhumer. 266  
 Wednesday in the morning, but (there was) nobody in. I was not  
 Mercredi 246 97 — 140  
 (far off.) I was at my uncle's. I had been by myself all the morning.  
 loin oncle. 140 234  
 I went into the fields to take a walk 263 before dinner, and in coming  
 173 n.p. dîner, en revenir  
 home, I called at my uncle's. He had some company at dinner, and  
 au logis, 266  
 he prevailed upon me to stay with him. After dinner we played  
 engager — rester jouer à  
 different games. Some played at cards, some at chess, some at  
 jeux. 94 I carte, échecs, 94

\* See note † page 341.

† See note \* page 318.

‡ See note † page 266.

† See note \* page 206.

! The verb *Play*, speaking of games, requires *à* before the noun which follows it; speaking of instruments, it requires *de*



straight, and some at (backgammen.) After tea we made a little  
 dames, trictrac thé petit  
 concert. I played on the flute, my (brother-in-law) played on the  
 jouer de<sup>†</sup> , beau-frère  
 violin, my sister played on the harpsicord, and my cousin on the harp;  
 violon, clavecin, cousine harpe;  
 and some ladies and gentlemen entertained us with several good  
 régaler de  
 songs. We parted at (twelve o'clock,) (very well) pleased with the  
 chanson se séparer 236 très content  
 manner (in which) we had spent the evening. We shall meet  
 manières doit 140 271 234 s'assembler  
 again on Saturday evening, 234 at our house, and have another  
 encore Samedi au soir , 53  
 concert.

## CHAPTER IX.

## CONJUNCTION.

Conjunctions are certain words, and sometimes short phrases that serve to express the relation which several sentences have together; as,

Will you come, if I go? I will not go, *unless* you come.

The words *if*, *unless*, which denote a relation between the verbs *come* and *go*, are called *conjunctions*.

*The Conjunctions are in French,*

<i>Afin que,</i>	{	That, To the	<i>Et,</i>	And, Both.
<i>Pour que,</i>		end that.	<i>Mais,</i>	But.
<i>A Moins que,</i>	{	Unless.	<i>Ni,</i>	Neither, Nor.
<i>Avant que,</i>		Before.	<i>Où,</i>	Either, Or.
<i>Aussi,</i>	{	So, Therefore.	<i>Parce que,</i>	Because.
<i>Bien que,</i>		Though,	<i>Pourtant,</i>	Yet, However.
<i>Quoique,</i>	{	Although.	<i>Pourvu que,</i>	Provided.
<i>Car,</i>		For, Because.	<i>Puisque,</i>	Since.
En Cas que,	{	If, In case that.	<i>Que,</i>	That.
<i>Cependant,</i>		Yet, However.	<i>Quand,</i>	{
<i>Comme,</i>	As, Since.	<i>Lorsque,</i>		
De Crainte que,	{	Lest, For fear	<i>Quand,</i>	Though, If even.
De Peur que,		that.	<i>Sans que,</i>	Without.
<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	{	Till, Until.	<i>Si,</i>	If, Whether.
<i>Néanmoins,</i>		Nevertheless.	<i>Soit que,</i>	Whether.†

\* See note † page 326.

† See note † page 183.

‡ Several grammarians reckon above one hundred conjunctions, which they call

<i>Declarative, viz.</i>	<i>Suspensive, viz.</i>	<i>Disjunctive, viz.</i>	<i>Copulative, viz.</i>
Savoir.	Si.	Où.	Et.
Comme.	Savoir si.	Où bien.	Aussi.
C'est à dire.	C'est à savoir si.	Soit.	Ni.
Par exemple.	Quoi qu'il en soit.	Soit que.	Non plus.

The *conjunctions* in french affect the verbs which follow them, so as to require some particular *mood*.

217. The following *conjunctions* require the *indicative* mood after them ;

<i>Aussi,</i>	So, Therefore.	<i>Ou,</i>	Either, Or.
<i>Car,</i>	For, Because.	<i>Parce que,</i>	Because.
<i>Cependant,</i>	} Yet, However.	<i>Puisque,</i>	Since.
<i>Pourtant,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	} When.
<i>Comme,</i>	As, Since.	<i>Lorsque,</i>	
<i>Mais,</i>	But.	<i>Quand,</i>	Tho', If even.
<i>Néanmoins,</i>	Nevertheless.	<i>Que,</i>	That.
<i>Ni,</i>	Neither, Nor.	<i>Si,</i>	If, Whether.

218. The following *conjunctions* require the *subjunctive* mood after them ;

<i>Afin que,</i>	} That.	<i>De Crainte que,*</i>	} Lest, For
<i>Pour que,</i>		<i>De Peur que,*</i>	
<i>A moins que,*</i>	Unless.	<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	Till, Until.
<i>Avant que,</i>	Before.	<i>Pourvu que,</i>	Provided.
<i>Bien que,</i>	} Though, Although.	<i>Que,†</i>	That.
<i>Quoique,</i>		<i>Sans que,</i>	Without.
<i>En Cas que,</i>	If, In case that.	<i>Soit que,</i>	Whether.

<i>Augmentative, vis.</i>	<i>Diminutive, vis.</i>	<i>Transitive, vis.</i>	<i>Concessive, vis.</i>
D'Ailleurs.	Encore.	En effet.	Quoi que.
Outre.	Au Moins.	Au reste.	A la vérité.
De plus.	Du Moins.	A propos.	Quand, quand même.
Au surplus.	Pour le Moins.	Après tout.	Non que, Non pas que.
<i>Restrictive, vis.</i>	<i>Adversative, vis.</i>	<i>Conclusive, vis.</i>	
Sinon.	Mais.	Or, donc.	
Si ce n'est que.	Cependant.	Ainsi.	
Quoique.	Néanmoins.	Par Conséquent.	
Four, viz. quoique.	Pourtant.	C'est pour quoi.	
Encore que.	Toute fois.	Tellement que.	
A moins que.	Bien que.	De sorte que.	De manière que.
<i>Causative, vis.</i>	<i>Comparative, vis.</i>	<i>Conditional, vis.</i>	<i>Time and Order, vis.</i>
Car.	Comme.	Si.	Quand, lorsque.
Comme.	Ainsi.	Sinon.	Pendant que.
Parce que.	De même.	Quand, quand même.	Tandis que.
A cause que.	Ainsi que.	Quand bien même.	Tant que.
Vu que.	Aussi bien que.	A moins que.	Avant que.
Attendu que.	Aussi peu que.	Pourvu que.	Depuis que.
Puis que.	Autant que.	Suppose que.	Des que.
Pour quoi.	Non plus que.	Au cas que.	Aussi tôt que.
Afin que.	Ni plus ni moins que.	En cas que.	Après que.
De peur que.	Si que.	A condition que.	Cependant.
De crainte que.	En, viz. comme.	Bien entendu que.	A peine, enfin.

Which, except those mentioned in the table above, are either *nouns* or *adverbs*, with puzzling and useless denominations, since their properties are the same in both languages.

Some grammarians, add to these *Afin de* ; *à moins que de* ; *avant de* ; *avant que de* ; *au lieu de* ; *de crainte de* ; *de peur de* ; *faute de* ; *loin de* ; *plutôt que de* ; *jusqu'à* ; but the only connective part of these words being *de* or *à*, which are *prepositions*, they can hardly be said to belong to the conjunctions.

\* The conjunction *à moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them ; see 195 rule.

† Learners are often mistaken, by considering *que* as requiring always the subjunctive mood after it ; but *que* does not govern any particular mood ; its power depends on the verb or conjunction that precedes it.

219. When a *conjunction* governs *several verbs*, it is expressed before the first verb only, and *que* is added to the other verbs, with the *same mood* after it, as if the conjunction itself was repeated; ex.

As he is diligent, and takes pains.

*Comme il est diligent, et qu'il prend de la peine.*

He learns well, *because* he is diligent, and takes pains.

Il apprend bien, *parce qu'il est diligent, et qu'il prend de la peine.*

Unless he is diligent, and takes pains.

*A moins qu'il ne soit diligent, et qu'il ne prenne de la peine.*

## EXERCISE.

Since you are busy, and you can not come with me, I will go.

Puisque occupé, , vais m'en aller.†

I will never forgive you, unless<sup>195</sup> you come back (this way) and dine

pardonner n.s. revenir par ici

with me. Bring my horse, that I may go now, and be back

220 , afin que 178 partir , de retour

in time<sup>158</sup>. Let us go now, for fear it should rain<sup>148</sup>, and we should

à temps. — — partir, 218 pleuvoir,

be wet<sup>158</sup>. Though it is hot, and the sky is cloudy, I do not think it

mouillé. 240 chaud, ciel nuageux, 221

will rain. Unless<sup>195</sup> we go now, and (make haste,) we shall be wet.

145 n.s. partir , se dépêcher,

220. When *Si, if*, governs *two verbs*, instead of repeating *si* before the *second* verb, we use *que*; and the verb which follows this *que*, must be in the *subjunctive*, though the verb which follows *si* is in the *indicative*;

You will learn, *if* you are diligent, and take pains.

Vous apprendrez, si vous êtes diligent, et que vous preniez de la peine.

*If* you come, and I am not at home, you will wait for me.

Si vous venez, et que je ne sois pas au logis, vous m'attendrez. (oo)

## EXERCISE.

If you walk so fast, and will not wait for us, we will go back.

marcher vite, 173 201, , s'en retourner.

If you go back, and find nobody at home what will you do? If the

97 au logis,

doors are locked,<sup>158</sup> and I can not (get in), I will go to the play.

fermé à clef, entrer ,

You might follow us, if you would walk a little faster, and you did

178 , 144 peu ,

not look so often behind you.

derrière.

221. The idiom of the english language often admits an *ellipsis*, i. e. an omission of the conjunction *that*; as,

I think my sister will come; for, I think *that* my sister will come.

\* See note \* page 238.

† See N. B. page 102.

(oo) The conjunction *if* is often suppressed, and the nominative transposed after the verb; as,

If you should come, or should you come, or were you to come, and I was not at home, you will wait for me, which turn of expression must be rendered in french by *si* before the verb; thus, si vous venez, et que je ne sois pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.

But the corresponding conjunction must always be expressed in french ; as,

I think my sister will come.

I know she intends to come.

I hope she will soon be here.

Je pense *que* ma sœur viendra.

Je sais *qu'*elle a dessein de venir

J'espère *qu'*elle sera bientôt ici.

#### EXERCISE.

Do you think we shall arrive in time to-day? I (am afraid) it  
 145 à aujourd'hui? craindre 146  
 will be rather late.  
 196 un peu tard.

#### REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

##### BOTH; ET, TANT.

222. *Both*, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *et* before an adjective, by *et* or *tant* before a substantive ; but observe, that when we use *tant* before the first substantive, we put *que* instead of *et* before the second ;

She is *both* rich and handsome.

Elle est *et* riche *et* belle.

*Both* summer and winter.

*Tant* en été *qu'*en hiver.

N. B. This conjunction in *familiar* writing and in *conversation* is generally *left out* in french ; thus,

Elle est riche et belle.

En été et en hiver.

#### EXERCISE.

Our general is both prudent and courageous. Both in the cabinet  
 and in the field. We shall beat our enemies both by sea and land.  
 armée. battre ennemi par 204

##### EITHER, OR; OU, SOIT.

223. *Either, or*, are generally expressed by *ou* ; as,

*That* is either good or bad.

Cela est *ou* bon *ou* mauvais.

*Either* he is rich, or he is poor.

*Ou* il est riche, *ou* il est pauvre.

N. B. *Either, or*, followed by a *noun*, may be expressed by *soit* ; as,

*Either* through love or caprice, she has married him.

*Soit* par amour *ou* par caprice, or *soit* par caprice, elle l'a épousé.

#### EXERCISE.

Either that is true or it is not. I will see you either in going or in  
 89 70 en  
 (coming back.) Either through fear or respect, he remained silent.  
 revenir par 204 garder silence.

##### NEITHER, NOR; NE NI, NI NE.

224. *Neither, nor*, followed by a verb in the indicative or subjunctive mood, are expressed, *neither* by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni* ; as,

I *neither* love nor hate her.

Je *ne* l'aime *ni* *ne* la hais.

I *neither* see her nor speak to her. Je *ne* la vois *ni* *ne* lui parle.

If, after *neither*, *nor*, there is a verb in the infinitive, an adjective, a noun, or a pronoun, *neither* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *ni* after it, and *nor* is expressed by *ni*; as,

I care *neither* for him *nor* for her. Je *ne* me soucie *ni* de lui *ni* d'elle.  
 She is *neither* rich *nor* handsome. Elle n'est *ni* riche *ni* belle.  
 She has *neither* beauty *nor* riches. Elle n'a *ni* beauté *ni* richesses.  
 I can *neither* see her, *nor* speak to her. Je *ne* puis *ni* la voir, *ni* lui parler.

## EXERCISE.

I neither know that man, nor want<sup>260</sup> to<sup>168</sup> know him. I neither love nor esteem him. I neither care for him, nor for all that he can say or do. He can neither read nor write. He is neither rich nor poor. He is useful neither to himself nor to others.

avoir envie      utile      (m) n.b.      aux autres.

## WHETHER; SI, QUE, SOIT QUE.

225. *Whether*, used in the sense of *if*, is expressed by *Si*, with the following verb in the *indicative*; as,

Do you know *whether* she will come? Savez-vous *si* elle *viendra*?  
 I want to know *whether* she will come. J'ai envie de savoir *si* elle *viendra*.

*Whether*, used in the sense of *let*, is expressed by *que*, or *soit que*, with the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

Come yourself, *whether* she comes or not; or let her come or not.  
 Venez vous-même, *qu'*elle vienne ou non; or *qu'*elle vienne ou *qu'*elle ne vienne pas.  
*Whether* she comes or not; or let her come or not, we will go.  
*Soit* qu'elle vienne ou non; or *qu'*elle vienne ou *qu'*elle ne vienne pas, nous y irons.

## EXERCISE.

Do you know whether we shall have peace or war? I want to know whether that news is true or not. I must go and inquire whether there has been any news to-day. Whether, or, let that news be true or not, I do not care. Whether we have peace or war, I will go to France. I will go, whether you come with me or not.

nouvelle      vrai      non.      181      (m) s'informer  
 246      ou      non,      s'en soucier.      non.

## THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN; QUAND.

226. *Though*, *although*, *if even*, followed by a conditional tense, are generally expressed by *quand*; as,

*Though* she should come,  
 or *Even if* she should come,  
 She would not go with us.      } *Quand* elle viendrait, elle n'irait pas avec nous. (pp)

(pp) These conjunctions are often left out in English, and the nominative is put after the verb, which mode of expression is also rendered in French by *QUAND*; as,

Were she to come, or, should she come now, she would not go with us;  
*Quand elle viendrait à présent, elle n'irait pas avec nous.*

## EXERCISE.

Though that news were true, I would go. We would go, though  
 serait 70 70  
 we were sure that we should never return. If even I had said  
 sérieux 20 (me) n.s. 266 aurais 26  
 so, you ought not to have (taken advantage of it.)  
 cela, 177 vous en prévaloir.

## BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, &amp;c. SANS.

227. *But for, if it were not for, if it had not been for, Had it not been for*, are generally expressed by *sans*; as,

*But for* you, I should have starved. *Sans* vous, je serais mort de faim.  
*But for* his friends,  
 or *If it were not for* his friends,  
 or *Had it not been for* his friends,  
 he would have been punished. } *Sans* ses amis, il aurait été puni.

## EXERCISE.

But for your father, or if it had not been for your father, I should  
 have lost my (law suit.) Had it not been for him, I should have been  
 perdu préde  
 ruined. If it had not been for this gentleman, we should have been  
 ruiné. monsieur,  
 all lost 158.  
 perdre.

## Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

As it is late, and you are not ready, I will go. Since they are  
 tard, prêt, vaist m'en aller. Puisque  
 all gone, and you will not stop any longer, I will go too. Stay  
 partir 136, rester plus long temps, † aussi. Attendez  
 till 118 I am ready, that we may go together. You know we have a  
 que, sans que 176 ensemble.  
 long way to go before we can stop. I do not think I can go with you  
 chemin à faire, nous arrêter. 144  
 now; it is too late. I shall not go, unless 195 you come with me. I have  
 ; tard. †, n.s.  
 neither horse nor money to go. I can not go before my father has  
 170 † 266  
 returned. If you have a mind to go, and you want 260 a horse, I  
 265 24 envie 166 †, avoir besoin de  
 will lend you mine. If you want money, and your father is not at  
 260  
 home, I will let you have whatever money (s) you want. You will  
 , donner, — tout l' dont 260  
 be too late, unless 195 you go immediately, and make all the haste(s)  
 arriver n.s. partir tout à l'heure, diligence  
 you can. If your cousin is there, and you have an opportunity to  
 143 cousin y 54, 24 occasion  
 speak to her, remember me to her. Is she not very handsome? Yes;  
 (s) , rappeler 56 à son souvenir. belle † ;

\* See note \* page 192.

† Note \* page 232.

‡ Note † page 266.

she is both rich and handsome; but I neither value beauty <sup>estimer</sup> nor riches  
 I only value the qualities of the heart. Though she is amiable, and <sup>aimable,</sup>  
 184 has a handsome fortune, I do not hear that any body proposes to  
 beau bien, apprendre personne se proposer  
 marry her. There is no time lost yet. 183 Shall you (come back) this  
 261 246 N.B. encore. N.B. revenir par  
 way, if it is fine, and it is not too late? I will call, if nothing dé-  
 240 beau temps, 266, 90  
 tains me, and you will promise to come and sup with me. But if it  
 retenir — souper  
 was too late, and I could 149 not come, what must I do? Will you go,  
 pouvoir, 83 181  
 whether I call or not? I do not know yet. Either you intend 168 to  
 passer encore. avoir dessein  
 go, or you do not. If you will (walk in) till the rain is over, and  
 † 144 entrer pluie passée,  
 the weather is clear. I will tell you whether I can go or not.  
 temps éclairci non.  
 I will wait as long as you please 142, provided you come and bring  
 43 long temps vouloir, pourvu que 256  
 your sister with you. If you go now, and ride gently, I think we  
 partir aller doucement,  
 shall (be able) to overtake you. Do not set out before I call, or you  
 pouvoir atteindre partir 266,  
 hear 275 from me, for I shall not go unless 195 the weather is fine,  
 apprendra de mes nouvelles, † N.B. 240  
 and my cousin comes with us. Do not you know whether he intends  
 avoir dessein.  
 168 to go or not? No, I do 70 not, but I will send to inquire. If it had  
 N.B. † m'en informer.  
 not been for him, we should have been back before now. What is it  
 de retour ce temps. (y)  
 to us whether he comes or not? Though he should not come with us,  
 226  
 that would not prevent us going 154. But if he should 144 call, and you  
 (bb) empêcher \* N.B. 266,  
 were not at home, what must I say to him? Tell him that if he does  
 au logis, 83 181 (c) (t) p. 63.  
 not keep his word better 183, and he disappoints people so, 183 nobody  
 tenir parole N.B., tromper 229 ainsi, N.B. 97  
 will trust 202 him. Do you know whether Mr. A. will be at 208 your  
 se fier N.B.  
 house? I dare say he will 70. He is a strange man. Whether he  
 † 221 y sera. N.B. 63 drôle de  
 wins or loses, he is always the same. I wanted to speak to him the  
 gagner perdre, 260 (e)

\* See note ¶ page 286.

† Turn; Either you have intention to go there, or have not it.

‡ Note \* page 318.

§ Note \* page 228.

¶ Dare say. Dare in this sense cannot be rendered by Oser, which expresses bold  
 ness, audacity; I dare say must be expressed by Je pense, Je m'imagine, Je puis dire,  
 Sans doute, je ne doute pas or some similar expression.

other night, but he (went away) without my seeing<sup>156</sup> him. If it  
<sup>235</sup> , s'en aller sans que <sup>218</sup> \*  
 had not been for him, I should have won the game. Speak low for  
 fear somebody should hear<sup>148</sup> us, and they might report it to him.  
<sup>195</sup> on entendre , <sup>90</sup> — <sup>195</sup> rapporter (o)  
 Unless<sup>195</sup> you are very attentive, and take your measures well<sup>183</sup>, you  
 will never succeed. You should watch both<sup>222</sup> your cards and<sup>204</sup> those  
 réussir <sup>176</sup> veiller sur N.B. carte sur (b)  
 of other people. Neither grandeur nor riches can make men happy.  
 des autres — <sup>30</sup> richesses <sup>249</sup> heureux  
 I would not have that place, though it were offered to me.  
<sup>174</sup> — , <sup>230</sup> <sup>92</sup> (o)

## CHAPTER X.

## INTERJECTION.

Interjections are *natural sounds* caused by some sudden emotion of joy, grief, pain, aversion, disgust, fright, surpris, astonishment, &c.

The sounds most commonly used in french as *interjections* are;†

*For Joy.*

O!	O!	O! si je pouvais le voir.
Ah!	Ah!	Ah! que je serais aise!
Ha ha!	}	Sounds caused by bursts of laughter.
Hi hi!		
Ho ho!		

*For pain and grief;*

O!	O!	O! que je suis à plaindre!
Ah!	Ah!	Ah! que je suis malheureux!
Hé!	Ho!	Hé! vous me faites mal.
Aie!	Ay!	Aie! vous me blessez.
Ouf!	Oh!	Ouf! que je souffre!
Hélas!	Alas!	Hélas! j'ai tout perdu.
Mon Dieu!	O dear!	Mon Dieu! que ferai-je?

\* Turn, Without that I should see him.

† The number of interjections cannot be ascertained, because any sound which expresses a sudden emotion of the soul may be called an interjection. Some of these sounds called interjections express even different sensations, according to the inflexion which the voice takes, either of joy or grief, of pleasure or pain. The soul is then the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the learner since they do not require any rules.



<i>For aversion disgust ;</i>		
<i>Fie !</i>	<i>Fie upon !</i>	<i>Fi ! n'avez-vous pas de honte ?</i>
<i>For fright, surprise, astonishment ;</i>		
<i>Ha !</i>	<i>Ay !</i>	<i>Ha ! vous voilà.</i>
<i>Eh !</i>	<i>Hah !</i>	<i>Eh ! que vous êtes alerte !</i>
<i>Oh oh !</i>	<i>Oh !</i>	<i>Oh oh ! je vous y prends.</i>
<i>O ciel !</i>	<i>Heavens !</i>	<i>O ciel ! qu'allons-nous devenir ?</i>
<i>Bon dieu !</i>	<i>Mercy on us ! Bon dieu ! que vous êtes impatient !</i>	
<i>For calling ;</i>		
<i>Ho !</i>	}	<i>Sounds used when we call out to people.</i>
<i>Hola !</i>		
<i>Hem !</i>		
<i>For silence ;</i>		
<i>St !</i>	}	<i>Sounds used when we call for a sudden silence.</i>
<i>Chut !</i>		
<i>Paiz !</i>		

## CHAPTER XI.

### IDIOMS.

*Remarks on some idiomatical expressions, and words having different meanings, in which learners are apt to be mistaken.*

#### PEOPLE ; PEUPLE, GENS, PERSONNES, MONDE.

228. *People*, meaning that aggregate body of human beings that compose a nation, a government, is expressed by *peuple* ; as,

The french people.	<i>Le peuple français.</i>
The will of the people.	<i>La volonté du peuple.</i>

N. B. *Peuple* is also said of that number of persons without dignity, who compose the multitude ; as,

An insurrection of the *peuple*. *Un soulèvement du peuple.*

229. *People*, used to denote a certain number of individuals, is expressed by *gens*, *personne*, *monde* ; as,

Were there many *people*, i. e. *persons*, at the play ?  
*Y avait-il beaucoup de gens, beaucoup de monde à la comédie ?*  
 There is a great number of *people* in the street.  
*Il y a un grand nombre de monde, de gens, de personnes, dans la rue.*

But observe that *gens*, is not used after a definite number so we do not say,  
*Deux ou trois gens ; two or three people ; we say, Deux ou trois personnes*

Except when *gens* is attended by an *adjective* ; as,

Deux ou trois honnêtes gens. Two or three *honest people*.  
Cinq ou six jeunes gens. Five or six *young people*.

Observe also that when *gens* is attended by an *adjective*, this *adjective* must be *feminine* if it comes *before gens*, and it must be *masculine* if it comes *after* ; as,

Good people, civil people. De bonnes gens, des gens civils.  
Old people are suspicious. Les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux.

#### COUNTRY; PAYS, CAMPAGNE.

230. Pays is said of a *large extent* of country, such as the *dominions* of a government, a *country*, a *province* ; *campagne* is said of a certain extent of *fields*, and is the opposite of *ville*, *town* ; as,

France is a fine country. La France est un beau pays.  
I prefer the country to the town. Je préfère la campagne à la ville.

#### MOUTH; BOUCHE, GUEULE.

231. Speaking of *men*, *horses*, *mules*, *asses*, we express *mouth* by *bouche* ;

The *mouth* of a horse, of an ass. La bouche d'un cheval, d'un âne.

Speaking of other *animals*, we express *mouth* by *gueule* ;

The *mouth* of an ox, of a dog, &c. La gueule d'un bœuf, d'un chien.  
The *mouth* of a pike, of a trout. La gueule d'un brochet, d'une truite.

#### TIME; TEMPS, FOIS.

232. The word *time*, denoting any *period*, or *space*, is expressed by *temps* ;

It is time to set out. Il est temps de partir.  
We shall not be there in time. Nous n'y serons pas à temps.

But the word *time* is sometimes used to *limit* the action of the verb, or to denote a *repetition* of the action ; as, the *first time* ; *this time* ; *another time* ; *several times*, and is then expressed by *fois* ; as,

Pardon me for *this time*. Pardonnez-moi pour cette fois.  
I will do it better *next time*. Je le ferai mieux la prochaine fois.  
How many *times* have you done it? Combien de fois l'avez-vous fait?

#### YEAR; AN, ANNEE. DAY; JOUR, JOURNEE.

233. *An* and *jour* are *indefinite* expressions which serve more to denote the *periods* of time than its duration ; they are chiefly used after the cardinal or primitive numbers *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *quatre*, &c. ; as,

Un an, deux ans, trois ans, &c. A year, two years, three years, &c.  
Un jour, deux jours, trois jours. One day, two days, three days, &c.

*Année*, on the contrary, implies *duration*, and will admit of different modifications ; so when *year* is attended by an *article*.

- or by an *adjective*, or by another *noun*, you must express it by *année* ; as,

This *year*, last *year*.

A good, a happy *year*.

A great number of *years*.

Cette *année*, l'*année* dernière.

Une bonne, une heureuse *année*.

Un grand nombre d'*années*.

*Journée* is generally understood of the time which people employ in their occupations from their *rising* to their *going to bed* ; as,

I spent the *day* very well.

I have studied the whole *day*.

J'ai bien employé la *journée*.

J'ai étudié toute la *journée*.

**MORNING ; MATIN, MATINEE.**

**EVENING ; SOIR, SOIREE.**

234. It is the same with *matin*, *matinée* ; *soir*, *soirée*, as it is with *jour*, *journée*. *Matin* is said of the *first*, and *soir* of the *last part* of the day, but they do not imply any idea of duration. *Matinée*, on the contrary, implies the *whole time* from *day light* till *noon* ; but is generally understood to be from the time that people get up till *twelve o'clock* at noon ; and *soirée* implies the whole time of *darkness* till *twelve o'clock* at night, or till people retire ; as,

It was fine this *morning*.

I have studied all the *morning*.

Shall we see you this *evening* ?

I shall spend the *evening* with you.

Il faisait beau ce *matin*.

J'ai étudié toute la *matinée*.

Vous verrons-nous ce *soir* ?

Je passerai la *soirée* avec vous.

N. B. Saluting people, for *good morning*, we say *bon jour*, not *bon matin* ; and for *good night*, we say *bon soir*, in the *early part* of the night, and *bonne nuit*, when the night is *far advanced*.

**NIGHT ; NUIT, SOIR.**

235. If, by *night*, you mean the *whole time of darkness* on that part of the earth which we inhabit, you express it in french by *nuît* ; as,

Where did he sleep last *night* ?

He spent the whole *night* at the ball.

Où coucha-t-il la *nuît* dernière ?

Il passa toute la *nuît* au bal.

If, by *night*, you mean only the *first part of darkness* which is otherwise called *evening*, you express it by *soir* ; as,

Will you go to the play to-night ? Irez-vous à la comédie ce *soir*.

Were you at the ball last *night* ? Etiez-vous au bal hier au *soir*.

236. **TWELVE O'CLOCK ; MIDI, MINUIT.**

It is *twelve o'clock*.

It is a *quarter past 12*.

It is *half past twelve*.

It is *three quarters past twelve*.

It wants a *quarter* to one.

It is *one o'clock*.

It is a *quarter past one*.

Il est *midi* (in the day.) Il est *minuit* (at night.)

Il est *midi* et un quart. Il est *minuit* et un quart.

Il est *midi* et demi. Il est *minuit* et demi.

} Il est une heure moins un quart.

} Il est une heure.

} Il est une heure et un quart, &c.

## To HAVE, expressed by ETRE.

237. The auxiliary verb *have* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary *être*, to form the compound tenses of *reflective verbs* ; as,

I have hurt myself.	Je me suis blessé.
He has gone away.	Il s'en est allé.
We have sat down.	Nous nous sommes assis.
You have walked.	Vous vous êtes promenés.
They have diverted themselves.	Ils se sont divertis. [see p. 101.]

238. The auxiliary *have* is also expressed by the same tense and person of *être*, when it comes before any of the following participles ;

Agreed, <i>convenu</i> .	Come, <i>venu</i> .	Fallen, <i>tombé</i> .
Arrived, <i>arrivé</i> .	Come in, <i>entré</i> .	Gone, <i>allé</i> .
Become, <i>devenu</i> .	Dead, <i>mort</i> .	Returned, <i>revenu</i> .
Befallen, <i>survenu</i> .	Deceased, <i>décédé</i> .	Set out, <i>parti</i> .
Born, <i>né</i> .	Disagreed, <i>disconvenu</i> .	Succeeded, <i>parvenu</i> .
I have set out early.	Je suis parti de bonne heure.	
He has agreed to do it.	Il est convenu de le faire.*	
We have arrived in time.	Nous sommes arrivés à temps.	
You have returned too soon.	Vous êtes revenus trop tôt.	
They have gone too far.	Ils sont allés trop loin.	

## To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

239. The auxiliary verb *be* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary *avoir*, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirst, cold, warm, hot* denoting the natural feelings ; *right, wrong, ashamed* ; because these *adjectives* are expressed by a *substantive* in french ; as,

I am hungry.	J'ai faim.
He is thirsty.	Il a soif.
His feet are cold.	Il a froid aux pieds.
She is warm or hot.	Elle a chaud ; not, elle est chaude.
Her hands are warm.	Elle a chaud aux mains.
We are right.	Nous avons raison.
They are wrong, ashamed.	Ils ont tort ; ils ont honte.

N. B. The verb *be* is also expressed by *avoir*, in speaking of the *age* of beings, because in these instances, as in the

\* When the participle *convenu* means suited, it requires *avoir* ; as, Cels m'aurait fort bien convenu ; That would have suited me very well.

N. B. The participles *sorti*, gone out ; been out ; *passé*, gone by ; *monté*, gone up, ascended ; *descendu*, come down, require *avoir* or *être*, agreeably to the sense in which they are used ; but the same distinction, I think, is observed in english ;

Mon père a sorti ;	My father has been out.	Il était sorti ;	He was gone out.
Il a passé près d'ici ;	He has passed just by.	Il est passé ;	He is gone by.
Il a monté la coline ;	He has ascended the hill.	Il est monté ;	He is gone up.
Il a descendu l'esca-	He has come down the	Il est descendu ;	He is come down.
lier ;	stairs.		

*Demeuré*, used for lived, dwelt, requires *avoir* ; and for remained, dwelt, it requires *être* ; as,

Il a demeuré à Paris ; He has lived in Paris. Il est demeuré à P. ; He has staid at P.

*Accouru*, run to ; *Péri*, perished ; *apparu*, comparu, appeared ; *Disparu*, disappeared ; *croû*, grown ; *décroû*, grown less ; *recroû*, grown again, take indifferently *avoir* or *être*.

above, the French use a *substantive* instead of an adjective ; as,

How old are you?      Quel âge avez-vous ? i. e. What age have you?  
I am sixteen.      J'ai seize ans; not, Je suis seize.  
How old is your horse? Quel âge a votre cheval?

To BE, expressed by FAIRE.

240. The verb *be*, attended by an *adjective* or a *substantive* denoting the *state* of the *weather*, or of the *atmosphere*, is expressed in french by the same tense of the verb *faire*, with *il* for its *nominative* ; as,

How is the weather?      Quel temps fait-il?  
Is the weather fine?      Fait-il beau temps?  
Yes, the weather is very fine.      Oui, il fait très beau temps.  
It is rather warm.      Il fait un peu chaud.  
It is very cold.      Il fait très froid, or grand froid.  
The weather has been bad lately.      Il a fait mauvais temps depuis peu.

To BE, To DO, expressed by Se PORTER.

241. The verbs *be* and *do*, used to denote the *state* of the *body*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflective verb *Se porter* ; as,

How are you? how do you do?      Comment vous portez-vous ?  
I am pretty well, I thank you.      Je me porte assez bien, dieu merci.\*  
I have not been well.      Je ne me suis pas bien porté.  
How is your mother?      } Comment se porte madamet votre  
How does your mother do?      } mère?

To BE, expressed by DEVOIR.

242. The present tense of the verb *be*, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, and the imperfect *was*, *were*, followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb *devoir* ; as,

I am to go there to-night.      Je dois y aller ce soir.  
He is to come to-morrow.      Il doit venir demain; not, il est &c.  
He was to bring it to-day.      Il devait l'apporter aujourd'hui.

To BE, not expressed in French.

243. The *infinitive* words to *be*, followed by a *past participle*, is not expressed, but the english *participle* takes the place

\* The French do not, as the English do, thank those who inquire after their health. Instead of *Je vous remercie* ; they say, *Dieu merci* ; *A votre service* ; *Vous êtes bien bon*, or *bien civil* ; *Vous avez bien de la bonté*, or they return the compliment after the answer by saying, *Et vous ?* and *you ?*

† It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the people to whom they are speaking, to add the words *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle* ; as, *Comment se porte monsieur votre père*, *monsieur votre frère* ? *J'ai rencontré madame votre mère*, *mademoiselle votre sœur*, these words can not be expressed in english.

of the *infinitive de*, and is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

There is nothing to be seen. Il n'y a rien à voir.  
He caused his head to be cut off. Il lui fit couper la tête.  
This house is to be let, to be sold. Cette maison est à louer, à vendre.

**TO BE JUST, TO HAVE JUST; VENIR DE, NE FAIRE QUE DE.**

244. The verbs *have* and *be* followed by the adverb *Just*, to denote an action past at the moment we are speaking, are expressed by *venir de*, or *ne faire que de*, in the same tense and person as *have* or *be* are, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; thus,

I am just come. { Je viens d'arriver; or,  
                                  { Je ne fais que d'arriver.  
My brother had just done. { Mon frère venait de finir; or,  
                                  { Mon frère ne faisait que de finir.\*

**WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE; PENSER.**

245. *Was near*, *were near* followed by a present *participle*, and *had like* followed by an *infinitive*, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the *perfect tense*, or the *present compound*† of the verb *penser*; as,

I was near dying; { J'ai pensé, or je pensait mourir.  
or I had like to have died, {  
You were near falling; { Vous avez pensé tomber.  
or You had like to have fallen. {  
He was near being killed; { Il a pensé, or il pensait être tué.  
or He had like to have been killed. {

**THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, AGO, IT IS SINCE, THIS, THESE; IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.**

246. *There is*, *there are*, *it is far*, *it is long*, *it is since*, *ago*, and the demonstrative words *this*, *these*, pointing out a period of time, are expressed by the impersonal verb *il y a*; *il y avait*, &c.;‡ as,

Is there any news to-day? Y a-t-il des nouvelles aujourd'hui?  
Are there flowers in his garden? Y a-t-il des fleurs dans son jardin?  
How far is it from Calais to Paris? } Combien y a-t-il de Calais à  
or How far is Calais from Paris? } Paris?  
It is a hundred and fifty miles. Il y a cent cinquante milles.  
Calais is 150 miles from Paris. Il y a cent cinquante milles de C. à P.  
How long has he lived here? Combien y a-t-il qu'il demeure ici?  
He has been here these six months. Il y a six mois qu'il est ici.

\* Do not confound *ne faire que de*, *To be just*, *To have just*, with *ne faire que*, which expressed another idea, viz. To do nothing but; *de* added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.

† Agreeably to 136, 137 rules.

‡ See the conjugation of the impersonal verb *y avoir*, page 161.

*It is 10 years since he was in France.* } *Il y a dix ans qu'il était en*  
*or He was in France 10 years ago.* } *France; or, il était en France.*  
   *il y a dix ans.*  
*It is long since I have seen him.* } *Il y a long temps que je ne\**  
*or I have not seen him this long while.* } *l'ai vu.*  
*It was 12 months since I saw him.* } *Il y avait un an que je ne*  
*or I had not seen him these 12 months.* } *l'avais vu. †*

**HERE IS, HERE ARE: THIS IS, THESE ARE; VOICI.**  
**THERE IS, THERE ARE; THAT IS, THOSE ARE; VOILÀ.**

247. *Here is, here are, this is, these are*, pointing out any object, are expressed by *voici*; *there is, there are, that is, those are*, also pointing out an object, are expressed by *voilà*; as,

*Here is, or this is your horse.* *Voici votre cheval.*

*Here are, or these are your boots.* *Voici vos bottes.*

*There is, that is a man who says.* *Voilà un homme qui dit.*

N. B. It is to be observed that, when the *nominative* of the verb which attends *here, there*, in the above sense, i. e. pointing out an object, is a *personal pronoun*, this *nominative* pronoun is changed into an *objective pronoun* in french, and placed *before voici, voilà*; thus,

*Here I am.* *Me voici.*

*Here we are.* *Nous voici.*

*Here he is.* *Le voici.*

*There he is.* *La voilà.*

*Here they are.* *Les voici.*

*There they are.* *Les voilà.*

**LET; QUE, LAISSEZ.**

248. *Let*, implying command or permission to a *third person*, is expressed by *que*, and the *object* of *let* is made the *nominative* of the following verb, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french; as,

*Let him do it himself.*

*Qu'il le fasse lui même.*

*Let her go, if she likes.*

*Qu'elle y aille, si elle veut.*

*Let them go too.*

*Qu'ils, or qu'elles y aillent aussi.*

*Let my brother go alone.*

*Que mon frère y aille seul.*

*Let*, commanding or entreating a *second person*, is expressed by the second person of the *imperative* of the verb *laisser*, with the following verb in the *infinitive*; as,

*Let him go; permit him to go.*

*Laissez-le aller.*

*Let her go; permit her to go.*

*Laissez-la aller.*

*Let them go; permit them to go.*

*Laissez-les aller.*

*Let my brother go; suffer him to go.*

*Laissez aller mon frère.*

N. B. *Let know*, meaning to *inform*, is expressed by *faire savoir*, agreeably to tense and person; as,

\* See the 196 rule.

† The french do not give to the different periods of time names which correspond with the English. For a week, they say, *huit jours*; for two weeks, or a fortnight, they say, *quinze jours*; three weeks, *trois semaines*; four weeks, *un mois*; for a quarter of a year, they say, *trois mois*; half a year, *six mois*; three quarters of a year, *neuf mois*; twelve months, *un an*.

*Let him know that I will come. Faites lui savoir que je viendrai.*  
*I will let him know it to-night. Je le lui ferai savoir ce soir.*

**To MAKE; FAIRE, RENDRE.**

249. *To make*, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by *faire*; as,

*To make a book; to make a noise. Faire un livre; faire un bruit.*  
*To make great progress. Faire de grands progrès.*

But to *make*, expressing not the performance of an action, but the *moral or natural effects* of one being on another, is expressed by *rendre*; as,

*Exercise makes the body healthy. L'exercice rend le corps sain.*  
*Vice makes men unhappy. Le vice rend les hommes malheureux.*  
*Misfortune has made him wise. Le malheur l'a rendu sage.*

**To CAUSE, To HAVE, To GET; FAIRE.**

250. The verbs *cause*, and *have*; and *get*, in the sense of *cause*, meaning to *order*, or *procure* a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb *faire*; and the english *participle* which follows *have*, or *get*, is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

*I had him arrested;*  
*or I have caused him to be arrested. } Je l'ai fait arrêter.*  
*I shall have him punished;*  
*or I shall cause him to be punished. } Je le ferai punir.*  
*Get your watch mended. Faites raccommoder votre montre.*

*To CAUSE To BE DONE or MADE, To HAVE or GET DONE or MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK; } FAIRE FAIRE.*

251. *To cause to be done* or *made*, *To have* or *get done* or *made*, *To order*, *To bespeak*, are expressed by the verb *faire* repeated; i. e. the *first* verb in the *same* tense and person as *cause*, *have*, *get*, *order*, or *bespeak* is, and the *second* verb in the *infinitive*; as,

*I am going to get a watch made. Je vais faire faire une montre.*  
*Where will you have it made? } Où la ferez-vous faire?*  
*or Where will you get it done? }*  
*I shall have it made in Paris; } Je la ferai faire à Paris.*  
*or I shall get it done in Paris. }*

**To ASK, To DESIRE; DIRE, PRIER CHARGER.**

252. We say in french as in english, *demandeur une chose*, to *ask* for a thing; *désirer une chose*, to *wish* for a thing; but we do not say; *demandeur de faire une chose*, to *ask to do a thing*; nor *désirer une personne de faire une chose*, to *desire a person to do a thing*; therefore, when *ask* or *desire* are followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, *ask* must be expressed by *dire* or *prier*; and *desire* by *prier* or *charger*; as,



He asked me to do it. Il me dit, or il me pria de le faire.  
He desired me to tell you so. Il m'a prié, or chargé de vous le dire.

To LOOK; REGARDER, PARAÎTRE, AVOIR LA MINE.

253. To look, meaning to view, to consider, is expressed by *regarder*;

Look at this man, at that horse. *Regardez cet homme, ce cheval.*

To look, meaning to seem, to appear, is *paraître*, *avoir l'air*, *avoir la mine*, *avoir apparence*; as,

That man looks very proud. Cet homme a l'air bien fier.  
You look very well to-day. Vous avez bonne mine aujourd'hui.  
This bread looks well. Ce pain paraît bon, or a bonne mine.\*  
How does the country look? Quelle apparence a la campagne?

To SUPPOSE; SUPPOSER, PENSER, S'IMAGINER.

254. The French say as well as the English, *supposer une chose*, to suppose a thing, i. e. to take it as granted for the sake of argument; as,

You suppose (i. e. you take for granted) a thing which is not probable.  
Vous supposez une chose qui n'est pas probable.

But the verb *suppose*, so often used in English in the sense of to think, to fancy, to imagine, can not be expressed by the verb *supposer* in French; it must be expressed by *penser* or *s'imaginer*; as,

I suppose you know the news, i. e. I think, I imagine, &c.  
Je m'imagine que vous savez les nouvelles; not, Je suppose, &c.  
It is supposed that there has been a battle; i. e. it is thought, &c.  
On pense, on s'imagine qu'il y a eu bataille; never, On suppose.

To HOPE; ESPERER.

To HOPE; Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE.

255. The verb *hope* followed by a future tense, is expressed by *espérer*;

I hope you will be well by and by, to-morrow, &c.  
J'espère que vous vous porterez bien tantôt, demain, &c.

N. B. *Hope*, being the expectation of something to come, can never be said in French of what is past or present; so when the verb *hope* is followed by the present or perfect tense of another verb, it can not be expressed by *Espérer*; it must be expressed by *Se Flatter*, *Aimer à Croire*, *Se Plaire à Croire*; as,

I hope you are well. Je me flatte, or J'aime à croire, or  
Je me plais à croire que vous vous portez bien; never, J'espère.  
I hope that I have not kept you waiting.  
Je me flatte que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre; never, J'espère.

\* MINE is said of the look of persons, and of things that are eatable, such as bread, meat, fruit, &c. but it cannot be said of other things.

† *Je me flatte*, in this sense, does not mean *I flatter myself*; it means, *I like to think to persuade myself*.

Yet, in these instances, we may also use the verb *espérer* if we transpose it in *parenthesis* at the end of the sentence ; thus,

Vous vous portez bien, j'*espère*.

You are well, *I hope*.

Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, j'*espère*. I have not kept you, *I hope*.

#### To TAKE; MENER, PORTER.

#### To BRING; AMENER, APPORTER.

256. *Mener*, to take, is said of beings that have the *natural faculty of walking* ; *porter* is said of the same beings when they have *lost*, or are *not able* to use that faculty ; and of things ; as,

*Take* my horse to the stable.

*Menez* mon cheval à l'écurie.

*Take* the saddle to the saddler.

*Portez* la selle au sellier.

*Amener* and *apporter* are used in the same sense as *mener* and *porter*, but they imply a relation to the *place* in which we are ; as,

*Bring* me my horse.

*Amenez-moi* mon cheval.

*Bring* me my whip.

*Apportez-moi* mon fouet.

#### To USE ; } *Se SERVIR de*, USER *de*, En USER,                   } *TRAITER*, AGIR, AVOIR COUTUME.

257. *To use*, meaning to *make use of things*, is expressed by the reflective verb *se servir de* ; as,

I am *using* my knife, my pen, my book, my horse, &c. [val;

Je me *sers* de mon couteau, de ma plume, de mon livre, de mon cheval. J'*use* mon couteau, ma plume, &c.

Because *user une chose*, means, to wear out a thing, not to make use of a thing.

Yet speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we express *use* by *user de* ;

*To use* patience, violence, reprisals, precaution.

*User* de patience, de violence, de représailles, de précaution.

*To use*, speaking of the *manner of acting* towards persons, is expressed by *traiter*, *en user avec*, *agir avec* ; as,

He *uses* me well.

Il me *traite* bien ; Il *en use* bien avec moi ; Il *agit* bien avec moi.

He has not *used* me well.

Il ne m'a pas bien *traité*.

*To use*, meaning to be *accustomed to*, is expressed by *avoir coutume*, or *être accoutumé* ; as,

You are *used* to it.

Vous y êtes *accoutumé*.

He was not *used* to do so.

Il n'avait pas *coutume* d'agir ainsi.

#### To HELP ; AIDER, SERVIR.

258. *To help*, viz. to assist a person to do a thing, is expressed by *aider* ;

Shall I *help* you to do it ?

Vous *aiderai-je* à le faire ?

My brother will not *help* me.

Mon frère ne veut pas m'*aider*.

But *to help* is often used in the sense of *to take*, *to offer*, *to present* a thing to a person; *help* is then expressed by *servir*, not the *person* to the *thing*, but the *thing* to the *person*; as, Shall I *help* you to a glass of wine? Vous *servirai-je* un verre de vin? i. e. shall I *help* a glass of wine *to* you?

*Help* that gentleman to a glass; *Servez* un verre à ce monsieur; not, *servez* ce monsieur à un verre; for it is the glass that you *help* or *present* to the gentleman, not the *gentleman* to the glass.

**To ATTEND.**

259. *Explained in the following examples,*

To attend a meeting.	Aller or assister à une assemblée.
To attend to one's duty.	Faire or remplir son devoir.
To attend to what is said.	Faire attention à ce qu'on dit.
To attend to business.	S'appliquer aux affaires.
To attend a sick person.	Garder or soigner un malade.
To attend a patient, viz. to visit.	Voir or visiter un malade.
To attend a master, to wait upon.	Servir un maître.
To attend a master, to be taught.	Prendre leçon d'un maître.
To attend a pupil, to give lessons.	Donner leçon à un écolier.

**To WANT;** } AVOIR BESOIN, AVOIR ENVIE, DESIRER,  
                  } SOUHAITER, VOULOIR, DEMANDER.

260. *To want*, meaning to be in *need* of a thing, or under the *necessity* of doing a thing, is expressed by *avoir besoin*; as,

I want money, clothes; am in need.	J'ai besoin d'argent, d'habits.
I do not want him; have no need.	Je n'ai pas besoin de lui.
I want to go to town; i. e. must go.	J'ai besoin d'aller à la ville.

But *want* is often used to denote merely *wish* or *desire*; it is then expressed by *avoir envie*, *désirer*, *souhaiter*, *vouloir*; as,

I want to see him; i. e. I wish.	Je désire or souhaite de le voir.
I want to speak to him; (wish)	J'ai envie de lui parler.
I want him to learn french.	Je veux qu'il apprenne le français.

*To want* a person or a thing, in the sense of *wish*, is *demand*er ;

Whom or what do you *want*? Qui or que demandez-vous?  
You are *wanted*; He *wants* you. On vous *demande*; Il vous *demande*.

**To MARRY; MARIER, &c. MARIER, EPOUSER.**

261. If, by *marry*, you mean to *give* a person in *marriage*, or to *perform* what is called the *ceremony*, you must make use of the verb *marier*. If, by *marry*, you mean to *take* a person in *marriage*, you use *épouser* ;

My father has <i>married</i> his niece.	Mon père a <i>marié</i> sa nièce; i. e. has <i>given</i> her in <i>marriage</i> .
Mon père a <i>épousé</i> sa nièce; i. e. has <i>taken</i> her for his <i>wife</i> .	
That parson has <i>married</i> my sister.	
Ce prêtre a <i>marié</i> ma sœur; i. e. has <i>performed</i> the <i>ceremony</i> .	
Ce prêtre a <i>épousé</i> ma sœur; i. e. has <i>taken</i> her for his <i>wife</i> .	

N. B. *Married*, in the sense of *taking a wife*, is expressed by *épousé* after the auxiliary *have*, and by *marlé*, after the auxiliary *be*; as,

I have married his sister. J'ai épousé sa sœur; not *marlé*.  
I am married to his sister. Je suis marlé à sa sœur; not *épousé*.

To marry, in a *neuter sense*, i. e. *without an object* added to it, is expressed by the reflective verb *se marier*; as,

When do you marry? Quand vous mariez-vous?  
I will never be married. Je ne me marierai jamais.

#### To RIDE.

262. Explained in the following examples;

To ride well.	Se tenir bien à cheval.
To ride in a coach, on horseback.	Aller en carrosse, aller à cheval
To take a ride in a coach.	{ Faire un tour en carrosse; or
	{ se promener en carrosse.
To take a ride on horseback.	{ Faire un tour à cheval; or
	{ se promener à cheval.

N. B. To ride, attended by any particular *object*, i. e. an *object* determined by any of the signs called *article*, is expressed by *aller*; as,

I will ride your horse, and you will ride in my coach.  
J'irai sur votre cheval, et vous irez dans mon carrosse.

#### To WALK; MARCHER, Se PROMENER.

263. If, by *walk*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either for *business* or *exercise*, you must use *marcher*; as,

Walk a little faster. Marchez un peu plus vite.  
I can not walk any more. Je ne puis plus marcher.  
I have walked too much to-day. J'ai trop marché aujourd'hui.

If, by *walk*, you mean that exercise which is taken for *diversion*, you must use the reflective verb *se promener*; as,

Let us walk a little. Promenons-nous un peu. [d'hui.  
I have not walked to-day. Je ne me suis pas promené aujourd'hui.

N. B. To take a walk is expressed by *faire un tour*, or by *faire une promenade*, *faire un tour de promenade*; as,\*

Let us go and take a walk. Allons faire un tour de promenade.  
Go and take a walk in the garden. Allez faire un tour dans le jardin.\*

#### To COME; ALLER, VENIR.

264. The English often use the verb *come*, with reference to the *person* to whom they speak; so speaking to a person in the street, they will say;

---

\* *Faire un tour* is generally understood of a *short walk*; and *Faire une promenade*, *Faire un tour de promenade* means to take a walk, without any limitation as to time, but rather long than short.

I will *come* and see you to-morrow, meaning, at the person's house;

The French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the *place*, and not to the person; so this sentence;

I will *come* and see you to-morrow,  
may he expressed two ways;

*Je viendrai vous voir demain,*  
being then at the place in which you are *to come* to see the person.

*J'irai vous voir demain,*  
meaning the place where you are *to go* to see the person; for, *venir* means to *move* from a *place* in which we are not at the time we are speaking, to a *place* in which we are; *aller* means to move from a *place* in which we are, to a *place* in which we are not.

In asking a question, *come* is expressed by *venir*; but in the answer, the verb must be determined by the *place*, not by the *person* you are to go to.

**TO RETURN; RETOURNER; REVENIR.**

265. The English use the verb *return* both for to *go back*, and to *come back*; but in french you must make a distinction.

If, by *return*, you mean to *go back*, you must use *retourner*; as,  
I come from *Paris*, and I will *return* to-morrow; i. e. will *go back*.  
*Je viens de Paris, et j'y retournerai demain.*

If, by *return*, you mean to *come back*, you must use *revenir*; as,

I am going to *Paris*, and I will *return* next week; i. e. will *come*.  
*Je vais à Paris, et je reviendrai la semaine prochaine.* [back.

N. B. *To return*, meaning to *give back*, to *restore*, to *repay*, is expressed by *rendre*; as,

*Return me my money.*      *Rendez-moi mon argent.*  
*Have I not returned it to you?*      *Ne vous l'ai-je pas rendu?*

**TO CALL; PASSER CHEZ.**

266. *To call* a person, is *appeler quelqu'un*; but *to call at* a person's, or *upon* a person, is *passer chez quelqu'un*; as,

When will you *call upon* me?      *Quand passerez-vous chez moi?*  
I will *call upon* you to-morrow.      *Je passerai demain chez vous.*

Never say,

*Appelez sur moi, call upon me; J'appellerai sur vous, &c.*

**TO BREAK; ROMPRE, CASSER.**

267. *Rompre* is said of things which require some *effort* to break them, such as *wood* and *metals*; as,

You have *broken* my stick.      *Vous avez rompu mon bâton.*

*Casser* is said of things that are *frail*, such as *glass* and *earthenware*.

He has *broken* the plates. Il a *cassé* les assiettes.  
The glass and bottle are *broken*. Le verre et la bouteille sont *cassés*.

N. B. In speaking of *bones*, we use indifferently *rompre* or *casser* ;

He has *broken* his leg. Il s'est *cassé* or *rompu* la jambe.

Without specifying any particular object, we use *casser* ;  
as,

They *break* every thing in this house. On *casse* tout dans cette maison.

And for *break to pieces*, we say *briser* ; as,

The ship was *broken* to pieces. Le navire fut tout *brisé*.

### TO *LIKE* ; AIMER, TROUVER.

268. To *like*, meaning to be *fond* of, to have a *liking* for a person or a thing, is expressed by *aimer* ; as,

I *like* wine, money, pleasure, France, the country, &c.  
J'*aime* le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, la France, la campagne, &c.

But *like* is often used, especially in asking questions, for to *think*, to have an *opinion*, and is then expressed by *penser* or *trouver* ;

How do you *like* this country?

i. e. What *think* you, what is your *opinion* of this country?

Que *pensez*-vous de ce pays? or comment *trouvez*-vous ce pays?

Yet in the answer we use *aimer* ; as,

Je l' <i>aime</i> beaucoup.	Je l' <i>aime</i> assez bien.	Je ne l' <i>aime</i> pas du tout.
I <i>like</i> it much.	I <i>like</i> it well enough.	I do not <i>like</i> it at all.

### TO *KEEP* ; GARDER, TENIR, AVOIR.

269. To *keep*, meaning to *preserve*, to *watch*, to *guard*, to *look after*, is expressed by *garder* ; as,

*Keep* it for my sake; i. e. *preserve*. *Gardez*-le pour l'amour de moi.

This dog *keeps* the house; *watches*. Ce chien *garde* la maison.

This boy *keeps* the flocks; *looks after*. Ce garçon *garde* les troupeaux.

These instances excepted, to *keep* is generally expressed by *tenir* ;

She *keeps* a house, a school. Elle *tient* maison, école.

He *keeps* an inn, boarders. Il *tient* auberge, des pensionnaires.

To *keep* in prison, in the house. *Tenir* en prison, dans la maison.

To *keep* clean, to *keep* ready. *Tenir* propre, *tenir* prêt.

To *keep* cows, horses, a coach. *Avoir* des vaches, des chevaux, un

Familiarly we say; *Rouler* carrosse; to *keep* a coach. [carrosse.

### TO *GET* ; GAGNER ; GOT not expressed in french.

270. The verb *get*, meaning to *gain*, to *win*, to *earn*, to *acquire*, is expressed by *gagner* ; as,

He *gets* or *earns* five shillings a day. Il *gagne* cinq shelling par jour.

He has *got* or *won* a deal of money. Il a *gagné* beaucoup d'argent.

But the participle *got*, so often added to the verb *have*, to denote *possession*, is *not expressed* in french, and is perhaps *useless* in english; as,

He has <i>got</i> a deal of money.	Il a beaucoup d'argent.
Have you <i>got</i> any money about you?	Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?
You have <i>got</i> a new hat.	Vous avez un chapeau neuf;

Not,

Vous avez *gagné*, which means, you have *won, gained, earned, &c.*

**To SPEND; DEPENSER, PASSER.**

271. Speaking of *money, property*, to *spend* is expressed by *dépenser*; speaking of *time*, *spend* is expressed by *passer*; as,

He *spends* all his money in gaming. Il *dépense* tout son argent à jouer.  
 He *spends* all his time in hunting. Il *passé* tout son temps à la chasse.

**To CHARGE; PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, PRIX.**

272. The verb *charge*, so often used in speaking of the *price* of things, can not be expressed in french by *charger*, which means to *load*, or to *give in charge*; it must be expressed by *prendre, faire payer, or by prix*, with some other verb; as,

How much do you *charge* a day for a horse? i. e. do you *require*?  
 Combien *prenez-vous* par jour pour un cheval?  
 How much do you *charge* for a saddle? what is the *price* of a saddle?  
 Combien *prenez-vous* pour une selle? or quel est le *prix* d'une selle?  
 You *charge* too much; i. e. the *price* is too high.  
 C'est *trop*, c'est *trop cher*, vous *prenez trop*, vous *faites payer trop*;  
 Never, Vous *chargez trop*; vous avez *chargé trop*.

273. To GO to MEET; } ALLER au DEVANT de,  
 } ALLER à la RENCONTRE de.

Let us *go* and *meet* your sister. Allons au *devant* de votre sœur.

We were *going* to *meet* you. { Nous *allions* à votre *rencontre*;  
 { Nous *allions* au *devant* de vous.

To BRING NEAR, } APPROCHER,  
 To GO NEAR, To COME NEAR; } S'APPROCHER de.

274. *Approcher* means to *bring* an object *near*, and *s'approcher* de means to *go, or come near* an object; for ex. I shall say:

*Approchez* la table. *Bring* the table *near*;

But if I said to a person *come near* or *go near* the table; I should not say, *Approchez la table*; I must say, *Approchez-vous de la table*; for it is the *person* who is to *approach* the table, not the table to *approach* the person.

I <i>brought</i> my sister <i>near</i> me.	J' <i>approchai</i> ma sœur de moi.
I <i>went</i> <i>near</i> my sister.	Je m' <i>approchai</i> de ma sœur.

**TO HEAR; ENTENDRE, ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, &c.**

275. *To hear* a person is *entendre quelqu'un*; as,

I *hear* your sister coming. *J'entends* venir votre sœur.

But *to hear from* a person, is not *entendre de quelqu'un*; *hear* is then expressed by *entendre des nouvelles, apprendre des nouvelles, recevoir des nouvelles*; as,

Do you *hear from* your sister often?

*Entendez-vous, or apprenez-vous, or recevez-vous* souvent des nouvelles de votre sœur?

Not, *Entendez-vous* souvent de votre sœur?

I *hear from* her almost every day.

*J'entends, or j'apprends, or je reçois* presque tous les jours des nouvelles, or des nouvelles d'elle;

Not, *J'entends d'elle, &c.*

**IT IS WITH; IL EN EST DE.**

276. *It is with*, denoting a similarity between two objects, is expressed by *il en est de*; as,

*It is with* you as with me. *Il en est de* vous comme de moi.

*It is with* a state as with a family. *Il en est d'un état* comme d'une [famille].

**WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE; AVOIR BEAU.**

277. *Avoir beau* is an expression very prevalent in conversation, instead of *en vain, inutilement*; so, instead of saying;

*C'est en vain* que je lui dis d'étudier, il n'en fait rien;

*It is in vain* that I tell him to study, he does not do it; we say; *J'ai beau* lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.

**TO FIND FAULT WITH; TROUVER à REDIRE a; ex.**

He *finds fault with* every thing. Il *trouve à redire* à tout.

What *fault* can be found with it? Que peut-on y trouver à redire?

**TO TAKE IT KINDLY; SAVOIR BON GRE.****TO TAKE IT UNKINDLY; SAVOIR MAUVAIS GRE.**

If he comes, I will *take it kindly*. S'il vient, je lui en *saurai bon gré*.

He would *take it unkindly* of me. Il m'en *saurait mauvais gré*.

*Take it kindly or unkindly.* *Sachez-m'en bon gré ou mauvais* [gré].

**TO DO WITHOUT, TO BE EASY WITHOUT;****Se PASSER de; ex.**

Can you *do without* a horse? Pouvez-vous vous *passer de* cheval?

I can not *do without* one.

I am not *easy without* it.

} Je ne puis pas m'en *passer*.

281. **WHAT IS THE MATTER, } QU'Y A-T-IL, QU'EST-CE**  
**WHAT IS IT ABOUT, } QU'EST-CE QUE,**  
**WHAT IS IT? } QU'EST-CE QUE C'EST?**

What is the *matter* there?

*Qu'y a-t-il là; qu'est-ce qu'il y a là?*

What is the *matter* with you?

*Qu'est-ce que vous avez?*

What is the *matter* with your hand? *Qu'est-ce que vous avez à la main?*



N. B. *Qu'est-ce que* is very prevalent in conversation, instead of *que* ; so instead of saying ;

<i>Que dites-vous ?</i>	<i>What do you say ?</i>
<i>Que faites-vous ?</i>	<i>What are you doing ?</i>
we say: <i>Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?</i>	<i>Qu'est-ce que vous faites ?</i>

282. *IS IT, IS IT NOT, DOES IT, DOES IT NOT, HAVE I, HAVE I NOT?* } EST-CE QUE, N'EST-CE PAS QUE, N'EST-CE PAS?

These expressions are often used to ask questions; but they serve less to require information, than to show a kind of *fear* or *surprise*, that the thing about which we inquire should be different from what we thought or wished it to be ; the difference will be made obvious in the following examples ;

<i>Vous en allez-vous ?</i>	<i>Are you going ?</i>
<i>Est-ce que vous vous en allez ?</i>	<i>You are not going, are you ?</i>
<i>Ne sortirons-nous pas ?</i>	<i>Shall we not go out ?</i>
<i>N'est-ce pas que nous sortirons, ?</i>	<i>We shall go out, shall we not ?</i>
<i>ou Nous sortirons, n'est-ce pas ?</i>	

It seems to me, however it may seem to other people, that these two ways of asking a question, imply different ideas.\*

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Idioms.*

Good morning, <sup>234</sup> sir. This is <sup>240</sup> a fine morning. How do you do <sup>185</sup> <sup>241</sup>  
<sup>n.s.</sup> <sup>†</sup> this morning ? I hope you are very well. Very well, sir, I thank you.  
<sup>255</sup> <sup>241</sup> How does all your family do ? How are your wife and children ?  
<sup>341</sup> <sup>241</sup> They are better, I thank you. And you ; how do you do ? Tolerably  
<sup>241</sup> (x) p. 56., <sup>†</sup> ; <sup>241</sup> Passablement  
well for an (old man.) Do not talk of being old yet <sup>183</sup> ; it will be  
<sup>vieillard.</sup> <sup>parler</sup> <sup>vieux déjà n.s. ;</sup>  
time enough twenty years hence. How old do you think I am <sup>239</sup> ? I  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>dans</sup> <sup>d'ici.</sup> <sup>241</sup> <sup>n.s.</sup> should take you to be <sup>239</sup> between thirty and forty. I am <sup>239</sup> near  
<sup>pour n.s. entre</sup> <sup>ans. † en 70 n.s. près de</sup>  
fifty. You do not look so old. You look very well for your age. I  
<sup>253</sup> <sup>253</sup> <sup>253</sup> am very glad you think so. You have been in the country,  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>146</sup> <sup>le 54</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>230</sup>

\* These are the words which, I have remarked, generally embarrass the learner ; but he will find in the course of his studies, several other idiomatical expressions of less importance and too numerous to be explained in a grammar ; they are found in the dictionaries, and will be learned by taking notice of them in reading.

† Turn ; *It is fine this morning.*

† See note \* page 339.

‡ As we have several words in french for this expression, we carry them as often as we can : see note \* page 339.

† Turn ; *Enough time* ; see note † page 300.

† We always add *An* to the number in french.

(I understand.) Yes, I have, <sup>70</sup> (i. e. *been there*.) I am just returned  
à ce que j'entends. N.B. 244 265  
thence. How do you like it? I like it (very much.) It is a beautiful  
(N) p. 56 185 208 62 beaucoup. 65  
country; and the people are uncommonly civil and obliging. I am  
230; 229 extrêmement obligeant.  
fond of industrious people. I like those good country people. They  
229 25  
look so cheerful and happy. I am going there to-night; will you come  
233 gai 46 y 54 235;  
with me? How long do you intend <sup>166</sup> to stop? I will sleep  
186 avoir dessein rester? †  
there, . and return in the morning. But you have no occasion to  
y 54, (N) p. 56. 266 216 234 besoin 168  
return so soon. You may <sup>178</sup> stay there all the morning. You may  
265 pouvoir rester 234 178  
stay till twelve o'clock. Nay, <sup>184</sup> you may spend the whole day  
jusqu'à 236 même, 271 233  
there, if you like. Our people will be glad of your company.  
y 54, vouloir. 239 bien aise  
We will endeavour to make you as happy as we can. What time do  
tâcher 249 43 43 142 à 82 heures  
you (go to bed)? We generally go about twelve o'clock. If  
se coucher ordinairement se coucher vers 236  
you do not like to stop, you may <sup>178</sup> return at night. It will be moon  
rester, pouvoir 265 le 235 faire lune  
light, and the roads are very good. The weather is so fine, that it <sup>62</sup>  
clair, chemin 240 N.B.,  
is a pity to remain (shut up) in a town. How does the country  
— dommage 166 rester renfermé  
look? It looks <sup>253</sup> very well, indeed. I never saw it look <sup>253</sup> better  
233 62 † 136 †  
Are the crops <sup>134</sup> promising <sup>155</sup>? Very. If this weather lasts, there  
— récolte promettre Beaucoup. durer, 246  
will be abundance of (every thing.) I should like to go (very well) <sup>183</sup>,  
187 † fort, † N.B.;  
but it is rather too far for a walk. You have no occasion to walk;  
246 un peu pour † beson †  
you may <sup>178</sup> ride, if you will. You will ride <sup>262</sup> my horse, I will ride  
pouvoir †, N.B.  
that of my servant and he will walk. If you would rather ride <sup>262</sup> in  
88 domestique, † aimer mieux N.B.  
the carriage, it will be here (by and by); you may ride <sup>262</sup> in it. <sup>64</sup>  
voiture, 62 tantôt; 178 N.B. dedans —  
No; I would rather ride on horseback. Come; the country air will  
aimer mieux 262; 25  
do you good. I hope it will <sup>170</sup>; for I am not well, What  
bien. 221 (i. e. do me some;) 241

\* See note || page 246.

† The verb *Sleep*, so often used in English in the sense of *Lie*, is not expressed in French by *Dormir*, but by *Coucher*; because a person may lie abed, and not sleep.

‡ Turn; *It has a very fine appearance*.

§ Turn; *I have never seen it finer*.

|| See note ¶ page 286.

¶ See note \* page 300.

\*\* When *Walk* is used by opposition to *Ride*, it is expressed by *Aller à pied*, and *Ride* by *Aller à cheval*.

Is the matter with you? You look very well. I do not know  
 how I look, but I am not well. I am always cold. My feet are  
 quelle mine j'ai 241 239 froid. 239  
 always cold. The weather is so bad that I (am afraid) of going  
 240 craindre 154  
 out for fear of (catching cold.) The weather has been very bad  
 de peur de m'enrhumer. 240  
 lately. Is 240 the weather always so bad in this country? Is it  
 depuis quelque temps. 239 240  
 always so damp and so cold? It is never very warm. However  
 humide 240 chaud. Cependant,  
 (it is to be expected) that it will be finer in a short time. The  
 il faut 172 espérer 240 — peu de  
 weather ought to be fine at this season; it is near midsummer.  
 devoir 240 ; \* près de la Saint Jean.  
 Our spring generally 184 comes late. We never have it here so early  
 printemps ordinairement tard. 190 de si (bonne  
 as you have it in your own country. (How many) years have  
 heures) que — 230 Combien 233  
 you been in this country? I have been about two years. I did  
 † † environ  
 not think it was 145 so long. Do you like it? I like the people well  
 140 245 long temps. 268 238 assez  
 enough 188, but I do not like the climate. It does not agree with me;  
 bien, & n. s., climat. convenir — 54;  
 the weather is so cold and so changeable. If I cannot accustom myself  
 variable. accoutumer me 54  
 to it this year, I will not stay another year. You should walk out  
 63 233, rester 333 178 263 à l'air  
 oftener than you do. I cannot walk. I have hurt my foot. I am  
 47 faire. 237 se blesser 15 pied.  
 afraid I have put my 15 ankle out of joint. Come; do not afflict  
 (me) 237 se démettre cheville. — — Allons;  
 yourself; I dare say 221 you will be well in (a few) days. Here is Mr.  
 57 ; See l p. 333. 241 quelques 247  
 B. How long have you been in town? I am just come. I have just  
 186 † en 244 arriver 244  
 alighted from my horse. Are you come to stop any time? No,  
 descendre — venir 170 rester quelque.  
 I shall (go back) to-night. (How many) times a week do you  
 s'en retourner 235 232 12  
 come to town? Sometimes twice, sometimes three times. You  
 deux fois, 233  
 should come oftener. You should come every day. You should  
 176 y 70 41 y 70 tous les jours.  
 bring your wife with you. I wish I could bring her; but we  
 236 (me) ;  
 can not well leave the house both (at the) same time. Sir, you are  
 quitter 123 en , 93

\* Turn; We are near, &c.

† Turn, How many years is it since 246 you are, &c. see note \* page 308.

‡ Turn, It is 246 about two years; see note \* page 303. † See note † page 300.

§ Two words Out of joint, are all expressed by the verb *Démétre*.

¶ Turn, How long is it since you are, &c. see note \* page 308.

wanted<sup>260</sup>. Who wants<sup>260</sup> me? A gentleman is in the street who  
 N.B. N.B. See \* p. 230.  
 wants to speak to you. Tell him to (walk in.) He says he can  
 260 (a) 54 (1) p. 63. entrer. 231  
 not stop. Tell him that I will go and speak to him. Will you  
 s'arrêter. † — (a) 54  
 excuse me whilst I go and see what that gentleman wants? I am  
 pendant que (am) 84 260  
 going to leave you. No; Sit down; Do not go yet; do not go  
 155 quitter ; s'asseoir ; † encore ; s'en aller  
 before I return. I hope<sup>231</sup> you do not intend to leave us so soon.  
 218 † 265 255 avoir dessein 168 t6t.  
 Yes, I must go; but I will (call again) before I leave town. Take  
 , 181 s'en aller ; repasser avant de (am) 256  
 this letter to my sister. Take the children with you. If you can  
 256  
 not bring my sister, bring me the book which she has promised me.  
 256 , 256 55  
 Why did you not bring my sister? Why did you not bring me the  
 126 126  
 book which I desired<sup>136</sup> you to bring? I could not bring it; she is  
 232 136  
 using<sup>155</sup> it herself. My sister used<sup>140</sup> to be very fond of reading. She  
 257 (m) N.B. 257 † 109 154  
 did not use to be so long in reading a book. I think she does not  
 257 long temps 109 154 221  
 use me well. I do not like to be used so. I suppose she has not  
 257 92 ainsi 254 221  
 had time. I want to see my father. Where is he? I want money.  
 260 †  
 I want a wife. I want to be married. You want (so many) things  
 261 tant  
 at once, that I (am afraid)<sup>231</sup> you will not get<sup>146</sup> one half (of them.)  
 à la fois, craindre 195 avoir la moitié en 54  
 You are yet too young to marry. You should get a little money  
 encore 176 261 176 276 un peu  
 first. 183 You do not know what it costs to keep a house.  
 premièrement. N.B. 84 il en coûter à 269 —  
 I suppose<sup>231</sup> you would like to keep a horse too. I dare say you  
 254 269 aussi. †  
 (would have no objection) to have a ride now and then. I do not  
 ne seriez pas fâché \*\* de 262 de temps en temps.

\* Turn, There is<sup>246</sup> in the street a gentleman who<sup>75</sup> &c. † See note \* page 236

† See N. B. under *aller*, page 102.

† Turn; Before I have<sup>238</sup> returned.

‡ See note † page 246.

‡ See note † page 233.

\*\* The word *Objection*, so frequently used in English to denote that a person does or does not assent to what another person proposes, can not be expressed in French by *Objection* which means a difficulty which we oppose to an argument or a proposition in order to refute it. You must use some other equivalent expression, agreeably to the idea which you wish to denote; such as, *Vouloir, Aimer, Être fâché, se Soucier, Avoir à redire, Trouver à redire*, or such like; as,

Have you any objection to take a walk? *Voulez-vous faire, or Aimeriez-vous à faire, (ne seriez-vous pas bien aise de faire une promenade?)*

No; I have no objection to it; oui; *Je le veux bien, or Je ne m'en soucie pas, or Comme vous voudrez, &c.*

What objection have you to that? *Qu'avez-vous à redire, or Que trouvez-vous à redire à cela?*

I have no objection to it. *Je n'ai rien à y redire, or Je n'y trouve rien à redire.*

mind riding<sup>154</sup>. I would sooner walk than ride. I can easily walk  
se soucier <sup>263</sup> aimer mieux <sup>263</sup> <sup>263</sup>  
twenty miles a-day, without being tired. Since you are such a  
<sup>12</sup> <sup>154</sup> fatiguer. Puisque <sup>si\*</sup>  
great walker, I wonder<sup>221</sup> you do not come to see us oftener than  
marcheur, s'étonner <sup>173</sup> <sup>41</sup>  
you do. Every morning when the weather is fine, you should walk  
<sup>47</sup> Touts les que <sup>240</sup> <sup>176</sup> <sup>263</sup>  
(as far as) our<sup>208</sup> house; we will give you some breakfast, and after  
jusque <sup>N.B.</sup> ; <sup>à</sup> , aprèsque  
you have<sup>142</sup> rested yourself, you may either walk back or ride in our  
<sup>237</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> reposer vous<sup>55</sup>, <sup>142</sup> — <sup>†</sup> —  
carriage, as (you like best). I intend to come and see you soon.<sup>183</sup>  
voiture, comme il vous plaira. <sup>264</sup> (N.B.) bientôt.<sup>N.B.</sup>  
Does your brother return to the university this year? I suppose<sup>221</sup> he  
<sup>265</sup> <sup>233</sup> <sup>254</sup>  
will 70; but I do not think he will go<sup>70</sup> for some time, for he is just  
\$ <sup>N.B.</sup> ; <sup>221</sup> <sup>145</sup> de quelque , I <sup>244</sup>  
returned thence. Has he returned<sup>265</sup> you the money which you had  
<sup>265</sup> en 54 (N) p. 58. <sup>N.B.</sup>  
lent him<sup>162</sup>? Yes, he has<sup>70</sup>. I am glad (of it); for I  
(1) p. 63. <sup>N.B.</sup> I. e. returned it me. bien aise en 54; I  
(was afraid)<sup>221</sup> he would never return<sup>265</sup> it you. He is so forgetful.  
craindre <sup>146</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>sujet à oublier.</sup>  
I heard that your sister was to<sup>172</sup> be married. She is married<sup>158</sup>. She  
<sup>136</sup> <sup>242</sup> <sup>243</sup> se marier. <sup>261</sup>  
was married last week. She has married<sup>159</sup> Mr. Goodhusband. They  
<sup>137</sup> <sup>158</sup> <sup>261</sup>  
were married at our church. It<sup>62</sup> was my brother who married them.  
<sup>137</sup> <sup>à</sup> église. <sup>N.B.</sup>  
How old is<sup>239</sup> she? She is<sup>239</sup> two and twenty. How old is<sup>239</sup> Mr.  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>  
G. ? He is<sup>239</sup> about thirty. They are a young couple. I hope<sup>221</sup> they  
<sup>N.B.</sup> environ <sup>\*\*</sup> <sup>65</sup> est <sup>255</sup>  
are happy. I hope they will be so long. She desired<sup>136</sup> me to give her  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>le</sup> 54 long temps, <sup>252</sup> <sup>faire ses</sup>  
love to you. Please to<sup>168</sup> let her know<sup>248</sup> that I will call and  
amitiés (e) 54 Avoir la bonté lui <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>266</sup> (N.B.)  
pay my respects to her at the first opportunity. How far is their<sup>208</sup>  
pour rendre (e) 54 à occasion. <sup>246</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>  
house from here? About seven or eight miles. It<sup>62</sup> is a (long way).  
<sup>††</sup> Environ <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>††</sup> loin  
Yes, it<sup>62</sup> is rather far. I suppose<sup>221</sup> they keep a coach. No, they have  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>††</sup> un peu loin. <sup>254</sup> <sup>259</sup> <sup>191</sup>,  
no coach. They keep horses. (How many) servants do they keep ?  
<sup>269</sup> <sup>domestiques</sup> <sup>269</sup>

\* Put Si after the article à, because si being here an adverb, can not be separated from the adjective which it modifies.

† Walk back, *Revenir à pied*, or *Retourner à pied*, see 265 rule. ‡ See note \* p. 300.

§ Instead of repeating the verb agreeably to the 70 rule, you may express *He will* by *Qu'oui*.

|| Note \* page 318. ¶ Say *twenty-two*; the French always put the highest number first.

\*\* In speaking of age, we always add *Ans* to the number in french.

†† Turn; *How far is it from here to their house?* ‡† You may express *it is*, by *c'est*, or *il y a*.

Let me see. There is the butler, a footman, a groom, a gardener,  
 Attendez que je voie. 246 maître d'hôtel, laquais, palefrenier,  
 a cook, and a chambermaid. These are many servants for such a  
 cuisinière, chambre \* fille. Co (s) si †  
 small family. They hope that in time it will encrease. Was not  
 avec le temps augmenter. 140  
 your country house advertised to be sold? No; my father had  
 134 afficher 158 à 243 140  
 some thought of selling it, but he has altered his mind. He is going  
 quelques envis 154 62, changer — d'idée. 155  
 to let his town house, and live in the country (altogether.)  
 louer à la ville, demeurer à entièrement. n.s.  
 Trade is so bad now, that he says he spends more than he gets.  
 Commerce mauvais, 231 271 47 270  
 How do you spend your time in the country? We generally spend  
 185 271 † à ordinairement 271  
 the mornings in walking and practising music, and we  
 234 263 étudier  
 spend the evenings in reading and in amusing ourselves. (That is the  
 271 224 169 154 amuser nous 54 C'est ainsi  
 way) we generally spend ours. Does Mr. A. often call upon you?  
 que 184 271 85 134 184 266  
 Sometimes, not often. Here he is. How do you do? I hope you  
 , pas n.s. 241 255  
 are (very well). Very well, I thank you. What is the matter with your  
 241 bien Très † 281 à la  
 hand? It is all bloody. I was near breaking my neck in coming  
 62 sanglant. 245 se casser 15 cou en  
 here. How so? My horse stumbled, and had like to have fallen  
 185 cela? faire un faux pas, 245 — tomber  
 into a pit. I see it has hurt its mouth. I hope you have not  
 fosse. 221 se faire mal 281 255 237 n.s.  
 been hurt. Not much; I was more frightened than hurt. I  
 se faire mal. Pas beaucoup; 229 n.s. peur de mal †  
 hope you will do us the favour to dine with us. At what time do  
 255 255 grâce 168 82 heure  
 you dine? We generally dine about four o'clock. I will avail myself of  
 184 vers heures. profiter  
 your invitation to enjoy the pleasure of your company a little longer.  
 170 jouir 202 peu 41  
 Have you any objection to take a short walk before dinner? No,  
 † n.s. 206 Oui,\*\*  
 none at all. Let us walk along this lane. Let us rather go into  
 je le veux bien.\*\* — — 263 le long de ruelle. — — plutôt  
 that path. The late rains we have had have made the fields very  
 sentier dernier (s) 159 249  
 pleasant. Yes, the country looks quite beautiful now. I do not  
 agréable. 253 tout à fait belle

\* See note \* page 180.

† See note \* page 355.

‡ Use *Le* here instead of *votre* because *vous* sufficiently denotes whose time it is.

§ See note \* page 339.

I Turn; I have had more fright than hurt.

¶ See note \*\* page 354.

\*\* The word *objection* being changed in the question, you must also change the words of the answer.

recollect having ever seen it finer. We must not go much farther.  
 se rappeler 154 loin 41.  
 It is near our dinner time. We must walk towards home. Let us  
 près de l' 25 heures. 181 263 vers la maison.  
 make haste. Our people do not like to be (kept 145 waiting). I see some-  
 se dépêcher. 229 92 faire attendre.  
 body coming 153 to meet us. Sir, the cloth is laid. The dinner is (on  
 n.m. 273 couvert mls.  
 the table.) Come, ladies and gentlemen, (walk in.) Sit down at table.  
 servi. Allons, mesdames , entrer. se mettre à  
 Now, my pretty neighbour, what do you choose to 172 eat? Shall I help  
 à présent, jolie voisine, souhaiter 256  
 you to a little soup? It looks very good. I will thank you for two or  
 peu de soupe? 62 253  
 three (spoonfuls) of it. And you, madam, what will you eat? A bit  
 cuillerée en 54 morceau  
 of that fowl. What part do you like best? A little of the breast. Shall  
 (bb) volaille. partie le mieux? estomac.  
 I add some sauce (to 63 it?) A little, if you please, and a little of the  
 ajouter y 54 †  
 cauliflower. You, sir, what shall I help you to? A bit of the sirloin.  
 chou-fleur 253 aloyau.  
 With some gravy to it? Yes, a little, and a potato. Will you have  
 jus? — — pomme de terre.  
 the goodness to pass the mustard (this way?) (Give me 56 leave) to  
 bonté passer moutarde par ici? Permettre  
 help you to a bit of this loin of veal. A very small bit. Do you like  
 256 longe veau. petit  
 fat or lean? A little of both. I will trouble you for a wing of that  
 gras maigre? 122 peine † aile (bb)  
 chicken. Shall I send you a little ham (with it?) No, no ham; I will  
 poulet. envoyer jambon aussi 64! , pas ; †  
 eat a little salad. It looks so nice. Pass the salad to that gentleman.  
 peu 62 253 bon 29 (bb)  
 (Here is) an excellent hare; I would advise you to taste it. I thank you;  
 247 lièvre; conseiller goûter ;  
 I will eat no hare. I will eat one half of this partridge. And I will eat  
 † la moitié (m) †  
 a bit of the pheasant. Let me 56 send you a little of this pie. No, no  
 faisan. Permettre (kk) pâté. , pas  
 more; I can not eat (any more). (Take away), and bring the dessert.  
 davantage; † Desservir, 256 dessert.  
 Now, what say you to a glass of wine? I will take a glass with you.  
 83 de † 70 prendre  
 Will you have red or white? White, if you please. And I will  
 174 du rouge du blanc? † (m) †  
 drink a glass of red. Ladies and gentlemen, your good health. We  
 , à — santé.

\* I will thank you for, &c. turn; I beg you to give me two or three, &c.

† Turn; If it pleases you, because *Plaire* in this sense is always impersonal in french.

‡ I will trouble you for, &c. turn; Will you take the trouble to give me, &c.

§ See note \* page 228.

! More, Any more, at the end of a sentence, are expressed by *Davantage*.

thank you, sir. Come, gentlemen, help the ladies; help yourselves  
 Allons,\* 258 ; vous vous-mêmes.  
 and pass the bottle. How do you like this wine? It is very good indeed.  
 185 268 02  
 Since you like it, I hope you will make free (with it). It is what  
 Pulaque 221 boire librement en 54 n.s. 84  
 we intend 168 to do. (Here is) very fine fruit too. Have these fruits  
 avoir dessein 247 aussi. 229 134  
 grown in your garden? In the garden and in the houses. These  
 venir 156 serre.  
 apricots are beautiful. What think you of the peaches and nectarines.  
 abricot très beau. 83 brugnons?  
 They are the finest I have 50 seen this year. Taste the pears and  
 Ce (s) 159 233 Goûter  
 apples; they look very nice. These grapes are delicious. (Here is)  
 ; 62 253 bon 29 délicieux. 247  
 a (pine apple) which is excellent. Permit me to help you to a slice  
 ananas 256 tranche  
 (of it). I will thank you (for it), for I am very fond of pine apples.  
 en 54 être obligé 54 en 56, † ;  
 Bring the sugar and some spoons. Come, gentlemen, (fill up) your  
 ; remplir  
 glasses; I will give you a toast. Let us drink the health of all good  
 ; † un toast. — — boire à santé  
 people of whatever country, colour, or religion they are. With all my  
 239 177 230 couleur, De  
 heart. An everlasting peace between all men. What a pity that all  
 cœur. éternelle 23 paix entre 20 dommage  
 men do not think so. They would spare themselves many afflictions.  
 ainsi. épargner se 54 (s) chagrin.  
 We will drink this toast, to show you that we join with you in your  
 see \* p. 228. toast, m. 170 faire voir joindre †  
 wishes, but I hope you will excuse us from drinking any more. Since you  
 souhaite, 231 excuser 154 † Puisque  
 will not drink, would you like to take an excursion on the water? We  
 faire tour  
 have a fine river (close by) 183, with good boats and good boatmen. I  
 rivière tout près, n.s. bateau batelier.  
 should like it (very much). And I too. Well, since you all like it, we  
 beaucoup. 52 aussi. Eh bien, \*\*  
 will go. Which do you like best sailing 154 or rowing? I think 231  
 70 80 le mieux aller à la voile, aller à la rame?  
 sailing is the most pleasant. They make such a noise with their oars.  
 154 agréable. tant de bruit rame.  
 Boatman, what do you ask an 12 hour for your boat? We generally  
 Batelier, combien par heure 184  
 charge three shillings an hour. That is (too much.) I will give you  
 272 12 Ce trop. —

\* When Come is used as it is here, to encourage, it is a kind of interjection and is then expressed by *Allons*.

† See note \* page 218.

‡ See note † page 246. † See \* p. 222.

§ We join with you in your wishes, turn; We join our wishes to yours.

¶ See note † page 357.

\*\* Put this adjective after the verb in french.



half a crown. That is too little. I will not give you more. Well,  
 un petit 36 écu. Ce peu. Eh bien,  
 come, I will not cheapen with you Where shall we go? I do not  
 see \* p. 358. marchandier Où  
 mind; (please yourself.) (It is all the same to us.) Are you fond  
 s'en soucier; où vous voudrez. \* Cela nous est égal. †  
 of bathing! 154? Yes, very. The sea is not far off here. (It is) not  
 à se baigner! , beaucoup. mer loin d'ici. 246  
 above a mile and a half. If you wish to bathe, we will go 70. Can you  
 plus de — demi. se baigner, †  
 swim? I can swim a little, but I do not like (to go out of my depth.)  
 nager? perdre fond.  
 As for you, I know you can swim like a fish. Not quite; but  
 Quant à , 221 comme poisson. Pas tout à fait;  
 I can swim pretty well. It begins to be late. I (am afraid) the  
 assez se faire tard. craindre 221  
 ladies will (catch cold) 146. We will (go back,) if you please. Yes,  
 195 s'enrhumer. s'en retourner, vouloir.  
 I think it is time. We had a very agreeable sail, had we  
 231 il en 70 est 136 32 promenade en bateau, 282  
 not? Very agreeable indeed. I will procure you that diversion as often  
 procurer amusement 42  
 as you will favour me with your company. We are (very much)  
 43 accorder le plaisir de bien —  
 obliged to you, sir; and we wish you a good night 234. Good night,  
 166 (o) 55, ; le n.b.  
 ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk. Mr. M. you used to be very  
 18 ; agréable 257 fort  
 fond of music; do you ever (make use) of your violin now? I use  
 ; musique ; jamais se servir violon 257  
 it sometimes; very seldom. Since you do not use it, I will be obliged  
 ; rarement. Puisque 257  
 to you, if you will let me have it, till 1318 I have got one made. I  
 (e) , prêter — , jusqu'à ce que 251  
 do not think you will (be able) 145 to use it; the strings are all broken.  
 231 pouvoir 257 en 54 ; corde 267  
 I will get them mended. I will get new ones put (to it.) Who  
 250 raccommoder. 250 de neuves en 59 mettre y 54.  
 made it you? A (man of the name) of Fiddle. When you see 142 him, I  
 136 55 59 Un nommé — n.b.  
 beg you will desire him to make me 54 one (like it.) (How much) did  
 , 252 m'en 70 un semblable. Combien 136  
 he charge you (for it?) He charged 136 me twenty guineas. He charged  
 272 en 272  
 you (too much.) He did not use me well. If I were in your place, I  
 trop. — 136 257 † à  
 would get one made in Paris. You would get it better and cheaper.  
 251 à avoir (z) p. 56 à meilleur marché.

\* Not, *Pleiser-vous*, which would express quite a different idea.

† Not, *Il est le même à nous*, which is not a french expression.

‡ See note I page 246.

§ See note ¶ page 266.

¶ I beg you will desire him, turn; I beg you to desire him, &c.

¶ See note \* page 266.

I suppose<sup>231</sup> you do not intend<sup>168</sup> to return home to-night. Yes, I<sup>254</sup> avoir dessein<sup>265</sup> chez vous<sup>235</sup>  
do<sup>70</sup>. You will drink a cup of tea before you go. I<sup>n.s.</sup> I. e. intend to return. \* † s'en aller.  
can not stay. Our people will be waiting for me. They will be anxious<sup>reuter.</sup> 239 135 301 54 inquiet.  
to hear from me. I long to see how they are. I have not heard from<sup>275</sup> see long p. 163. 241 275  
them for these three days. The tea will be ready just now. Get the<sup>†</sup> tout de suite. Apprêter  
tea ready as fast as you can<sup>142</sup>. Come near the table. Shall I bring the<sup>†</sup> 43 43 n.s. 274 274  
table nearer to you? It will do very well where it is. Bring the<sup>41</sup> de<sup>62</sup> — est<sup>62</sup> 256  
tea, and take<sup>256</sup> these children out of the room. Is there no coffee.  
emmener hors 246  
Yes; there is both<sup>232</sup> tea and coffee. Which will you have? I will<sup>†</sup> 246 n.s. Duquel 174 —  
drink a cup of coffee. Eat a little bread and butter. Is your coffee<sup>134</sup>  
sweet enough? Yes, it is very pleasant. You will drink another cup?  
sucré see † p. 300. 62 agréable. \*  
will you not? No, no more, I thank you. Now I must go.  
252 pas davantage, A présent 181 see n.s. 122  
If you will come with me, I will take it kindly of you. Yes, I will<sup>144</sup> † 279 \*\*  
Bring me my horse. Bring me my whip and spurs. (There is) your<sup>256</sup> 256 fouet épérons. 247  
whip, and (here are) your spurs, They are not right. What is the<sup>247</sup> bien.  
matter with them? You find fault with (every thing.) Can not you<sup>281</sup> 278 107  
do without spurs? No, I can not. I want to return as fast as I can<sup>142</sup>,  
280 76 200 265 43 43 n.s.  
to go and meet a friend of mine who is coming to spend (a few) days  
170 (na) 273 87 155 173 271 quelques  
at<sup>208</sup> our house. It will be too late; will it not? I am afraid it will<sup>70</sup>.  
n.s. † 232 † n.s.  
I never can (get ready) in time. In vain I tell these people to keep  
s'apprêter à 277 dire à 239 tenir  
always ready the things which I want, they will not do it. Whatever  
prêt 29 dont 260 vouloir 277  
I may say or do, they will<sup>174</sup> have every thing their (own way.) They  
voulair faire 107 à leur tête.

\* See note † page 288.

† Before may be expressed by *Avant de* with the following verb in the infinitive, or by *Avant que* with the subjunctive; but here the two verbs having the same nominative, Before should be expressed by *Avant de*. See note (na.)

‡ For these three days, may be expressed two ways; *je n'ai pas appris de leurs nouvelles depuis trois jours*; or *Il y a trois jours que je n'ai appris, &c.*

§ Ready is implied in the verb *Apprêter*.

|| See note \* page 228.

¶ See note † page 260.

\*\* Instead of repeating the verb here, you might say, *oui, je le veux bien*.

†† Instead of repeating *I am afraid it will be too late*: you may say; *je le crains, or je crains qu'ou*.

make me very unhappy. If I were<sup>140</sup> you, I would turn them<sup>240</sup>  
 away. What will you have<sup>174</sup> one do? One can not do without<sup>174</sup>  
 à la porte. n.s. 90 faire 90 280  
 somebody, and it is very unpleasant to be always changing<sup>155</sup> people.  
 95 désagréable — changer de 235  
 True; but I would not keep people who would not attend to my  
 Cela est vrai; garder 239  
 orders. Come; do not mind them. They are all alike.  
 Allons; faire attention à 56 — † se ressembler.  
 Happy they who can do without them.  
 Heureux 66 280 en.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON ALL THE RULES.

It having been represented to the author that the utility of this work might be increased by lengthening the exercise, he, in consequence, has added the following amusing little novel, which is full of the most essential rules, especially on the *nomme, pronome, and verbe*.

*Bathnendi, an Eastern Tale.*

Under the reign of a king of Persia whose<sup>75</sup> name I have forgotten,  
 † Perse n.s.  
 a merchant of Balsora was ruined by bad speculations. He collected  
 137 entreprise. recueillir  
 the wreck of his fortune, and retired to the (remotest part) of the  
 débris plur. se retirer fond  
 province of Kousistan. There he bought a small country house and  
 La 25  
 a field which he cultivated very badly, because he was always think-  
 labourer mal, 155  
 ing of the time when he had something more pleasant to (attend to).  
 200 que 140 98 (cc) agréable 32 à l'occuper.  
 Grief shortened the days of this merchant: feeling himself near his  
 abrégé 54 près de  
 end, he called to him four sons that he had, and addressed them,  
 auprès de 56 140, 53 parler leur  
 (in these words); My dear children, I have no other property to leave  
 ainsi ; 169 bien  
 you but this house, and the knowledge of a secret which I was<sup>249</sup>  
 198 connaissance ai 136 dà  
 not to reveal to you till now. In the time of my epulence, I had  
 † 172 (o) que 213 epulence, 140  
 for a friend the genie Alzim. He promised me to take care of you  
 avoir  
 when I should be no more, and to divide a treasure amongst you.  
 190 † , partager † 54  
 This genie lives a few miles hence, in the great forest of Kom. Go  
 à quelques d'ici,

\* See note \* page 206.

† Put this adjective after the verb in french.

‡ See note \* page 182. § Express *Ne, Not, by Ne* only, because *Que* which comes after the verb supplies the place of *Est*.

¶ When I should be no more, may be expressed by *après moi*.

¶ Leave out this preposition in french

to him, ask him for that treasure, but (take care) not to believe . . .  
 \* 54 , † se garder 193  
 Death did not allow him to finish. The four sons of the merchant,  
 permettre lui 54 achever.  
 after having bewailed and buried their father, went to the forest of Kom.  
 154 pleurer enterrement  
 They inquired for the residence of the genie Alzim. They had no  
 s'informer de demeure  
 trouble to find it. Alzim was known to the whole country: he re-  
 peine 169 62 149 de 38 tout 230 ;  
 ceived 139 kindly all those who came to see him, he listened to their com-  
 accueillir avec bonté 173 écouter —  
 plaints, cons led them, lent them money, when they (were in want) (of  
 plainte, 139 163 , avoir besoin en  
 it); but these favours were on a condition; (they were) to follow blindly  
 44 ; bienfait à ; il fallait 173  
 the advice which he gave them; this was his whim; No one was ad-  
 conseil — ; ce manie ; Nul 101  
 mitted into his palace till he had taken an oath (of it.) This oath did  
 recevoir avant de (ne) avoir fait le serment en 55.  
 not alarm the three eldest sons of the merchant; the fourth, whose (name  
 effrayer aîné 33 ; , qui se nom-  
 was) Tai, found this ceremony ridiculous. However he wished to  
 mer Cependant vouloir  
 (go in) and receive the treasure: he then 184 swore like his brothers; but  
 entrer ; donc comme ;  
 reflecting (on the) dangerous consequences of this indiscreet oath, (calling  
 aux ; se rap-  
 to mind) that his father, who was in the habit of visiting this palace,  
 peler avoir — coutume 154 ,  
 had passed his life in committing blunders, he wished without being  
 169 faire des sottises, 154  
 a perjurer, to secure himself from all danger; and whilst they 90 were  
 — , mettre à l'abri 54 de ; N.B.  
 conducting them to the genie, he stopped his ears with scented  
 conduire 155 vers , boucher odoriférante 33  
 wax. (Having taken) this precaution, he prostrated himself before the  
 Muni de , prosterner 54 206  
 throne of Alzim. Alzim bid the four sons of his ancient friend to  
 faire † ancien † —  
 rise, embraced them, and ordered a large chest filled with daricks to  
 relever† , faire † grand coffre de darique †—  
 (be brought). Here, said he, is the treasure which I have designed for  
 apporter † 247 , 247 destiner —  
 you. I am going to divide it amongst you, and then I will tell each  
 55 partager — 54 , ensuite dire à 103  
 of you the road he must follow to be perfectly happy. Tai did not  
 (e) devoir prendre 170

\* Express to by the verb *trouver*.

† See note † page 207.

‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun. See note (i) page 168.

§ The two verbs *faire* and *relever* must come together, because *faire* here means *to cause*; he did not cause the four sons, but he caused *to rise*.

|| *Faire* and *apporter* must come together; see note † above.

¶ Small pieces of gold.

hear what the genie said, but he observed him attentively; and saw  
 in his eyes, and on his countenance an air of cunning and of malig-  
 nity which gave him much uneasiness. However he received with  
 gratitude his share of the treasure. Alzim, after having thus enriched  
 them, assumed an affectionate tone and said to them; my dear children,  
 your good or bad destiny depends upon your meeting sooner or later  
 with a certain being called Bathmendi, of whom every body speaks,  
 but whom very few people know. The wretched mortals seek him  
 all (in the dark). moi I, who love you, will whisper to each of you  
 where he will (be able) to find him. At these words, Alzim took aside  
 Bekir the eldest of the four brothers. My son, said he to him, you are  
 born with courage, and have (a great deal) of ability for war; the king of  
 Persia has just sent an army against the Turks; join that army;  
 it is in the camp of the Persians that you will find Bathmendi.  
 Bekir thanked the genie, and (was quite impatient) to (set out.  
 Alzim beckoned to the second son to (come near); it was Mesrou.  
 You have sense, said he to him, some address and great aptness for  
 lying; take the road to Ispahan; it is at court that you must look  
 for Bathmendi. He then called the third brother who (was named) Sad-  
 der: You, said he to him, were gifted with a lively and fertile  
 imagination; You see objects not as they are, but as you wish  
 them to be; You have often genius, and not always common sense;  
 You will be a poet. Take the way to Agra; it is amongst the wits  
 that you will find him.

\* The action not being momentary, but having been continued, this verb should be in the imperfect.

† Put this adjective before the noun.

‡ See note \* page 228.

§ L'aîné not le plus aîné, because aîné means eldest.

¶ In familiar tales and in familiar conversation, the French generally use the second person singular instead of the second person plural.

¶ Put this verb in the present tense. The French often use the present instead of the perfect in narrations, to show the suddenness of the action, or to call the attention of the hearer or reader more particularly to it.

and the fine ladies of that city, that you will find Bathmendi. Tai  
 advanced in his turn; and thanks to the wax<sup>26</sup> balls, he did not hear  
 s'avancer à ; grâce bonlie,  
 a word of what Alzim said to him. It has been known since that  
 he had advised him to turn dervie. The four brothers, after having  
 lui 55 se faire derviche. 154  
 thanked the beneficent genie, returned to their home. The three eldest  
 bienfaisant demeure.  
 thought of nothing but Bathmendi. Tai unstopped his ears, heard them  
 rêver à 100 déboucher  
 arranging their departure, and proposing to sell their small house to the  
 154 154  
 first (person that should offer,) (in order to) divide the amount (of it.  
 offrant 170 partager prix en 54  
 Tai asked to be the purchaser. He got<sup>260</sup> the house and field valued,  
 acquereur. faire † estimer †  
 paid with his gold the share that came to each of his brothers, wished  
 de part 74 revenir 100  
 them every prosperity, embraced them tenderly, and remained alone  
 toutes sortes de rester tout seul  
 in the paternal house. It was then that he (set about) executing a project  
 29 32 Ce 137 alors s'occuper de 154  
 which had for a long while been the object of his thoughts. He was  
 auquel il pensait depuis temps †  
 (in love) with the young Amine, the daughter of a neighbouring farmer.  
 amoureux de 23 son voisin 23 laboureur.  
 Amine was handsome and prudent. She had the management of her  
 sage soin  
 father's house, and asked of God only two things; the first was that her  
 25 ménage, †  
 father should live long; the second that she might become the wife of  
 149 long temps; — — — de † femme  
 Tai. Her wishes were granted. Tai asked for her and obtained her hand.  
 137 exaucer. 201  
 The father of Amine came to live with his (son in law,) and taught  
 demeurer chez gendre, apprendre  
 him the art of making the earth yield all that it can give to those  
 103 faire à la rendre à ce que 62  
 who cultivate it. The field doubled in value; and as he was laborious,  
 62 de valeur; comme  
 and his wife economical, each year encreased their revenue. Amine  
 économe, 102 augmenter  
 had many children. Children who ruin the rich idle people of towns,  
 137 † oiaif 30  
 enrich the (husbandman.) At the end of twelve years, Tai, the  
 laboureur. bout 23

\* Express Nothing by Ne only, because que which comes after, expresses nothing but.

† The two verbs faire and estimer must come together.

‡ Had been the object of his thoughts is all expressed by the verb rêver.

§ Put this verb in the infinitive. † Faire and rendre must come together before a le town; for he did not make the earth, but he made or caused to yield.

¶ See note † page 256.

father of ten pretty children, the husband of a good and virtuous  
 33 , 22 époux 34  
 wife, master of several slaves, and possessor of two flocks, was the  
 plusieurs  
 happiest farmer in Kousistan. Meanwhile his three brothers were  
 49 m. Cependant  
 running after Bathmendi. Bekir had 149 arrived at the camp of the  
 155 238  
 Persians. He presented himself to the grand vizier, and asked to  
 Peise. 54 vizir,  
 serve in the corps that was the most exposed. His appearance, his  
 92 figure,  
 willingness pleased the vizier who admitted him into a troop of horse.  
 bonne volonté 202 cavalerie  
 A few days after, a bloody battle (was fought.) Bekir performed  
 sanglant se donner. faire  
 wonders, saved the life of his general, and took with his own hand  
 prodigé, à de —  
 the general of the enemy. The praises of Bekir resounded every where,  
 celui \* retentir † ,  
 and the vizier (out of gratitude) raised his deliverer to the rank of a  
 reconnaissant, élever libérateur grade —  
 general officer. Alzim was right, said Bekir to himself; it is here  
 32 239 , 139 — se 54; ce  
 that fortune awaited me; every thing shows that I am going to meet  
 attendre 138; 107 annoncer  
 with Bathmendi. The glory of Bekir, and especially his preferment,  
 201 , surtout élévation  
 excited the envy and the murmurs of all the satraps. Bekir unhappy  
 ‡  
 by his very success, lived alone, always on his guard, and exposed  
 même † ,  
 every moment to receive an affront. He regretted the time when he  
 à tout outrage. où  
 was only a common soldier, and was waiting with impatience for the  
 — simple , 201  
 end of the war, when the Turks reinforced by fresh troops and led 157  
 , quand 157 nouvelle ¶ guider  
 by a new general, came and attacked the division which Bekir  
 nouveau ¶ (nn) (ce)  
 commanded. This was an opportunity which the satraps of the army  
 Ce occasion  
 (had long been waiting 155 for.) They used a hundred times more  
 — attendaient 140 depuis long temps. employer 21  
 skill to get their commander beaten, than they had showed in all their  
 250\*\* chef battre\*\* en 70  
 lives to (avoid being) beaten themselves. The brave Bekir forsaken,  
 †† pour n'être pas 158 eux-mêmes. abandonner,

\* Instead of repeating the noun, the French would here use a pronoun.

† Les louanges de Bekir retentirent partout would be french; but *Tout retentit des louanges de Bekir* would be better.

‡ Persian nobleman. † Make this word plural in french. | See note † p. 172.

¶ Put this adjective before the noun.

\*\* *Faire* and *battre* must come together before *chef*.

†† This word must be singular in french, because it implies the life of each person individually, not of them collectively.

covered with wounds, overpowered by numbers, was taken by the  
 300 , accabler sous le nombre, 137  
 janissaries, and sent to Constantinople, where he was thrown into a  
 janissaire, jeter  
 dungeon. Alas! exclaimed he, in his prison; I begin to think that  
 cachot. Hélas! s'écrier 139 ,  
 Alzim has deceived me, for I can not expect to meet with Bethmendi  
 espérer 201  
 here 183. The war lasted fifteen years, and the satraps always prevented  
 n.s. 184 empêcher  
 the exchange of Bekir. His prison was not opened (till peace was made.)  
 qu'à la paix.  
 He ran immediately to Isphahan to seek the vizier his protector, whose  
 aussitôt chercher , à qui  
 life he had saved. (Three weeks elapsed) before he could speak to  
 † Il fut trois semaines sans : — pouvoir (o)  
 him. (At the) end of that time, he obtained an audience. Fifteen years  
 54 Au bout , 233  
 imprisonment alter a little the figure of a handsome young man. Bekir  
 de prison changer  
 (could hardly be said to be the same;) so the vizier did not know  
 était à peine reconnaissable; aussi reconnaître  
 him again. However, by dint of (calling to mind) the different epochs of  
 — , à force se rappeler 154 †  
 his glorious life, he recollected that Bekir had formerly done him a little  
 † se souvenir rendre 162  
 service. Yes, yes, my friend, said he to him, I remember you; you  
 (o) 54 , remettre ;  
 are a brave man; but the state is much encumbered; a long war and  
 † bien obéré; †  
 great festivals have exhausted our finances; however come to me again  
 fête épuiser revenir voir †  
 I will try, I will see. . . . Ah! my lord, I have no bread, and for  
 tâcher, Eh! , depuis  
 this fortnight that I have been waiting for an opportunity to speak to  
 — que — † 201 le moment 168  
 your lordship, I should have perished with misery, but for a soldier of  
 grandeur, 238 mourir de , 237  
 the guard, my ancient companion, who has shared his pay with me.  
 vieux camarade,  
 That is very well of that soldier, replied the vizier; it is truly noble  
 Ce à , répondre ; cela vraiment  
 and affecting; I will mention it to the king. Call upon me again;  
 touchant; parler en 54 Revenir voir 54 † ;  
 you know I (have a regard for) you. . . . In saying these words, he  
 221 aimer 54  
 turned his back (upon him.) Bekir called again the (next day,) but he  
 15 lui 54 revenir † lendemain,

\* Express Not by *Ne* only, as *Que* which comes after supplies the place of *Par*.

† Turn; to whom he had saved the life.

‡ This preposition governs the infinitive in french.

§ Put this adjective before the noun.

|| The adverb *again* is expressed by the preposition *re* prefixed to the verb.

¶ He having been waiting till the moment he was speaking, the French would put the verb *wait* in the present, and leave out *And* and *then*.



(was denied admittance.) Overwhelmed with despair, he left the palace.  
 trouva la porte fermée. Accabler 200 sortir du  
 and the city, resolved never to enter it again. He threw himself at  
 de la 190 rentrer y 54 jeter 54  
 the foot of a tree on the bank of the river Zenderou. There he  
 bord fleuve La  
 reflected on the ingratitude of viziers, on all the misfortunes which he  
 had experienced, on those which still 184 threatened him, and (unable  
 140 éprouver, 159 à (bb) encore pouvant  
 any 190 longer) to support these melancholy ideas, he rose to throw  
 ne plus 173 se tenir triste, se lever 170 précipiter  
 himself into the river; . . but he felt himself embraced by a beggar  
 54 54 mendiant  
 who bathed his face with tears, and exclaimed sobbing; it 62 is my  
 138 visage 200 136 en sanglotant : n.b.  
 brother, it 62 is my brother Bekir! Bekir looks, and recognises Mes-  
 reconnaitre  
 rou. Every man feels pleasure no doubt in meeting again with a  
 104 avoir sans doute 169 retrouver 201  
 brother he has not seen for a long time; but an unfortunate man.  
 (s) depuis — 39  
 without resource, without a friend, who is going to (put an end to)  
 † 172 finir  
 his existence in despair, thinks he sees an angel from heaven, in  
 jours de croire. (nn) en  
 finding again a brother whom he loves. Such was the sentiment,  
 retrouver — Ce 137  
 which Bekir and Mesrou felt at the same time. They mutually  
 éprouver à — folie. 184  
 pressed (each other) in their arms, they mingled their tears, and after  
 † se 54 confondre † larme,  
 the first moments given to tenderness, they looked at (each other) with  
 157 † 201 se 54  
 eyes full of surprise and affliction. Art thou then also unfortunate?  
 † — surpris affligé. Tu es donc  
 exclaimed Bekir. This, answered Mesrou, is the first moment of  
 s'écrier 247, 247  
 happiness which I have enjoyed since we 136 parted 237. At these words,  
 dont se quitter.  
 the two unfortunate men embraced (each other) again; they leaned  
 39 † se 54 encore; s'appuyèrent  
 on each other; and Mesrou seated near to Bekir, thus 184 began his  
 contre 121 assis près de, ainsi  
 history. You remember the fatal day when we went to Alzim's.  
 202 32 où 208  
 That perfidious genie told me I might find at court that Bathmendi  
 perfide ! 221

\* Put this verb in the infinitive.

† After the preposition *Sans*, the noun is generally used without an article, because the preposition and the noun are considered either as an adjective or as an adverbial expression.

‡ To show the quickness in which the action was done, the french would put this verb in the present tense.

§ Leave out this adjective, and make *surprise* and *affliction* into adjectives.

|| Put this adjective before the noun.

whom we wished (so much) to meet. I followed his pernicious advice.  
 140 tant funeste conseil,  
 and soon arrived at Isphahan. I became acquainted with a young female  
 184 53 à faire connaissance une —39  
 slave who belonged to the mistress of the first secretary of the grand  
 140 vizier. This slave conceived an affection for me, and introduced me to  
 de l' 58,  
 her mistress, who made me pass for her youngest brother. Soon the  
 petit  
 youngest brother was presented to the vizier, and a few days after, he  
 137 — quelques  
 obtained an employment in the palace. The Sultana distinguished me,  
 emploi Sultane  
 and took me into an intimate friendship. From that moment, honours  
 213 33 Dès  
 and riches began to shower upon me. The monarch himself showed  
 pleuvor 58 témoigner  
 some regard for me. He liked to converse with me, because I flattered  
 affection — 64 140 causer 139  
 him with address, and always advised him to do what he had a mind to  
 219 53 conseiller 108 — — 64 140 24 envie 108  
 do. This was the way to make him soon do what I should wish.  
 — Ce 140 moyen 108 † lui 54 faire† vouloir.  
 That failed not to happen. (At the) end of three years, I saw myself  
 (66) manquer 168 Au bout 54  
 at once prime minister, favourite of the king, (having in my power)  
 à la fois maître  
 to appoint and to remove the viziers, deciding every thing by my  
 de nommer déplacer 107  
 influence, and receiving every morning the great men of the empire,  
 crédit, tous les matins 39  
 who came to wait (till I awoke) to obtain from me a smile of protection.  
 139 mon réveil 170 de 58  
 (In the) midst of my glory and of my fortune, I (was astonished) that  
 Au s'étonner 140 —  
 I did not meet with that Bathmendi I was seeking. (I feel no  
 (me) N.B. 201 (e) Rien ne me  
 want of any kind), said I to myself; why (do I still want Bathmendi) ?  
 manque 139 — me 54 ; Bathmendi me manque-t-il ?  
 This idea and the constraint (in which) I spent my life, poisoned all  
 gêne où (e) 271  
 my pleasures. The passion of the king for a young Mingrelienne  
 amour  
 came to (fill up) my misfortune. The whole court cast their eyes to  
 combler infortune. 38 tourner les 15 de  
 that side, in hope that the mistress would (turn out) the minister. I  
 espoir chasser  
 parried the blow by connecting myself with the Mingrelienne, and  
 parer (à) lier me 54  
 flattering the passion of the king : but that passion became so violent,  
 204

\* Make this word plural in french.

† Make *de, Faire faire*, must come together in french.

that the monarch, determined to marry his mistress, asked me for 201  
 my advice. I wavered for some days. The Sultan's mother, who  
 avis. tergiverser — Sultane mère, †  
 was afraid of losing her influence if her son should 144 marry, came  
 to declare to me that, if I did not break off that match, she would  
 172 (o) rompre — mariage,  
 have me assassinated on the very 23 day of the ceremony. An hour after  
 250 — même  
 the Mingrelienne came and assured me that, if I did not get her  
 (na) 54 † 250  
 married to the king (the very next day), I should be strangled the day  
 261 par dès le lendemain,  
 after. My situation was embarrassing; I had to choose (between the)  
 d'après position il fallait 172 du †  
 dagger, 204 the rope or 204 flight. I chose 136 the last. I disguised my-  
 du cordon de la prendre dernier parti. 136 237 54  
 self as you see, and have escaped from the palace with some diamonds  
 237 s'échapper †  
 in my pockets, which will support me with you in some corner of  
 faire vivre quelque  
 Indoustan, far from the Sultanas, the Mingreliennes and the court.  
 loin, 204 204  
 After this recital, Bekir related his adventures to Mesrou. They both  
 récit, 122 †  
 agreed that they would have done just as well not 190 to have (ram-  
 convenir tout aussi n.s. — cou-  
 bled about) the world, as they had done, and that the wisest thing  
 xir — , comme 140 meilleur (o)  
 they could do, was to return into Koussistan, to their brother Tai,  
 50 , 140 de , auprès de  
 where the diamonds of Mesrou would enable them to lead a sweet and  
 mettre en état 168 mener 32  
 easy 29 life. After this resolution, they (set out on their journey), and  
 aisé , se mettre en route  
 travelled for several days without meeting with any adventure. As they  
 marcher 205 — — \*\*  
 were crossing the province of Farsistan, they arrived towards dusk at a  
 155 traverser , vera le soir  
 small village where they intended to spend the night. It was a holy  
 compter 271 140 fête  
 day. On entering the village, they saw several peasants' children  
 25 En entrer dans † †  
 returning 153 from walking, attended by a kind of (school-master) badly  
 138 n.s. promenade, conduit 157 espèce , magister mal  
 29

\* See note † page 207.

† *Mère* being here considered as an *adjective*, must come after *Sultane*.

‡ See note \* page 266.

† The preposition *between* is here expressed like *of*.

† See note † page 183.

‡ Put this pronoun after the verb. \*\* All these words may be left out in French.

†† The French do not say *entrer un endroit*, to enter a place; they say *entrer dans un endroit*, to enter into a place.

clad, walking with his head down, and having the appearance of (being  
vêtu, marcher — la 15 basse, air  
absorbed in) (melancholy thoughts). The two brothers approached this  
réver \* tristement 274 †  
school-master, looked at him attentively. . . What was their surprise! it63  
† 201 82 † n.s.  
was Sadder, it63 was their brother Sadder whom they embraced.  
† n.s. †  
What83! my friend, said Bekir to him, is this (the way) in which ge-  
Et quel! (e) ce ainsi — que  
nius is rewarded? You see, replied Sadder, that it is treated much (in  
92 92 à peu près  
the same way as) valour is; but philosophy finds (in it) abundant food  
comme —; y 54 un grand sujet  
for reflection and that (is no small consolation). In saying these words,  
de (bb) console beaucoup. En  
he bid202 all the children go (to their homes), took Bekir and Mesrou  
ordonner à 108 206 conduire  
to his little cottage; dressed himself a little rice for their supper, and  
cabane, apprêter (m) n.s.  
after having154 (asked them for) their histories, he told them his own  
s'être 237 fait raconter dire 162 —  
in these words: The genie Alzim, whom I suspect much of delighting  
en mot: aimer 154  
in (other people's) afflictions, advised me to seek that (not to be found)  
— autrui 23 mal-† introuvable  
Bathmendi in the great city of Agra, amongst the wits and the  
beaux esprits  
fine ladies of that city, I arrived at Agra; and before I mixed  
avant de (m) me repandre  
with the world, I wished137 to (make myself known) by some  
dans vouloir m'annoncer quelque  
striking work. (At the) end of a month, my work appeared;  
d'éclat23 Au bout  
it was a complete course of all human sciences, in a small volume  
65 32 cours 32 en  
divided into chapters. Each chapter was a tale, and each tale taught  
par 102 140  
a science thoroughly183. My book and I soon184 became fashionable  
parfaitement n.s. 127 bientôt à la mode.  
I was invited to all the societies that pretended to have any sense;  
92 74 se piquer 140 un peu d'esprit;  
(ythere was no talk) but of me, and the favourite Sultana wrote to  
On ne parlait que de 58, 32 (e)  
me with her own hand a note (badly spelled), to ask me to come  
de — billet sans orthographe, 170 prier  
to court. Well! I said to myself, Alzim has not deceived me;  
Courage! (ee) 139 — me 54;  
my glory is (at its) height; I will sustain it by surer41 means  
au comble; soutenir 62 32

\* Express the words *being absorbed in* by the verb *réver*.

† To express the *suddenness* of the action, the French would here use the *present tense*.

‡ Put this word in the *singular* in french.

than those of intrigue; I will please, and I shall find Bathmendi.  
 I was (most agreeably) received in the palace of the grand Mogul: The  
 137 parfaitement accueillir  
 favourite Sultana declared herself openly my protectress, presented  
 32 54 hautement  
 me to the emperor, bespoke verses from me, gave me pensions, admit-  
 , commander — 54,  
 ted me to her private suppers, and swore to me, a hundred times a  
 petit , (e) 21 12  
 day, a friendship (that would stand any test). I thought I was  
 , à toute épreuve. croire (na) toucher  
 (on the) point of meeting with Bathmendi, when my protectress  
 au moment 301  
 quarrelled with the vizier about the government of a province which  
 se brouiller vizir pour un —  
 the latter refused to the son of the confectioner of the favourite. The  
 celui-ci confiseur  
 Sultana exasperated at this audacity, asked the emperor to dismiss the  
 outré 157 de , chasser  
 insolent minister; but the emperor liked his vizier, and refused the  
 140  
 favourite. Then it (became necessary) to (set on foot) a regular  
 Alors il fallut 173 établir en règle  
 intrigue to ruin the patronized vizier. I entered (into the) plot, and  
 170 perdre soutenu 32 être 137 du complot, 53  
 (was 137 desired) to compose against the minister a cutting 32 satire, and  
 recevoir ordre 168 sanglant  
 to spread it amongst the public. The vizier soon discovered that I was  
 répandre 63 dans bientôt  
 the author (of it). He went to the favourite, brought her the commis-  
 en 54 aller trouver , 162 brevet  
 sion which he had refused (at first), an order for a hundred thousand  
 140 d'abord, ordonnance de 21  
 daricks on the royal treasury, and only asked her 163 (in return) to  
 32 , lui pour récompense de  
 permit him 162 to throw me into a dungeon. That is a trifle, answered the  
 lui 162 cachot. Ce misère,  
 favourite, and I am very fortunate in (having it in my power) to do some-  
 , heureux (s) de pouvoir 173  
 thing that may be acceptable to you. I will send immediately for  
 74 agréable (e) † envoyer tout à l'heure chercher;  
 that wretch who has dared to insult you (in spite of) my express orders,  
 misérable 172 malgré 32 défense,  
 and deliver him into your hands. Luckily for me a slave of the favour-  
 remettre entre Heureusement  
 ite who was present, came to relate their conversation to me; I had  
 , raconter (e) 45 137  
 only time to escape. Since that time, I have (wandered all over) Indou-  
 , se sauver. Depuis époque, parcourir tout

\* See note † page 172.

† See note \* page 228.

‡ The preposition *Par* after the verbs *Go* and *Send*, is not expressed by *Par*, but by the verb *Character*.

stan, hardly<sup>184</sup> gaining my livelihood by writing novels, and making  
 , à peine via à 134 romans, 134  
 verses. (As long as) I had money, my works had been master-pieces;  
 Tant que avais eu , chef-d'œuvres ;  
 as soon as I was in misery, (all that I wrote was nonsense). (At last)  
 sitôt que 137 , je ne fis plus que des sottises. Enfin  
 disgusted with instructing the world, I have preferred to<sup>172</sup> teach peasants  
 200 134 univers, mieux aimé apprendre à  
 to read, and have<sup>237</sup> turned school-master in this little village where I  
 53 se faire où  
 live upon brown bread, and where I do not expect ever to see Bathmen-  
 200 bis 32 , espérer 184  
 di. (You may leave it if you like), said Mesrou to him, and (go back)  
 Il ne tient qu' à vous de le quitter, (o) 54, 204 retourner  
 with us into Kouistan, where some diamonds which I take with me,  
 , emporter — — ,  
 assure us a sweet and easy<sup>32</sup> life. He had not much difficulty to deter-  
 23 tranquille 137 peine à  
 mine Sadder. (The very next day) the three brothers (set out) from the  
 Dès le lendemain sortir  
 village before (daybreak), and took the road to Kouistan. They<sup>70</sup> were  
 le jour, du en 140  
 on their last (day's journey), and (at no great) distance from the  
 journée, près de arriver  
 small house of Taï. This idea consoled them; but their hope was  
 180 ; espoir 140  
 mingled with fear. Shall we find our brother? they said; we left him  
 mêler de (se) : 130  
 very poor; he will not have met with Bathmendi, since he has not  
 301  
 (been able) to (go in search of) him. My dear friends, said Sadder to  
 pu 172 chercher 54 , (o)  
 them, I have meditated a (good deal) on this Bathmendi of whom Alzim  
 , réfléchir, — beaucoup 183 à 74  
 has spoken to us. To (tell you the truth), I believe that the genie  
 (o) à parler franchement,  
 has (made game) of us. Bathmendi does not exist, and has never  
 237 se moquer  
 existed; for since my brother Bekir did not meet him, when he  
 217 136  
 commanded half of the persian<sup>32</sup> army; since Mesrou did not  
 la moitié persanne ; 217 136  
 (hear his name mentioned), when he was the favourite of the great  
 on 55 entendre parler , lorsque  
 king; since I myself could not even guess what it was at a time  
 ; 136 même 54 ce dans le  
 when I was loaded (with the) favours of glory and fortune; it<sup>52</sup> is  
 que combler des 204 ; n.e.  
 clear that Bathmendi is an imaginary being, an illusion, a chimera after  
 32 être,

\* Turn ; to teach to read to peasants.

† Il ne tient que is a very common expression, but it can not be expressed literally in english.

‡ See page 1 page 222.

§ See note \* page 216.

which all men run, because they like chimeras, and (rambling about).  
 76 à courir  
 He was going to prove that Bathmendi did not exist in this world, when  
 173 habiter 217  
 a band of robbers rushed from behind the rocks which lined 140 the  
 troupe sortir\* border  
 road, surrounded the three travellers, and ordered them 162 to strip.  
 , entourer\* , leur se dépouiller.  
 Bekir wished 137 to resist, but he was soon disarmed. After this cere-  
 vouloir 137  
 mony which was the business of a moment, the captain of the robbers  
 instant, chef  
 wished them a good journey, and left them quite naked (in the) midst  
 162 voyage, 189 29 au  
 of the highway. This comes in support of my proposition, said  
 grand chemin. à l'appui  
 Sadder, looking at his brothers. Ah! the cowards! exclaimed Bekir  
 , en 201 Ah! lâche 139  
 in a rage; they have taken my sword from me! Oh! my diamonds!  
 en—fureur; arracher — 55 Eh!  
 my poor diamonds! replied Mesrou weeping. It was dark; the  
 répondre en pleurant. faire nuit;  
 three unfortunate men (made haste) to reach the house of their  
 39 se hâter gagner  
 brother Tai. They (at length) reached it, and the sight of that house  
 enfin arriver y 54, vue  
 caused their tears to flow. They stopped at the door; they dared not  
 faire † — couler.†  
 knock; all their fears, all their doubts (were renewed). Whilst they  
 incertitude recommencer.  
 were wavering thus, Bekir rolled a large stone, got upon it, and  
 balancer , gros 29 monter \* 64,  
 finding a cleft in the window shutter, he looked and perceived in  
 fente 25 contrevent, \*  
 a neat, plainly furnished room, his brother Tai at table, (in the)  
 32 , simplement meublé 32 à , au  
 midst of ten children who were eating, laughing and chattering all  
 155 , 155 babiller  
 (at once). Tai had on his right his wife Amine who was feeding  
 à la fois, 140 à 155 faire manger  
 her youngest child, and on his left was a little (old man) with a  
 dernier , à vieillard de  
 sweet 29 and cheerful countenance, who was (pouring out) drink for  
 32 gai 32 physionomie, verser à boire à  
 Tai At this sight Bekir rushed into the arms of his brothers, and  
 se précipiter \*  
 knocked at the door with all his might. A servant came to open it,  
 frapper \* de forces. valet \* 173  
 and screamed with fright, at seeing three men completely naked. Tai  
 jeter \* des cris de frayeur, en tout 29

\* To show the quickness of the action, the French would here use the *present tense*; but the *perfect* may also be used.

† Tears; caused to flow their tears; the two verbs *faire* and *couler* must come together in french, for it did not cause their tears, but it caused to flow tears.

ran to the door. The strangers fall (on his<sup>15</sup>) neck, they<sup>90</sup> call  
 — On † lui saute au n.s. cou, n.s.  
 him brother; they<sup>90</sup> bathe him with tears. He was confused (at first),  
 18 ; n.s. 200 \* troubler d'abord,  
 but he soon recollects Bekir, Mesrou, Sadder. He presses them in his  
 184 reconnaître , serrer  
 arms, he can not embrace them sufficiently. All the children ran  
 , suffire à leurs embrassements. accourir  
 to see what it was. Amine also came, but she (drew back) with her  
 173 84 il y avait. 194 , se retirer  
 daughters at the sight of the three naked brothers. (The little old man  
 aspect 32 Il n'y eut que  
 was the only one) who did not quit the table. Tai gave clothes to his  
 le petit vieillard  
 brothers, presented them to his wife, and made them kiss his chil-  
 163 (kk)  
 dren. Alas! said Bekir affected at this sight; thy happy lot consoles  
 Hélas ! attendri spectacle ; sort  
 us for all that we have suffered. Since the moment (we parted,)  
 200 ce que Depuis instant de notre séparation,  
 our life has been only a series of misfortunes, and we have not  
 enchainement infortune,  
 even (had a glimpse) of that Bathmendi after which we have all  
 seulement entrevu — 76  
 been running. I readily believe it, said the little (old man) then<sup>183</sup>  
 — 155 bien 184 54, vieillard alors n.s.  
 who remained (all this time) at table; I have not stirred hence. How!  
 75 140 toujours ; bouger Comment!  
 exclaimed Mesrou, you are. . . I am Bathmendi, replied the (old man);  
 s'écrier , reprendre  
 it is quite natural that you should not know me, since you have never  
 189 simple ; † , 217  
 seen me; but ask of Tai, ask of the good Amine, and of all these little  
 ; 200 , 204  
 children, there is not one (of them) but knows my name. The three  
 , 246 en 54 199 †  
 brothers who could not (keep their eyes off) this little (old man), wished  
 140 se laisser de considérer , vouloir  
 to embrace him. Gently, said he to them; I do not like these great  
 173 Doucement, (o) ;  
 raptures. (People<sup>181</sup> should) be friends before they (make so free.) If  
 mouvements. Il n.s. faut être avant de (na) se caresser.  
 you wish that we should ever become so, be not (too much) (taken up)  
 146 le 54, — trop s'occuper  
 with me. In saying these words, he (got up), kissed every one of the  
 200 , se lever, 105  
 children, made a gentle bow to the three brothers, gave a smile to  
 , petit salut , —  
 Amine and to Tai, and went to wait for them in their bed<sup>26</sup> chamber.  
 , 201 coucher 25

\* See note \* page 373.

† This noun would be expressed better in french by the indefinite pronoun On.

‡ This adjective requires the following verb in the subjunctive.

‡ See note \* page 127, the difference between Savoir and Connaitre.



Tai (sat again) at table with his brothers, and ordered beds to be got  
se remettre faire — — apprê-  
 ready for them. Next day he showed them his fields, his flocks, and  
 ter \* — leur 54 Le lendemain 162  
 gave them a detail of all the pleasures (s) he enjoyed. Bekir would 137  
 faire 162 dont 140 vouloir  
 (work in the fields) (that very day); so he was the first that became  
 labourer le jour même; aussi 137 74  
 the friend of Bathmendi. Mesrou who had been prime minister, was  
 140 137  
 head shepherd of the farm, and the poet (took upon himself) to go and  
 premier se charger 168 —  
 sell in town, the corn, the wool, and the milk which was sent to market;  
 à 92 139  
 his eloquence brought customers, and he was as useful as the others.  
 attirer chaland, 140 43 43  
 (At the) end of six months, Bathmendi (was pleased) with them, and  
 Au bout se plaire 137 58  
 their numerous 32 and quiet days (glided on) gently (in the) bosom  
 nombreux 32 couler 137 doucement au  
 of happiness. It 62 is perhaps unnecessary to say that BATHMENDI  
 n.b. inutile de  
 (in the Persian language) means HAPPINESS.  
 en Persan signifier

### *The Advantages of a Good Education.*

I consider a human soul without education like marble in the  
 l'âme de l'homme  
 quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties, until the skill  
 talent  
 of the polisher fetches out the colours, makes the surface shine,  
 marbrier en fasse sortir en  
 and discovers every (ornamental cloud), spot, and vein, (that runs  
 nuance  
 through the body of it.) Education, (after the same manner), when  
 dont il est parsemé de même  
 it works upon a noble mind, (draws out to view) every latent virtue  
 operer âme mettre au jour  
 and perfection, which, without such helps, are never able (to make  
 son  
 their appearance.  
 paraître.

If my reader will (give me leave) to change so soon the allusion  
 vouloir me permettre de  
 upon him, I shall (make use) of the same instance, to illustrate the  
 — — se servir comparaison faire sentir  
 force of education, which Aristotle has brought to explain his doc-  
 employer  
 trine of substantial forms, when he tells us that a statue lies hid in  
 être

\* Turn; ordered to get ready beds, &c. for he did not order the beds, but he ordered to get ready.

a block of marble, and the art of the statuary only clears away the <sup>que</sup> superfluous matter, and removes the rubbish. The figure is in the <sup>en fait qu'enlever</sup> stone, and the sculptor only finds it. What sculpture is to a block <sup>écarter</sup> <sup>immondices.</sup> <sup>n'a qu'à la trouver.</sup>

of marble, education is to a human soul. The philosopher, the saint,

or the hero; the wise, the good, <sup>homme de bien</sup> or the great man; very often

lie hid, and concealed in a plebeian, which a proper education might

<sup>être caché</sup> <sup>enfuoi</sup> <sup>et</sup> have disinterred, and have brought to light. I am therefore

<sup>le</sup> <sup>—</sup> <sup>le mettre au jour.</sup> <sup>prendre</sup> much delighted with reading the accounts of savage nations, and

<sup>beaucoup de plaisir</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>historie</sup> with contemplating those virtues which are wild and uncultivated; to

see courage exerting itself in fierceness, resolution in obstinancy, <sup>grossier</sup>

<sup>se manifester</sup> wisdom in cunning, patience in sullenness and despair. <sup>opiniâtreté</sup>

<sup>ruse</sup> wisdom in cunning, patience in sullenness and despair. <sup>chagrin</sup>

Men's passions operate variously, and appear in different kinds of

actions, according as they are more or less rectified and swayed by <sup>gouverner</sup>

reason. It is an unspeakable blessing to be born in those parts of <sup>inéditable</sup> <sup>bonheur</sup>

the world where wisdom and knowledge flourish; though it must be <sup>science</sup>

confessed there are, even in these parts, several poor uninstructed <sup>nos</sup> <sup>contrées,</sup> <sup>ignorant</sup>

persons, who are but little above those nations of which I (have been <sup>—</sup> <sup>bien peu</sup> <sup>viens de</sup>

here) speaking; as those who have had the advantages of a more

liberal education, rise above one another by several different degrees

of perfection. For, to return to our statue in the block of marble, we

see it sometimes only begun <sup>que</sup> <sup>on n'a que commencé à le dégrossir</sup> <sup>on l'a</sup> to be chipped, sometimes rough-

hewn, and but just sketched into a human figure; sometimes we see <sup>ébauché</sup> <sup>on y a seulement esquissé</sup>

the man appearing distinctly in all his limbs and features; some-

times we find the figure wrought up to great elegance; but we <sup>— avec beaucoup de</sup>

seldom meet with any to which the hand of a Phidias or a Praxite- <sup>une statue</sup>

les could not give several (nice touches and finishings.)

<sup>touches propres à l'embellir et à la rendre parfaite.</sup> SPECTATOR.

# A COMPENDIUM

## OF THE

### PRINCIPAL RULES

*Contained in this Treatise.\**

What are the words commonly called <sup>157</sup> the *parts of speech*, of which  
<sup>82</sup> appeler <sup>partie</sup> discours,  
 the french language is composed?  
<sup>32</sup> langue <sup>composer</sup> <sup>158</sup> ?

(What is) a *noun* ?

Qu'est-ce que (y) nom ?

(How many) sorts of nouns do we <sup>90</sup> distinguish in grammar?

Combien <sup>N.B. distinguer</sup> en grammair ?

(How many) genders (are there) in french ?

<sup>246</sup>

How do we <sup>90</sup> know the gender of the names of the beings without  
<sup>185</sup> <sup>N.B. connaitre</sup> <sup>nom</sup> <sup>être</sup>  
 life, which are commonly called <sup>92</sup> things ?

— <sup>appeler</sup>

(How many) numbers (are there) — How do you make the plural  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>185</sup> <sup>former</sup> <sup>plurier</sup>  
 number of nouns ?

Has this rule any exceptions ? — What are they ?

<sup>134</sup>

<sup>82</sup>

<sup>62</sup>

(What is) an *article* ?

(y)

What are the words which are commonly called *article* in french ?

<sup>82</sup>

<sup>92</sup>

What agreement does the article require with the noun ?

<sup>accord</sup>

<sup>demande</sup>

What sign do we use, when the noun which follows the article  
<sup>signe</sup> <sup>employer,</sup>

is (in the) singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute ?

<sup>au</sup>

<sup>par</sup>

<sup>voyelle,</sup>

<sup>muette ?</sup>

When several nouns which require the article meet in the same  
<sup>plusieurs</sup> <sup>demande</sup> <sup>se rencontrer</sup>

sentence, is it necessary to repeat the article before each noun ?  
<sup>phrase,</sup> <sup>102</sup>

Do the names <sup>134</sup> of persons and of towns require the article ?

<sup>nom</sup>

<sup>demande</sup>

\* The learner must translate these questions into french, as he has done the foregoing exercises : and he must also write in french an answer to every question, with an explanation of the rule, and two or three appropriate examples from his own imagination. This exercise would perhaps be useless to grown persons who have read the rules with attention, but I think it will be particularly useful to all young learners.

Do the names of countries require the article?

134 pays

Has not this rule some exceptions?—What are they?

134 " 83 82

(Is there) not a small number of words which are never excepted,  
246

i. e. which always require the article?—Name them.

184 Nommer

What article do common names require, when they are used

88 commun 134 demander, — s'employer

in a general or in a particular sense?†

particulier sens

How is *of* expressed before a noun used in a general sense,

186 — s'exprimer (ii) n. s.

preceded by a noun used in a partitive sense?

What article do common names require, when we use them

134 n. s. employer

in a partitive sense, i. e. to denote only a portion of the thing  
à designer

(spoken of)†

dont on parle

What sign do we put before a noun used in a partitive sense, when

signe n. s. partitif

it is attended by an adjective which must be placed before that noun?

accompagné de devoir — se placer

(Are not there) some adverbs in french which require the preposi-

246

tion *de*, when the words which represent them in english do not re-

représenter

quire any preposition?—What are they?

83

How is the numeral article *a, an* expressed?

186 — (ii) n. s.

How are *a, an* expressed before nouns of measure, weight, number,

204 poids, 204

and periods of time used in a collective sense?

204 157 collectif 83

What are the words which are called demonstrative article?

83 — 92 démonstratif

How do we make in french that local distinction which is made

n. s. de lieu — se faire

in english by means of the words *this, these, that, those*

au moyen

What are the words which we call possessive article?

83 n. s. possessif 23

Is not the possessive article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, some-*

134

times expressed by the definite article *le, la, les*?

184 s'exprimer (ii) n. s.

Are not the possessive words *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, some-*

134

times expressed by *au, à la, aux*?

(ii) n. s.

\* See note † page 182.

† See note \* page 46.

Do not the French sometimes use *mon, ma, mes*, before a noun,  
134 184 employer

when the corresponding 32 signs are not used in english?  
qui y correspondent — (ii) N.B.

In what instances are the signs called article (left out) in french?  
cas — 134 s'omettre

When two nouns govern each other, which of the two nouns is to  
se régir 121 242  
be placed the first in french?

243 se placer (ii) N.B. premier

By what preposition are these nouns united together?  
— 134 s'unir ensemble?

How is *of* expressed before the proper names of countries?  
185 — (ii) N.B. nom

Do not the French sometimes use the name of a country, when  
134 184 employer  
the English use the adjective derived from that name?  
dérivé

What is an *adjective*?  
(y) adjectif?

What agreement does the adjective require with the noun?  
accord 134 demander

How is the feminine gender of an adjective formed?  
— — se former (ii) N.B.

(Are there) any exceptions to this rule, and what are they?  
246 82 62

How is the plural number of adjectives formed?  
— —

When an adjective qualifies two nouns, of what gender and number  
qualifier  
must that adjective be?  
devoir

Are adjectives placed in french before or after the noun?  
— 134 se placer (ii) N.B.

Has not this rule some exceptions?  
134 †

What place do the adjectives of number keep with the noun?  
place 134 tenir

How are the adjectives of number expressed and where are they  
s'exprimer, (ii) N.B. où —  
placed, when they are used to distinguish some personage?  
se placer, — s'employer † personnage?

How are the adjectives of measure or dimension *long, broad, high,*  
204 long, large, haut,  
*deep, &c.* placed with the number in french?  
profond, &c. se placer (ii) N.B.

Do not the French often use the substantive of dimension instead of  
134 184 substantif  
the adjective? — Is the same verb used with the substantive of dimen-  
92  
sion as with the adjective?  
que

\* Repeat here *Of* what before number.

† See note † page 183.

Can the adjective be separated from the noun by an article in french  
134

as it63 sometimes is in english ?  
comme 184 70

May178 not the adjective be sometimes used as a substantive ?

Pouvoir\* 134 — (ii) n.s.

How is an adjective made comparative ?—How is it made  
92 comparatif ? 92  
superlative ?  
superlatif ?

When the comparison is made, not between two substantives,  
— se faire, (ii) n.s. entre  
but between two parts of a sentence; as, *the more difficult a thing is,*  
partie phrase ;  
*the more merit there is in doing it ;* what difference (is there) in the  
; 346  
arrangement of the words in french ?

Are the adverbial particles134 which serve to form the comparative  
33 particule servir  
and superlative repeated in french ?  
se répéter (ii) n.s.

Do not some96 of the comparative adjectives and adverbs require  
134 33 demander  
as before the verbs which follows them ?

How are *by* and *than* expressed after a comparative ?  
185 — (ii) n.s.

How is *in* expressed after a superlative ?  
185 — s'exprimer (ii) n.s.

What mood does the superlative require, when it is followed by a  
83 mode demander, 63 do  
relative pronoun ?  
relatif

What is a *pronoun* ?  
(y) pronom ?

How many sorts of pronouns do we90 distinguish ?  
n.s. distinguer ?

How do you express the pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they,*  
when they are the nominative of a verb ?  
nominatif

How do you express the same words *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they,*  
mêmes  
when they are joined158 to another substantive for the nominative or  
joindre substantif  
the same verb, or when the verb is understood ?  
sous-entendre ?

How do you express the pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them,*  
when they are the object of a verb ?  
objet

What place do the pronouns objects of the verb keep with the verb,  
place 134 tenir  
when the tense is simple ?  
temps simple ?

What place do these pronouns require when the tense is compounded  
 place 134 demander composé  
 of the auxiliary<sup>32</sup> verb *avoir* or *être*, and of a past<sup>32</sup> participle?  
 auxiliaire , passé participle?

Where are the pronouns objects of the verb placed, when the  
 Où — se placer, (ii) N.B.  
 verb commands, and how are *me* and *thee* expressed?  
 commander, 185 — (ii) N.B.

How are *me*, *thee*, *us*, *you*, *him*, *her*, *them* expressed, and where are  
 185 — (ii) N.B.  
 they placed, when they are governed by a preposition?  
 (ii) N.B. régir par

Is not the preposition *à* in french, like the preposition *to* in english,  
 134  
 often implied in the pronoun?—When is *à* 134 to be expressed?  
 renfermée 242 243 s'exprimer?

When several pronouns of different persons are the object of the  
 plusieurs  
 same verb, what order do these pronouns keep with one another?  
 , ordre 134 tenir 121

As (there are) in french only two genders, the masculine and the  
 Comme il n'y a que  
 feminine, how is the english neuter<sup>32</sup> pronoun *it* expressed in french?  
 , — 32 neutre 135 (ii) N.B.

Explain the different uses of the pronoun *it*.  
 Expliquer usages

May 178 *lui*, *leur*, be used for things?  
 Pouvoir 134 — s'employer

May *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles* be used for things after a preposition?  
 \* 134 †

How are the pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, *they* expressed before the verb *be*,  
 185 — 134 (ii) N.B. 206  
 when that verb is followed by a substantive?  
 200

How are the pronouns *he*, *she*, *they*, *him*, *her*, *them* expressed, when  
 — (ii) N.B.,  
 they do not relate to any noun (mentioned before,) but <sup>53</sup>refer  
 ‡ se rapporter au cum dont on a fait 145 mention, 219 se rapporter  
 to the word person understood?  
 sous-entendre?

Are not the pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, *en*, *y* frequently used, when the  
 — 134 souvent 184 s'employer,  
 words which represent them are not used in english?  
 représenter — (ii) N.B.

Do these pronouns agree with the words which they represent?  
 s'accorder

How do you express the pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *that*, *which*,  
 when they relate to a noun (mentioned before?)  
 se rapporter dont on a fait mention?

What place does the relative keep with the noun to which it relates?  
 place relatif tenir 76

\* See note \* page 125.

† These words in this sense may be considered as nouns.

‡ Express *Not* by *se* only, because *ceux* that follows is a negative expression which takes the place of *pas*.

Is not the relative pronoun sometimes understood in english, when  
32 134 104  
 it can not (be left out) in french ?  
s'omettre

How are *who, whom, whose* expressed, when they relate to the  
— 134 (ii) N.B. se rapporter  
 word *person* understood ?

How are *whom* and *which* expressed, when they are governed by a  
(ii) N.B. régir  
 preposition ?

How is *which* expressed after a preposition, when it relates  
185 — s'exprimer (ii) N.B. se rapporter  
 to the word *thing* ?

How is *which* expressed after a preposition, when it relates to a place?  
— (ii) N.B. lieu ?

How is *which* interrogative expressed ?  
— Interrogatif (ii) N.B.

Explain the different ways of expressing the pronoun *what*.  
Expliquer manière 154

How do we express the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before) ?  
N.B. possessif 32 dont on a fait mention ?

How are the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, &c.*  
— 32 N.B. — s'employer  
 expressed, when they are used instead of the personal pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, them* ; as, *This book is mine* ?  
— ; , This book is mine ?

How are the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, &c.* expressed, when they are joined by the preposition *of* to the noun to which they relate ; as, *A book of mine, &c.* ?  
(ii) N.B. of ; , A book of mine, &c. ?

How are the demonstrative pronouns *this, that, these, those*, expressed ? — How is the distinction made between these words in french ?  
(ii) N.B. — 92 démonstratif 32 entre

How are *this, that* expressed, when they relate to the word *thing* understood ?  
(ii) N.B. se rapporter

Explain the different properties of *this, that, these, those*.†  
propriété

How do we express the words *one, we, they, people*, when they do not refer to any particular person ?  
N.B. se rapporter aucune en particulier personne ?

\* These words in this sense may be considered as nouns.

† See note (bb) page 234.



How are the indefinite expressions such as these; *It is thought, It is said*, expressed in french?  
— indéfini 32 134 telles que 88 ;  
(ii) N. B.

How are these other indefinite expressions *I have been told, I was advised, &c.* expressed in french?  
— autre 32  
(ii) N. B.

What is a verb?  
(y) verbe ?

What agreement does the verb require with its nominative?  
82 accord demander son nominatif ?

When two substantives of different persons are the nominative of the same verb, of what number and person must the verb be?  
82 + devoir

Of what person is the verb, when it has *qui* for its nominative?

Of what person must the verb be, when *qui* relates to two substantives of different persons?  
devoir se rapporter

Of what number must the verb be, after the collective substantives *la plupart, infinité, nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude*?  
collectif 32

Of what number is the verb, after *le quart, le tiers, la moitié*?

What is the place of the nominative with the verb, in an interrogative sentence, when the nominative is a personal pronoun?  
82 place phrase, 32

What is the place of the nominative, in an interrogative sentence, when that nominative is a noun, or any other word but a personal pronoun?  
tout autre que

When is the present of the indicative used?  
employer

When do we use the compound of the present?  
N. B. composé

When do we make use of the perfect tense of the verb?  
N. B. usage parfait —

Explain the different uses of the imperfect.  
Expliquer usage

When is the future used?—Is not the present sometimes used for the future?—Does not the french language require the future, in some instances (in which) the English use the present?  
— futur 92 — 134 demander †  
cas ou

\* See note \* page 300.

† See note † page 183

† Of what must be repeated before person.

- How are *will*, *would* expressed after the conjunction *if*?  
 185 — s'exprimer *if*?
- Mention the different instances in which the subjunctive is used.  
 Rapporteur cas 76 subjonctif — 92
- When is the present of the subjunctive used?  
 — 92
- When is the perfect of the subjunctive used?  
 — 92
- Does the present participle agree with the words that attend it?  
 33 participe s'accorder accompagner
- How is the english participle in *tag* expressed, after a preposition?  
 — 33 s'exprimer,
- How is the english present participle expressed, when it is joined  
 (ii) N.B.,
- to the auxiliary verb *be*?  
*be*?
- Does the past participle agree with the noun to which it is joined?  
 33 134 76 joindre?
- When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *être* to *be*, does  
 it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?  
 quelque accord, s'accorder
- When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to *have*,  
 does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?
- Does the past participle agree after *avoir*, when it is followed by  
 another verb in the infinitive?—Explain this rule.  
 a Expliquer
- How is *to*, the sign of the infinitive in english, expressed in french?  
 — 134, 28 signe (ii) N.B. \*
- (Are not there) some instances in which this preposition is left out  
 346 † cas 76 — s'omettre
- in french?—Name them.  
 Nommer
- Is *will* 134 always the sign of the future, and *would* the sign of the  
*will* *would*  
 conditional of the verb which follows it?  
 conditionnel
- How are *will have*, *would have*, expressed?—Explain these words.  
 — (ii) N.B.
- How do we 90 express *should*;—*should have*, *ought to have*?  
 N.B.
- How do we 90 express *may*, *might*;—*could have*, *might have*?  
 N.B.
- How is *wish* expressed when it is followed by another verb  
 185 — s'exprimer (ii) N.B. 300
- (in the) imperfect, or (in the) conditional?  
 à l' imparfait, au conditionnel?
- How is *must* expressed, and what mood does it govern?  
 — (ii) N.B., mode régir

\* See, pages 376, 377, 378, the different ways of expressing *to* before an infinitive, and peruse often the list of those verbs

† See note † page 183

- How must we express *must have* in the sense of *being in debt*?  
N.B. sens
- What is an *adverb*?  
(y) adverb
- What place do the adverbs keep with the verb?  
place 134 tenir
- Which are the words that we call negative adverbs?  
79 N.B. négatif 32
- How are the negative adverbs placed with the verb?  
— se placer (ii) N.B.
- How are they placed, when the verb is in the infinitive?  
— (ii) N.B.
- Are not *pas*, *point* sometimes left out?  
— 134 184 s'omettre (ii) N.B.
- How are *no*, *not* expressed without a verb?  
— (ii) N.B.
- How is *not* expressed with the verb *take care*, *prendre garde*?  
(ii) N.B.
- (Are there) not in french some words which require *ne*, when  
246 demander
- (where is) no negation in english? — Which are these words?  
246 79
- How do we express *but* in the sense of the adverb *only*?  
N.B. but only
- How is *but* expressed in the sense of a relative pronoun?  
— but (ii) N.B.
- What is a *preposition*?  
(y) préposition
- Are the prepositions always expressed by the words which generally  
— 134 184
- correspond to one another in both languages? — Mention the  
se correspondre 121 les deux Rapport
- words the most frequently used with which the prepositions differ?  
184 employer 76 différer
- Do not some verbs require a preposition in english, when the  
demander
- corresponding words do not require any in french? — Name  
qui y correspondent (s) Nommer
- them.
- (Are there) not (on the) contrary some verbs which require a pre-  
246 au contraire
- position in french, when the corresponding words do not require any  
qui y correspondent
- in english? — Name them.  
(s)
- May the prepositions be placed in french, as they sometimes  
134 — se placer (ii) N.B. 62 184
- are placed in english, either before or after the words which they  
— (ii) N.B. 233 62
- govern?  
régr

\* See note † page 182.

† See, pages 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, a list of the words with which the prepositions differ, and peruse it often. ‡ See note \* page 125.

Are the prepositions repeated before all the words which they govern ?  
 — 134 as repeated 82

Explain the following 33 prepositions; *for*. — *before*. — *by*.

Expliquer suivant 29

Explain *at*, *to*, *from* with verbs denoting being 154 *at*, going 154,  
 qui désignent être à, aller  
 or coming to, going or coming from a person's 25 house?  
 venir à, de — quelqu'un

Explain the different properties of *in*, *into*. — *in*, before the dif-  
 ferent parts of the day; and *on* before the days of the week.  
 propriété in, into, in,  
 partie ; on

What is a *conjunction* ?

(y) conjunction 1

Which are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood ?

79 régir indicatif 1

Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive ?

79 74 subjonctif 1

When a conjunction governs several verbs, is it necessary to repeat it before each verb ?  
 plusieurs n.s. 103

(Is there,) not something to be remarked, about the conjunction *si*, *if* ?

246 243 au sujet de

May not some conjunctions (be left out) in english, when the con-  
 junctions which represent them can not (be left out) in french ?  
 s'omettre

Explain the conjunctions *both*. — *either*, *or*. — *neither*, *nor*.

Explain the conjunctions *whether*. — *though*, *although*, *if* even. —

*But for*, *if it were not for*, *if it had not been for*, &c.

Explain the different ways of expressing the word *people*.

Expliquer manière 154

Explain the different meanings of the words *country*. — *time*.  
 signification

What difference between *an*, *année* ; — *jour*, *journées* ; — *matin*,  
 entre  
*matinée* ; — *soir*, *soirée* ; — *nuit*, *soir* ; — *midi*, *minuit* ?

When is the auxiliary verb *have* expressed by the auxiliary *être* ?

— 134 s'exprimer par

When is the auxiliary verb *be* expressed by the auxiliary *avoir* ?

— (4) n.s.

When is *be* expressed by *faire* ? — When is *be* expressed by *se per-*  
 — 134  
*ter* ? — When is *be* expressed by *devoir* ?

Is not the verb *be* sometimes left out ?

— 134 184 s'omettre

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *to be just, to have just* ?  
185 N.B.

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *was near, were near, had like* ?  
N.B.

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *there is, there are ; it is far, it is long ago ,*  
N.B.  
*it is since ; and this, these, (pointing out) a period of time ?*  
désignant

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *here is, here are ; this is, these are ;—there is*  
N.B.  
*there are ; that is, those are, when they serve to (point out) an object ?*  
189 désigner

Explain the different meanings of the word *let*.—*let know*.  
signification

Explain the different meanings of the verb *make*.

Explain *to cause, to have, to get*.—*to cause to be done or made ; to have or get done or made ; to order, to bespeak*.

Explain the verbs *to ask, to desire*.—*to look*.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs *to suppose*.—*to hope*.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs *to take*.—*to bring*.  
signification  
—*to use*.—*to help*.—*to attend*.—*to want*.

Explain the verbs *to marry*.—*to ride*.—*to walk*.—*to come*.—  
*to return*.—*to call*.

Explain the verbs *to break*.—*to like*.—*to keep*.—*to get*.—  
*to spend*.—*to charge*.

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *to go to meet*.—*to bring near, to go near, to*  
185 N.B.  
*come near*.—*to hear* ?

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *it is with*.—*whatever, in vain, to no purpose*.  
N.B.  
—*to find fault with*.—*to take it kindly*.—*to take it unkindly* ?

How do we<sup>90</sup> express *to do without, to be easy without*.—*What is*  
N.B.  
*the matter, what is it about, what is it*.—*Is it, is it not ; does it, does it not ; have I, have I not ?*

---

III The learner having gone through the Syntax, and being able to answer the foregoing questions, with appropriate examples to each of them, there can be no doubt but he understands the rules well ; he should now try to write something of his own composition in french, such as letters, dialogues, short histories, or anecdotes, either that he has read or heard, or from his own imagination. This he will

perhaps find difficult at first ; but if he will persevere in it for a few days, he will find it easier and more profitable than translating from a book ; for unless he has read a great deal of french, he will be apt to commit many anglicisms, owing to the difference in the idiom of the two languages, i. e. he will put together a number of french words which separately have a meaning, but which, when put together, have hardly any meaning at all. His attention should be called entirely to recollect the french words which he has seen to express the same ideas, and even the english dictionary should be used as seldom as possible. If he finds himself deficient in some of the rules, he must write over again the recapitulatory exercise on those parts of speech which are not familiar to him, and there is little doubt that after a second attentive perusal, he will be sufficiently acquainted with them.

THE END.



To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

SON-9-46

--	--	--



167817

[illegible]

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD